Ecology of parasite-vector interactions

edited by:

Willem Takken and Constantianus J.M. Koenraadt

Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases
Volume 3

Ecology of parasite-vector interactions

Ecology of parasite-vector interactions

Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases

Volume 3

edited by:

Willem Takken
and
Constantianus J.M. Koenraadt

Wageningen Academic
P u b l i s h e r s

Buy a print copy of this book at:
www.WageningenAcademic.com/ecvd-03

ISBN: 978-90-8686-188-0
e-ISBN: 978-90-8686-744-8
DOI: 10.3920/978-90-8686-744-8

ISSN: 1875-0699

First published, 2013

Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases

In the past century, many advances were made in the control of vector-borne diseases. Malaria disappeared from the northern hemisphere, diseases such as typhus, *Bartonella* and yellow fever were seriously reduced in prevalence and in many countries effective methods of disease control contributed to a greatly reduced incidence of such diseases. Most of these advances were beneficial to the industrialised world, whereas underdeveloped countries continued to suffer much as before. Indeed, several diseases such as malaria, Rift Valley fever and African sleeping sickness are still highly prevalent in parts of the tropics. 'New' vector-borne diseases such as dengue, chikungunya fever and West Nile fever, have emerged and are invading previously disease-free regions. The discovery of new drugs and vaccines has made great advances and allows for the effective treatment and control of many diseases. In contrast, vector control has lagged behind in development, even though it is realised that effective vector control would allow for an immediate interruption of the transmission of disease, and aid in disease control and eradication. In the last decade new initiatives on vector control have been undertaken, leading to a rapid development of effective and lasting methods of vector control. For example, the Roll Back Malaria control programme of the World Health Organization has led to significant reductions in malaria in many countries. In order to achieve further advances, however, additional tools are required. The development of molecular genetics has provided new insight in vector biology and behaviour, which is being used for developing new strategies of vector control. Advances in geographic information systems allow for precision targeting of interventions. The collective information on new developments in Vector Ecology and Control for Vector-borne Diseases is scattered over numerous periodicals and electronic databases. This book series intends to bring together this information in sequential volumes arranged around selected themes that are currently of interest. Forthcoming themes will include 'Recent advances in biological control of mosquitoes', 'Transgenic tools for vector management' and 'Integrated management of vectors of livestock diseases', but also fundamental biological topics such as 'Mating behaviour of disease vectors', 'Oviposition behaviour of disease vectors' and 'Reproductive strategies of disease vectors'. Other topics will be added as perceived relevant.

Willem Takken is the senior editor of the series. Each volume will be co-edited by a guest editor, which in Volume 3 is Sander Koenraadt. The editors of the current volume are well-known experts in the field of Medical and Veterinary Entomology, and have experience from field work in the tropics and ecological studies in laboratory and field. Willem Takken is professor in Medical and Veterinary Entomology at Wageningen University. Sander Koenraadt is an assistant professor in Vector Ecology at Wageningen University. Both editors collaborate in several research programmes, and consider dissemination of research results to fellow scientists as well as the public at large as an important component of their work.

Table of contents

Preface 11
Willem Takken and Constantianus J.M. (Sander) Koenraadt

1. Introduction – who was there first? 13
Willem Takken and Constantianus J.M. Koenraadt

Fundamental aspects of vector-parasite interactions 17

2. Impact of transgenic immune deployment on mosquito fitness 19
Andrew D. Pike, Chris M. Cirimotich and George Dimopoulos

3. Plant-sugar feeding and vectorial capacity 35
Chris M. Stone and Woodbridge A. Foster

4. Vector competence for arboviruses in relation to the larval environment of mosquitoes 81
Barry W. Alto and L. Philip Lounibos

5. Relevant temperatures in mosquito and malaria biology 103
Krijn P. Paaijmans and Matthew B. Thomas

6. Evolutionary aspects of *Anopheles-Plasmodium* interactions 123
Louis Lambrechts and Jacob C. Koella

Species-specific interactions 139

7. Tick – *Borrelia* interactions: burden or benefit? 141
Fedor Gassner and Nienke Hartemink

8. *Wolbachia* in *Aedes* mosquitoes: towards biological control of vector-borne diseases 155
Luciano A. Moreira

9. Behaviour of sandflies infected with *Leishmania* 167
Paul D. Ready and Matthew E. Rogers

Strategic issues concerning vector-parasite interactions 179

10. Modelling the control of mosquito-borne diseases 181
Ace North and Penelope Hancock

11. Heterogeneity in malaria transmission: underlying factors and implications for disease control 197
Teun Bousema and Amrish Baidjoe

12. Considerations for male fitness in successful genetic vector control programs 221
Michelle E.H. Helinski and Laura C. Harrington

Epilogue 245

13. Ecology of parasite-vector interactions: expect the unexpected 247
Constantianus J.M. Koenraadt and Willem Takken

About the editors 253

Contributors 255

Reviewers 258

Keyword index 259

Preface

The current book is the 3rd volume of the series Ecology and Control of Vector-borne Diseases. The series is intended to cover a wide series of topics that concern vector-borne diseases, from fundamental research to control. By focusing on specific subjects in each Volume, an in-depth and up to date information about these subjects is provided, which can help to gain a perspective of recent advances in knowledge and how this can be exploited for effective disease control.

When the series was launched in 2007 (ECVD Vol. 1), we could not imagine that vector-borne diseases would dominate the international scene at a scale as we have witnessed in the last few years. Following the 2006 outbreak of bluetongue virus in north-western Europe, outbreaks of other vector-borne diseases in Europe followed each other with increasing speed: chikungunya in Italy (2007) and then in France (2010), dengue in France (2010) and recently in Greece (2012) for the first time since the nineteen twenties, new strains of West Nile virus in southern Europe (2011, 2012) and Usutu virus advances in Germany (2012). In the USA, Florida has experienced serious outbreaks of dengue in 2010, while Texas recently experienced its worst epidemic of West Nile virus since the disease arrived in the USA in 1999. In the tropics, where spectacular advances have been made in the control of malaria, insecticide and drug resistance threaten to halt this process. Of equal concern is the global advance of dengue, which has become a disease of the urban environment. Not only do vector-borne diseases emerge and expand their geographical territories, also some of the vector species migrate across huge distances. *Aedes albopictus* is probably the best example of a highly successful global migrant, and is now likely to become established in Australia as well due to its highly competitive nature. In Europe, *Aedes japonicus* has become established in Switzerland, and small pockets of this species were found elsewhere on the continent as well.

The realisation that vector-borne diseases continue to be prevalent and are capable of rapidly invading novel geographic areas, is reason to continue investing in research on the basic biology of these diseases as well as in the development of preventive and effective control measures. Variation in parasite and vector genetics and ecological determinants provide challenges that need to be met. The current volume of ECVD focuses on the interaction between parasites and vectors. As several of the chapters will show, rapid advances in molecular genetics allow for some revision of our classical knowledge about vector-parasite interactions and provide insight in the intricate regulation of these interactions, notably the role of immune responses as well as endosymbionts. Better insight in these processes can provide the key to successful interruption of these interactions and hence to disease control.

Many scientists have contributed to this Volume, and we appreciate the time taken to complete these chapters, which show strong interlinkages about the subject of parasite-vector interactions. Each chapter was reviewed by independent reviewers, and subsequently adjusted as needed. We are grateful to the anonymous reviewers, as we realise that this takes time and effort. We thank Wageningen Academic Publishers for their patience and useful advice. We thank Hans Smid for once more having contributed to the cover design.

Wageningen, 22 October 2012

Willem Takken and Constantianus JM (Sander) Koenraadt

1. Introduction – who was there first?

Willem Takken and Constantianus J.M. Koenraadt

Abstract

The force of vector-borne disease transmission is greatly affected by interactive processes between parasites and their arthropod hosts. In recent years significant advances in knowledge about the mechanisms of these interactions have been made, notably concerning the impact of arthropod immune responses on parasite establishment and propagation in the arthropod host, genetic and phenotypic variation affecting these interactions, the impact of these interactions on parasite and arthropod fitness, and how environmental factors affect parasite transmission. The current volume of the Ecology and Control of Vector-Borne Diseases highlights significant and novel aspects of parasite-vector interactions and contributes to a better understanding of vector-borne disease transmission. Better insight in these interactive processes will be useful for studies on the epidemiology and control of vector-borne diseases and is expected to contribute to the development of novel intervention strategies.

Keywords: vector-borne disease, parasites, pathogens, interaction, genetics, immunity, transmission

Introduction

Vector-borne diseases are characterized by the fact that one organism is dependent for its existence on at least two other organisms, one vertebrate host and one arthropod host. Examples are the leishmaniases with rodents as the vertebrate reservoir and sandflies (Diptera: Phlebotominae) as the arthropod hosts, dengue with humans as the vertebrate reservoir and *Aedes* mosquitoes (Diptera: Culicidae) as arthropod hosts and African trypanosomiasis, with various mammalian species as reservoir hosts and tsetse flies (Diptera: Glossinidae) as arthropod hosts. Historically, much attention has been paid to the parasite-vertebrate host interaction, as knowledge about this association is essential for understanding of the disease and contains clues for treatment. This includes research on the biology of parasites, the onset and progress of clinical disease, and preventive and curative interventions. Conversely, the parasite-arthropod interaction has received far less attention, presumably because it was originally assumed that passage of the parasite through the arthropod would not affect the latter. With hindsight, this was a remarkable attitude, as it was realized soon after the discovery of the role of arthropods as vectors that the parasites would require nutrients from their hosts for survival and reproduction (reviewed by Hurd 1990).

The realization that parasites can manipulate their arthropod hosts, or that the arthropods elicit effective immune responses against invading parasites coupled with rapidly-advancing technologies for parasite detection and identification (Sim *et al.* 2009, Valkiunas *et al.* 2008), has led to a growing body of research on parasite-vector interactions that has assisted greatly in our understanding of the biology of vector-borne diseases. For example, the development of real-time quantitative nucleic acid sequence-based amplification (QT-NASBA) techniques has led to the discovery of sub-microscopic infectious *Plasmodium* stages in the human host, suggesting that malaria parasite transmission may occur at a much greater scale than was believed hitherto (Schneider *et al.* 2007). Advances in immunology allow for a detailed understanding of the infectious route of *Plasmodium* spp. in anopheline mosquitoes (Chapter 2, Cirimotich *et al.* 2010). Molecular tools revealed the highly complex interactions between trypanosome parasites and their tsetse fly hosts, showing the effect of symbiotic interactions on successful parasite establishment following

W. Takken and C.J.M. Koenraadt (eds.), *Ecology of parasite-vector interactions*, Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases 3, DOI 10.3920/978-90-8686-744-8_1, © Wageningen Academic Publishers 2013

an infectious blood meal, as well as parasite multiplication and passage to the salivary gland (Aksoy and Rio 2005). These advances affect not only the true parasite-vector interactions, but also those involving true pathogens such as viruses, bacteria and fungi. Recent studies demonstrated the role of cellular mechanisms of *Ixodes ricinus* (L.) ticks (Acari: Ixodidae) in the establishment and subsequent multiplication of *Borrelia burgdorferi* spp. in the tick host (Schuijt *et al.* 2011), or of the impact of the mosquito host on the replication of dengue virus (Sim and Dimopoulos 2010). New insights about parasite-host interactions are not limited to direct interactions at the dual level of parasite and arthropod host, but also about environmental factors such as temperature, humidity and symbionts. For example, it was recently shown that daily temperature fluctuations greatly affect the transmission of *Plasmodium* (Chapter 5, Paaijmans *et al.* 2012) as well as dengue virus (Lambrechts *et al.* 2011) by their respective mosquito vectors. The relevant role of endosymbionts in the regulation of parasite-vector interactions is becoming increasingly realized, especially as the symbionts not only provide essential nutrients to the arthropod host, but also affect immune responses as well as the fitness of the parasite (Chapter 2, Hughes *et al.* 2011, McMeniman *et al.* 2009, Pinto *et al.* 2012). Recently, it was discovered that *Chromobacterium* spp. present in the midgut of mosquitoes possibly release anti-pathogenic agents that kill *Plasmodium* parasites as well as dengue virus (G. Dimopoulos, personal communication) and it is likely that microbial-vector interactions affect the successful establishment of parasites in the vector in ways that are not yet understood.

These examples are only a fraction of the vast amount of knowledge on parasite-vector interactions that has emerged in recent years. Such knowledge is likely to affect our understanding of vector-borne disease epidemiology, and can potentially be used for more effective interventions aimed at the control of vector-borne diseases. The revelation of malaria hot spots (Chapter 11, Bousema *et al.* 2012)) was only made possible through these advancements and provides new opportunities for more effective, targeted malaria control. The insertion of *Wolbachia pipientis* Hertig in *Aedes aegypti* (L.) has revealed a novel implementation of endosymbionts for the control of dengue virus (Frentiu *et al.* 2010) and will shortly be tested in dengue-endemic areas (S. O'Neill, personal communication).

The chapters in this third volume of ECVD highlight current advances in research on parasite-vector interactions, and provide proof that such advances are essential for the improvement of current disease control strategies. With the rapid advancement of insecticide resistance against malaria vectors (Asidi *et al.* 2012, Ranson *et al.* 2011) coupled with increasing drug resistance and the apparent spread of vector-borne diseases associated with environmental change (see Takken and Knols 2007), effective tools for vector-borne disease control are urgently needed, and studies that lead to better understanding of parasite-vector interactions will contribute to achieve that goal.

References

Aksoy S and Rio RV (2005) Interactions among multiple genomes: tsetse, its symbionts and trypanosomes. Insect Biochem Mol Biol 35: 691-698.

Asidi A, N'Guessan R, Akogbeto M, Curtis C and Rowland M (2012) Loss of household protection from use of insecticice-treated nets against pyrethroid-resistant mosquitoes, Benin. Emerg Infect Dis 18: 1101-1106.

Bousema T, Griffin JT, Sauerwein RW, Smith DL, Churcher TS, Takken W, Ghani A, Drakeley C and Gosling R (2012) Hitting hotspots: spatial targeting of malaria for control and elimination. PLoS Med 9: 1165-1165.

Cirimotich CM, Dong Y, Garver LS, Sim S and Dimopoulos G (2010) Mosquito immune defenses against *Plasmodium* infection. Dev Comp Immunol 34: 387-395.

Frentiu FD, Robinson J, Young PR, McGraw EA and O'Neill SL (2010) *Wolbachia*-mediated resistance to dengue virus infection and death at the cellular level. PLoS One 5.

Hughes GL, Koga R, Xue P, Fukatsu T and Rasgon JL (2011) *Wolbachia* infections are virulent and inhibit the human malaria parasite *Plasmodium falciparum* in *Anopheles gambiae*. PLoS Pathog 7: 2043-2043.

Hurd H (1990) Physiological and behavioural interactions between parasites and invertebrate hosts. Adv Parasitol 29: 271-318.

Lambrechts L, Paaijmans KP, Fansiri T, Carrington LB, Kramer LD, Thomas MB and Scott TW (2011) Impact of daily temperature fluctuations on dengue virus transmission by *Aedes aegypti*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 108: 7460-7465.

McMeniman CJ, Lane RV, Cass BN, Fong AW, Sidhu M, Wang YF and O'Neill SL (2009) Stable introduction of a life-shortening *Wolbachia* infection into the mosquito *Aedes aegypti*. Science 323: 141-144.

Paaijmans KP, Blanford S, Chan BHK and Thomas MB (2012) Warmer temperatures reduce the vectorial capacity of malaria mosquitoes. Biol Lett 8: 465-468.

Pinto SB, Mariconti M, Bazzocchi C, Bandi C and Sinkins SP (2012) *Wolbachia* surface protein induces innate immune responses in mosquito cells. BMC Microbiol 12 (Suppl. 1): S11.

Ranson H, N'Guessan R, Lines J, Moiroux N, Nkuni Z and Corbel V (2011) Pyrethroid resistance in African anopheline mosquitoes: what are the implications for malaria control? Trends Parasitol 27: 91-98.

Schneider P, Bousema JT, Gouagna LC, Otieno S, Van de Vegte-Bolmer M, Omar SA and Sauerwein RW (2007) Submicroscopic *Plasmodium falciparum* gametocyte densities frequently result in mosquito infection. Am J Trop Med Hyg 76: 470-474.

Schuijt TJ, Hovius JW, Van der Poll T, Van Dam AP and Fikrig E (2011) Lyme borreliosis vaccination: the facts, the challenge, the future. Trends Parasitol 27: 40-47.

Sim S and Dimopoulos G (2010) Dengue virus inhibits immune responses in *Aedes aegypti* cells. PLoS One 5: 1-9.

Sim S, Ramirez JL and Dimopoulos G (2009) Molecular discrimination of mosquito vectors and their pathogens. Expert Rev Mol Diagn 9: 757-765.

Takken W and Knols BGJ (eds.) (2007) Emerging pests and vector-borne diseases in Europe. Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases, Volume 1. Wageningen Academic Publishers, Wageningen, the Netherlands.

Valkiunas G, Iezhova TA, Krizanauskiene A, Palinauskas V, Sehgal RNM and Bensch S (2008) A comparative analysis of microscopy and pcr-based detection methods for blood parasites. J Parasitol 94: 1395-1401.

Fundamental aspects of vector-parasite interactions

2. Impact of transgenic immune deployment on mosquito fitness

Andrew D. Pike, Chris M. Cirimotich and George Dimopoulos

Abstract

Mosquitoes are the vectors of pathogens causing numerous human diseases, including dengue and malaria. Due to increases in drug resistance among pathogens or the lack of effective treatments for these diseases and increasing insecticide resistance among mosquito populations, new methods of control are urgently needed to limit the morbidity and mortality caused by vector-borne diseases. Mosquitoes possess an innate immune system capable of limiting infection with human pathogens, and the creation and deployment of transgenic mosquitoes with an enhanced immune system has been suggested as a novel means to reduce mosquito vector competence. However, activation of the immune system is often associated with a cost to the host, which could limit the ability of the transgenic insects to replace their wild-type conspecifics. Here, we discuss recent research into the effects of increased immune deployment and insect transgenesis on the fitness of the mosquitoes.

Keywords: insect transgenesis, fitness, innate immunity, vector-borne disease, vectorial capacity, *Drosophila*, *Anopheles*

Introduction

Mosquitoes serve as vectors for numerous viral, filarial and protozoan pathogens of great public health importance in both humans and other animals. Principal among these agents are the *Plasmodium* parasites responsible for malaria and the viruses responsible for dengue fever and dengue haemorrhagic fever/dengue shock syndrome. Mosquitoes become infected with these pathogens when acquiring a blood meal from an infected vertebrate host and, following an incubation period during which the pathogen develops or replicates within the vector mosquito, they transmit the pathogens to a susceptible host during a subsequent blood meal.

Many factors contribute to the ability of a mosquito to successfully transmit a pathogen and to the efficiency of disease transmission, referred to as the vectorial capacity. The inherent capability of a mosquito to transmit the pathogen, or vector competence, is determined by genetic components of the mosquito and pathogen as well as by environmental components, including temperature. Other variables involved in vectorial capacity include the vector population density, the extrinsic incubation period required for vectors to become infectious and the daily survival rate of competent vectors. A mathematical model of vectorial capacity was first described by Ross (1911) and later refined by MacDonald (1957) and Smith and MacKenzie (2004). The full equation is given by

$$C = \frac{\beta m a^2 p^n}{-\ln p},$$

where C is the vectorial capacity, β is the vector competence, m is the density of the vector population, a is the daily biting rate, n is the extrinsic incubation period of the pathogen and p is the daily survival rate. A change in any one of these variables can greatly affect the overall vectorial capacity for a specific pathogen and alter the persistence of the disease.

W. Takken and C.J.M. Koenraadt (eds.), *Ecology of parasite-vector interactions*, Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases 3, DOI 10.3920/978-90-8686-744-8_2, © Wageningen Academic Publishers 2013

The advent of molecular biology, genomics and functional genomics has provided unprecedented opportunities to elucidate the complex interactions that take place between the mosquito vector and the pathogens it transmits. These technologies have led to significant advances in our understanding of how the mosquito's innate immune system is actively involved in killing large fractions of these human pathogens, sometimes rendering the mosquito vector completely refractory to infection. The progress made in basic research, together with the development of mosquito transgenic methodologies, has opened the way for the development of novel disease control strategies that are based on blocking pathogen transmission in genetically modified immune-enhanced mosquitoes. However, despite the ongoing development of powerful genetic drive systems, a potential bottleneck in the course of successful deployment of genetically modified pathogen-immune mosquitoes is the possible impact of the immune transgene on mosquito fitness. This chapter will address our current understanding of the interactions between the insect immune system and the organism's fitness and how that interplay might influence the use of genetically modified pathogen-immune mosquitoes for vector-borne disease control.

The mosquito innate immune system

Infection of a mosquito with a parasite or virus has a profound effect on the transcriptional repertoire of the mosquito. Hundreds of genes are regulated and implicated during infection, especially those encoding factors involved in the mosquito innate immune response (Dong *et al.* 2006, Xi *et al.* 2008). Mosquito genetics play a crucial role in vector competence, and especially in the inherent ability of the mosquito to mount an effective neutralizing immune response against the invading pathogen. Unlike humans and other mammals, mosquitoes do not have genes for the production of antibodies and other molecules of the adaptive immune response. Instead, the mosquito's innate immune system directly responds to and combats pathogens upon challenge. Pattern recognition receptors (PRRs) on the surface of immune-competent cells, or circulating in the haemolymph, bind to specific pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs), triggering a series of reactions that culminate in the expression of anti-pathogen effector molecules. The ultimate result of immune pathway activation is an up-regulation of specific gene expression that is PAMP- and pathway-dependent. These immune effector genes form an important line of defence for the mosquito against a variety of invading pathogens. PRRs can also directly activate immune defence mechanisms such as phagocytosis and complement-like killing mechanisms, independent of the intracellular immune signalling pathways.

Various cellular and humoral factors in the mosquito haemolymph play a significant role in the response to microbial challenge. Circulating immune-competent cells, known as haemocytes, phagocytose and encapsulate foreign particles and pathogens. Simultaneously, serine protease cascades activate enzymes that generate melanin and free radicals, which are responsible for killing microbes during humoral responses. These effectors create a series of barriers that a pathogen must surmount before the mosquito becomes infectious, and an increase in any of these anti-pathogen factors can greatly reduce the vector competence of the mosquito.

A number of immune signalling pathways regulate anti-pathogen immunity in mosquitoes. With the advent of whole-genome sequencing projects over the past decade (Holt *et al.* 2002, Nene *et al.* 2007), the three major known immune signalling pathways (Toll, IMD, and Jak/Stat) that were originally described in *Drosophila* or mammals have been identified through orthology in mosquitoes (Christophides *et al.* 2001).

The Toll pathway has been implicated in the mosquito defence against fungal, bacterial, parasitic and viral infections (Antonova *et al.* 2009, Shin *et al.* 2005, Xi *et al.* 2008). PAMP recognition by Toll pathway PRRs is well documented, but the underlying mechanism is still unresolved. The *Drosophila* genome encodes two distinct Toll pathway-regulated transcription factors, *Dif* and *Dorsal*, which mediate immune and developmental gene expression, respectively. The *Aedes aegypti* (L.) genome also encodes two distinct Toll pathway transcription factors (REL1A and REL1B), while the *Anopheles gambiae* Giles genome encodes a single factor (REL1/GAMBIF1) (Barillas-Mury *et al.* 1996, Shin *et al.* 2002).

It has been shown through transient activation of the Toll pathway via silencing of the negative regulator *cactus* that Rel1-transcribed effector molecules are critical for the *Ae. aegypti* defence against dengue viruses (Ramirez and Dimopoulos 2010, Xi *et al.* 2008) and the *An. gambiae* defence against rodent malaria parasites (Frolet *et al.* 2006, Garver *et al.* 2009, Meister *et al.* 2005, Zou *et al.* 2008). Frolet *et al.* (2006) and Garver *et al.* (2009) used this transient immune stimulation to show that Toll pathway activation decreases the *Plasmodium berghei* parasite burden, whereas depletion of the Rel1 transcription factor increases infection levels in mosquito midguts. Frolet *et al.* (2006) suggest that Toll pathway-regulated effector molecules are constantly in circulation and can immediately attack an invading pathogen. Transcriptional activation subsequent to pathogen challenge is then used to replenish molecules used during the initial insult (Frolet *et al.* 2006). However, Toll pathway-mediated killing of parasites may not be relevant to all parasite species. *P. berghei* infection of *An. gambiae*, *Anopheles stephensi* Liston and *Anopheles albimanus* Wiedemman, as well as *Plasmodium gallinaceum* Brumpt infection of *Ae. aegypti* appear to be controlled through Toll pathway activation, while *Plasmodium falciparum* infection of various anopheline mosquitoes is affected to a lesser degree by the Toll pathway (Garver *et al.* 2009, Zou *et al.* 2008).

Initiation of signalling through a second innate immune pathway, the immune deficiency (IMD) pathway, protects mosquitoes from infection with *Plasmodium*, especially the human malaria parasite *P. falciparum* (Dong *et al.* 2011, Garver *et al.* 2009, Meister *et al.* 2005, 2009, Mitri *et al.* 2009). Signalling events within this pathway culminate in the expression of various effector genes mediated by the Rel2 transcription factor. Basal levels of IMD pathway-mediated gene expression are constantly regulated by a shortened splice variant of Rel2, while the full-length isoform is continuously present in the cell cytoplasm, but inactive until immune stimulation occurs (Luna *et al.* 2006, Meister *et al.* 2005). Pathway activation stimulates the cleavage of the full-length isoform, exposing the nuclear localization signal and causing nuclear translocation of the transcription factor and a subsequent increase in the transcription of immune effectors. Garver *et al.* (2009) used transient depletion of the negative regulator *caspar*, and Dong *et al.* (2011) used transgenic over expression of Rel2, to show that induction of the IMD pathway renders mosquitoes nearly refractory to *P. falciparum* infection. Interestingly, both the Toll and IMD pathways are mosquito species-independent, in that multiple mosquito species use the same pathways to combat pathogens, but are *Plasmodium* species-dependent.

The third major immune pathway, the Jak/Stat pathway, is named for the kinases (Jak) and transcription factors (STAT) that control its activation. The pathway has antiviral activity in *Ae. aegypti* (Souza-Neto *et al.* 2009) and can control *Anopheles-Plasmodium* interactions during the later stages of infection (Gupta *et al.* 2009). Interestingly, in contrast to *An. gambiae*, the *Ae. aegypti* Jak/Stat pathway also controls *P. gallinaceum* infection at the early pre-oocyst stages (Zou *et al.* 2011). Two STAT transcription factors, STAT-A and STAT-B, have been identified in *An. gambiae*, while only one STAT is present in *Ae. aegypti*. In *An. gambiae*, STAT-B modulates the transcription of STAT-A, the ancestral transcription factor and predominant form in adult mosquitoes. Translocation

of STAT-A to the nucleus leads to up-regulation of anti-pathogen effector molecule expression. In experiments similar to those described above for the Toll and IMD pathways, activation of the Jak/STAT pathway via depletion of the negative regulator *SOCS* decreases the density of *P. berghei* late oocysts, indicating that the pathway is important for anti-*Plasmodium* responses in *Anopheles* malaria vectors (Gupta *et al.* 2009).

Activation of any innate immune pathway leads to an increase in the production of various anti-pathogen molecules. A large number of anti-*Plasmodium* effector molecules have been identified, including leucine-rich repeat domain-containing proteins, fibrinogen-related proteins, C-type lectins, and others (reviewed in Cirimotich *et al.* 2010). Of particular interest is the thioester-containing protein TEP1, which has been shown to be crucial for mosquito defence against *Plasmodium* parasites (Levashina *et al.* 2001). TEP1, a homolog to the vertebrate complement system molecule C3, is constitutively secreted by haemocytes into the mosquito haemolymph, allowing it to interact with pathogens soon after they infect the mosquito (Levashina *et al.* 2001). Once a pathogen is detected, TEP1 binds to the surface of the invading microbe and promotes phagocytosis and, therefore, clearance of the intruder (Moita *et al.* 2005). TEP1 expression is induced in response to both Toll and IMD pathway activation, reflecting the molecule's importance in mosquito innate immune responses (Blandin *et al.* 2004, Garver *et al.* 2009, Levashina *et al.* 2001).

The dissection of the mosquito immune response to human pathogens has led to the discovery of immune pathway factors and downstream anti-pathogen effectors that can potentially be used to render the mosquito resistant to these infections through transgenic tissue- and infection stage-specific over-expression.

Mosquito transgenesis

The introduction of novel genetic elements into mosquito genomes has become a powerful approach for the study of mosquito immunity and has the potential to be used for future control of mosquito populations and to reduce the vectorial capacity of mosquitoes for human pathogens. In transgenesis, a mobile DNA element is used to introduce a gene of interest into the mosquito germline. This gene of interest is placed under the control of a specific promoter, which determines the tissue specificity and temporal expression of the transgene making it possible to express the gene with temporal and spatial specificity, or only when induced and only in certain tissues. Tools and methodologies for the genetic modification of *Anopheles* and *Aedes* mosquitoes have been developed and widely used to study various aspects of the vectors' biology. Successful transformation of mosquitoes was first achieved in *Ae. aegypti* (Coates *et al.* 1998, Jasinskiene *et al.* 1998) and soon followed by *An. stephensi* (Catteruccia *et al.* 2000), *An. gambiae* (Grossman *et al.* 2001) and *An. albimanus* (Perera *et al.* 2002), leading to the creation of many different strains of transgenic mosquitoes in each of these species.

In *Aedes* mosquitoes, transgenesis has been successfully used to identify Rel1-driven gene expression as a major component of anti-fungal immunity (Bian *et al.* 2005). It has also been used to show that Rel2-driven gene expression provides a defense against systemic bacterial challenge and *P. gallinaceum* infection (Antonova *et al.* 2009, Shin *et al.* 2003) and that RNA interference is crucial for antiviral defence (Khoo *et al.* 2010). Transgenesis has been utilized to study the innate immune pathways of *Anopheles* mosquitoes as well, and to express heterologous genes for the purpose of altering vector competence in both *Aedes* and *Anopheles* mosquitoes (reviewed in Cirimotich *et al.* 2011, Dong *et al.* 2011).

In order to affect the mosquito's vectorial capacity for a given pathogen, transgene expression must be driven in a relevant tissue, for instance the midgut, and at the appropriate time, i.e. when the pathogen has invaded that particular tissue. Midgut-, fat body- and salivary gland-specific promoters have been utilized to decrease vector competence in transgenic mosquitoes (Dong *et al.* 2011, Franz *et al.* 2006, Isaacs *et al.* 2011, Mathur *et al.* 2010). Mating of separate transgenic lines may eventually be used as a strategy to induce transgene expression in a single mosquito at multiple time points and locations, increasing the chances that pathogen development will be negatively affected and minimizing the possibility that the pathogens will be able to evade the immune response.

The implementation of transgenic technologies that utilize the mosquito innate immune system to combat vector-borne disease can largely be achieved in three ways: (1) over-expression of a pathway activator, such as a NF-κB transcription factor, to turn on the expression of anti-pathogen molecules; (2) depletion of negative regulators of a pathway through the expression of a hairpin transgene, again activating that specific pathway; and (3) over-expression of immune genes/effector molecules that directly affect the pathogen. Each approach has advantages and disadvantages, but regardless of the mechanism, the end result is a less suitable host environment for pathogen development.

The first and third strategies have previously been used experimentally in both *Ae. aegypti* and *An. stephensi* to demonstrate that this principle may eventually be applied to the engineering of pathogen-resistant mosquito populations (Antonova *et al.* 2009, Dong *et al.* 2011, Kokoza *et al.* 2010). As mentioned above, Rel2 has been over-expressed in *Ae. aegypti* in order to impede the development of *P. gallinaceum* parasites (Antonova et al, 2009). When Rel2 is expressed under the control of the vitellogenin promoter, which is inducible in the fat body of the mosquito upon blood-feeding, the transcription of a number of antimicrobial peptides (AMPs) is induced. These transgenic mosquitoes are more resistant than non-engineered mosquitoes to the establishment of *P. gallinaceum* infection in the midgut and sporozoite production in the haemolymph (Antonova *et al.* 2009). In follow-up studies, Kokoza *et al.* (2010) engineered *Ae. aegypti* mosquitoes to over-express the AMP genes *cecropin A* and *defensin A* directly, rather than inducing the entire Rel2-mediated pathway. Separate transgenic mosquito lines were engineered to induce either AMP gene singly or both together under the control of the vitellogenin promoter. Regardless of the configuration, transgenic expression of these genes decreased parasite development and completely abolished the vectorial capacity of the mosquitoes for parasite transmission, as measured by sporozoite production (Kokoza *et al.* 2010). Similar strategies have also been pursued in *An. stephensi* mosquitoes. Dong *et al.* (2011) created *An. stephensi* that overexpress Rel2 under the control of both the carboxypeptidase and vitellogenin promoters, leading to an increase in the ability of the mosquitoes to fight off both *Plasmodium* and bacterial infections.

Although candidate molecules exist for the development of mosquito refractoriness to various pathogens, the eventual release of genetically modified mosquitoes into the environment must coincide with the development of effective drive mechanisms to force the spread of the transgene into the native mosquito populations. The drive mechanism must have the power to drive the transgene to near-fixation in the native population and be sufficiently well-linked to the transgene to avoid separation from it. The current list of potential drive mechanisms includes transposable elements, homing endonuclease genes and the *Medea* system (reviewed in Cirimotich *et al.* 2011). The ability of a transgene to spread within mosquito populations will also be significantly affected by any fitness cost associated with transgene integration and expression.

Impact of insect immune system activation on its fitness

Although the immune system is vital to fighting off infection by various invading pathogens, long-term or constitutive over-expression of immune genes can negatively affect the host. This situation has been best described in autoimmune diseases of mammals, but it also occurs with the innate immune system of insects (DeVeale *et al.* 2004). Similarly, transgenic expression of heterologous genes or over-expression of endogenous genes can engender various fitness costs if the endogenous gene expression is interrupted or maintenance of transgene expression requires the use of necessary resources (Marrelli *et al.* 2006). In order to utilize transgenesis as a control mechanism for vector-borne disease in mosquitoes, the fitness effects of both the innate immune response to pathogens and the specific transgene expression must be assessed and understood. This will allow the creation of transgenic refractory vectors that can successfully compete with wild-type conspecifics and invade the natural population.

Fitness, most commonly indicated by the net reproductive rate, is considered to be the sum of many complex interactions that make it possible for an organism to reproduce. The two main components of fitness are lifespan and fecundity, or the ability to produce offspring successfully (Marrelli *et al.* 2006). Lifespan, or the length of time a disease vector is able to survive in its environment, is important because it determines the number of times an individual will be able to reproduce, whether the pathogen will have sufficient time to develop into an infectious stage and, finally, whether that individual is able to feed multiple times on blood in order to transmit the pathogen from one host to another. Daily survival is a particularly important component of vectorial capacity, since a vector that dies before the end of the pathogen's incubation period will be unable to transmit the pathogen. The significance of survival time is reflected in the fact that the daily survival rate is an exponential term in the vectorial capacity equation, indicating that even small changes in survival can lead to large changes in vectorial capacity for any pathogen transmitted by the mosquito (MacDonald 1957). Fecundity, usually measured by the number of viable offspring produced by an individual, is determined by both the number of times an organism is able to reproduce and the number of offspring that are produced during each reproductive cycle. If the fecundity and lifespan of a mosquito species decrease, the vectorial capacity will also be reduced, since the density of the vector will be reduced, and so will the chance that the mosquito will bite people. Both of these parameters are, in turn, affected by a large number of other factors, including the mosquito's ability to avoid predators, combat disease and allocate energetic resources.

Given the limited nutritional resources available to an organism during its life, an increase in the use of energy reserves for one purpose must lead to the reallocation of those resources from another area of activity. For instance, if an insect starts over-expressing certain immune effector genes in response to infection, or as a result of transgenesis, the raw materials and energy used to make those immune-related proteins must come from some other area. Similarly, if the insect has *X* arbitrary units of energy to use to produce all the proteins it needs to survive and reproduce, creating new proteins will utilize more of this energy. If the induction of the immune system causes more than *X* energy units to be used, the energy must be taken from that previously used to produce other proteins. This reallocation of resources could lead to a decrease in the ability of the insect to reproduce or a reduction in its lifespan, rendering it 'less fit' than an insect without immune activation. Infection of *Drosophila* as well as mosquitoes has been shown to alter the expression of hundreds of genes with diverse functions, indicating that the effects of infection are wide-ranging and not limited to immune deployment (Aguilar *et al.* 2005, De Gregorio *et al.* 2001, Dong *et al.* 2009). Because the factors that define fitness are only loosely defined, and because

the widespread effects of immune deployment have not yet been fully described, the effects of an increase in insect immune gene expression on fitness are difficult to predict.

Numerous studies have measured the effects of *Drosophila* immune activation on fly longevity. Many of these studies have been conducted by injecting wild-type and transgenic flies with various types of bacteria and measuring the fecundity or lifespan of the fly after infection. A negative effect of immune induction on fitness has generally been observed, suggesting a trade-off between fitness traits and the ability to deploy an effective immune response. For instance, wild-type flies infected with *Escherichia coli* Castellani and Chalmers or *Micrococcus luteus* (Schroeter) Cohn at various ages laid fewer eggs than their uninfected conspecifics, and interruption of the immune response by mutation of the genes *relish* and *imd-1*, components of the Toll and IMD pathways, respectively, alleviated these costs (Zerofsky *et al.* 2005). These findings show that infection, together with the activation of the immune system, can decrease a female fly's ability to reproduce. Induction of the Toll pathway also leads to a reallocation of resources in the fat body, suggesting a mechanism for this fitness cost and supporting the trade-off between immunity and reproduction (DiAngelo *et al.* 2009). These negative effects are significantly increased in food-limited environments, again adding support to the hypothesis of an energetic exchange between immune response and fitness. When flies were infected with the Gram-negative bacterium *Providencia rettgeri* Brenner, those provided with unlimited food exhibited no negative fitness effects of infection, while those with a limited food supply showed an inverse correlation between resistance and fecundity (McKean *et al.* 2008). Similarly, infection of wild-type flies with *Serratia marcescens* Bizio resulted in significantly reduced lifespans in both male and female flies, but only female flies experienced a decrease in fecundity, despite equivalent bacterial loads (Imroze and Prasad 2011). While the increase in mortality was the same in both sexes, the lack of an effect on male fecundity implies that the cost of infection and immune deployment depend on other energy expenditures. Because male flies require comparatively less energy to mate with females, there may be less of an effect on their fecundity than in females, which must invest a greater amount of energy into production of eggs. However, males must also spend a significant amount of energy on attracting a mate and may experience more mating competition, and several studies have observed that infection has a greater effect on the lifespan of males than females, and that the extent of this effect is dependent on the relative availability of food resources (Bedhomme *et al.* 2004, Sharmila Bharathi *et al.* 2007).

Another study has shown that an increase in the sexual activity of a male fly is correlated with a decrease in the ability to fight off infection, again indicating a fitness cost of the immune activation (McKean and Nunney 2001). Males housed with a greater number of virgin females were less able to clear *E. coli* infections than were males exposed to fewer females. The authors suggest that this decrease in the ability to fight off an infection is a result of the flies' spending energy on mating instead of the immune response, consistent with the hypothesis that there is a trade-off between immune activation and fly fitness (McKean and Nunney 2001). This effect is not limited to bacterial infections. Fly larvae that successfully survive infection with the parasitoid wasp *Acyrthosiphon pisum* Harris exhibit a reduction size and fecundity as adults, as well as an increased susceptibility to parasitoids during the pupal stage (Kraaijeveld *et al.* 2002). Infection of flies with various pathogens has therefore been observed to lead to a decrease in the adult flies' lifespan and ability to reproduce, and the authors cite immune activation as the reason for these fitness costs (Kraaijeveld *et al.* 2002). If these observed costs in fitness are exclusively the result of immune activation, and not other influences that the pathogen may exert on the fly, the use of immune activation to limit insect infection will be difficult or impossible, since these high fitness costs would preclude refractory flies' invasion and maintenance in nature.

However, these studies largely depend on (1) infection of the fly with various pathogens to initiate an immune response and (2) an attribution of any observed fitness effects to the immune deployment alone, ignoring the fact that the infectious agent may have a significant impact on biological processes of the host other than immune activity. In fact, the injection of high numbers of bacteria directly into the haemolymph of a fly, and any subsequent replication of these bacteria, is certain to have effects on the fly that far exceed simple immune induction. The bacteria will, for example, utilize fly resources for their own replication and may produce virulence factors that directly alter fly fitness, irrespective of immune activation. Also, this model of immune deployment leads to long-term, if not lifelong, immune activation, while transgenic insects can be designed to have only transient activation of an immune defence mechanism in a specific tissue compartment. To this end, another study investigated the effects of short-term immune activation mediated by the NF-κB transcription factor, controlled by the IMD pathway, using an inducible system in transgenic flies (Libert *et al.* 2006). In this system, long-term immune activation by constitutive over-expression of peptidoglycan recognition protein (PGRP-LE) in the fat body, that is known to activate the IMD pathway, led to a reduction in lifespan and a generally high fitness cost, as expected. However, when the IMD pathway was activated for only a few days at a time by PGRP-LE under the GeneSwitch-inducible GAL4 system and feeding the flies on food supplemented with mifepristone (RU486), the lifespan and other fitness parameters was not reduced and the flies behaved normally, as assessed by measuring their heat tolerance, geotaxis and reproductive ability. Also, contrary to the previous infection-based assays of *Drosophila* fitness, flies with transiently activated immune responses survived significantly longer after infection with *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* Migula than their conspecifics lacking immune up-regulation (Libert *et al.* 2006). This result indicates that much of the negative fitness effect observed in the previously mentioned studies was likely due to the presence of the bacteria and a long-term immune activation, and not a transient transgenic immune response. If there were a cost to simply activating the immune system on a short time scale, flies with the inducible PGRP-LE would display a fitness cost similar to that of flies with constitutive expression, and they would not exhibit an increased lifespan after infection with various bacteria. Therefore, while immune activation certainly can lead to manifold negative fitness effects, there is also evidence that tissue-specific, short-term immune deployment is not detrimental to the insect's lifespan and may lead to a fitness advantage under certain conditions of infection.

Impact of immune response and transgene expression on mosquito fitness

While most research into the evolutionary costs of increased immune deployment has been performed in *Drosophila*, the results are only as relevant as the model organism employed: while *Drosophila* serves as a valuable genetic model, there are many differences between flies and important disease vectors. The fact that mosquitoes and other vectors of human disease are haematophagous adds a new dimension of complexity to their fitness, given that a blood meal may provide sufficient nutrients to make up for any reallocation of resources for the purpose of producing immune effectors. Conversely, the acquisition and digestion of a blood meal both require significant energy expenditure, given the challenge of finding a suitable host, breaking down the blood proteins to useable units and dealing with the many toxic compounds produced during blood digestion, such as heme and reactive oxygen species (Zhou *et al.* 2007). This necessary energy usage may only compound any energy shortages caused by immune deployment, again leading to a complex and somewhat unpredictable set of interactions that will affect the fitness of mosquitoes that are found or created to be refractory to disease transmission.

There is, however, evidence of a potential effect of immune activation on mosquito fitness, similar to that observed in *Drosophila*. A number of studies have indicated that infection of *Anopheles* mosquitoes with *Plasmodium* parasites reduces the lifespan and reproductive output of the mosquitoes (Anderson *et al.* 2000, Hogg and Hurd 1995). *Ae. aegypti* adults selected to be resistant to *P. gallinaceum* are significantly smaller, lay fewer eggs, and have shorter lifespans than susceptible conspecifics (Yan *et al.* 1997). These differences are not unexpected, given that similar results have been observed in *Drosophila* and because there is significant conservation between the *Drosophila* and mosquito immune systems (Christophides *et al.* 2002). Conversely, male *An. gambiae* from a line selected for increased melanotic encapsulation of *Plasmodium yoelii* show an increase in fecundity, as measured by the number of offspring born to their mates (Voordouw *et al.* 2008). Similarly, Dong *et al.* (2011) observed that transgenic mosquitoes that over-express the Rel2 transgene upon induction of the carboxypeptidase promoter following a bloodmeal have no reduction in longevity when fed only on sugar. Mosquitoes provided with a naïve blood meal likewise showed no reduction in longevity, while mosquitoes fed upon *P. falciparum* infected blood exhibited a minor reduction in lifespan, as well as a modest reduction in the number of eggs laid (Dong *et al.* 2011). These studies, taken together, show that an increased immune activity in mosquitoes may have disparate fitness effects, depending on the host-pathogen system, and that not all effects are negative. Also, careful measurement of the fitness costs imposed on the mosquito by both infection with *P. yoelii* and resistance showed that increased melanotic encapsulation of parasites has the same cost; both in terms of lifespan reduction and egg hatch rate (Hurd *et al.* 2005). Thus, a moderate fitness cost resulting from increased immune activation may be acceptable, since it will simply offset the fitness cost of infection.

In addition to any fitness effects caused by immune activation in mosquitoes, there may be effects related to genetic manipulation itself (Marrelli *et al.* 2006). Transgenesis allows the introduction of novel genes that can lead to refractoriness and also allows transient immune activation instead of constitutive up-regulation, which can limit any negative effects of immune over-expression, as discussed above. However, the creation of transgenic mosquitoes can carry with it an inherent cost to the transformed insect. Genetically modified mosquitoes made to constitutively express a green fluorescent protein after insertion with the *piggybac* transposable element have a competitive disadvantage when compared to both wild-type and inbred, but not transgenic, mosquitoes when reared together (Koenraadt *et al.* 2010). The negative effects of transgenesis were only compounded when limited food resources are provided and the adult transgenic mosquitoes have fewer energy reserves available. Thus, exogenous gene expression utilizes energy that would otherwise be used for development (Koenraadt *et al.* 2010). In a separate study, Amenya *et al.* (2010) created mosquitoes expressing an enhanced cyan fluorescent protein inserted into an *attP* docking site and saw no decrease in transgenic mosquito lifespan or fecundity (Amenya *et al.* 2010). Use of an *attP* docking site takes advantage of the site-specific integration of the φC31 integrase to insert transgenes into a known chromosomal location (Nimmo *et al.* 2006). By doing so, different transgenic lines can be created with the gene of interest inserted into a position with known fitness effect, allowing both minimization of negative fitness effects and the measurement and comparison of the effects of different transgenes on fitness independent of effects due directly to insertion. Li *et al.* (2008) observed no measurable effect on the adult survivorship, egg hatch rate or larval-to-pupal viability in *An. stephensi* mosquitoes that express the exogenous peptide SM1 under the carboxypeptidase promoter. However, during the same study, when the authors kept cages containing both transgenic and wild-type mosquitoes for multiple generations, they noticed that the frequency of genetically modified mosquitoes decreased over time. They attributed this effect to a lower reproductive capability of the transgenic mosquitoes or a negative consequence of the insertional mutagenesis, and not the expression of the transgene (Li *et al.* 2008). The same

group also observed that the transgenic mosquito line expressing SM1 has a fitness advantage over wild-type conspecifics upon infection with *P. berghei* (Marelli *et al.* 2007). This effect was seen not only in the form of a higher fecundity and longer lifespan in one generation, but also in the gradual replacement of wild-type mosquitoes by the genetically modified mosquitoes over multiple generations when fed on *P. berghei*-infected mice, but not when fed on uninfected mice (Marrelli *et al.* 2007). Taken together, these studies show that any effects of transgenesis on the mosquitoes will depend on the environment in which the mosquitoes live. These types of effects can be avoided by selection of the most fit transgenic lines after many have been created; however, if the effects are only slight reductions in lifespan or fecundity, they may not be noticed during the selection process. New methods of transgenesis that allow site-specific integration of the transgenes have recently been developed, allowing the selection of the insertion location and minimization of gene disruption (Amenya *et al.* 2010, Labbe *et al.* 2010, Meredith *et al.* 2011). However, it is more likely that any transgene introduced into the mosquito will lead to effects that reflect a reallocation of resources to producing the transgene, as previously described for immune activation. Also, an inserted gene may have more widely ranging effects than initially predicted, potentially leading to greater resource use or significant changes in gene expression. For instance, if an inducible transgene that affects both immune and developmental functions is introduced, the result may be a differential expression of numerous genes beyond the initially targeted immune genes, and therefore widespread effects on the mosquito and a greater fitness cost. Such effects, however, can be minimized by carefully selecting the gene to be introduced, expressing it in a highly tissue- and stage-specific manner and creating multiple transgenic lines, then monitoring and selecting the line with the least observable effect on lifespan, fecundity and other fitness measures before the insects are released. When multiple transgenic lines with the same transgene are created through random integration, both the expression of the transgene and the effects of integration on other genes can vary greatly. This variability is the result of position effects, i.e. variability in the expression of a gene that is a consequence of its location on the chromosome, and therefore its relative proximity to other genes or regulatory elements that act on all genes within their reach (reviewed in Wilson *et al.* 1990). Furthermore, the effects of the transgene on neighbouring genes will vary greatly depending on its final location: whether it has interrupted a gene or a regulatory sequence, or the interactions between the two. Thanks to our extensive knowledge of these effects, careful design of transgene constructs and selection of transgenic strains can minimize these effects of transgenesis.

It is also important to note that a small decrease in the fitness of a vector as a result of increased immune deployment or transgenesis would not preclude using this system as a vector-borne disease control technique. As discussed above, the vectorial capacity of an insect vector depends on numerous factors, including both the vector competence and daily survivorship of the vector. Activation of a specific arm of the innate immune system so as to reduce the ability of the mosquito to transmit a pathogen is, in effect, decreasing the vector competence of the mosquito and producing a related decrease in vectorial capacity. However, a decrease in daily survivorship, such as one caused by a fitness cost associated with gene expression, will also decrease vectorial capacity. Likewise, a decrease in survivorship or in the number of eggs produced by each generation will lower the mosquito density relative to human hosts, yet another factor that can lead to an overall reduction in vectorial capacity. Overall, a slight compromise in mosquito fitness leading to decreased fecundity and lifespan can lead to a large decrease in vectorial capacity, especially if combined with an additional reduction in vector competence. However, any decreases in fitness must be limited in scope so that they do not prohibit the genetically-modified insect from invading the natural population and maintaining a normal population; otherwise, the modified mosquitoes will never reach high enough numbers to be a viable tool for vector control. Use of

strong gene drivers, such as homing endonucleases or *medea* elements, should be able to mitigate some of the fitness cost and still drive the genes of interest into the natural population (Walker and Moreira 2011, Windbichler *et al.* 2007, reviewed in Cirimotich *et al.* 2011). This goal can be met by increasing the probability that a gene will be spread to the mosquitoes' offspring or by giving mosquitoes bearing the gene driver a significant fitness advantage over those that lack the gene driver, such as by killing offspring that lack the driver. As long as the transgene being introduced into the mosquito population is linked to the gene driver, it will be carried with the driver, and the genetically modified mosquitoes will replace the wild-type population to a transgenic population.

Conclusions

Mounting a proper immune response when infected with a pathogen is integral to the survival of any organism, including insects. However, an overactive immune system can also cause damage to the host through inflammation and over-utilization of limited resources. Therefore, creating transgenic mosquitoes that over-express immune genes to combat vector-borne disease in the absence of a powerful genetic drive system may be difficult to implement in the real world. Multiple studies in *Drosophila*, as well as more limited evidence from other insect systems, have shown that long-term activation of the immune response brought about by infection with bacteria can lead to a decrease in lifespan and other common fitness measures. However, studies based on transient activation of the immune system have exhibited no such fitness cost, indicating that short-term expression of immune effectors may not have a negative effect on insect fitness and indicating that this approach may represent a viable technique for vector-borne disease control. Combining a gene for refractoriness with a gene drive mechanism, such as a homing endonuclease or the intracellular bacterium *Wolbachia*, will drive the refractoriness into the natural vector population, even if there is a small fitness cost (Walker and Moreira 2011, Windbichler *et al.* 2007). Also, a modest fitness cost attributed to life-span or reduction in the ability to obtain a second blood meal will decrease the vectorial capacity of the vector further than will a simple decrease in vector competence alone, by simultaneously lowering the vector density and limiting the daily survival rate. Therefore, while there may be some fitness cost associated with over-expression of immune genes, these negative effects can be limited by implementing only transient expression of the transgene in a tissue- and stage-specific manner, and connecting the gene for refractoriness to a strong gene driver, thereby generating mosquitoes over-expressing immune genes that represent viable agents for disease control.

References

Aguilar R, Jedlicka AE, Mintz M, Mahairaki V, Scott AL and Dimopoulos G (2005) Global gene expression analysis of *Anopheles gambiae* responses to microbial challenge. Insect Biochem Mol Biol 35: 709-719.

Amenya DA, Bonizzoni M, Isaacs AT, Jasinskiene N, Chen H, Marinotti O, Yan G and James AA (2010) Comparative fitness assessment of *Anopheles stephensi* transgenic lines receptive to site-specific integration. Insect Mol Biol 19: 263-269.

Anderson RA, Knols BG and Koella JC (2000) *Plasmodium falciparum* sporozoites increase feeding-associated mortality of their mosquito hosts *Anopheles gambiae* s.l. Parasitology 120: 329-333.

Antonova Y, Alvarez KS, Kim YJ, Kokoza V and Raikhel AS (2009) The role of NF-kappaB factor REL2 in the *Aedes aegypti* immune response. Insect Biochem Mol Biol 39: 303-314.

Barillas-Mury C, Charlesworth A, Gross I, Richman A, Hoffmann JA and Kafatos FC (1996) Immune factor Gambif1, a new rel family member from the human malaria vector, *Anopheles gambiae*. EMBO J 15: 4691-4701.

Bedhomme S, Agnew P, Sidobre C and Michalakis Y (2004) Virulence reaction norms across a food gradient. Proc Biol Sci 271: 739-744.

Bian G, Shin SW, Cheon HM, Kokoza V and Raikhel AS (2005) Transgenic alteration of Toll immune pathway in the female mosquito *Aedes aegypti*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 102: 13568-13573.

Blandin S, Shiao SH, Moita LF, Janse CJ, Waters AP, Kafatos FC and Levashina EA (2004) Complement-like protein TEP1 is a determinant of vectorial capacity in the malaria vector *Anopheles gambiae*. Cell 116: 661-670.

Catteruccia F, Nolan T, Loukeris TG, Blass C, Savakis C, Kafatos FC and Crisanti A (2000) Stable germline transformation of the malaria mosquito *Anopheles stephensi*. Nature 405: 959-962.

Christophides GK, Zdobnov E, Barillas-Mury C, Birney E, Blandin S, Blass C, Brey PT, Collins FH, Danielli A, Dimopoulos G, Hetru C, Hoa NT, Hoffmann JA, Kanzok SM, Letunic I, Levashina EA, Loukeris TG, Lycett G, Meister S, Michel K, Moita LF, Muller HM, Osta MA, Paskewitz SM, Reichhart JM, Rzhetsky A, Troxler L, Vernick KD, Vlachou D, Volz J, von Mering C, Xu J, Zheng L, Bork P and Kafatos FC (2002) Immunity-related genes and gene families in *Anopheles gambiae*. Science 298: 159-165.

Cirimotich CM, Clayton AM and Dimopoulos G (2011) Low- and high-tech approaches to control *Plasmodium* parasite transmission by *Anopheles* mosquitoes. J Trop Med 2011: 891342.

Cirimotich CM, Dong Y, Garver LS, Sim S and Dimopoulos G (2010) Mosquito immune defenses against *Plasmodium* infection. Dev Comp Immunol 34: 387-395.

Coates CJ, Jasinskiene N, Miyashiro L and James AA (1998) Mariner transposition and transformation of the yellow fever mosquito, *Aedes aegypti*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 95: 3748-3751.

De Gregorio E, Spellman PT, Rubin GM and Lemaitre B (2001) Genome-wide analysis of the *Drosophila* immune response by using oligonucleotide microarrays. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 98: 12590-12595.

DeVeale B, Brummel T and Seroude L (2004) Immunity and aging: the enemy within? Aging Cell 3: 195-208.

DiAngelo JR, Bland ML, Bambina S, Cherry S and Birnbaum MJ (2009) The immune response attenuates growth and nutrient storage in *Drosophila* by reducing insulin signaling. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 106: 20853-20858.

Dong Y, Aguilar R, Xi Z, Warr E, Mongin E and Dimopoulos G (2006) *Anopheles gambiae* immune responses to human and rodent *Plasmodium* parasite species. PLoS Pathog 2: e52.

Dong Y, Das S, Cirimotich C, Souza-Neto JA, McLean KJ and Dimopoulos G (2011) Engineered anopheles immunity to *Plasmodium* infection. PLoS Pathog 7: e1002458.

Dong Y, Manfredini F and Dimopoulos G (2009) Implication of the mosquito midgut microbiota in the defense against malaria parasites. PLoS Pathog 5: e1000423.

Franz AW, Sanchez-Vargas I, Adelman ZN, Blair CD, Beaty BJ, James AA and Olson KE (2006) Engineering RNA interference-based resistance to dengue virus type 2 in genetically modified *Aedes aegypti*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 103: 4198-4203.

Frolet C, Thoma M, Blandin S, Hoffmann JA and Levashina EA (2006) Boosting NF-kappaB-dependent basal immunity of *Anopheles gambiae* aborts development of *Plasmodium berghei*. Immunity 25: 677-685.

Garver LS, Dong Y and Dimopoulos G (2009) Caspar controls resistance to *Plasmodium falciparum* in diverse anopheline species. PLoS Pathog 5: e1000335.

Grossman GL, Rafferty CS, Clayton JR, Stevens TK, Mukabayire O and Benedict MQ (2001) Germline transformation of the malaria vector, *Anopheles gambiae,* with the piggyBac transposable element. Insect Mol Biol 10: 597-604.

Gupta L, Molina-Cruz A, Kumar S, Rodrigues J, Dixit R, Zamora RE and Barillas-Mury C (2009) The STAT pathway mediates late-phase immunity against *Plasmodium* in the mosquito *Anopheles gambiae*. Cell Host Microbe 5: 498-507.

Hogg JC and Hurd H (1995) *Plasmodium yoelii nigeriensis*: the effect of high and low intensity of infection upon the egg production and bloodmeal size of *Anopheles stephensi* during three gonotrophic cycles. Parasitology 111 (Pt 5): 555-562.

Holt RA, Subramanian GM, Halpern A, Sutton GG, Charlab R, Nusskern DR, Wincker P, Clark AG, Ribeiro JM, Wides R, Salzberg SL, Loftus B, Yandell M, Majoros WH, Rusch DB, Lai Z, Kraft CL, Abril JF, Anthouard V, Arensburger P, Atkinson PW, Baden H, de Berardinis V, Baldwin D, Benes V, Biedler J, Blass C, Bolanos R, Boscus D, Barnstead M, Cai S, Center A, Chaturverdi K, Christophides GK, Chrystal MA, Clamp M, Cravchik A, Curwen V, Dana A, Delcher A, Dew I, Evans CA, Flanigan M, Grundschober-Freimoser A, Friedli L, Gu Z, Guan P, Guigo R, Hillenmeyer ME, Hladun SL, Hogan JR, Hong YS, Hoover J, Jaillon O, Ke Z, Kodira C, Kokoza E, Koutsos A, Letunic I, Levitsky A, Liang Y, Lin JJ, Lobo NF, Lopez JR, Malek JA, McIntosh TC, Meister S, Miller J, Mobarry C, Mongin E, Murphy SD, O'Brochta DA,

Pfannkoch C, Qi R, Regier MA, Remington K, Shao H, Sharakhova MV, Sitter CD, Shetty J, Smith TJ, Strong R, Sun J, Thomasova D, Ton LQ, Topalis P, Tu Z, Unger MF, Walenz B, Wang A, Wang J, Wang M, Wang X, Woodford KJ, Wortman JR, Wu M, Yao A, Zdobnov EM, Zhang H, Zhao Q, Zhao S, Zhu SC, Zhimulev I, Coluzzi M, della Torre A, Roth CW, Louis C, Kalush F, Mural RJ, Myers EW, Adams MD, Smith HO, Broder S, Gardner MJ, Fraser CM, Birney E, Bork P, Brey PT, Venter JC, Weissenbach J, Kafatos FC, Collins FH and Hoffman SL (2002) The genome sequence of the malaria mosquito *Anopheles gambiae*. Science 298: 129-149.

Hurd H, Taylor PJ, Adams D, Underhill A and Eggleston P (2005) Evaluating the costs of mosquito resistance to malaria parasites. Evolution 59: 2560-2572.

Imroze K and Prasad NG (2011) Sex-specific effect of bacterial infection on components of adult fitness in *Drosophila melanogaster*. J Evol Biol Res 3: 79-86.

Isaacs AT, Li F, Jasinskiene N, Chen X, Nirmala X, Marinotti O, Vinetz JM and James AA (2011) Engineered resistance to *Plasmodium falciparum* development in transgenic *Anopheles stephensi*. PLoS Pathog 7: e1002017.

Jasinskiene N, Coates CJ, Benedict MQ, Cornel AJ, Rafferty CS, James AA and Collins FH (1998) Stable transformation of the yellow fever mosquito, *Aedes aegypti*, with the Hermes element from the housefly. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 95: 3743-3747.

Khoo CC, Piper J, Sanchez-Vargas I, Olson KE and Franz AW (2010) The RNA interference pathway affects midgut infection- and escape barriers for Sindbis virus in *Aedes aegypti*. BMC Microbiol 10: 130.

Koenraadt CJ, Kormaksson M and Harrington LC (2010) Effects of inbreeding and genetic modification on *Aedes aegypti* larval competition and adult energy reserves. Parasit Vectors 3: 92.

Kokoza V, Ahmed A, Woon Shin S, Okafor N, Zou Z and Raikhel AS (2010) Blocking of *Plasmodium* transmission by cooperative action of Cecropin A and Defensin A in transgenic *Aedes aegypti* mosquitoes. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 107: 8111-8116.

Kraaijeveld AR, Ferrari J and Godfray HC (2002) Costs of resistance in insect-parasite and insect-parasitoid interactions. Parasitology 125 Suppl: S71-82.

Labbe GM, Nimmo DD and Alphey L (2010) piggybac- and PhiC31-mediated genetic transformation of the Asian tiger mosquito, *Aedes albopictus* (Skuse). PLoS Negl Trop Dis 4: e788.

Levashina EA, Moita LF, Blandin S, Vriend G, Lagueux M and Kafatos FC (2001) Conserved role of a complement-like protein in phagocytosis revealed by dsRNA knockout in cultured cells of the mosquito, *Anopheles gambiae*. Cell 104: 709-718.

Li C, Marrelli MT, Yan G and Jacobs-Lorena M (2008) Fitness of transgenic *Anopheles stephensi* mosquitoes expressing the SM1 peptide under the control of a vitellogenin promoter. J Hered 99: 275-282.

Libert S, Chao Y, Chu X and Pletcher SD (2006) Trade-offs between longevity and pathogen resistance in *Drosophila melanogaster* are mediated by NFkappaB signaling. Aging Cell 5: 533-543.

Luna C, Hoa NT, Lin H, Zhang L, Nguyen HL, Kanzok SM and Zheng L (2006) Expression of immune responsive genes in cell lines from two different *Anopheline* species. Insect Mol Biol 15: 721-729.

MacDonald G (1957) The epidemiology and control of malaria. Oxford University Press, London, UK.

Marrelli MT, Li C, Rasgon JL and Jacobs-Lorena M (2007) Transgenic malaria-resistant mosquitoes have a fitness advantage when feeding on *Plasmodium*-infected blood. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 104: 5580-5583.

Marrelli MT, Moreira CK, Kelly D, Alphey L and Jacobs-Lorena M (2006) Mosquito transgenesis: what is the fitness cost? Trends Parasitol 22: 197-202.

Mathur G, Sanchez-Vargas I, Alvarez D, Olson KE, Marinotti O and James AA (2010) Transgene-mediated suppression of dengue viruses in the salivary glands of the yellow fever mosquito, *Aedes aegypti*. Insect Mol Biol 19: 753-763.

McKean KA and Nunney L (2001) Increased sexual activity reduces male immune function in *Drosophila melanogaster*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 98: 7904-7909.

McKean KA, Yourth CP, Lazzaro BP and Clark AG (2008) The evolutionary costs of immunological maintenance and deployment. BMC Evol Biol 8: 76.

Meister S, Agianian B, Turlure F, Relogio A, Morlais I, Kafatos FC and Christophides GK (2009) *Anopheles gambiae* PGRPLC-mediated defense against bacteria modulates infections with malaria parasites. PLoS Pathog 5: e1000542.

Meister S, Kanzok SM, Zheng XL, Luna C, Li TR, Hoa NT, Clayton JR, White KP, Kafatos FC, Christophides GK and Zheng L (2005) Immune signaling pathways regulating bacterial and malaria parasite infection of the mosquito *Anopheles gambiae*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 102: 11420-11425.

Meredith JM, Basu S, Nimmo DD, Larget-Thiery I, Warr EL, Underhill A, McArthur CC, Carter V, Hurd H, Bourgouin C and Eggleston P (2011) Site-specific integration and expression of an anti-malarial gene in transgenic *Anopheles gambiae* significantly reduces *Plasmodium* infections. PLoS ONE 6: e14587.

Mitri C, Jacques JC, Thiery I, Riehle MM, Xu J, Bischoff E, Morlais I, Nsango SE, Vernick KD and Bourgouin C (2009) Fine pathogen discrimination within the APL1 gene family protects *Anopheles gambiae* against human and rodent malaria species. PLoS Pathog 5: e1000576.

Moita LF, Wang-Sattler R, Michel K, Zimmermann T, Blandin S, Levashina EA and Kafatos FC (2005) *in vivo* identification of novel regulators and conserved pathways of phagocytosis in *A. gambiae*. Immunity 23: 65-73.

Nene V, Wortman JR, Lawson D, Haas B, Kodira C, Tu ZJ, Loftus B, Xi Z, Megy K, Grabherr M, Ren Q, Zdobnov EM, Lobo NF, Campbell KS, Brown SE, Bonaldo MF, Zhu J, Sinkins SP, Hogenkamp DG, Amedeo P, Arensburger P, Atkinson PW, Bidwell S, Biedler J, Birney E, Bruggner RV, Costas J, Coy MR, Crabtree J, Crawford M, Debruyn B, Decaprio D, Eiglmeier K, Eisenstadt E, El-Dorry H, Gelbart WM, Gomes SL, Hammond M, Hannick LI, Hogan JR, Holmes MH, Jaffe D, Johnston JS, Kennedy RC, Koo H, Kravitz S, Kriventseva EV, Kulp D, Labutti K, Lee E, Li S, Lovin DD, Mao C, Mauceli E, Menck CF, Miller JR, Montgomery P, Mori A, Nascimento AL, Naveira HF, Nusbaum C, O'Leary S, Orvis J, Pertea M, Quesneville H, Reidenbach KR, Rogers YH, Roth CW, Schneider JR, Schatz M, Shumway M, Stanke M, Stinson EO, Tubio JM, Vanzee JP, Verjovski-Almeida S, Werner D, White O, Wyder S, Zeng Q, Zhao Q, Zhao Y, Hill CA, Raikhel AS, Soares MB, Knudson DL, Lee NH, Galagan J, Salzberg SL, Paulsen IT, Dimopoulos G, Collins FH, Birren B, Fraser-Liggett CM and Severson DW (2007) Genome sequence of *Aedes aegypti*, a major arbovirus vector. Science 316: 1718-1723.

Nimmo DD, Alphey L, Meredith JM and Eggleston P (2006) High efficiency site-specific genetic engineering of the mosquito genome. Insect Mol Biol 15: 129-136.

Perera OP, Harrell IR and Handler AM (2002) Germ-line transformation of the South American malaria vector, *Anopheles albimanus*, with a piggyBac/EGFP transposon vector is routine and highly efficient. Insect Mol Biol 11: 291-297.

Ramirez JL and Dimopoulos G (2010) The Toll immune signaling pathway control conserved anti-dengue defenses across diverse *Ae. aegypti* strains and against multiple dengue virus serotypes. Dev Comp Immunol 34: 625-629.

Sharmila Bharathi N, Archana N, Badrinarayanan A, Satish KM, Mohan J and Joshi A (2007) Time to death in the presence of E. coli: a mass-scale method for assaying pathogen resistance in *Drosophila*. J Genet 86: 75-79.

Shin SW, Kokoza V, Ahmed A and Raikhel AS (2002) Characterization of three alternatively spliced isoforms of the Rel/NF-kappa B transcription factor Relish from the mosquito *Aedes aegypti*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99: 9978-9983.

Shin SW, Kokoza V, Bian G, Cheon HM, Kim YJ and Raikhel AS (2005) REL1, a homologue of *Drosophila* dorsal, regulates toll antifungal immune pathway in the female mosquito *Aedes aegypti*. J Biol Chem 280: 16499-16507.

Shin SW, Kokoza V, Lobkov I and Raikhel AS (2003) Relish-mediated immune deficiency in the transgenic mosquito *Aedes aegypti*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 100: 2616-2621.

Smith DL and McKenzie FE (2004) Statics and dynamics of malaria infection in *Anopheles* mosquitoes. Malar J 3: 13.

Souza-Neto JA, Sim S and Dimopoulos G (2009) An evolutionary conserved function of the JAK-STAT pathway in anti-dengue defense. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 106: 17841-17846.

Voordouw MJ, Koella JC and Hurd H (2008) Comparison of male reproductive success in malaria-refractory and susceptible strains of *Anopheles gambiae*. Malar J 7: 103.

Walker T and Moreira LA (2011) Can *Wolbachia* be used to control malaria? Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz 106 Suppl 1: 212-217.

Wilson C, Bellen HJ and Gehring WJ (1990) Position effects on eukaryotic gene expression. Annu Rev Cell Biol 6: 679-714.

Windbichler N, Papathanos PA, Catteruccia F, Ranson H, Burt A and Crisanti A (2007) Homing endonuclease mediated gene targeting in *Anopheles gambiae* cells and embryos. Nucleic Acids Res 35: 5922-5933.

Yan G, Severson DW and Christensen BM (1997) Costs and benefits of mosquito refractoriness to malaria parasites: implications for genetic variability of mosquitoes and genetic control of malaria. Evolution 51: 441-450.

Xi Z, Ramirez JL and Dimopoulos G (2008) The *Aedes aegypti* toll pathway controls dengue virus infection. PLoS Pathog 4: e1000098.

Zerofsky M, Harel E, Silverman N and Tatar M (2005) Aging of the innate immune response in *Drosophila melanogaster*. Aging Cell 4: 103-108.

Zhou G, Kohlhepp P, Geiser D, Frasquillo Mdel C, Vazquez-Moreno L and Winzerling JJ (2007) Fate of blood meal iron in mosquitoes. J Insect Physiol 53: 1169-1178.

Zou Z, Shin SW, Alvarez KS, Bian G, Kokoza V and Raikhel AS (2008) Mosquito RUNX4 in the immune regulation of PPO gene expression and its effect on avian malaria parasite infection. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 105: 18454-18459.

Zou Z, Souza-Neto J, Xi Z, Kokoza V, Shin SW, Dimopoulos G and Raikhel A (2011) Transcriptome analysis of *Aedes aegypti* transgenic mosquitoes with altered immunity. PLoS Pathog 7: e1002394.

3. Plant-sugar feeding and vectorial capacity

Chris M. Stone and Woodbridge A. Foster

Abstract

Sugar feeding is a common behaviour of male and female mosquitoes, sand flies, and other Dipteran vectors. In some species it is essential to one or both sexes; in others it is facultative. Even among females of anthropophilic species that are predisposed to a diet of frequent blood meals sugar is often taken, depending on internal state and opportunity. This opportunism is expressed as an increased likelihood of feeding on nectar when access to blood and oviposition sites is limited. Newly emerged *Anopheles gambiae* females sometimes show a preference for sugar before mating even when blood hosts are available, likely depending both on the strength of plant and animal kairomones and on the attractive qualities of each. Incorporation of sugar in the diet by mosquitoes affects certain components of their vectorial capacity. Environmental conditions, such as bed net coverage and abundance of nectar sources, will affect the extent to which mosquitoes feed on sugar. If the effect of sugar on vectorial capacity is significant, these conditions will impact transmission rates of vector-borne diseases and should be included in epidemiological models. Vectorial capacity is pulled in opposing directions by sugar feeding, through its effect on the two most important components, survival and biting rate. Survival of females feeding on sugar and blood is greater than that of females restricted to a blood-only diet, according to the vast majority of studies, whereas biting rates usually are depressed when sugar is available, but field evidence is scarce. Vector density results from survival and fecundity. Most studies on vectors suggest that although fecundity per gonotrophic cycle is enhanced by sugar feeding, long-term reproductive fitness in anthropophilic species is slightly depressed. Vector competence appears to be negatively affected by sugar feeding. In certain cases plant nectar contains factors that inhibit development of the parasite in the vector. More common may be positive effects on the vector's immune response, but this appears to depend heavily on the host-parasite system, condition of the vector, and possibly genotype-by-environment interactions. Estimating the combined effect of these factors at different levels of sugar intake remains difficult at this point, but an overall impression is that vectorial capacity is somewhat decreased in environments where sugar is readily accessed. Sugar feeding behaviour can be exploited for control, the most promising methods employing sugar solutions combined with attractants and oral insecticides for direct control and attractive phytochemicals for surveillance. Main questions facing both approaches are their suitability in verdant areas where attractants will compete with a diverse flora. For females of anthropophilic species in settings with abundant blood hosts, the question may be whether populations can be effectively suppressed by targeting male mosquitoes.

Keywords: nectar feeding, vectorial capacity, fitness, novel control methods

Introduction

Overviews of insect-vector sugar feeding (Downes 1958, Foster 1995, Yuval 1992) identified important gaps in our understanding of the process and its implications. One particularly important gap was the influence of available plant sugar on vector populations: whether it is a limiting resource, so that its restriction can affect reproductive success and survival, and therefore the sustained density of adults, i.e. the carrying capacity of the environment. Another gap, equally important, was the effect of plant sugar on pathogen transmission, including how the availability of sugar can affect vectorial capacity by altering vector competence or by changing biting

W. Takken and C.J.M. Koenraadt (eds.), *Ecology of parasite-vector interactions*, Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases 3, DOI 10.3920/978-90-8686-744-8_3, © Wageningen Academic Publishers 2013

frequency and survival. Because density of adults also contributes to vectorial capacity, these two gaps in our knowledge are part of the same question for disease ecologists: is plant-sugar feeding by vectors a critical component of pathogen transmission?

Investigations of sugar feeding vector biology, both in the laboratory and in the field, made since those comprehensive reviews, are beginning to provide details that can fill these gaps. This review will focus mostly on newly published work and on aspects of the plant-vector topic not previously discussed. For the earlier literature supporting conclusions and generalizations about mosquito sugar feeding, summarized in the present review but not fully referenced, the reader is referred to Foster (1995). For malaria transmission in particular, the possibility that sugar feeding by *Anopheles* mosquitoes may be an essential component of the epidemiological process is gaining wide recognition (Ferguson *et al.* 2010). Its importance for leishmaniasis transmission by phlebotomine sand flies in desert regions also is strongly supported. Experiments in both disease systems are providing direct evidence for plant-sugar's pivotal role in vector biology and offering ways to manipulate the connection between plant and vector to weaken or eliminate pathogen transmission, either by itself or as a valuable component of integrated control (Beier *et al.* 2008; Shaukat *et al.* 2010).

Taxa involved and evidence

Taxa covered

Most blood-feeding Diptera also ingest plant sugar. For this reason, it is accurate to say that they have two types of hosts: vertebrate animals and vascular plants. These dipterans include the blood-feeding species of the families Culicidae, Ceratopogonidae, Simuliidae, Psychodidae, Tabanidae, Rhagionidae, and some blood-feeding Muscidae. Notable exceptions are the tsetse flies (Glossinidae) and the ectoparasitic pupiparous dipterans (Hippoboscidae, Streblidae, and Nycteribiidae). For a few poorly known haematophagous flies, e.g. Corethrellidae and Carnidae, the role of sugar feeding has not yet been established. No other haematophagous insects are known to take plant sugar. These blood feeders include the Siphonaptera, among Hemiptera the triatomine Reduviidae, the Cimicidae, and the Polyctenidae, and among Phthiraptera the anoplurans, amblycerans, and rhynchophthirines. This also appears to be true of all haematophagous Acari. So far, the great majority of sugar feeding investigations have targeted mosquitoes (Culicidae) and the phlebotomine sand flies (Psychodidae). However, recent important plant-related studies include horse flies and deer flies (Tabanidae), black flies (Simuliidae), biting midges (Ceratopogonidae), and stable flies (Muscidae).

Plant food sources and composition

The sugar feeding haematophagous Diptera obtain their sugar from a variety of plant sources, most commonly floral and extrafloral nectar and honeydew; the latter is plant-derived but homopteran-produced. Other sources are damaged or decaying fruit and seeping sap from plant wounds. Typically, these flies direct the ingested vertebrate blood straight to the midgut, where most digestion and all absorption occurs. They shunt all but the smallest sugar meals to the foregut diverticula, blind sacs where sugar is stored prior to being doled, a little at a time, into the midgut for digestion and absorption. Most of a sugar meal is stored in the large ventral diverticulum, the crop. Although the sugars sucrose, fructose, and glucose are the primary constituents of nectar, minor sugars also occur, and various oligosaccharides are common in honeydews. Glycosidases in mosquito and sand fly saliva (Jacobson and Schlein 2001, James and Rossignol 1991, Marinotti

and James 1990) and midgut (Billingsley and Hecker 1991, Jacobson and Schlein 2001, Souza-Neto *et al.* 2007) cleave sucrose into its constituent hexoses: fructose and glucose. In addition, plant-sugar meals usually contain amino acids and are considered to be part of the flower-pollinator and extrafloral gland-mutualist syndromes (Shuel 1992). The amino acids by themselves are insufficient to stimulate or support mosquito egg development, but they do appear to promote survival (Eischen and Foster 1983, Jones *et al.* 1985, Vrzal *et al.* 2010) and also may serve as a flight substrate (Scaraffia and Wells 2003). Many other nectar constituents have been found, some presumably nutritional, others distasteful or toxic.

Tissue piercing

Healthy plant tissue is sometimes pierced, and sugars and other nutrients are then extracted from phloem sap or tissue fluids. Tissue feeding has been examined most extensively and intensively in desert sand flies, where it appears to be essential to their survival. In mosquitoes, this phenomenon has been reported many times in the literature, yet it has not been explored intensively, and its significance for them globally remains unclear. The most recent evidence for mosquito and sand fly tissue feeding comes from studies in Israel, where calcofluor-stained cellulose particles have been detected in the midgut (Junnila *et al.* 2010, Müller and Schlein 2005, Müller *et al.* 2010b, Schlein and Jacobson 1999, Schlein and Müller 1995), and chloroplast DNA has been identified (Junnila *et al.* 2010). Amylase activity has been detected in many haematophagous flies (reviewed by Gooding 1975), including sand flies and mosquitoes, and amylase gene expression has been explored in mosquitoes (Grossman *et al.* 1997). In phlebotomine sand flies it is used to digest starch granules obtained during plant tissue feeding (Jacobson and Schlein 2001, Jacobson *et al.* 2001, Ribeiro *et al.* 2000). The fluid ingested by sand flies during plant piercing is transferred directly to the midgut (i.e. in the 'blood-feeding mode'), rather than being shunted into the crop (Schlein and Warburg 1986). The presence of amylase in mosquitoes and other haematophagous Diptera suggests that starch, derived from tissue feeding, is part of the diet. In both sand flies and mosquitoes it is reported to be particularly common during seasons and localities when and where sugar sources are rare and plants are under heat and water stress (e.g. Müller *et al.* 2010c, Schlein and Jacobson 1999, Schlein and Müller 1995). Tissue piercing may provide water as well as sugar, but it also affects *Leishmania* infections in sand flies (Schlein and Jacobson 2001) (see below).

Methods for evaluating plant feeding

The evidence for sugar feeding in the field, and much of what we know about it, comes either from direct observations of insects on plants or from chemical tests of gut contents. Observations of vector behaviour on plants are sometimes difficult to interpret, because landing, aggregating, and even probing do not necessarily result in ingestion of sugars. Furthermore, the failure to observe plant-feeding behaviour, and therefore deduce its absence, is notoriously misleading. Sugar feeding often occurs rapidly and over broad periods of the insect's activity period, spread over broad sweeps of a landscape that supports a vector's host plants. This is unlike blood-feeding behaviour, which tends to be concentrated on relatively scarce hosts and consequently is more obvious to the human observer.

Chemical tests are less susceptible to sampling biases than direct observations. The one that revolutionized sugar feeding studies of vectors is Van Handel's cold-anthrone test (Van Handel 1967, 1972) for fructose, a plant sugar not synthesized *de novo* within the insect. Other methods for detecting fructose have been developed that are reported to give greatly increased sensitivity (Nunes *et al.* 2008, Somani *et al.* 1987). Simple chromatographic methods also have proved

satisfactory for detecting undigested sugar meals, provided that they distinguish between plant-derived and metabolically generated sugars (Laarman 1968, Magnarelli and Anderson 1977, Magnarelli 1978, 1979, 1980, Nayar 1978, Watanabe *et al.* 1973). Particularly useful have been thin-layer and gas chromatography that identify sugars distinctive to honeydew, as opposed to floral and extrafloral nectars (Burgin and Hunter 1997a,b,c, Burkett *et al.* 1998, 1999, Hunter and Ossowski 1999, Janzen and Hunter 1998), or that can help determine the likely plant-host species by their sugar ratios (Hamilton and El Naiem 2000, Manda 2007a). Finally, evidence for the penetration of undamaged plant tissue, such as leaves and stems, can be deduced from the presence of dyes and cellulose (e.g. Müller *et al.* 2010b, Schlein and Jacobson 1999, Schlein and Müller 1995), and the plant-host species can be identified from chloroplast DNA (Junnila *et al.* 2010). The principal problem we confront with chemical tests of gut contents is that sugars and other materials disappear either gradually or rapidly, depending on the amount consumed and rates of digestion and egestion in each species according to temperature and the individual's physiological status. Many negatives will be recorded, even among species that plant-feed at frequent intervals. So the tests provide only an approximation of the proportion of vectors that have fed on plants during a particular period of time.

An underutilized low-bias approach to determine the identity of plant hosts is the identification of pollen grains on the body or mouthparts, or in the gut. Pollen has been used effectively as an indicator of specific plant visits by the tabanids *Tabanus* and *Chrysops* (Magnarelli 1979) and the stable fly *Stomoxys* (Jarzen and Hogsette 2008, Tseng *et al.* 1983). Pollen also has been found on a wide variety of mosquito species, some of which are implicated as pollinators. Pollen information is limited by the uncertainty of the time that the pollen was acquired. In addition, some pollen grains are too large to be incorporated in pollen-contaminated nectar meals of insects with narrow food tubes or are held in pollen-transfer devices that do not adhere to the bodies of small nectar thieves. Also, pollen will not account for a vector's visits to non-floral sugar sources, and cross-contamination of pollen between plant species conceivably may lead to false conclusions.

General features of plant feeding behaviour

Autogeny and diapause

A good baseline of knowledge about sugar feeding behaviour in mosquitoes exists, derived from a variety of lab and field studies. In the case of females of autogenous species, a sugar meal often is necessary for the development of the first batch of eggs (O'Meara 1985, 1987). Even among anautogenous mosquitoes there are species that rarely or never seek blood until they take at least one sugar meal (Briegel *et al.* 2001, Hancock and Foster 1997, 2000, Renshaw *et al.* 1994, 1995). Sugar feeding frequency may diminish in females of some anautogenous species, once insemination is achieved and blood feeding commences, whereas in males it remains constant throughout life. On the other hand, where winters are severe, females that have entered a state of adult diapause prior to overwintering either do not take blood at all (*Culex*) or take non-ovigenic blood meals close to their hibernacula (

Anopheles). However, *Culex* females entering diapause up-regulate genes for fatty acid synthase (Robich and Denlinger 2005, Sim and Denlinger 2009), and indirect evidence indicates that they feed on sugar frequently prior to entering hibernacula (Bowen 1992a, Jaenson and Ameneshewa 1991). During this period they accumulate large reserves of fat before foraging becomes impossible. Where winters are milder, some sugar feeding may occur among diapausing *Culex* populations

throughout the winter (e.g. Reisen *et al.* 1986), perhaps explaining the sporadic expression of the fatty acid synthase gene throughout simulated hibernation.

Food utilization

Ingestion of sugar is directly correlated with flight range, and sugar can be consumed directly as a flight-energy substrate. Alternatively, it may be converted to glycogen for storage in the insect's fat body and flight muscles. Although previously thought to be used primarily for survival, stored lipid derived from either blood or sugar also can serve as a flight substrate in *Anopheles gambiae* Giles, which has an exceptional ability to mobilize lipid during long flights (Kaufmann and Briegel 2004), likely involving adipokinetic hormone. There is evidence that even amino acids derived directly from the blood meal may be used in flight in *Aedes aegypti* Linneaus (Scaraffia and Wells 2003).

Timing and frequency

The first adult food of both sexes of anautogenous species is likely to be plant sugar, and both sexes continue to take sugar throughout their reproductive lives. Sugar feeding by females appears to be least likely to occur when they are digesting a blood meal and most often when gravid or prior to the next blood feeding. But there are many exceptions to this, depending both on species and circumstances. Sugar feeding has a characteristic time, or times, in the diel activity cycle. Recent studies have started to elucidate the molecular basis of this rhythmic behaviour (e.g. Rund *et al.* 2011). Cycles of sugar feeding often share a general activity rhythm with other behaviours, so that the phases of different behaviours are the same or nearly so. A field study of *An. gambiae* by Müller *et al.* (2010b) demonstrated that the times of sugar seeking and blood seeking, though to some extent overlapping, occurred in distinctly different parts of the diel cycle: attraction to sugar baits occurred mainly early in the night, with a second peak shortly before dawn, whereas attraction to blood-host odour occurred mainly in the second half of the night, in accord with landing or biting rates of other studies of this species.

Average sugar feeding frequency is difficult to infer from field data, because of strong temperature fluctuations and narrow periods when feeding occurs. Rough estimates are based on the time for all individuals to digest naturally acquired nectar meals completely and on the fraction of resting individuals that contain a meal still in some stage of digestion. By extrapolation, the time spent without sugar is calculated, and the total time with and without sugar provides the sugar feeding interval. Typical values indicate that males in the field may take sugar every 1-2 days, whereas mature females of anthropophilic species may take it as infrequently as every 6-9 days. These species are less dependent on sugar for successful reproduction, flight, and extended life in the laboratory (Fernandes and Briegel 2005, Harrington *et al.* 2001, Kaufmann and Briegel 2004), and they less often contain undigested sugar meals in the field (as explained below). Females of typical zoophilic species, by contrast, often contain undigested sugar and probably feed on sugar at least as frequently as on blood, i.e. every 3-4 days. Without sugar, they can die rapidly, despite frequent access to animal or even human blood (Fernandes and Briegel 2005, Nayar and Sauerman 1975, Wittie 2003).

Limited and limiting availability in the field

In laboratory cages, sugar availability clearly alters survival and reproduction. Evidence from the field is much harder to come by, primarily because of difficulties in measuring the accessibility of sugar in nature. Field samples support the general notion that more sugar feeding occurs

when more sugar sources, or just more plants, are available (Martinez-Ibarra *et al.* 1997, Müller *et al.* 2010d). These studies suggest the hypothesis that plant sugar is a limited, and potentially fitness-limiting, resource. The underlying assumption is that up to some unknown point, it is advantageous for vectors to take more sugar if they can find it. In several studies (e.g. Gadawski and Smith 1992, Hocking 1953, 1968), vector population density was low if fewer preferred nectar sources were available, or declined seasonally when the sugar sources declined. Some of the best evidence for this effect comes from the few studies of sand flies and mosquitoes in isolated areas in which a suspected plant host either was marked with a sugar-baited dye or was sprayed with insecticidal bait (Müller and Schlein 2006, Schlein and Müller 2008). Another approach was to compare the reproductive performance of cohorts in mesocosms with and without sugar sources (Stone *et al.* 2009), or to measure the density and survival of populations of vectors in isolated areas that appear to differ only in the availability of certain preferred plant hosts (Gu *et al.* 2011). In the last case, a drastic difference in survivorship and biting frequency has been attributed to the presence or absence of a single species of host plant (See more in the Section 'Vectorial capacity').

Plant-host preference

Mosquitoes and other vectors collected while standing, crawling, or probing on a variety of plants in bloom appear to show preferential attraction to certain plant species, because they occur disproportionately on those plants. This apparent degree of host specificity is reinforced by the many anecdotal observations that link an insect to only one or a few plant species. Another source of evidence for plant-host selectivity is the ability of vectors to obtain fluids, secretions, or nutrients from only a small subgroup of the species in a plant community. For example, Abdel-Malek and Baldwin (1961) were the first to suggest selective removal of sugar-bearing plants as a means of control (see Section 'Selective removal of plants'). They found that *Ae. aegypti* and three indigenous Canadian mosquitoes fed on only three of 24 native plant species offered to them. A study in a natural setting in Egypt likewise revealed that *Anopheles sergentii* Evans males fed on a very select number of plants, and the presence of those plants predicted the presence of larvae in nearby pools. Furthermore, field collections of males were successful on these plants, whereas very few *An. sergentii* were collected from other plants (Abdel-Malek 1964). Similar laboratory experiments demonstrating differences in mosquito and sand fly ingestion and survival on various plant species have been conducted by Patterson *et al.* (1969), Schlein and Warburg (1986), Alexander and Usma (1994), Gary and Foster (2004), Impoinvil *et al.* (2004) and Manda *et al.* (2007b).

Even investigators who take into account the relative availability of all possible host plants can misinterpet insect aggregation – possibly the result of behavioural arrest – as attraction. Recent sand fly and mosquito experiments have eliminated some of this bias and confirm that vectors have plant preferences. These experiments have used plant-baited or plant-associated traps and resting sites (Schlein and Yuval 1987, Müller and Schlein 2004, Gouagna *et al.* 2010), selective dye-marking or insecticide treatment of plants in the field (Schlein and Jacobson 1994, Schlein and Müller 1995, 2008, Müller *et al.* 2010b, Müller *et al.* 2011), radioactive tagging of plants (Abdel-Malek and Baldwin 1961, Abdel-Malek 1964, Patterson *et al* 1969), and wind-tunnel olfactometers (Gouagna *et al.* 2010). The existence of strong differences in attraction of *An. sergentii* to specific plants was convincingly demonstrated by miniature CDC-light traps baited with branches of potential plant hosts (Müller and Schlein 2006). Müller *et al.* (2010a) also found evidence for differences in attraction of *An. gambiae* to fruits and flowering plants in Mali using wire-mesh glue traps surrounding 26 plant species and 26 kinds of fruits and seedpods. Flowering plants

were considerably more attractive than fruit, and over all, nine out of the 26 plants tested were considered attractive, with only minor differences between males and females.

A completely unbiased form of evidence for selective plant-feeding (i.e. the host-utilization rate) in nature must come from the guts of random samples of vectors collected in the field. These kinds of data, when combined with knowledge of the proportions of different plant species available to the vector, provide a measure of plant preference (i.e. the forage ratio or feeding index). Rigorous studies of this kind have yet to be conducted. However, chromatographic profiles of sugars in *Phlebotomus orientalis* Parrot sand flies in the Sudan demonstrated the relative importance of fruit and honeydew (Hamilton and El Naiem 2000) and in several species of mosquitoes (Burkett *et al.* 1999), black flies (Burgin and Hunter 1997a,b,c), deer flies and horse flies (Hunter and Ossowski 1999, Janzen and Hunter 1998). Chloroplast nucleotide sequences showed that during the dry season *An. sergentii* mosquitoes mainly tissue-fed on three succulent species that formed less than 1% of the vegetation (Junnila *et al.* 2010).

Obligatory vs. facultative nature of sugar feeding

Anthropophilic and generalist species

Among mosquito species there appears to be a continuum of female reliance upon sugar feeding. At one extreme, *Toxorhynchites* females feed exclusively on plant sugars, relying for egg production on the protein reserves from the larval stage. At the other extreme, where human blood is readily available, certain species have been reported to contain plant sugar infrequently or rarely (Beier 1996, Costero *et al.* 1998, Edman *et al.* 1992, Gillies 1968, Spencer *et al.* 2005). Females of these species may rely on blood entirely, often feeding multiple times per gonotrophic cycle (e.g. Beier 1996, Braks *et al.* 2006, Edman *et al.* 1992, Foster and Eischen 1987) or having overlapping gonotrophic cycles (Briegel and Hörler 1993). Nonetheless, such females readily feed on sugar in the laboratory, and a modest proportion can be found to contain sugar in the field.

Species for which facultative sugar feeding has been proposed are *An. gambiae* and *Ae. aegypti*. They occupy a specialized niche and share a number of characteristics, in particular anthropophily and endophily, that predispose them to a diet limited to blood. Due to their tendency to rest indoors after feeding on blood, a female's energy requirement for flight is limited to that needed for seeking hosts, mates and oviposition sites; the energy required to locate any of these, near domiciles, probably is small or negligible. The mating behaviour of *Ae. aegypti* is notable in that swarming and mating occur around the blood host, instead of above inanimate swarm markers. Yuval (2006) proposed that this behaviour may be an adaptation to dispersed and non-synchronous emergence of adults. Alternatively, it may be simply a result of intense intrasexual selection. *An. gambiae* do mate in conventional swarms, but the flight energy a female might expend to locate the swarm, mate, and return to a resting site, has not been examined. The discovery that mating in this species sometimes occurs indoors in West Africa (Dao *et al.* 2008) implies that in some areas the energetic costs of mating and host seeking likewise may be small and overlapping, as in *Ae. aegypti*.

The lower incidence of sugar feeding, and higher rate of multiple blood feeding per gonotrophic cycle is likely one of the reasons both *Ae. aegypti* and *An. gambiae* are such efficient vectors of human disease. These characteristics may have evolved in response to an oddity of human blood composition. One of the amino acids essential for vitellogenesis, isoleucine, is notably limited in human blood compared to that of other vertebrates (Briegel 1985, Dimond *et al.* 1956, Lea *et al.* 1958). Consequently, a smaller proportion (up to 30% less) of each blood meal can be used for

gametic functions, allowing for a greater investment of blood-meal carbon to somatic functions. Kaufmann and Briegel (2004) provided an elegant example of this differing physiological reliance on sugar by comparing the flight distances of *An. gambiae* and *Anopheles atroparvus* Van Thiel when fed on sugar or blood. *An. gambiae* females mobilized their lipid reserves for flight and were capable of flying similar distances after being fed on sugar or on two blood meals. The more generalist blood feeder *An. atroparvus*, in contrast, did not use lipids to fuel its flight and achieved greater flight distances when fed sugar.

Mosquitoes feeding on blood hosts with higher isoleucine contents may thus be expected to have a higher reliance on sugar for the maintenance of energetic reserves. Whether prior sugar feeding by generalist mosquitoes, in turn, affects blood-host choice is not known. Even among anthropophilic species, under certain circumstances non-human animals may form larger proportions of their blood meals. Unclear at this point is whether feeding on non-human animals elevates their tendency to take sugar meals. This notion is supported by a comparison among experiments that have given markedly different survival and fecundity results, depending on whether the host was human, bird, or rodent. One example from a single study demonstrated that *Ae. aegypti* females, fed on human blood, had superior lifetime fecundity when sugar was absent; but when fed on mouse blood, fecundity was higher when sugar was present. Individual mouse blood meals, supplemented by sugar, generated by far the largest egg output (data courtesy of L. Harrington to W.A.F.). Yet, per mg, mouse blood alone was significantly less productive than human blood with sugar (Harrington *et al.* 2001). Lifetime survival showed a similar relationship except that there was no difference in survival on human blood, with or without sugar access. Studies on *Aedes albopictus* Skuse, which more often takes animal blood meals in nature, demonstrated that on human blood, females without sugar had moderately reduced survivorship (Braks *et al.* 2006). But on bird blood, females without sugar had drastically shortened lives (Xue *et al.* 2010).

Field evidence

The field evidence for a low incidence of plant-sugar feeding by anthropophilic species is not unequivocal. Of particular concern for the interpretation of fructose-positivity rates of field-collected females, in addition to those previously described, is the likelihood of collecting host-seeking or blood-fed females in indoor resting catches, potentially under-representing females in states that may be more inclined to sugar feed. Compounding these issues is the high variation reported in fructose rates between geographical areas and seasons, the main question being whether this variation is best ascribed to differences in plant community composition and abundance, or to the presence and availability of preferred blood-hosts.

Several field and laboratory studies provide insight into the facultative nature of sugar feeding of *Ae. aegypti* and *An. gambiae* and its variation across different habitats. For instance, wild *Ae. aegypti* were collected in a rural village in Thailand and tested for the presence of sugar during both the wet and the dry season (Edman *et al.* 1992). Seasonality did not affect sugar positivity, and only 3% of females were sugar positive, vs. 35% of males, demonstrating that sugar sources were at least available. In another study in Thailand seasonality did affect sugar intake of females (Spencer *et al.* 2005). Further evidence of limited sugar intake was obtained by collecting males and females inside houses in San Juan, Puerto Rico (Van Handel *et al.* 1994). Only 2% of the collected females contained fructose, and all females that were blood-fed or gravid were fructose negative. This could not be explained by the absence of sugar sources, because houses, patios and backyards typically contained a large number and variety of plants that might serve as nectar sources and 51% of males were fructose positive. The results from these field collections are in

stark contrast with sugar-positivity rates of females collected at a rural site (a tire dump) near Vero Beach, Florida. There, collected females contained no eggs or blood, and 74% contained fructose, while 63% of males did so (Van Handel *et al.* 1994). The authors attribute this striking difference to the difference in blood-host abundance between an urban centre with a dense human population and the rural site where humans are rare. A different field study did attribute the extent to which *Ae. aegypti* feed on plant nectar on the abundance of plants (Martinezz-Ibarra *et al.* 1997). More females in the outskirts of Huixtla, Chiapas, Mexico, were sugar-fed (21%) than in the midtown area (8%). There was no difference in number of inhabitants per house between these areas, but there was a significant difference in the number of flowering plants between the areas. Besides the difference in abundance of plants, sugar feeding may have been affected by the availability of specific plants, because bougainvillea and hibiscus occurred in 71% and 53% of the houses with sugar-positive mosquitoes, though it is not clear whether these plants were also more common in houses with sugar-positive mosquitoes than in houses without (sugar-positive) mosquitoes. Thus, there are conflicting reports in the literature about whether sugar feeding by this species is driven by absence of blood-hosts or presence of adequate sugar sources.

Field evidence for the use of sugar by *An. gambiae s.s.*, and the effects of environmental conditions on this behaviour, are scarcer than they are for *Ae. aegypti*. Most field evidence suggests that sugar feeding is rare, although a study by Laarman (1968) suggests that feeding on sugar is a normal component of *An. gambiae* behaviour. Muirhead-Thompson (1951) considered sugar to be an unnatural food source for this species, and Gillies (1968) found little evidence of sugar feeding in females collected indoors, based on the absence of fluid in their crops. McCrae (1989) suggested the habitats of *An. gambiae* were characterized by a paucity of sugar sources, but did observe *An. gambiae s.l.* feeding on the extra-floral nectaries of *Avena macrostachya* (personal communication to W.A.F.). Indoor-resting catches and indoor-biting catches in Kisian and Saradidi, Kenya, revealed 'surprisingly low' proportions of female *An. gambiae s.l.* and *An. funestus* Giles with detectable fructose (Beier 1996).

Laboratory studies on the blood/sugar choice

Field observations are not easy to interpret in terms of how likely a female is to feed on sugar at particular times in her life. A number of laboratory studies provide insight on this subject and suggest that while *An. gambiae* may indeed not be an obligate sugar feeder, sugar is a viable option for their first meal (Foster and Takken 2004), and is increasingly used later in life where blood hosts or oviposition sites are less accessible or more distant from one another (Gary and Foster 2006). Based on the finding that *An. gambiae* would feed on a human 24 hr after emergence, and that non-oogenic females were able to convert as much protein and lipid into maternal reserves as oogenic females transferred to egg yolk, Fernandes and Briegel (2005) suggested that this species may be opportunistic in terms of its feeding behaviour, i.e. both sugar and blood meals allow for rapid increases in reserve levels, and whichever is encountered first may be taken. This idea was supported by studies in mesocosms that showed that the pre-mating meal taken by this species favours sugar, but a proportion does feed on blood instead, and a greater proportion does so in the absence of sugar sources (Stone *et al.* 2011). Sugar-related and human-related volatiles thus clearly compete, and the determination of the initial meal choice may depend on both the strengths of the competing stimuli and their qualities.

In *Culex nigripalpus* Theobald, a mosquito that strongly prefers to feed on sugar before feeding on blood, this situational decision-making was demonstrated by Hancock and Foster (1997). In a wind tunnel choice test between sugar sources (honey) and blood (small birds), the response

to either food increased with increasing number of dishes of honey or the number of birds. A comparable study on *An. gambiae* in a mesocosm showed that blood-host presence (a human sleeping in the mesocosm throughout the night, or being available only for one hr per night) and female size, but not abundance of *Senna didymobotrya* (Fresen) Irwin and Barneby, affected the sugar/blood choice of 1-day old females, which strongly favoured blood in this case (Stone *et*

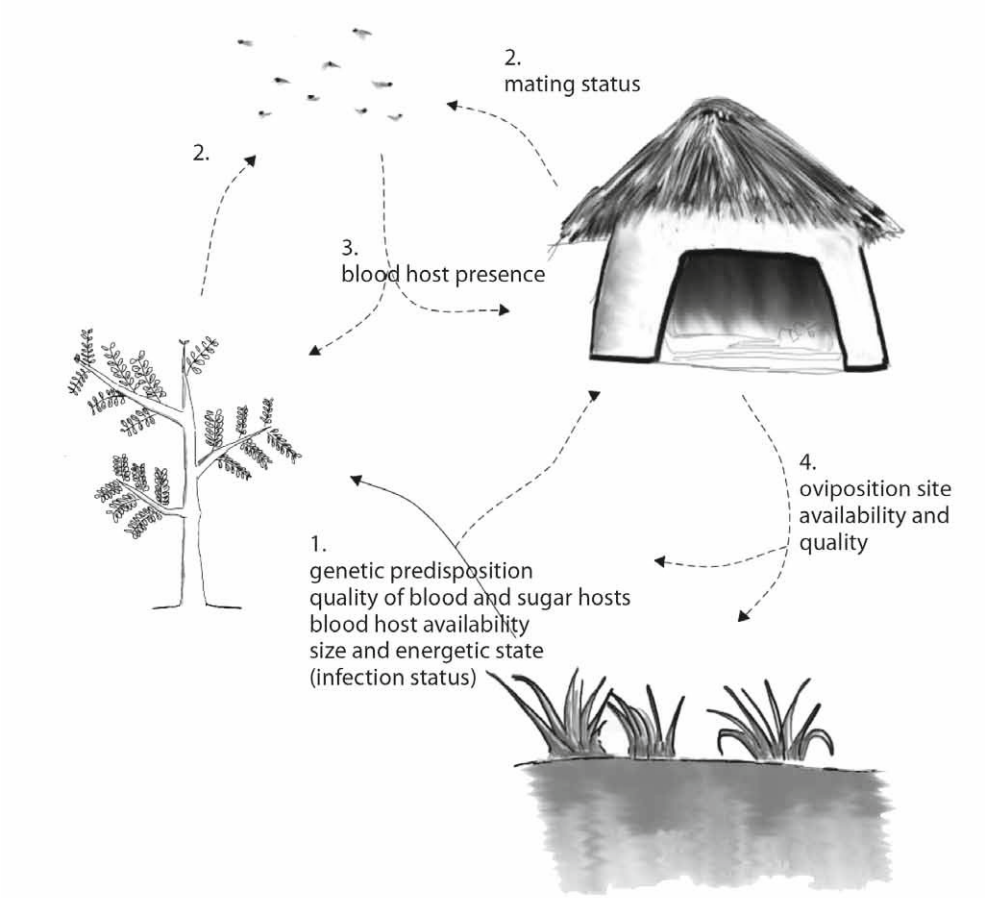


Figure 1. Life choice diagram for Anopheles gambiae *females, highlighting the behavioural components, the likely sequence in which they move through reproductive cycles, and factors informing the decisions between behaviours. (1) After emergence, or oviposition, females face a choice between seeking blood or nectar. (2) Depending on their mating status, females may seek out a male swarm. (3) Females will then seek a gonoinactive (= 'pre-gravid') or gonoactive blood meal, unless blood hosts are limited, in which case the likelihood of sugar feeding increases. (4) After a gonoactive blood meal, gravid females will oviposit, unless suitable sites are unavailable, in which case the likelihood of sugar feeding increases.*

al. 2012). This promotes the notion that females of this species are, rather than obligatory sugar

feeders, opportunistically inclined to use this resource at various points in their lives, depending on environmental conditions and resource accessibility and quality (Figure 1).

Sugar feeding by mosquitoes, according to optimal-foraging theory

Whether or not an animal should include in its diet an item with a particular energetic gain, probability of encounter, and handling time cost, is a question of classic foraging theory (Stephens and Krebs 1986). An assumption inherent to this theory is that animals will maximize their rate of energy input, which is then considered a proxy for fitness. As most animals have limited time-budgets and operate under constraints, and thus face trade-offs, using energy intake as a proxy for fitness is not always informative or free from error. An extension of classical foraging theory, dynamic state variable modelling (Clark and Mangel 2000, Mangel and Clark 1988), employs a fitness function that allows the maximization of a more relevant parameter. Typically this will be lifetime reproductive output. Theories based on these ideas could provide relevant insight into how the tendency to sugar-feed in certain mosquito species depends on environmental factors (e.g. resource availability). Additionally, mosquitoes in different behavioural states (age, mating status, body size, energetic reserve level, diapause status, etc.) differ in their tendencies toward taking sugar. To date, general theories applied to this have been developed (Roitberg and Friend 1992, Roitberg *et al.* 1994), and one study has investigated when to sugar-feed for the specific case of *An. gambiae* (Ma and Roitberg 2008). The main predictions from their model are that after emergence, a female is likely to take a sugar meal to increase her reserves before moving indoors to seek a blood host. Around houses, she seeks sugar only when energy levels become very low, and frequency of sugar feeding becomes negligible with increasing blood host availability. Following oviposition, she again commonly takes sugar – unless her energy reserves are high, in which case she returns indoors immediately. Longevity and fecundity both increase with increasing availability of sugar hosts outdoors and blood hosts indoors, whereas presence of peridomestic sugar hosts has negligible effects on these parameters. Several aspects that may be relevant to these predicted feeding choices have not yet been theoretically explored, such as the size or mating status of females. Another realm of questions that would benefit from model-driven hypotheses relate to how female mosquitoes infected with parasites may be expected to modify their feeding decisions (see Section 'Vector competence' below).

Vectorial capacity

Components of vectorial capacity

Vectorial capacity (C) is a simplified measure of a vector's power for pathogen propagation. It is expressed as the total number of new vertebrate cases of an infection that can arise directly from one original infection in a particular environmental setting, due to the insect or other carrier in question. It is a subset of the equations originally developed by Ross (1910) and MacDonald (1957) to provide a quantitative epidemiological description of pathogen transmission and spread among humans by anopheline mosquitoes, in terms of the reproduction rate of cases of malaria. Vectorial capacity was introduced by Garrett-Jones (1964) and Garrett-Jones and Shidrawi (1969) as a means of singling out the vector components useful to entomologists in evaluating the potential ability of a particular insect population to spread a disease. In its simplest form, vectorial capacity is a function of female density relative to humans (*m*), biting frequency (*a*), survival rate (*p*), and duration of the extrinsic cycle (*n*), according to this simple expression:

$$C = \frac{ma^2p^n}{-\ln(p)}$$

Vectorial capacity is most sensitive to changes in survival rate (*p*) and biting frequency (*a*) of females. Because of their magnification by powers of *n* and *2*, respectively, even small changes result in large effects.

Vectorial capacity is oversimplified (Dye 1992), because in its original form it assumes perfect vector competence (see below). Yet in practice, even the simplest version of vectorial capacity is difficult to employ, because its parameters are not easy to measure. Still, this formula has tremendous heuristic value. It allows an entomologist to focus on control efforts that are likely to achieve maximum effect. For example, it becomes clear that the density of vectors, which can be manipulated by larval suppression, whether by insecticides or source reduction, is not nearly as important as reduced adult survival, whether by residual insecticide applied to resting sites, insecticide-treated bed nets, or reduced availability of sugar sources. It also shows, in a quantitative way, which coefficients are most important to measure and worth the effort to investigate by detailed study.

Thus, to increase its heuristic utility, researchers have suggested including an approximation of vector competence (*b*) as a factor in the numerator of vectorial capacity. In addition, to provide a more realistic value for the probability of survival, researchers have introduced survival rates as various sorts of non-linear functions (e.g. Bellan 2010, Dawes *et al.* 2009, Styer *et al.* 2007b), so that the probability of death may be high or low early in adult life, decline or gradually increase subsequently, then either increase greatly or decelerate at advanced vector age, based on field experiments (Harrington *et al.* 2008), meta-analyses of field data (Clements and Paterson 1981), and laboratory experiments (Dawes 2009, Styer *et al.* 2007a,b). All of these issues are discussed further, below.

Plant-affected components

The following features of vectorial capacity have been shown to be directly affected by plant feeding. The vector density (*m*) is indirectly affected through sugar feeding's influence both on reproduction (e.g. fecundity and male reproductive capacity) and on survival. The biting rate (*a*) is affected by sugar directly, through its influence on supplemental feeding within a gonotrophic cycle, its delaying of the primary (ovigenic) blood feeding while the crop contains a large sugar meal, and its delaying of oviposition. Survival (*p*) depends both on the frequency and quality of sugar feeding. Very little is known about whether energetic reserves affect host choice and the duration of the extrinsic cycle (*n*). Vector competence (*b*) is reported to be affected by the inclusion of sugar in mosquito diets, but the manner of the effect seems to depend on the vectors, pathogens, and plants involved. Flight activity and flight range also are vulnerable to plant-sugar availability, and their unfettered performance is an implicit assumption of vectorial capacity, so they also are mentioned below. A related assumption is that host use is random, though evidence suggests otherwise. Finally, a factor in age-dependent models of vectorial capacity is the age at which blood feeding commences (Styer *et al.* 2007a), which relates directly to the blood/sugar feeding choices of young females, discussed under 'Obligatory or facultative nature of sugar feeding'.

Vector competence

Here, we consider vector competence to be the product of the vector's characteristics, which will determine the success rate of a particular parasite to infect that vector, to develop, and then to

be transmitted to the extrinsic host (Hardy *et al.* 1983). There is a gauntlet of challenges parasites must run in order to infect and develop in the vector. Both the efficiency with which they do so and the strength of the challenge they face may be altered by environmental conditions, such as plant-sugar availability and hence energetic reserves of vectors.

The main challenges parasites face in their vectors are exposure to the proteinases and trypsins present in the midgut environment after ingestion with blood. For parasites spending a long period here (such as *Plasmodium* spp.), coagulation of the blood bolus and concomitant formation of the peritrophic matrix interfere with infection. The main bottleneck, however, is associated with invasion of the midgut epithelial cells and passage through the basal lamina to the abluminal side of the midgut. It is at this point that certain *Plasmodium* spp. are subject to melanization (e.g. Chun *et al.* 1995). Further challenges from the insect immune system are faced by parasites during migration through the haemocoel to either the lumen of the salivary glands or the head region (Beerntsen *et al.* 2000). Here we provide an overview of the ways in which plant feeding may affect these processes, in particular focusing on direct toxic effects of plant material on the parasite while it is in the midgut environment, on the effect of energy status on the immune response of the vector, and on the vector's energetic reserves, which serve as a nutrient source for the metabolic demands of the parasite as well as the defenses of the vector. It may be difficult to tease apart whether energy is expended on repair, immune function, or a different drain caused by the parasite.

Toxic effects on Leishmania *and* Plasmodium

The most immediate way in which feeding on particular plants could affect vector competence is by an inhibition of the infection by compounds present in the plant. To date, the most compelling evidence for the occurrence of a toxic effect on a parasite resulting from plant feeding is that of mortality and agglutination of *Leishmania major* Yakimoff and Schokhor, the cause of zoonotic cutaneous leishmaniasis, after plant feeding by *Phlebotomus papatasi* Scopoli (Jacobsen and Schlein 1999, Schlein 1986, Schein and Jacobsen 1994). This widespread sand fly inhabits semi-arid regions of the Mediterranean and Middle East and appears to depend on plants, using both their floral nectar and their tissue juices. Some of the host plants provide lectins and toxins. That these cause either agglutination or lysis of the parasites within the sand flies' midguts (Jacobson and Schlein 1999) became evident when sand flies artificially infected with promastigotes were kept for 7 days with access to branches of various plant species or to honeydew secretions. Seventeen percent of females with honeydew had decreased infections, whereas 35-65% with plants had reduced infection loads, compared to a sucrose control. After feeding on *Capparis spinosa* L., *Ricinus communis* L., or *Solanum luteum* Mill. many parasites were agglutinated in clumps and had disintegrated organelles or other aberrations (Schlein and Jacobsen 1994). Extracts of certain plants agglutinated *Leishmania* parasites *in vitro*. The inhibition of this toxic effect in *in vitro* assays was prevented by the presence of various sugars (Jacobsen and Schlein 1999). This result and that of prior studies indicate that lectins prevalent in plants agglutinate promastigotes of *Leishmania* spp. (Davidowicz *et al.* 1975, Dwyer 1974, Jacobsen *et al.* 1982).

Additionally, drought-induced sugar shortages in plants can affect vector population size and parasite survival. With short rasping stylets, the sand flies can cut into healthy plant tissues and ingest sugars, starch granules, and cellulose particles. They generate amylase in their saliva and elsewhere to digest the starch to simple sugars, and the parasites generate both amylase and glucosidase, the latter being capable of both cleaving sucrose and partially digesting cellulose (Jacobson and Schlein 2001, Jacobson *et al.* 2001). The resulting sugars benefit both sand fly and

parasite. During the summer, the plants are stressed by high temperatures and lack of rain, and the plants produce much less sugar. This causes shortened sand fly lifespans, thereby greatly reducing reproduction and also curtailing the probability that a female will become infected by feeding on an infected rodent, survive long enough to allow the parasite to complete its extrinsic cycle, and then transmit it to uninfected rodents. This effect appears to be offset by the natural selection for deprivation-resistant sand flies, which live longer under these conditions. The increased drought tolerance also has the side-effect of weakening the sand flies' ability to eliminate their parasite infections (Schlein and Jacobson 2001).

Vector-produced lectins, proteins that bind with a parasite's structural carbohydrates important for invasion, are implicated in the outcome of several other pathogen-vector associations. For example, in *Ae. aegypti*, addition of N-acetyl-D-glucosamine to a blood meal containing the filarial nematode *Brugia pahangi* Buckley and Edeson facilitated migration of the microfilariae into the haemocoel, apparently because this sugar blocked the action of gut lectins (Ham *et al.* 1991). Unknown at this point is whether sugars with similar effects may be present in plant nectar. Sugar meals have been reported to either enhance or retard the development of malaria and filariasis parasites within mosquitoes (Basseri *et al.* 2008, Kelly and Edman 1997, Pumpuni *et al.* 1996, Samish and Akov 1972, Vaughan *et al.* 1994, Weathersby and Noblet 1973), but these effects and their mechanisms have not been investigated in depth. It also has been reported that exposure of *An. gambiae* to some attractive plant species, before or after an infectious meal, greatly curtails the production of *P. falciparum* oocysts (Manda *et al.* 2005, 2007c, and pers. comm. to W.A.F.). This suggests that, as in sand flies, plant feeding by mosquitoes can affect vector competence directly.

Effects of parasites on sugar feeding (metabolic demands)

Parasitic infection with filarial nematodes or *Plasmodium* spp. reduces mosquito fecundity (Hurd *et al.* 1995), suggesting that mosquitoes harbouring such infections bear a considerable cost. For instance, a reduced egg output as high as 33% has been reported for *Aedes trivitattus* Coquillett infected with *Dirofilaria immitis* Leidy (Christensen 1981). The exact mechanism may be difficult to pinpoint, because the costs can be mediated either by the metabolic demands of the parasite or by the immune response of the vector to the parasite (Tripet *et al.* 2008). In either case, plant-sugar feeding may play an important role in compensating for energetic losses due to infection. An example of a parasite-mediated cost is an increased susceptibility to infection with bacteria following *Plasmodium* ookinete penetration of the midgut epithelium and development of the oocyst between the basement membrane and basal lamina of the midgut. One such bacterium is *Serratia marcescens* Bizio, which mosquitoes may obtain from contaminated sugar wicks in insectaries, which, in conjunction with *Plasmodium* infection, increases mortality strongly (Maier *et al.* 1987). This necessitates efficient midgut repair of invaded epithelial cells. In *An. stephensi* repair begins a few hours after infection with *P. falciparum* through the activation of nitric oxide synthase, resulting in apoptosis or necrosis of the invaded cells, and their subsequent extrusion and replacement. Besides the direct energetic cost, this process uses arginine, a dietary requirement of egg production, thus suggesting a nutrient conflict between fecundity and immune response (Tripet *et al.* 2008).

Evidence that growing oocysts rely on the energetic reserves of the mosquito is scant and mostly indirect. *An. stephensi* Liston infected with *Plasmodium cynomolgi* Mayer have reduced flight capability, as measured by their distance flown, speed, and duration of flight. Furthermore, pre-flight weight between uninfected and infected females was different, indicating that this could be due to differential use of carbohydrate reserves. This is supported by the intriguing finding that

isolated midguts of *An. stephensi* infected with *P. cynomolgi* used up to 8 times more glucose than controls over a 2-hr period (Schiefer *et al.* 1977). Similarly, flight muscles of *An. atroparvus* infected with *Brugia patei* Buckley, Nelson and Heisch were relatively depleted of glucose, and significant incorporation of amino acids by the filarial nematode was observed (Simpson and Laurence 1979).

Several investigators have examined how meals taken by adult mosquitoes prior or subsequent to infectious blood meals affect establishment of infection and development of parasites. Kelly and Edman (1996) provided *Ae. aegypti* with either a sucrose solution or water before an infectious (*Plasmodium gallinaceum* Brumpt) blood meal, and sugar or additional blood meals afterward. Oocyst counts were highest in the group with water before, and sugar after, the infective blood meal, but there were no significant differences in sporozoite load. Infectivity rate was lowest for females that had no access to sugar but had access to additional blood meals after infection, suggesting either that a lack of nutrients from sugar negatively affects parasite establishment or that subsequent blood meals and increased enzymatic activity in the midgut interferes with oocyst development. Vaughan *et al.* (1994), indeed, showed that the accelerated blood-meal digestion resulting from prior blood feeding in *An. gambiae* had a detrimental effect on the production of *P. falciparum* oocysts. Mosquitoes with access only to sugar developed the most oocysts, those with two prior blood meals the least. And this was evident only when ookinete abundance was low. However, when *An. gambiae* was fed blood from human volunteers naturally infected with *P. falciparum*, a different result was found (Okech *et al.* 2004). Mosquitoes that had two prior blood meals (4 days apart) had a higher infection rate than those with one blood meal or only a 10% glucose solution, but oocyst loads did not differ between treatments. Whether females were kept with sugar or just water for the first 2 days after emergence did not affect infection rates. The concentration of sucrose solutions provided to *Culex pipiens pipiens* L. did not affect susceptibility to West Nile virus, but a higher proportion of females transmitted the virus when low-concentration sucrose was available (Vaidyanathan *et al.* 2008).

Effects of energy state on the immune (melanization) response

A robust body of work exists on the insect melanization of parasites, a specialized component of the immune response that sometimes occurs during filarial nematode and *Plasmodium* infections. In a *Plasmodium*-refractory strain of *An. gambiae* (Collins *et al.* 1986) late ookinetes/early oocysts are readily encapsulated and melanized, and negatively charged C-25 Sephadex beads, when injected, elicit a very similar response. Due to the straightforward nature of this method for quantifying the level of response (the proportion of Sephadex beads melanized and the degree of melanization), and its proposed value as a general model for the strength of the immune response (Schwarz and Koella 2002), it can offer precise insights into the interactions between mosquito diet, energetic reserves, and immunity. Additionally, as with midgut repair in response to infection, the involvement of limiting resources besides energy reserves hints at an immunity-reproduction trade-off. For instance, l-tyrosine, an amino-acid precursor of melanin involved with egg-chorion tanning, might be diverted to melanization of a parasite. A case in point is *Armigeres subalbatus* Coquillett, which when challenged with *Brugia malayi* Brug experiences a delay of oviposition (Ferdig *et al.* 1993). Both the aforementioned arginine and tyrosine occur in nectar (e.g. in *Lantana camara* L. (Vrzal *et al.* 2010)), and thus it is plausible that nectar feeding positively mediates such trade-offs.

A number of studies have looked into factors such as age, prior adult diet, and larval nutrition on the efficacy of the adult melanization response, and they are briefly summarized here. In *Plasmodium*-susceptible or refractory laboratory strains of *An. gambiae*, melanization of C-25

beads was highest the day after emergence, and then dropped rapidly. In the two days following a blood meal, melanization was elevated in comparison to non-blood-fed mosquitoes of the same age in the refractory strain, whereas blood feeding had a negligible role in the response of susceptible mosquitoes (Chun *et al.* 1995). In the refractory strain, melanization decreased with increasing temperature and with restricted larval diet (Suwanchaichinda and Paskewitz 1998). In *Ae. aegypti,* melanization was positively correlated with age at pupation and with body size (Koella and Boëte 2002). This contrasts with the finding that *Ae. aegypti* refractory to *P. gallinaceum* had shorter development times and smaller body sizes than susceptible mosquitoes (Yan *et al.* 1997). Possibly, a different aspect of the immune response was involved in the latter study, which would indicate that nutritional status does not uniformly affect the immunocompetence of vectors. Body size did not affect melanization in *An. stephensi*, but adult diet did (Koella and Sørensen 2002). If females had taken a blood meal one day prior to being injected with a bead, the likelihood of complete melanization went up with increased concentration of the available sugar solution. However, if females had not obtained blood prior to injection, the proportion of females that completely melanized their beads did not depend on sucrose concentration. This suggests that to mount an effective immune response, females must feed from a high-quality sugar source to augment the energy and nutrients obtained from a blood meal.

An age-dependent aspect of the melanization-promoting effects of sugar and blood meals also has been found, both in laboratory and field-collected *An. gambiae* (Schwartz and Koella 2002). The strength of the melanization response decreased over the first 4 days of life. For very young females, an increase in glucose concentration increased melanization, but by 4 days this was no longer the case, and instead only a blood meal increased the immune response. Both the proportion of females melanizing beads and the intensity of their response was higher in field-collected specimens. Those with longer wings had a higher likelihood of carrying oocysts, and weak glucose solutions did not affect whether oocysts developed. Few females had melanized oocysts, suggesting that melanization is irrelevant for certain natural vector-malaria interactions. The authors concluded that sugar feeding by *An. gambiae* does not affect the immune response significantly, because young females will rely mostly on teneral reserves and older females on blood meals. However, this may be a premature conclusion if studies in laboratory cages misrepresent energetic expenditures in the field or if females that include sugar in their diet experience energetic increases over multiple gonotrophic cycles.

Clearly, the immune response is energetically costly, and there is limited evidence that this, rather than the metabolic demands of developing parasites, is the main metabolic burden borne by infected vectors. For instance, in the black fly *Simulium ornatum* Meigen infection with *Onchocerca lienalis* Stiles reduced ovarian vitellin contents by half, 36 hr after infection. Because this occurred even at very low levels of infection, it would seem that a costly immune response, rather than energetic drain by the parasite, is competing with fecundity (Hurd *et al.* 1995). Additionally, Rivero and Ferguson (2003) tested whether *Plasmodium*-infected *An. stephensi* females depleted their energetic reserves more rapidly than uninfected females. Levels of whole-body glycogen and lipid did not differ, but glucose amounts were much higher in females with developing oocysts. However, the number of oocysts present did not influence the amount of glucose, suggesting that *An. stephensi* increases its sugar intake when infected, irrespective of the infection load. A cost of infection unrelated to oocyst burden also was found for *An. stephensi* infected with two genotypes of *Plasmodium chabaudi* (Ferguson and Read 2002). Under conditions of sugar deprivation one clone *of P. chabaudi* was more virulent in the mosquito, despite producing a significantly lower oocyst burden than the other clone or a mixed infection. With *ad libitum* glucose, a mixed infection had the highest survivorship cost, and there was no difference between the single infections.

Virulence of different parasite genotypes therefore was concluded to depend on environmental circumstances (i.e. presence of sugar). Lambrechts *et al.* (2006) investigated how *An. stephensi* genotype and environmental conditions (differences in weak glucose solutions exposed on wicks) affected infection with *yoelii yoelii*. Infection rates did not differ among mosquito lines or glucose treatments, but, surprisingly, the number of oocysts was greater with access to 4% glucose than with 2% or 6%. Additionally, infected mosquitoes suffered higher mortality at low glucose concentrations than uninfected females did.

As indicated by the sometimes contradictory findings above, the manner in which sugar intake influences immunocompetence, infection rates, infection loads, and virulence is complex. The main point is that the parasite-vector relationship, and therefore possibly disease transmission in a given area, is highly specific to mosquito genotypes, parasite genotypes, sugar availability, and sometimes to sugar-by-genotype interactions. It is therefore important to place mosquito immune responses in an environmental context, and one aspect of environment (differing both geographically and seasonally) is the presence and abundance of attractive nectariferous plants. Thorough studies on natural host-parasite systems under semi-field conditions will be required before plant-vector-parasite relations can be elucidated and generalized.

Survival

Minor decreases in daily survivorship of adult mosquitoes result in stark declines in vectorial capacity. It is therefore vital to know how survival depends on an environmental factor that has not been taken into account in epidemiological models, namely the composition of the plant community. Few field studies have considered how different nectar sources and their presence affect mosquito longevity; most have been performed in laboratory or semi-field settings, whose results require careful extrapolation to the field. A focus of laboratory investigations has been the difference in survivorship of mosquitoes on diets of sugar and blood or on blood only.

Clements and Paterson (1981) reanalyzed survival data of mosquitoes and concluded that the common assumption of constant mortality throughout life rarely holds. Therefore, Mcdonald's (1957) malaria model assumption, that mosquito senescence in nature either does not occur or is entirely overshadowed by high daily mortality, also may not hold. Instead, a more realistic value for survival may be derived from a non-linear function, so that the probability of death increases at advanced age.

This is particularly relevant to vectorial capacity, because the age at which a female takes an infected blood meal then affects the probability of her living through the extrinsic incubation period. Models have been proposed that take this into account (Dawes *et al.* 2009, Rasgon *et al.* 2003, Styer *et al.* 2007a). Furthermore, different age-dependent mortality functions produce very different vectorial capacity outcomes. For example, a Gompertz model, where mortality increases exponentially after a certain stage, contrasts sharply with a logistic model, where mortality of older individuals decreases, resulting in a small but highly infective proportion of old mosquitoes (Carey 2001, Dawes *et al.* 2009). While it is established that sugar feeding increases longevity, equally important may be whether mortality of females with sugar in their diet is best described by a function that differs from that of females feeding on blood only. For *Ae. aegypti,* Styer *et al.* (2007a) found that this was not the case. Mortality functions best fit a logistic decline, whether the females had sugar only, blood only, or both. Okech *et al.* (2004) found that female *An. gambiae* kept on blood only senesced faster than females with access to sugar as well.

To date, few studies have delved into the survivorship of mosquitoes when allowed to feed on different natural plants, and these have mostly focused on the malaria vector *An. gambiae*. This is an oversight, given the wealth of knowledge concerning many non-vector taxa on how strongly plants differ in nectar rewards and secondary compounds, and how pollinators respond to plant cues and make use of these resources (Goulson 1999). As a result, basic behavioural investigations on the nectar-foraging behaviour of medically and veterinarily important taxa are just beginning. We do not know whether foraging vectors ignore certain plants, whether responses to plant volatiles are fixed or affected by individual experience, and whether certain vegetation types provide inadequate amounts of nectar.

First steps in this direction were cage studies of *An. gambiae* sugar intake and longevity, comparing cuttings of plant species that occurred in their natural habitat. Gary and Foster (2004) found that overnight females were mostly able to obtain sugar in comparable amounts from honeydew, castor bean (*R. communis*), and cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz), whereas on lantana and on castor bean with the extra-floral nectaries covered there were no sugar-positive mosquitoes. Despite the similar amounts of sugar taken from honeydew, castor bean and cassava, mean survival times differed significantly, suggesting that other aspects of nectar composition affected mosquitoes. In a similar study, only castor bean increased survival to an extent comparable to a 6% sucrose control. Lantana and sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatus* Lam.) resulted in high percentages of sugar positive mosquitoes, but extended survival by an average of only one day over a water-only diet, likely due to the low amounts of sugar obtained. Access to one species (*Amaranthus hybridus* L.) resulted in a slightly worse survival than a water-only treatment (Impoinvil *et al.* 2004).

The sugar- and amino-acid composition of both floral or extra-floral nectar varies among plants and may influence survival of mosquitoes. Yet, how they do so has been studied only in laboratory settings. For example, Vrzal *et al.* (2010) assessed the effect of amino acids on survival of *Culex quinquefasciatus* Say males and females by adding certain amino acids to water or to a mixed sugar solution based on lantana nectar. Although adding amino acids to water did not increase survival, adding these amino acids to the sugar solution increased survival by 5% for females, but not males. Andersson (1992) tested longevity of female *Aedes communis* de Geer of different sizes and with access to different concentrations of sucrose or fructose. No difference in longevity was found between sucrose and fructose solutions, but the mean time of survival was shorter on 10% solutions than on the higher concentrations. Likewise, Fernandes and Briegel (2005) found that *An. gambiae* and *An. atroparvus* survived longest on 5-10% solutions, whereas Briegel *et al.* (2001) reported a linear relationship between sugar concentration and survival in *Ae. aegypti*, with 50% sucrose giving longest survival.

These results strongly suggest that mosquitoes should be discriminating in their plant feeding. That this is indeed the case was demonstrated by observing how frequently mosquitoes rested, probed, and fed on a group of thirteen different plant species in one large cage, and what percentage of mosquitoes had detectable sugar in the crop the morning after exposure to these plants. Based on these parameters, plants could fairly consistently be placed in preferred or non-preferred categories (Manda *et al.* 2007a). When the survival and fecundity of females feeding on these plants was evaluated (Manda *et al.* 2007b), of the plants that were consistently favoured by females, only *Parthenium hysterophorus* Buckl. did not significantly extend survival beyond that of a water-only control. After one blood meal, fecundity of females having fed on *P. hysterophorus* and lantana was less than that of those on the other plants, but after three consecutive blood meals there were no differences in fecundity.

Survival of female mosquitoes and sand flies allowed only blood meals, typically offered once a day, compared to those offered both blood and *ad libitum* sugar solution, has been thoroughly explored for a limited number of species, usually in laboratory cages. Sugar promoted survival of females in nearly every study (recent references: Bowen and Romo 1995b, Braks *et al.* 2006, Canyon *et al.* 1999, Costero *et al.* 1998, Day *et al.* 1994, Fernandes and Briegel 2005, Gary and Foster 2001, Kelly and Edman 1997, Manda *et al.* 2008, Okech *et al.* 2003, Schlein and Jacobson 1999, Straif and Beier 1996, Styer *et al.* 2007a, Xue *et al.* 2008, 2010). In some studies the effect of sugar deprivation on survival may have been exacerbated by restricted access to blood (Okech *et al.* 2003, Souza-Neto *et al.* 2007). Most studies indicate that survival on a mixed sugar-and-blood diet is greater than on sugar alone (Styer *et al.* 2007a, Xue *et al.* 2008, 2010), though Joy *et al.* (2010) found that lifespan was increased by restricted access to blood, so that female *Ae. aegypti* offered one blood meal or none lived longer than females offered blood once a week.

Biting frequency

As noted above, nearly all studies indicate that sugar availability reduces mosquito blood-feeding frequency. The most recent investigations confirm that sugar deprivation tends to promote blood feeding or makes females more responsive to host stimuli or less deterred by repellents (Bowen and Romo 1995a,b, Bowen *et al.* 1995, Braks *et al.* 2006, Canyon *et al.* 1999, Fernandez and Klowden 1995, Gary and Foster 2001, Renshaw *et al.* 1995, Takken *et al.* 1998, Xue and Barnard 1999, 2008). This effect probably is the manifestation of one or more of these phenomena: (a) crop sugar raises the threshold of responsiveness to blood-host stimuli, (b) a large energy reserve depresses the need for supplemental blood feeding during blood digestion, and (c) either crop sugar or a large energy reserve reduces activity and consequently delays oviposition, thus retarding the initiation of each new gonotrophic cycle. The overall result, taken by itself, suggests that the absence of sugar sources increases vectorial capacity. However, all of these studies were conducted in the laboratory, where abnormal amounts and frequencies of sugar ingestion may prolong the interval between blood meals. Field evidence for sugar's depressing effect is equivocal. *Aedes provocans* Walker females with large amounts of sugar generally were at rest, those with moderate meals were biting, and those with small meals were nectar feeding (Smith and Gadawski 1994). Resting *Anopheles freeborni* Aitken more often contained plant sugar than those seeking blood hosts (Holliday-Hanson *et al.* 1997), similar to earlier field work on salt marsh mosquitoes by Magnarelli (1978, 1979, 1980). Female *Ae. aegypti* released after receiving both *ad lib* sugar and replete blood meals completed their gonotrophic cycles 2 days later than those receiving only blood (Morrison *et al.* 1999). An exceptional result was reported by Gu *et al.* (2011), who found that *An. sergentii* in an oasis with a prominent sugar source had shorter gonotrophic cycles over much longer life spans than a population at a similar oasis without that sugar source. A similar conclusion was drawn from field data by Gadawski and Smith (1992). However, in the latter case preliminary sugar meals probably were necessary simply to hasten sexual maturation and initiate the blood-feeding mode.

Energetic reserves resulting from larval feeding may affect biting rates in different ways than those resulting from sugar feeding. For instance, mosquitoes emerging from nutritionally poor larval sites typically are smaller and show reduced host responsiveness. Thus, low energetic levels initially may favour sugar feeding and depress biting rates. On the other hand, small females often require an additional blood meal to bring their ovaries to the pre-vitellogenic resting stage. It has been suggested for both *An. gambiae* and *Ae. aegypti* that energetic deficits are compensated by supplementary blood meals. Such additional, gonotrophically discordant, blood meals increase vectorial capacity. The relative importance of both reduced host-responsiveness and the need for supplemental blood meals thus has implications for the effect of body size on vectorial capacity.

To elucidate, we will review the effects of sugar feeding and energetic reserves on components of biting rate: host responsiveness, pre-vitellogenic and supplementary meals, oviposition delay, and biting persistence.

Host responsiveness

Several studies have investigated the initiation of responsiveness to blood hosts in poorly nourished mosquitoes. Female *Ae. aegypti*, reared on a low diet, showed a weaker response to a host odour than did those on a standard diet (Klowden *et al.* 1988). Access to a 1% or a 10% sucrose solution did not mitigate this weakness. *Aedes bahamensis* Dyar and Knab developed sensitivity to blood hosts faster if they received more nutrition as larvae (Bowen and Romo 1995b). Initiation of host-seeking in *Aedes cantans* Meigen and *Aedes punctor* Kirby was related to accumulated lipid reserves, either through larval feeding or nectar feeding. Whereas *Ae. cantans* would not take a blood meal before 192 hr post-emergence, *Ae. punctor* synthesizes lipids more rapidly and was willing to blood feed after 48 hr (Renshaw *et al.* 1995).

Wing lengths of newly emerged *An. gambiae* were smaller than those of the host-seeking population in the field (Lyimo and Takken 1993), suggesting that a substantial portion of small females dies between emergence and host location, or never expresses host-seeking behaviour. Takken *et al.* (1998) found that responsiveness of large and small females to a human hand in an olfactometer increased similarly over the course of 6 days, but large-bodied females were always more responsive, despite access to 10% sucrose to both size classes. Similar body-size differences in olfactometer performance during attraction to a sugar source one day after emergence have been observed (Foster and Takken 2004). These results indicate that small-bodied females are debilitated by more than just a small energy reserve.

Supplementary blood meals and ovarian development

The taking of multiple blood meals per gonotrophic cycle has most notably been observed and linked to the vector status of *Ae. aegypti* and *An. gambiae* (Beier 1996, Norris *et al.* 2010, Scott *et al.* 1993). Multiple blood meals may be taken by very young gonoinactive females as 'pre-gravid' meals, typically in small females that developed in nutritionally poor larval habitats (Feinsod and Spielman 1980, Lyimo and Takken 1993) or may be taken later in life, either as supplementary meals (e.g. Foster and Eischen 1987) or as primary meals that initiate overlapping gonotrophic cycles (Briegel and Hörler 1993). The influence of teneral reserves and reserves accumulated through sugar feeding on either type of multiple feeding may be different. For instance, female *Ae. aegypti* kept with *ad libitum* sugar show host-seeking inhibition during oogenesis (Klowden and Lea 1979), but this is not the case when lacking sugar (Klowden 1986), as a large proportion of gravid females then continues to seek a host. This depressing effect of sugar is also reflected in biting rates. For example, *Ae. aegypti* kept with only water had a higher biting rate, explained mainly by an increased frequency of supplementary feeding, than did females kept with honey. The opposite effect occurred in *Anopheles quadrimaculatus* Say when kept on water. These females had a supplementary feeding rate almost equal to those on honey, but a higher total biting rate, likely due to the absence of a variable delay in oviposition caused by honey feeding (Foster and Eischen 1987). Supplementary feeding appears to be more common among some tropical anophelines, perhaps used as a tactic to compensate for a smaller blood meal capacity and low teneral reserves, with additional meals increasing fecundity and maternal deposits (Briegel and Hörler 1993). In *An. gambiae*, sugar availability after blood feeding does not inhibit the host-seeking response in the same way as it does for *Ae. aegypti*. While the response to a host was

inhibited for 12 hr following a blood meal, after 24 and 48 hr females showed no sign of inhibition (Klowden and Briegel 1994). Straif and Beier (1996) found that it was only the older females (>20 days) that showed an increased biting rate when kept in the absence of sugar. That was not due to an increase in biting rate with age, but rather to a subgroup of the sugar-deprived females, which fed more often and therefore survived longer.

Female body size does not appear to affect this sugar-dependent biting inhibition, or its absence, prior to oviposition, because gravid females reared under either standard or deficient larval conditions, then kept with sugar, do not respond to hosts (Klowden *et al.* 1988). Thus, either body size has no impact on the tendency toward supplementary blood meals later in life, or the energy deficit required to lower the host-seeking inhibition can be compensated by sugar feeding. This does not rule out the possibility that small females without sugar may take more supplementary blood meals. In the field, Scott *et al.* (2000) found a negative relationship between wing length and blood-feeding rate of *Ae. aegypti* in Thailand, but not in Puerto Rico. Geographic variation in gonotrophic discordance is also apparent among anophelines (Beier 1996, Norris *et al.* 2010). Multiple feeding appeared to be more common in a highland site in western Kenya in *An. gambiae s.s.* and *An. funestus* (14, 11%) than in a lowland site (0, 2%) (Scott *et al.* 2006). The cause of such differences is unknown, but may involve local population adaptation, nutrition, temperature, or all three.

Smaller, nutritionally deprived *An. gambiae* females often require one or two additional blood meals before their primary ovarian follicles reach the (gonoactive) resting stage. It is not entirely clear whether sugar feeding can make up for this nutrient deficit, and how size and sugar feeding influence biting tendencies at this time. Takken *et al.* (1998) showed that despite their lower responsiveness to hosts, small females are in great need of blood. Small females, despite access to sugar, did not reach the resting stage without a blood meal, whereas 52% of large females did. In another study, sugar was able to substitute for a non-vitellogenic blood meal. With sugar, females of all sizes were able to mature eggs with just one blood meal (Fernandes and Briegel 2005).

In summary, while small female mosquitoes may have an increased need for blood meals soon after emergence to make up for energetic deficits, their decreased sugar-and-blood-host-seeking capabilities interfere with this, resulting in a higher probability of feeding on sugar, if sugar is more accessible. Sugar feeding inhibits supplementary feeding in some species, but does not do so in *Anopheles*. Finally, small size may increase the tendency to take supplemental blood meals during later gonotrophic cycles, but this is not yet established.

Delay of oviposition

De Meillon *et al.* (1967) discovered that access to cane sugar resulted in erratic and delayed oviposition by *Culex pipiens*. Likewise, inseminated female *Aedes vexans* Meigen with access to sugar spread their oviposition over a slightly longer period, more often failed to oviposit, and retained a greater number of eggs (Shroyer and Sanders 1977). Increased amounts of egg retention by females given access to sugar after blood feeding also was reported for *Anopheles nuneztovari* Gabaldón (Lounibos and Conn 1991). Klowden and Dutro (1990) found that sugar feeding reduced the responsiveness of *Ae. aegypti* to oviposition-site stimuli and this inhibition was greater at higher concentrations of sugar. This effect was attributed to reduced flight activity of sugar-fed mosquitoes. However, it is plausible that the delayed oviposition when sugar is abundant may be an adaptive response to a favourable energy state, i.e. females with a greater flight range and higher prospects for survival may be more selective in their choice of oviposition

sites and distribution of eggs among them. Females that are close to starvation may readily accept oviposition sites of lesser quality. For example, Tsunoda *et al.* (2010), investigating the effects of body size and sugar access on skip oviposition by *Ae. aegypti*, found that sugar delayed the time between blood feeding and peak oviposition and stretched out the period of egg-laying. Additionally, both larger and sugar-fed females oviposited higher above the water surface and oviposited in a greater number of cups over the course of 8 days. An advantage of this behaviour is that hatching of larvae will be more varied in space and time, a bet-hedging tactic.

Persistence

A special aspect of blood feeding that also is influenced by plant sugar is a vector's persistence at a host. Persistence probably has some bearing on the interval between successful blood meals or infectious bites. Differences in persistence in obtaining a primary blood meal have been detected in mosquitoes that differ in their energetic state as a result of access to sugar. It is not always clear whether this is an effect of sugar in the crop, energy reserves in the fat body, haemolymph, and flight muscles, or all of them. Attack duration declined with repeated attacks by *Aedes triseriatus* Say and *Ae. aegypti,* but it declined more rapidly in females without sugar (Walker and Edman 1985, Nasci 1991). In an *An. gambiae* study that distinguished between persistence (time elapsed before resting on a wall for more than 3 min) and attack number (number of host landings per second), only the number of attacks depended on energy state (Roitberg *et al.* 2010). Females never deprived of sugar had the highest number of attacks. The number of attacks was lowest in those deprived one day and somewhat higher at 2 days, suggesting that feeding tactics vary in a non-linear way with changing energy status. Whether these effects influence biting frequency over multiple gonotrophic cycles remains to be examined.

Reproduction and population density

Effects of sugar feeding and energetic reserves on fecundity

The importance of sugar feeding to a vector's reproduction has been evaluated primarily by laboratory studies, though field experiments are gaining prominence. We follow the definition of fecundity as the number of gametes produced by an individual over its lifetime, and fertility as the number of viable offspring produced (Clements 1992). The latter would be affected by factors such as egg retention, viability, and fertilization, whereas fecundity, which we consider here, is simply the number of mature eggs developed.

Blood meals are used both for vitellogenesis and extra-ovarian reserves (Briegel 1990). The proportion used for oogenesis differs with female body size, suggesting flexibility in the allocation of nutrients. When females are close to starvation or emerge with low teneral reserves, they prioritize synthesizing extra-ovarian reserves. With higher energy levels, a greater investment in vitellogenesis is possible. Increasing lipid reserves by carbohydrate feeding should thus increase egg-batch size of females. Laboratory experiments have demonstrated that female mosquitoes with access to sugar usually produce more eggs per gonotrophic cycle (Briegel *et al.* 2002, Foster and Eischen 1987, Harrington *et al.* 2001, Manda *et al.* 2007a, Mostowy and Foster 2004, Gary and Foster unpublished data). Among first-cycle autogenous species there are exceptions to sugar's positive effect on egg-batch size (e.g. Telang and Wells 2004). The timing of sugar feeding also matters. *An. nuneztovari* that had continuous access to sugar or were deprived of it after blood feeding did not differ in their total fecundity (Lounibos and Conn 1991), indicating that feeding on sugar after a blood meal has little effect on egg production during that gonotrophic cycle.

But some mosquitoes may rely heavily on sugar feeding during vitellogenesis. For instance, *Ae. communis* females lacking access to sugar after a blood meal failed to develop follicles to Christopher's stage V (Andersson 1992).

Directly after taking a sugar meal, a female's distended crop will compete for abdominal space with the midgut's future blood meal, resulting in a smaller blood meal. Because blood-meal size correlates with fecundity, the contribution of sugar feeding to fecundity will depend on the digestion rate and the interval between the sugar and blood meals. This was shown for *Ae. aegypti*, where females with high levels of energy reserves, but with an empty crop, had the highest fecundity, and females with low reserves but a full crop the lowest fecundity. Females with high reserves and a full crop or low reserves but an empty crop had similar, intermediate fecundities. Only in low-reserve females with empty crops was the conversion of blood into eggs considerably less efficient. Thus, in sugar-deprived females fecundity appears to be limited by energy levels, whereas in sugar-fed females fecundity appears to be limited mostly by blood-meal size (Mostowy and Foster 2004).

Fitness

A case has been made, based on the infrequency of sugar feeding and high proportions of supplementary blood meals taken by the anthropophilic species *Ae. aegypti* and *An. gambiae,* that sugar is an inconsequential component of their diet where human hosts are common, and that females optimize their fitness by feeding exclusively on blood. This strict interpretation does not necessarily follow from field data showing low levels of fructose positivity, because sugar may be taken more frequently farther away from indoor sampling sites or during times of stringency. Even if sugar feeding is indeed uncommon in the field, it is not necessarily unimportant: the reproductive success of females that seldom feed on sugar may be higher than that of females that never do so (Ma and Roitberg 2008). Otherwise, it would imply these mosquitoes either are not behaving optimally (i.e. they make mistakes), or the selective pressures toward a blood-only diet are operating, but exclusive blood feeding has not yet reached fixation in certain populations.

Here, we briefly define the measures of fitness that encompass several life history parameters that are affected by sugar feeding. The most commonly used measure of fitness is Fisher's Malthusian parameter, r, the intrinsic rate of increase. For age-structured populations r is obtained by solving the characteristic equation (Roff 1992):

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-rx}\, l(x)\, m(x)\, dx = 1$$

where $l(x)$ is the proportion of the cohort alive at age x, and $m(x)$ the production of female offspring at age x. Charlesworth (1994) described this as an adequate measure of fitness in the case of weak selection and random mating with respect to age in density-independent and constant environments. If r is close to zero (the population is stationary), the use of R_0 may be justified. R_0, the net reproductive rate, is the expected number of female offspring produced by a female over her lifetime:

$$R_0 = \sum_0^\infty l(x)\, m(x)$$

It has been argued that in order for R_0 to be a useful indicator of fitness, the growth rate of the population should not just average to zero, but actually be zero (i.e. it would not be a suitable measure for fluctuating populations) and therefore is better seen as one component of fitness

(Caswell 2002). In environments that are not constant (e.g. alternating 'good' or 'bad' years, or seasons) the geometric mean of the finite rate of increase has been proposed as the most accurate indicator of fitness (Roff 1992).

Whether females of anthropophilic mosquitoes have a greater or lesser fitness with access to blood exclusively, or to blood and also *ad libitum* access to sugar, has been the subject of several studies. An overview of these, and of how including sugar in the diet affects different fitness parameters, is given in Table 1. Most studies report values for daily survival (l_x) and fecundity (m_x), and fitness measures r and R_0. The only published life-table data for *An. gambiae s.s.* to date reported that both r and R_0 were slightly higher in cages without sugar (Gary and Foster 2001). Braks *et al.* (2006), comparing *Ae. albopictus* to *Ae. aegypti*, found a similar response to the diets in both species. All other studies we are aware of have focused on *Ae. aegypti*. While there is a general consensus that survival is increased when sugar is available, and daily fecundity is decreased, not all studies bear this out. In one, survivorship decreased when females could feed on sugar (Scott *et al.* 1997), and others reported no significant differences between the diets (Canyon *et al.* 1999, Naksathit and Scott 1998). Styer *et al.* (2007b) found no difference in survival when females were housed individually, but an increase with sugar when kept in cages of 200. Harrington *et al.* (2001) found that the outcome depended on the blood source, i.e. with human blood, sugar access made no difference, but with mouse blood, survivorship increased with sugar availability.

The effect of sugar feeding on daily fecundity was mostly negative in these studies, with some exceptions (Day *et al.* 1994, Scott *et al.* 1997). When blood was offered daily, Styer *et al.* (2007b) found no difference in the daily egg production of females offered blood or both sugar and blood. When blood was offered every 2 days, however, females with access to sugar had a significantly lower daily number of offspring. This may have been due to increased reliance on sugar feeding – the infrequency of blood having resulted in missed opportunities to blood feed or the ingestion of smaller blood volumes.

The net reproductive rate, R_0, was lower for *Ae. aegypti* females with access to sugar in the majority of these studies. Braks *et al.* (2006) and Day *et al.* (1994) reported no difference in this parameter. The only study in which sugar increased R_0 occurred when females were housed in cages together, instead of individually (Styer *et al.* 2007b). Crowding may have increased levels of disturbance, causing more flight activity and energy consumption. Whether those conditions are a better reflection of the stress factors faced in a more natural setting is debatable. The intrinsic rate of increase most often decreased when sugar was available. Costero *et al.* (1998) reported different results for cool and hot seasons in Puerto Rico. During the hot season females feeding only on blood had the advantage, whereas there was no difference in r during the cool season. In crowded cages r was higher when females had daily access to sugar and blood, but, counterintuitively, lower when they had access to blood every 2 days (Styer *et al.* 2007b).

The general impression is that in the laboratory the prolonged life of a sugar- and human-fed female is often insufficient to offset sugar's negative effect on lifetime fecundity in these anthropophilic species. On the face of it, the depressing effect of sugar on long-term fecundity means that natural selection should favour the absence of sugar feeding in these females. This selection should be particularly strong in species lacking a quiescent egg stage (i.e. are unable to accumulate offspring in an 'egg bank' and engage in installment hatching after receiving hatching stimuli), during periods of population growth. Quiescent eggs occur in *Ae. aegypti* and other aedines, but only to a very limited extent in *An. gambiae* and other anophelines. Therefore, anophelines should take full advantage of opportunities for unrestricted reproduction during

Table 1. Summary of published effects of a blood and sugar diet, compared to blood-only diet, on fitness components of mosquitoes.

Study	Species	Setting	Sugar solution % (*ad libitum*)	Blood host	Blood host availability/d	Biting rate	Survival (L_x)	Fecundity (M_x)	R_0	r	Comments
Straif and Beier 1996	*An. gambiae*	Glass jar, individually	10% (all ♀'s for 1st 4 days)	Mouse	15 min	↓ (1)	↑	–	–	–	(1) only for oldest age group
Gary and Foster 2001	*An. gambiae s.s.*	Cage, individual & pooled	10% (all ♀'s for 1st 2 days)	Human	10 min	↓ (1)	↑	↓	↓ (2)	↓	Vectorial capacity ↓ (1) difference bigger in older ♀'s (2) slightly?
Scott *et al.* 1997	*Ae. aegypti*	Cage, individual, ambient	10%	Human	10 min	–	↓	↔	↓	↓	
Braks *et al.* 2006	*Ae. albopictus* and *Ae. aegypti*	Cage, individually	10%	Human	10 min	↓	↑	↓	↔	–	Same response for both species
Naksathit and Scott 1998	*Ae. aegypti*	Cage, individually	10%	Human	10 min	–	↔	↓	↓	↓	Same pattern for large & small ♀'s
Harrington *et al.* 2001	*Ae. aegypti*	Cage, individually	20%	(1) Human (2) Mouse	15 min	(3)	(1) ↔ (2) ↑	↓? (3)	↓? (3)	↓?	(3) no statistics provided
Styer *et al.* 2007	*Ae. aegypti*	Cage, 200 ♀ + ♂'s	10%	Human	(1) 15 min every other day (2) 10 min	–	↑	(1) ↓ (2) ↔	(1) ↑ (2) ↑	(1) ↓ (2) ↑	
		individually			10 min (?)	–	↔	↓	↓	NM?	
Costero *et al.* 1998	*Ae. aegypti*	Cage, individually, ambient	10%	Human	10 min	– (?)	↑	↓	↓	(1) ↔ (2) ↓	(1) cool season (2) hot season
Day *et al.* 1994	*Ae. aegypti*	Cage, 200 ♀ + 200 ♂'s	2%	Chicken	2 hrs	–	↑ (1)	↔	↔	–	(1) mean LT_{50} & LT_{90}
Canyon *et al.* 1999	*Ae. aegypti*	Specimen vial, 5 ♀, 1 ♂	3% & 10%	Human	10 min, 4×	↓	↔	↓	–	–	High levels of egg retention, exp. stopped at 12 d

Arrows refer to the effect on parameter by including sugar in the diet compared to blood only: ↓ = decrease; ↑ = increase; ↔ = no difference; – = not measured.

periods of population growth, by feeding only on blood. Yet, they do feed on sugar, both in the lab and in the field.

Perhaps the main critical question about these studies is whether the conditions were representative of those faced by mosquitoes in nature. A mark-release-recapture experiment in Puerto Rico, where female *Ae. aegypti* were kept either with blood only or with blood + sugar for 5 days, then released, did support the general hypothesis that anthropophilic females should rarely feed on sugar (Morrison *et al.* 1999). However, additional validation would be useful, as in this study values for *r* and R_0 were not obtained, fecundity was assessed for only one gonotrophic cycle, and survival was assessed for just 5 days. Possibly the difference in environment between nature and laboratory cages does not matter, but the higher energetic expenditures and greater risk of mortality associated with real situations – evident even in mesocosm-vs.-cage comparisons (Stone *et al.* 2009, 2011) – could enhance the reproductive success of females that do take sugar. In small spaces, flight energy may be consumed at a lower rate, reducing demand for sugar, yet sugar is encountered incidentally but frequently in cages and ingested after stimulatory contact. Excessive sugar feeding may exacerbate its negative effects on the volume of blood meals, the frequency of blood feeding, and prompt oviposition. More intangible aspects need further study, too, including location of higher quality oviposition sites (Tsunoda *et al.* 2010), mate choice (Stone *et al.* 2011), and maternal effects (Fernandes and Briegel, 2005).

In zoophilic species, whether aedine, culicine, or anopheline, the reduced-survival penalty of relying on blood as the sole source of energy appears to be much greater. Though not well documented, the ability of blood (either human or animal) to sustain life in the absence of sugar appears to be much poorer in these animal-feeding mosquitoes (Fernandes and Briegel 2005, Nayar and Sauerman 1971, Wittie 2003), probably because they are less able to cope with the costs of protein catabolism.

Male insemination capacity and competitiveness

Males often are completely overlooked in studies of nutrition's effects on survival and reproduction. But interest in the biology of male mosquitoes has increased, largely related to concerns about the competitiveness of sterile or genetically manipulated males compared to wild-type males. Experience has shown that competitiveness can be a pitfall for genetic control programs (Reisen 2004).

Due to the commonly held assumption that in polygynous species – in which the operational sex ratio of male to female will be high (Emlen and Oring 1977) – all females will become inseminated, repercussions of male mating behaviour on population dynamics have not been well studied. Assuming that males can inseminate multiple females, regardless of food intake, probably adds to this neglect. A recent review of entomological field studies reports that mating failure of females in nature is common (Rhainds 2010). Often this is age-related (i.e. 'temporary wallflowers' rather than total mating failure), so that less-preferred females take longer to become inseminated, lowering their fitness. A male preference for large female mosquitoes (Okanda *et al.* 2002) and those exhibiting certain qualities or bearing species-specific characters (Hancock *et al.* 1990, South and Arnqvist 2011) has been reported.

Mating failure of mosquitoes in nature is difficult to assess because of the lack of a convenient age-grading method that does not rely on female reproduction. However, because males do not ingest blood, their sexual responsiveness, flight activity, and survival – and consequently their

insemination potential – is completely dependent on reserves carried over from larval feeding and from post-emergence sugar feeding. Hence, changes in sugar availability may lead to pronounced shifts in the operational sex ratio. If male population size declines sufficiently, an Allee effect (i.e. at low numbers, there is a positive relationship between population growth rate and population density) will occur in certain environments or seasons. This requires that the insemination rate of females will drop with declining male:female sex ratio. This will depend largely on the upper bounds of male mating capacity and on the efficiency with which females locate large swarms. Howell and Knols (2009) recently reviewed the mating biology of male mosquitoes and suggested that a typical anopheline male may mate 0-3 times in its lifetime (in monandrous species with a 1:1 sex ratio, which is typical of mosquitoes, the average must be 1), but the maximum probably is higher.

To have even a chance at reproductive success, males must survive through a period of maturation when their terminalia rotate and antennal fibrillae can become erect. Following this they have to engage in the energetically costly and risky behaviour of swarming. In most species this takes place at dusk or both dusk and dawn, though many aedines swarm during the day. Swarming typically lasts for only 10-30 min, but sometimes for hours, especially at higher latitudes. The swarm itself is stationary, with males engaging in a constant to-and-fro, up-and-down movement (Downes 1969), until a female is encountered and clasped. Having sufficient energy to perform this behaviour for multiple nights would clearly favour a male's prospects of mating. Furthermore, a male's mating ability and insemination capacity improves during his first week of adult life (e.g. Verhoek and Takken 1994).

Studies of the effect of body size, an indicator of the reserves a male accumulated as a larva, on mating performance are inconsistent. This may be because on the one hand a larger male is likely to have increased longevity, increased ability to locate a swarm site, and perhaps an increased duration within the swarm (Yuval and Bouskila 1993, Yuval *et al.* 1994). On the other hand, a larger male may have poorer agility in flight and decreased competitive ability to grasp a female (Ng'habi *et al.* 2008). Thus, the ability of male mosquitoes to locate and feed on sugar throughout their lives may be the prime determinant of mating success. Yuval *et al.* (1994) concluded that *An. freeborni* feed on sugar only after swarming in the evening, because only resting males collected in the morning contained significant proportions of fructose, whereas males collected in the late afternoon or during swarming did not. The same appears to hold true for *An. gambiae* (Stone, personal observation) and *Culex tarsalis* Coquillett (Reisen *et al.* 1986). The amount of sugar and glycogen, but not lipids, decreased significantly from the start to the end of swarming. The energetic cost of swarming was calculated to be 0.39-0.51 cal/h, resulting in a consumption of over 50% of available reserves if a male were to swarm for 40 min (Yuval *et al.* 1994). In the case of *Ae. aegypti*, enough males may survive in the absence of sugar to inseminate all females in the same age cohort (Braks *et al.* 2006), at least among mosquitoes that have developed under ideal conditions and are held in small cages. Yet natural selection should always favour males that take sugar meals and thereby greatly increase their mating potential and competitive abilities.

For *An. gambiae* males, successfully mating with a female in the absence of sugar is an almost insurmountable task. Increased teneral reserves and low environmental temperature, causing lengthened survival, increase the odds somewhat. Among sugar-fed males, Gary *et al.* (2009) found that the percentage that erected fibrillae and swarmed increased to almost 100% over the course of 2-3 days, whereas without sugar the percentage doing so was already much diminished by the second day. The proportion of females that were inseminated was influenced by male body size, cage size, and temperature; in small cages sugar deprivation did not affect insemination rates

for the first 2 days of cohabitation, but a smaller proportion was inseminated after 3 days at 23 °C when sugar was absent (at 27 °C all males had died by this time). In a follow-up study, the effect of sugar availability on insemination rates of females in more natural, energetically demanding mesocosms was studied with overlapping cohorts of males and females (i.e. groups of 0-day old males and females were released for 10 consecutive days). Maturing females would therefore have multiple opportunities to mate with maturing males. After 10 days, the cumulative insemination rate of females when sugar was present was 49.7%, compared to 10.9% in the absence of sugar (Stone *et al.* 2009). As mentioned above, directly related to insemination rates is the amount of time a female is likely to remain unmated. If this window between female maturity and time of actual mating is expanded, females will suffer a fitness cost, and this will be absolute if they fail to become inseminated. If this occurs for a significant proportion of females, this may have population-level repercussions. Indeed, simulations of a population projection matrix show just that. When sugar sources are removed from the environment, population sizes are reduced to zero over a wide range of life history parameters (e.g. fecundity), suggesting that *An. gambiae* populations are not viable in the absence of sugar sources (Stone *et al.* 2009). It would be valuable to gain deeper insight into the link between male survival and mating ability and their foraging behaviour. Particularly relevant is how well males are sustained on poor-to-medium-quality sugar hosts, and to what extent males can make up for this by increasing their foraging efforts.

Flight activity and range

Although not a coefficient of vectorial capacity, flight range is important to transmission. This is partly because vectorial capacity makes the assumption that biting will be random within the vertebrate host population. As flight is restricted, chances increase that vectors will bite the same hosts repeatedly, introducing the complications of redundant infections or superinfections. Flight range also is critical to the successful movements of vectors between oviposition sites and vertebrate hosts when the two are widely separated (e.g. Clarke *et al.* 2002). These transmigrations must be supported by energy derived either from portions of blood meals not used in vitellogenesis or from plant-sugar meals, as flight-mill studies have shown (e.g. Kaufmann and Briegel 2004). They almost certainly affect two critical vectorial capacity components: blood-feeding frequency and survival.

Learning

The availability of sugar, and therefore its effect on biting frequency and survival, probably changes with vector age as a result of experience. If this conjecture is valid, then sugar's effects on vectorial capacity also change with age. Early experiments with *Cx. quinquefasciatus* and *Cx. pipiens* demonstrated that, by associating plant-produced volatiles with the presence of sugar, young adults became more responsive to them (Jhumur *et al.* 2006, Tomberlin *et al.* 2006). This learning ability is expected to be advantageous in environments where sugar production by different plant species changes seasonally and also would allow adjustment to different plant communities. Non-random selection of blood hosts (McCall *et al.* 2001) and oviposition sites (McCall and Eaton 2001), as a result of experience, also may cause distortions unaccounted for in assessments of vectorial capacity (McCall and Kelly 2002).

Plant-based techniques for vector control and interruption of pathogen transmission

Reducing the incidence of malaria, the deadliest among mosquito-borne diseases, relies on reducing the entomological inoculation rate (EIR), the number of infectious bites received per person per unit of time, usually one year. This relies on the biting rate, *a*, and density, *m*, of the vector population, as well as the sporozoite rate, i.e. the proportion with sporozoites in their salivary glands. The main vector control methods used to prevent malaria are currently indoor residual spraying (IRS) and insecticide-treated bed nets (ITN). While great reductions in EIR are often achieved with these methods, the only recent control efforts that have produced an EIR<1, the level required to achieve a sustained reduction in infected-case prevalence, combined ITNs with source reduction (Shaukat *et al.* 2010), i.e. one form of integrated vector management (IVM). The effectiveness of IVM, the WHO-recommended approach to vector-borne disease control (WHO 2004), comes from combining two or more methods that are most efficacious in a particular setting and that complement each other synergistically. Novel control methods that can be used in IVM are urgently needed, and those targeting components of the mosquito life cycle that are left untouched by current methods may be especially promising (Ferguson *et al.* 2010). Because sugar feeding may be exploited for such a purpose, it is all the more poignant that basic knowledge of the feeding decisions and behaviour of even the most important malaria vectors remains scant to date. Here we review promising studies that make use of the sugar feeding behaviour of mosquitoes in control and surveillance of pathogens and vectors.

Marking

Mosquitoes and sand flies can be marked to study their behaviour and survival. One efficient method is to allow the mosquitoes to feed on sugar that has been mixed with a dye or radioisotope. An advantage is that the vectors mark themselves, either at emergence (Reeves *et al.* 1946, Midega *et al.* 2007) or at a suspected host plant (Abdel-Malek 1964, Abdel-Malek and Baldwin 1961, Müller and Schlein 2006, Müller *et al.* 2010b, Schlein and Müller 2008, Schlein and Pener 1990), thus avoiding the disruptive effects of handling. Marking has been effective in experiments on dispersal, flight range, survival, and plant-host utilization. An unfortunate side-effect of field studies in which a marked sugar solution is provided right at the place of adult emergence is that the vectors have an unnatural, easily accessed, and very early source of energy. Therefore, such studies may produce misleading data on the timing of mating, gonotrophic cycle events, early mortality, and average distance flown from the emergence site.

Trapping and surveillance of vectors, and detection of pathogens

Plant-based attractants

Vectors find their sugar sources by volatile organic compounds (VOCs) released from the host plants and by some visual cues. The VOCs appear to be the dominant stimuli guiding mosquitoes from intermediate or long distances to the flowers of their plant hosts or to decaying fruit, whereas visual stimuli are principally the showy white or pale petals that can be detected only within a meter or two. The plants gain by releasing VOCs that serve as attractive signals to pollinators, making the vectors nectar thieves in most cases. It is not yet clear whether vectors are sometimes attracted to specialist-pollinated plants that have nectar inaccessible to vectors. Plant VOCs have not yet been used in surveillance, apart from incidental information gained while evaluating the attractiveness of potential host plants and crude fruit-based attractants (Müller and Schlein 2004,

2006, Müller *et al.* 2008, 2010a, Reisen *et al.* 1986, Schlein and Müller 2008). An effective field-tested synthetic odour blend, based on a plant's natural VOC headspace, remains to be developed.

The advantages of using phytochemical lures in traps for mosquitoes, and major hurdles that must be cleared, have been reviewed and described in detail in Foster and Hancock (1994) and Foster (2008). The main advantages are (1) attraction of both males and females of all ages of nearly all species of mosquitoes, (2) early detection, because sugar feeding is often the first activity after emergence, and males tend to emerge first, (3) localization of emergence sites, because males tend to remain more localized, (4) attraction of females in all gonotrophic states, not just those in the blood-seeking mode, and (5) attraction of females in reproductive diapause, when they will not seek blood. In other words, plant-volatile baited traps would target a much wider segment of a mosquito population than is typically sampled with CO_2-baited traps and ovitraps and would not be so seasonally restricted in temperate zones.

Because plant-sugar feeding usually occurs in the same general activity period as blood-host seeking, there is likely to be competition between the two resources, and it is generally thought that blood-host volatiles will be dominant over floral volatiles. However, during early life this may not be the case, and the relative strengths of the volatiles do matter. An appealing option is to combine phytochemicals with vertebrate kairomones, possibly gaining the advantages of each. But whether these volatiles would be additive, synergistic, or mutually inhibitory remains to be tested. The combination of phytochemicals with oviposition-site volatiles in gravid traps also might be effective (females may prefer to oviposit near sites where they and their offspring can quickly regain energy) and is worth considering.

The major hurdle is then simply the identification and synthesis of a plant-volatile blend that is attractive to mosquitoes at a high release rate so that it can out-compete naturally occurring plant odours. A complication is that relatively little is known about the attraction of mosquitoes to specific plant volatiles. An example of this is that the chemical cues coming from extrafloral nectaries of host plants and from host plants that must be pierced to obtain sugar, are almost completely unstudied. The latter clearly are attractive at a distance to the sand flies that feed on them (Junnila *et al.* 2010, Müller *et al.* 2011, Schlein and Müller 1995, Schlein and Yuval 1987). And Schlein and Müller (2008) reported that branches of similar plants with or without honeydew did not differ in the numbers of mosquitoes attracted, suggesting that honeydew itself is not attractive. Honeydew, though readily fed upon, appears not to be attractive to sand flies either (Müller and Schlein 2004, Müller *et al.* 2011). However, sand fly attraction to an aphid alarm pheromone has been demonstrated and may act as a cue to the presence of honeydew (Tesh *et al.* 1992).

Therefore, mosquitoes discover sugar by tarsal chemoreception when resting on plants, or they may be attracted to general plant volatiles and locate the nectaries by random walk. However, activation and orientation of mosquitoes towards floral VOCs are indisputable, and strong attraction to flowers of particular plant species has been shown. For instance, in a small bioassay chamber probing response of *Ae. aegypti* to extracts of milkweed (*Asclepias syriaca* L.) was greater than to extracts of Canada goldenrod (*Solidago canadensis* L.), the former being the more fragrant flower (Vargo and Foster, 1982). And there is upwind attraction of *Ae. aegypti* to isolated floral odours of ox-eye daisy (*Leucanthemum vulgare* Lam.), but an extract did not elicit landings (Jepson and Healy 1988). A role for floral odours in the mediation of upwind nectar-source location also was demonstrated by the attraction of *An. arabiensis* to an extract of *Achillea millefolium* L., a temperate plant. The major component of the odour was reported to be a cyclic

or bicyclic monoterpene (Healy and Jepson 1988). Mauer and Rowley (1999), using *Cx. pipiens*, confirmed that milkweed flowers are attractive in an olfactometer, but synthetic blends they created were not. By contrast, both individual components and synthetic blends of *Silene otites* (L.) Wibel headspace were found to be attractive to the *molestus* form of this species (Jhumur *et al.* 2006, 2007, 2008). Of 36 odour-receptor neurons on type A2 sensilla trichodea of female *Cx. pipiens*, 19 were relatively specific to bicyclic monoterpenes containing a ketone group (thujone and verbenone). The other 17 sensilla were more broadly tuned, and also were sensitive to other compounds, such as green-plant odours. Upwind flight was not elicited by exposure to each of these terpenes alone, or in combination with CO_2, suggesting that an odour blend is needed for plant location (Bowen 1992b). Carey *et al.* (2010) found that individual odourant receptors of *An. gambiae* that had strong responses to esters and aldehydes, volatiles common in the headspace of fruits, were all broadly tuned. Their role in discrimination between such volatiles is not entirely clear, but narrowly-tuned receptors often appear to be associated with salient, i.e. ecologically highly relevant, odours. A comprehensive study on the breadth of odourant sensitivity to volatiles present in attractive floral headspace has not yet been performed.

If mosquitoes have strong preferences for certain volatile blends, baits may be able to out-compete natural sources, unless nectar sources are very abundant. In recent years, more information on the specific attraction of certain plants and sugar sources has come from studies in Israel and Mali. A general impression is that there are certain super-attractants, and even natural concoctions based on these sources are effective in sugar baits. Their use, in combination with insecticides, is discussed below.

Salivation to detect pathogens

Mosquitoes and sand flies salivate while feeding on sugar, both to break down oligosaccharides with α-glucosidase – and perhaps also to break down starch with amylase – and to dilute very concentrated sugar solutions to facilitate ingestion. While salivating, they release viruses and malaria sporozoites (Beier *et al.* 1991, Billingsly *et al.* 1991, Russell *et al.* 1963, Van den Hurk 2007). Van den Hurk *et al.* (2007) tested whether this made it possible to determine infectivity rates of vectors without removing and testing salivary glands or testing extracts of whole insects. After mosquitoes were fed on a blood/virus mixture and provided with sucrose-soaked cotton pledgets after an extrinsic-cycle period, viral RNA was detected in the pledgets by RT-PCR. To see if this could be used as a convenient monitoring system, CO_2-baited updraft box traps were deployed in the field, in which mosquitoes would feed on honey-soaked cards that preserve nucleic acids (Hall-Mendelin *et al.* 2010*)*. These cards were collected once per week and presence of viruses successfully detected. The main advantage of this method over previous ones is its ease, because only the cards need to be tested for virus, which then can be associated with the species of mosquitoes within the trap, even after the mosquitoes have died and their viral contents corrupted. This method speeds up the turn-around time, improving early-warning systems.

Reduction of population density and age by deploying toxic sucrose solutions

Treatment of resting sites, including vegetation

When combined with a 20% sugar solution, Lea (1965) found that surface application of malathion, used as a residual insecticide, killed *Ae. aegypti* mosquitoes at one-tenth the dosage required otherwise. This effect was apparently because the irritancy of the mixture was offset by

its gustatory stimulation, so that mosquitoes remained in contact with it longer and perhaps also fed on it. The duration of its effectiveness also was extended considerably.

Over recent years, a control method that cleverly exploits sugar feeding has been developed and tested in several different environments with several species of mosquitoes. Attractive toxic sugar baits (ATSB) employ fruit scents to attract both male and female mosquitoes, a sucrose solution to stimulate feeding, and an oral insecticide – either boric acid or spinosad, both having very low vertebrate toxicity. Theoretically, the development of resistance can be avoided by rotating among many oral insecticides, although evolution of behavioural resistance (e.g. avoiding sugar sources) is a potential concern.

That this technique is effective in arid areas with relatively few flowering plants was demonstrated by spraying *Aristida raddiana* Savi (the only local flowering plants at the time) with dyed toxic sugar solution in a small oasis in Israel. In the control site, where the same solution was applied minus the toxin, between 80-90% of *An. sergentii* and 72-86% of *Ae. caspius* Pallas were marked with the dye, indicating that they rely predominantly on this plant species for their sugar. Both populations were eliminated in the treatment oasis (Müller and Schlein 2006). In another study, *Cx. pipiens* was shown to be strongly attracted to flowering *Tamarix jordanis* Boiss. branches. Treatment of just this one species with toxic sugar reduced *Cx. pipiens* numbers tenfold, although after 18 days the population rebounded (Schlein and Müller 2008). Similarly impressive results were obtained when the attractant was the juice of rotting nectarines and red wine, when sprayed on vegetation surrounding a sewage pond (Müller *et al.* 2010c). Further examples of the potential of this technique were demonstrated by applying boric acid in sugar solutions on the leaves and stems of vegetation in outdoor screen cages as well as smaller cages, which resulted in significant mortality of *Ae. albopictus* and *Cx. nigripalpus*, as well as a reduction in human landing rates. But *Aedes taeniorhynchus* Wiedemann was apparently unaffected by the boric acid solution (Xue *et al.* 2006). Even sub-lethal exposures reduced host seeking, fecundity, and survival of *Ae. albopictus* (Ali *et al.* 2006).

Perhaps the most relevant question pertains to the applicability of this method to *An. gambiae s.s.*, not only because it is one of the prime vectors of *falciparum* malaria in sub-Saharan Africa, but because the reliance of females on sugar in the field is a subject of debate. A field trial in Mali suggests we should be hopeful, because mosquito abundance dropped by 90% following the spraying of guava and honey-melon based ATSB on patches of vegetation of unknown attractiveness surrounding larval sites, and the percentage of females reaching at least 3 gonotrophic cycles dropped from 37 to 6% in the treatment area (Müller *et al.* 2010b).

Overall, these results suggests toxic sugar baits may be highly effective in semi-arid areas of Africa, especially where breeding sites are spatially segregated from domestic areas. The method is cheap and easy to implement, the attractant is easy to produce, and the approach can be used synergistically with ITNs.

Attractive toxic bait stations

As an alternative to spraying toxic sugar solution on vegetation, the use of sugar feeding stations also has been developed and tested. These consist of soda bottles filled with the solution (overripe nectarine juice, wine and sugar, and an oral insecticide), with a hole cut into them through which a wick keeps a sock wrapped around the bottle moist. A hood is placed atop this construction to shield it from the elements (Müller and Schlein 2008). In one study, these were placed at

the openings of cisterns, the resting and larval development sites of *An. claviger* Meigen. After introduction of the baits the number of females in that area decreased ten-fold (Müller and Schlein 2008). These bait stations also were used in a study in oases, this time suspended from *A. raddiana* trees. Baits that were laced with an insecticide steadily reduced the *An. sergentii* population to less than one tenth, and *Ae. caspius* to one third of the starting population (Müller *et al.* 2008). It is not immediately clear why the results, while impressive, were not as dramatic as the 2006 study, when full elimination was achieved. It may indicate that the bait stations are less effective than the spraying of resting vegetation.

Whether this station-based ATSB approach will work when they are placed in houses with vertebrate hosts, in lush areas with greater competition of natural nectar sources, or in urban areas where humans and breeding sites are closer together, remains to be seen. And, its impact on EIR or malaria prevalence has not been studied. A principal concern in the application of ATSB is its impact on non-target sugar feeding insect orders, such as Hymenoptera, Lepidoptera, Coleoptera, and Blattaria. This is unlikely to be an issue when applied within houses, where elimination of ants and cockroaches is welcome, and risk to humans is negligible. But outdoors, lethality to such beneficial insects as parasitoid wasps and various pollinating bees, moths, beetles, and other dipterans, requires special consideration. A partial way around this obstacle is to design attracticide stations that allow access to mosquitoes and other vectors but exclude large-bodied pollinators. An alternative is to provide a toxin whose action is specific to nematocerous dipterans or to the pathogens they carry.

Selective plant removal or replacement

A potential alternative use of plant feeding to control vectors, not involving insecticides, is the selective removal and replacement of their principal sources of sugar (Abdel-Malek and Baldwin 1961, Abdel-Malek 1964). In mesocosms, removal of sugar sources causes a dramatic reduction in *An. gambiae* reproduction, to the point of creating an environment that cannot sustain the population (Stone *et al.* 2009). To be practical and to have a minimal impact on the environment, this approach requires that the host plants be both few in diversity and low in density. Obviously, if a vector can use any of 5 or 10 different plant species in a transmission zone, and at least some of them are abundant, their removal and replacement would be onerous (Schaefer and Miura 1972), except close to human habitations. To identify opportunities where this approach is feasible, we first must overcome the obstacle of determining innate and learned plant-host breadth. Following removal of sources with highly attractive cues, will the ability of mosquitoes to efficiently locate nectar be significantly diminished, or will the mosquitoes simply shift to the next best plant?

One topic that will be important to plant-based control is the contribution of homopteran-generated honeydew to sugar meals of vectors. If honeydew is a large part of the sugar diet, plant removal to diminish sugar meals will require identifying the homopteran's plant hosts. The few studies that have attempted to quantify this suggest large differences between mosquito species (Burkett *et al.* 1999, Russell and Hunter 2002). This subject is understudied, and more data are needed to make generalizations about honeydew's importance according to vector species and locality.

A different tactic is suggested by the occurrence of plants that are naturally toxic to vectors but that are nevertheless attractive to them. The ornamental *Bougainvillea* has this effect on *Ph. papatasi*, and circumstantial evidence indicates that in its vicinity sand fly numbers are much lower than in other locations (Schlein *et al.* 2001). Toxic species, if planted around human

habitations, might provide sustained natural suppression of vector densities and lower survival, thereby compromising their vectorial capacity. Such plants have not yet been discovered that work against mosquitoes or other vectors.

Inoculation with microorganisms

Sugar baits have been used to induce *Cx. pipiens* mosquitoes to pick up the pathogenic bacterium *Bacillus sphaericus* and transfer it to larval development sites (Schlein and Pener 1990). Additionally, attention has been drawn to symbiotic gut bacteria that interfere with the ability of ingested mature *Plasmodium* gametocytes to form oocysts in the gut wall of *Anopheles* (Pumpuni *et al.* 1996). Attractive and palatable sugar baits have been tested as a means of spreading such bacteria into the mosquito populations (Lindh *et al.* 2006). Acetic-acid bacteria (Acetobacteraceae) are acquired naturally in nectars, fruit sugars, and phloem sap (e.g. Crotti *et al.* 2010, Suzuki *et al.* 2010, Yamada *et al.* 2000), invade most relevant organs of the mosquitoes' bodies, and are transmitted both horizontally and vertically within mosquito populations. Such bacteria show promise for generating anti-parasite molecules within vectors (Damiani *et al.* 2008, Favia *et al.* 2007, Riehle and Jacobs-Lorena 2005, Riehle *et al.* 2007). One candidate is the osmotolerant bacterium *Asaia*, strains of which can infect the major vector species of mosquitoes (Chouaia *et al.* 2010) and can be transformed easily with foreign DNA (Favia *et al.* 2007, 2008) to produce strains that inhibit malaria development, thereby eliminating its vector competence.

Conclusion

The aim of this review is to raise awareness of the potential effects vegetation abundance and composition may have on pathogen transmission dynamics. This overlooked aspect of the biology of mosquitoes shows tremendous promise for novel surveillance and control methods. Parallels between relevant sand fly and mosquito studies draw attention to gaps in the latter. Uneven knowledge of the topic and contradictory results currently frustrate our attempts to form a holistic view of the epidemiological consequences of sugar feeding in mosquitoes. Here, in summary, are four major questions in need of further research: (1) What is the nectar-host breadth of vector species? (2) What properties make certain plants attractive? (3) How is vector performance affected in the absence of highly attractive, nectar-rich plants? and (4) How do stimulus strength and perceived quality of plant and vertebrate volatiles interact to mediate host choice? Addressing these questions not only for anthropophilic species, but also for generalist and zoophilic mosquitoes, would broaden our current view of mosquito-nectar dynamics, which relies excessively on experimentation with *An. gambiae s.s.* and *Ae. aegypti*. Further, the use of natural systems would greatly improve our understanding of sugar's effect on vectorial capacity and reproductive success, by demanding more realistic energy expenditures. The best systems would include not only semi-field environments, but also wild-type mosquitoes, natural vector-parasite interactions, and natural blood hosts.

Acknowledgements

We thank David Denlinger, Ian Hamilton, and Holly Tuten for reading and providing helpful comments on a previous version of this manuscript. This work was supported, in part, by NIH grant number R01-AI077722 from the National Institute of Allergy & Infectious Diseases to WAF. Its content is solely the responsibility of the authors and does not represent the official views of the NIAID or the National Institutes of Health.

References

Abdel-Malek AA (1964) Study of the feeding habits of *Anopheles sergentii* Theo. at Siwa oasis using radiophosphorus. Bull WHO 30: 137-139.

Abdel-Malek AA and Baldwin WF (1961) Specificity of plant feeding in mosquitoes as determined by radioactive phosphorus. Nature 192: 178-179.

Alexander B and Usma MC (1994) Potential sources of sugar for the phlebotomine sandfly *Lutzomyia youngi* (Diptera: Psychodidae) in a Colombian coffee plantation. Ann Trop Med Parasitol 88: 543-549.

Ali A, Rui-de Xue R and Barnard DR (2006) Effects of sublethal exposure to boric acid sugar bait on adult survival, host-seeking, bloodfeeding behavior, and reproduction of *Stegomyia albopicta*. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 22: 464-468.

Andersson IH (1992) The effect of sugar meals and body size on fecundity and longevity of female *Aedes communis* (Diptera: Culicidae). Physiol Entomol 17: 203-207.

Basseri HR, Doosti S, Akbarzadeh K, Nateghpour M, Whitten M and Ladoni H (2008) Competency of *Anopheles stephensi* mysorensis strain for *Plasmodium vivax* and the role of inhibitory carbohydrates to block its sporogonic cycle. Malar J 7: 131.

Beerntsen BT, James AA and Christensen BM (2000) Genetics of mosquito vector competence. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 64: 115.

Beier JC (1996) Frequent blood-feeding and restrictive sugar-feeding behavior enhance the malaria vector potential of *Anopheles gambiae s.l.* and *An. funestus* (Diptera: Culicidae) in western Kenya. J Med Entomol 33: 613-618.

Beier JC, Davis JR, Vaughan JA, Noden BH and Beier MS (1991) Quantitation of *Plasmodium falciparum* sporozoites transmitted *in vitro* by experimentally infected *Anopheles gambiae* and *Anopheles stephensi*. Am J Trop Med Hyg 44: 564.

Beier JC, Keating J, Githure JI, MacDonald MB, Impoinvil DE and Novak RJ (2008) Integrated vector management for malaria control. Malar J 7: S4.

Bellan SE (2010) The importance of age dependent mortality and the extrinsic incubation period in models of mosquito-borne disease transmission and control. PLoS ONE 5: e10165.

Billingsley PF and Hecker H (1991) Blood digestion in the mosquito, Anopheles stephensi Liston (Diptera: Culicidae): activity and distribution of trypsin, aminopeptidase, and alpha-glucosidase in the midgut. J Med Entomol 28: 865-871.

Billingsley PF, Hodivala KJ, Winger LA and Sinden RE (1991) Detection of mature malaria infections in live mosquitoes. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 85: 450-453.

Bowen MF (1992a) Patterns of sugar feeding in diapausing and non-diapausing *Culex pipiens* (Diptera: Culicidae) females. J Med Entomol 29: 843-849.

Bowen MF (1992b) Terpene-sensitive receptors in female *Culex pipiens* mosquitoes: Electrophysiology and behaviour. J Insect Physiol 38: 759-764.

Bowen MF and Romo J (1995a) Host-seeking and sugar-feeding in the autogenous mosquito *Aedes bahamensis* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Vector Ecol 20: 195-202.

Bowen MF and Romo J (1995b) Sugar deprivation in adult *Aedes bahamensis* females and its effects on host seeking and longevity. J Vector Ecol 20: 211-215.

Bowen MF, Haggart D and Romo J (1995) Long-distance orientation, nutritional preference, and electrophysiological responsiveness in the mosquito *Aedes bahamensis*. J Vector Ecol 20: 203-210.

Braks MAH, Juliano SA and Lounibos LP (2006) Superior reproductive success on human blood without sugar is not limited to highly anthropophilic mosquito species. Med Vet Entomol 20: 53-59.

Briegel H (1985) Mosquito reproduction: Incomplete utilization of the blood meal protein for oögenesis. J Insect Physiol 31: 15-21.

Briegel H (1990) Fecundity, metabolism, and body size in *Anopheles* (Diptera: Culicidae), vectors of malaria. J Med Entomol 27: 839-850.

Briegel H and Hörler E (1993) Multiple bloodmeals as reproductive strategy in *Anopheles* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Med Entomol 30: 975-985.

Briegel H, Hefti M and DiMarco E (2002) Lipid metabolism during sequential gonotrophic cycles in large and small female *Aedes aegypti*. J Insect Physiol 48: 547-554.

Briegel H, Knüsel I and Timmerman SE (2001) *Aedes aegypti*: size, reserves, survival, and flight potential. J Vector Ecol. 26: 21-31.

Briegel H, Waltert A and Kuhn R (2001) Reproductive physiology of *Aedes (aedimorphus) vexans* (Diptera: Culicidae) in relation to flight potential. J Med Entomol 38: 557-565.

Burgin SG and Hunter FF (1997a) Evidence of honeydew feeding in black flies (Diptera: Simuliidae). Can Entomol 129: 859-869.

Burgin SG and Hunter FF (1997b) Nectar versus honeydew as sources of sugar for male and female black flies (Diptera: Simuliidae). J Med Entomol 34: 605-608.

Burgin SG and Hunter FF (1997c) Sugar-meal sources used by female black flies (Diptera: Simuliidae): A four-habitat study. Can J Zool 75: 1066-1072.

Burkett DA, Butler JE and Kline DL (1998) Field evaluation of colored light-emitting diodes as attractants for woodland mosquitoes and other diptera in north central florida. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 14: 186-195.

Burkett DA, Kline DL and Carlson DA (1999) Sugar meal composition of five north central Florida mosquito species (Diptera: Culicidae) as determined by gas chromatography. J Med Entomol 36: 462-467.

Canyon DV, Hii JLK and Muller R (1999) Effect of diet on biting, oviposition, and survival of *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Med Entomol 36: 301-308.

Carey AF, Wang G, Su CY, Zwiebel LJ and Carlson JR (2010) Odorant reception in the malaria mosquito *Anopheles gambiae*. Nature 464: 66-71.

Carey JR (2001) Insect biodemography. Annu Rev Entomol 46: 79-110.

Caswell H (2001) Matrix population models, second edition. Sinauer Associates, Sunderland, MA, USA.

Charlesworth B (1994) Evolution in age-structured populations. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Chouaia B, Rossi P, Montagna M, Ricci I, Crotti E, Damiani C, Epis S, Faye I, Sagnon NF and Alma A (2010) Molecular evidence for multiple infections as revealed by typing of *Asaia* bacterial symbionts of four mosquito species. Appl Environ Microbiol 76: 7444.

Christensen BM (1981) Effect of *Dirofilaria immititus* on the fecundity of *Aedes trivittatus*. Mosq News 41: 78-81.

Chun J, Riehle M and Paskewitz SM (1995) Effect of mosquito age and reproductive status on melanization of sephadex beads in *Plasmodium*-refractory and -susceptible strains of *Anopheles gambiae*. J Invertebr Pathol 66: 11-17.

Clark CW and Mangel M (2000) Dynamic state variable models in ecology. Oxford University Press, New York, NY, USA.

Clarke SE, Bøgh C, Brown RC, Walraven GEL, Thomas CJ and Lindsay SW (2002) Risk of malaria attacks in Gambian children is greater away from malaria vector breeding sites. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 96: 499-506.

Clements AN (1992) The biology of mosquitoes. Volume 1: Development, nutrition and reproduction. Chapman and Hall, London, UK.

Clements AN and Paterson GD (1981) The analysis of mortality and survival rates in wild populations of mosquitoes. J Appl Ecol 18: 373-399.

Collins FH, Sakai RK, Vernick KD, Paskewitz S, Seeley DC, Miller LH, Collins WE, Campbell CC and Gwadz RW (1986) Genetic selection of a *Plasmodium*-refractory strain of the malaria vector *Anopheles gambiae*. Science 234: 607.

Costero A, Edman JD, Clark CG and Scott TW (1998) Life table study of *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae) in Puerto Rico fed only human blood versus blood plus sugar. J Med Entomol 35: 809-813.

Crotti E, Rizzi A, Chouaia B, Ricci I, Favia G, Alma A, Sacchi L, Bourtzis K, Mandrioli M and Cherif A (2010) Acetic acid bacteria, newly emerging symbionts of insects. Appl Environ Microbiol 76: 6963-6970.

Damiani C, Ricci I, Crotti E, Rossi P, Rizzi A, Scuppa P, Esposito F, Bandi C, Daffonchio D and Favia G (2008) Paternal transmission of symbiotic bacteria in malaria vectors. Curr Biol 18: R1087-R1088.

Dao A, Adamou A, Yaro AS, Maiga HM, Kassogue Y, Traore SF and Lehmann T (2008) Assessment of alternative mating strategies in *Anopheles gambiae*: Does mating occur indoors? J Med Entomol 45: 643-652.

Dawes EJ, Churcher TS, Zhuang S, Sinden RE and Basáñez MG (2009) *Anopheles* mortality is both age- and *Plasmodium*-density dependent: implications for malaria transmission. Malar J 8: 228.

Dawidowicz K, Hernandez AG, Infante RB and Convit J (1975) The surface membrane of Leishmania. I. The effects of lectins on different stages of *Leishmania braziliensis*. J Parasitol 61: 950-953.

Day JF, Edman JD and Scott TW (1994) Reproductive fitness and survivorship of *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae) maintained on blood, with field observations from Thailand. J Med Entomol 31: 611-617.

De Meillon B, Sebastian A and Khan ZH (1967) Cane-sugar feeding in *Culex pipiens fatigans*. Bull WHO 36: 53-65.

Dimond JB, Lea AO, Hahnert WF and DeLong DM (1956) The amino acids required for egg production in *Aedes aegypti*. Can Entomol 88: 57-62.

Downes JA (1958) The feeding habits of biting flies and their significance in classification. Annu Rev Entomol 3: 249-266.

Downes JA (1969) The swarming and mating flight of Diptera. Annu Rev Entomol 14: 271-298.

Dwyer DM (1974) Lectin binding saccharides on a parasitic protozoan. Science 184: 471.

Dye C (1992) The analysis of parasite transmission by bloodsucking insects. Annu Rev Entomol 37: 1-19.

Edman JD, Strickman D, Kittayapong P and Scott TW (1992) Female *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae) in Thailand rarely feed on sugar. J Med Entomol 29: 1035-1038.

Eischen FA and Foster WA (1983) Life span and fecundity of adult female *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae) fed aqueous extracts of pollen. Ann Entomol Soc Am 76: 661-663.

Emlen ST and Oring LW (1977) Ecology, sexual selection, and the evolution of mating systems. Science 197: 215-223.

Favia G, Ricci I, Damiani C, Raddadi N, Crotti E, Marzorati M, Rizzi A, Urso R, Brusetti L and Borin S (2007) Bacteria of the genus *Asaia* stably associate with *Anopheles stephensi*, an Asian malarial mosquito vector. PNAS 104: 9047.

Favia G, Ricci I, Marzorati M, Negri I, Alma A, Sacchi L, Bandi C and Daffonchio D (2008) Bacteria of the genus *Asaia*: a potential paratransgenic weapon against malaria. In: Aksoy S (ed.) Transgenesis and the management of vector-borne disease. Landes Bioscience and Springer, Berlin, Germany.

Feinsod FM and Spielman A (1980) Nutrient-mediated juvenile hormone secretion in mosquitoes. J Insect Physiol 26: 113-117.

Ferdig MT, Beerntsen BT, Spray FJ, Li J and Christensen BM (1993) Reproductive costs associated with resistance in a mosquito-filarial worm system. Am J Trop Med Hyg 49: 756.

Ferguson HM and Read AF (2002) Genetic and environmental determinants of malaria virulence in mosquitoes. Proc R Soc B 269: 1217-1224.

Ferguson HM, Dornhaus A, Beeche A, Borgemeister C, Gottlieb M, Mulla MS, Gimnig JE, Fish D and Killeen GF (2010) Ecology: A prerequisite for malaria elimination and eradication. PLoS Medicine 7: e1000303.

Fernandes L and Briegel H (2005) Reproductive physiology of *Anopheles gambiae* and *Anopheles atroparvus.* J Vector Ecol 30: 11-26.

Fernandez NM and Klowden MJ (1995) Male accessory gland substances modify the host-seeking behavior of gravid *Aedes aegypti* mosquitoes. J Insect Physiol 41: 965-970.

Foster WA (1995) Mosquito sugar feeding and reproductive energetics. Annu Rev Entomol 40: 443-474.

Foster WA (2008) Phytochemicals as population sampling lures. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 24: 138-146.

Foster WA and Eischen FA (1987) Frequency of blood-feeding in relation to sugar availability in *Aedes aegypti* and *Anopheles quadrimaculatus* (Diptera: Culicidae). Ann Entomol Soc Am 80: 103-108.

Foster WA and Hancock RG (1994) Nectar-related olfactory and visual attractants for mosquitoes. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 10: 288-296.

Foster WA and Takken W (2004) Nectar-related vs. human-related volatiles: Behavioural response and choice by female and male *Anopheles gambiae* (Diptera: Culicidae) between emergence and first feeding. Bull Entomol Res 94: 145-157.

Gadawski RM and Smith SM (1992) Nectar sources and age structure in a population of *Aedes provocans*. J Med Entomol 29: 879-886.

Garrett-Jones C (1964) Prognosis for interruption of malaria transmission through assessment of the mosquito's vectorial capacity. Nature 204: 1173-1175.

Garrett-Jones C and Shidrawi GR (1969) Malaria vectorial capacity of a population of *Anopheles gambiae*: An exercise in epidemiological entomology. Bull WHO 40: 531.

Gary RE and Foster WA (2001) Effects of available sugar on the reproductive fitness and vectorial capacity of the malaria vector *Anopheles gambiae* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Med Entomol 38: 22-28.

Gary RE and Foster WA (2004) *Anopheles gambiae* feeding and survival on honeydew and extra-floral nectar of peridomestic plants. Med Vet Entomol 18: 102-107.

Gary RE and Foster WA (2006) Diel timing and frequency of sugar feeding in the mosquito *Anopheles gambiae*, depending on sex, gonotrophic state and resource availability. Med Vet Entomol 20: 308-316.

Gary RE, Cannon JW and Foster WA (2009) Effect of sugar on male *Anopheles gambiae* Giles (Diptera: Culicidae) mating performance, as modified by temperature, space, and body size. Parasites and Vectors 2: 19.

Gillies MT (1968) Journal of meetings. Proc R Entomol Soc London 33: 27.

Gooding RH (1975) Digestive enzymes and their control in haematophagous arthropods. Acta Trop 32: 96.

Gouagna LC, Poueme RS, Dabire KR, Ouedraogo J, Fontenille D and Simard F (2010) Patterns of sugar feeding and host plant preferences in adult males of *An. gambiae* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Vector Ecol 35: 267-276.

Goulson D (1999) Foraging strategies of insects for gathering nectar and pollen, and implications for plant ecology and evolution. Perspect Plant Ecol Evol Syst 2: 185-209.

Grossman GL, Campos Y, Severson DW and James AA (1997) Evidence for two distinct members of the amylase gene family in the yellow fever mosquito, *Aedes aegypti*. Insect Biochem Mol Biol 27: 769-781.

Gu W, Müller G, Schlein Y, Novak RJ and Beier JC (2011) Natural plant sugar sources of *Anopheles* mosquitoes strongly impact malaria transmission potential. PLoS One 6: e15996.

Hall-Mendelin S, Ritchie SA, Johansen CA, Zborowski P, Cortis G, Dandridge S, Hall RA and Van den Hurk AF (2010) Exploiting mosquito sugar feeding to detect mosquito-borne pathogens. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 107: 11255-11259.

Ham PJ, Phiri JS and Nolan GP (1991) Effect of n acetyl d glucosamine on the migration of *Brugia pahangi* microfilariae into the haemocoel of *Aedes aegypti*. Med Vet Entomol 5: 485-493.

Hamilton JGC and El Naiem D (2000) Sugars in the gut of the sandfly *Phlebotomus orientalis* from Dinder national park, eastern Sudan. Med Vet Entomol 14: 64-70.

Hancock RG and Foster WA (1997) Larval and adult nutrition effects on blood/nectar choice of *Culex nigripalpus* mosquitoes. Med Vet Entomol 11: 112-122.

Hancock RG and Foster WA (2000) Exogenous juvenile hormone and methoprene, but not male accessory gland substances or ovariectomy, affect the blood/nectar choice of female *Culex nigripalpus* mosquitoes. Med Vet Entomol 14: 376-382.

Hancock RG, Yee WL and Foster WA (1990) Tests of *Sabethes cyaneus* leg paddle function in mating and flight. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 6: 733-735.

Hardy JL, Houk EJ, Kramer LD and Reeves WC (1983) Intrinsic factors affecting vector competence of mosquitoes for arboviruses. Annu Rev Entomol 28: 229-262.

Harrington LC, Edman JD and Scott TW (2001) Why do female *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae) feed preferentially and frequently on human blood? J Med Entomol 38: 411-422.

Harrington LC, Jones JJ, Kitthawee S, Sithiprasasna R, Edman JD and Scott TW (2008) Age-dependent survival of the dengue vector *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae) demonstrated by simultaneous release recapture of different age cohorts. J Med Entomol 45: 307-313.

Healy TP and Jepson PC (1988) The location of floral nectar sources by mosquitoes: The long-range responses of *Anopheles arabiensis* Patton (Diptera: Culicidae) to *Achillea millefolium* flowers and isolated floral odour. Bull Entomol Res 78: 651-657.

Hocking B (1953) The intrinsic range and speed of flight of insects. Trans. R. Ent. Soc. Lond. 104: 223-345.

Hocking B (1968) Insect-flower associations in the high arctic with special reference to nectar. Oikos 19: 359-387.

Holliday-Hanson ML, Yuval B and Washino R (1997) Energetics and sugar-feeding of field collected anopheline females. J Vector Ecol 22: 83-89.

Howell P and Knols BGJ (2009) Male mating biology. Malar J 8: S8.

Hunter FF and Ossowski AM (1999) Honeydew sugars in wild-caught female horse flies (Diptera: Tabanidae). J Med Entomol 36: 896-899.

Hurd H, Hogg JC and Renshaw M (1995) Interactions between bloodfeeding, fecundity and infection in mosquitoes. Parasitol Today 11: 411-416.

Impoinvil DE, Kongere JO, Foster WA, Njiru BN, Killeen GF, Githure JI, Beier JC, Hassanali A and Knols BJG (2004) Feeding and survival of the malaria vector *Anopheles gambiae* on plants growing in Kenya. Med Vet Entomol 18: 108-115.

Jacobsen RL, Slutsky GM, Greenblatt CL and Schnur LF (1982) Surface reactions of leishmania i. Lectin mediated agglutination. Ann Trop Med Parasitol 76: 45-52.

Jacobson R, Schlein Y and Eisenberger C (2001) The biological function of sand fly and leishmania glycosidases. Med Microbiol Immunol 190: 51-55.

Jacobson RL and Schlein Y (1999) Lectins and toxins in the plant diet of *Phlebotomus papatasi* (Diptera: Psychodidae) can kill *Leishmania major* promastigotes in the sandfly and in culture. Ann Trop Med Parasitol 93: 351-356.

Jacobson RL and Schlein Y (2001) *Phlebotomus papatasi* and *Leishmania major* parasites express α-amylase and α-glucosidase. Acta Trop 78: 41-49.

Jaenson TG and Ameneshewa B (1991) Prehibernation diet and reproductive condition of female *Anopheles messeae* in Sweden. Med Vet Entomol 5: 243.

James AA and Rossignol PA (1991) Mosquito salivary glands: Parasitological and molecular aspects. Parasitol Today 7: 267-271.

Janzen TA and Hunter FF (1998) Honeydew sugars in wild-caught female deer flies (Diptera: Tabanidae). J Med Entomol 35: 685-689.

Jarzen DM, Hogsette JA (2008) Pollen from the exoskeletons of stable flies, *Stomoxys calcitrans* (Linnaeus 1758), in Gainesville, Florida, U.S.A. Palynology 32: 77-81.

Jepson PC and Healy TP (1988) The location of floral nectar sources by mosquitoes: An advanced bioassay for volatile plant odours and initial studies with *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae). Bull Entomol Res 78: 641-650.

Jhumur US, Dötterl S and Jürgens A (2006) Naïve and conditioned responses of *Culex pipiens pipiens* biotype *molestus* (Diptera: Culicidae) to flower odors. J Med Entomol 43: 1164-1170.

Jhumur US, Dötterl S and Jürgens A (2007) Electrophysiological and behavioural responses of mosquitoes to the volatiles of *Silene otites* (Caryophyllaceae). Arthropod-Plant Interact 1: 245-254.

Jhumur US, Dötterl S and Jürgens A (2008) Floral odors of *Silene otites*: their variability and attractiveness to mosquitoes. J Chem Ecol 34: 14-25.

Jones CJ, Hogsette JA, Patterson RS and Milne DE (1985) Effects of natural saccharide and pollen extract feeding on stable fly (Diptera: Muscidae) longevity. Environ Entomol 14: 223-227.

Joy TK, Arik AJ, Corby-Harris V, Johnson AA and Riehle MA (2010) The impact of larval and adult dietary restriction on lifespan, reproduction and growth in the mosquito *Aedes aegypti*. Exp Geront 45: 685-690.

Junnila A, Müller GC and Schlein Y (2010) Species identification of plant tissues from the gut of *An. sergentii* by DNA analysis. Acta Trop 115: 227-233.

Kaufmann C and Briegel H (2004) Flight performance of the malaria vectors *Anopheles gambiae* and *Anopheles atroparvus*. J Vector Ecol 29: 140-153.

Kelly R and Edman JD (1997) Infection and transmission of *Plasmodium gallinaceum* (Eucoccida: Plasmodiidae) in *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae): Effect of preinfection sugar meals and postinfection blood meals. J Vector Ecol 22: 36-42.

Klowden MJ (1986) Effects of sugar deprivation on the host-seeking behaviour of gravid *Aedes aegypti* mosquitoes. J Insect Physiol 32: 479-483.

Klowden MJ and Briegel H (1994) Mosquito gonotrophic cycle and multiple feeding potential: Contrasts between *Anopheles* and *Aedes* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Med Entomol 31: 618-622.

Klowden MJ and Dutro SM (1990) Effects of carbohydrate ingestion on the pre-oviposition behavior of the mosquito *Aedes aegypti*. Bull Soc Vector Ecol 15: 59-62.

Klowden MJ and Lea AO (1979) Abdominal distention terminates subsequent host-seeking behaviour of *Aedes aegypti* following a blood meal. J Insect Physiol 25: 583-585.

Klowden MJ, Blackmer JL and Chambers GM (1988) Effects of larval nutrition on the host-seeking behavior of adult *Aedes aegypti* mosquitoes. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 4: 73.

Koella JC and Boëte C (2002) A genetic correlation between age at pupation and melanization immune response of the yellow fever mosquito *Aedes aegypti*. Evolution 56: 1074-1079.

Koella JC and Sørensen FL (2002) Effect of adult nutrition on the melanization immune response of the malaria vector *Anopheles stephensi*. Med Vet Entomol 16: 316-320.

Laarman JJ (1968) The intake of sugars by females of wild Anopheles gambiae and *Anopheles funestus*. Acta Leidensia 36: 137-144.

Lambrechts L, Chavatte JM, Snounou G and Koella JC (2006) Environmental influence on the genetic basis of mosquito resistance to malaria parasites. Proc R Soc B 273: 1501-1506.

Lea AO (1965) Sugar-baited insecticide residues against mosquitoes. Mosq News 25: 65-66.

Lea AO, Dimond JB and DeLong DM (1958) Some nutritional factors in egg production by *Aedes aegypti*. Proc 10th Int Congr Entomol 1956: 793-796.

Lindh JM, Terenius O, Eriksson-Gonzales K, Knols BGJ and Faye I (2006) Re-introducing bacteria in mosquitoes – a method for determination of mosquito feeding preferences based on coloured sugar solutions. Acta Trop 99: 173-183.

Lounibos LP and Conn J (1991) Fecundity, parity, and adult feeding relationships among Nyssorhynchus malaria vectors from Venezuela. Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz 86: 57-66.

Lyimo EO and Takken W (1993) Effects of adult body size on fecundity and the pre-gravid rate of *Anopheles gambiae* females in Tanzania. Med Vet Entomol 7: 328-332.

Ma BO and Roitberg BD (2008) The role of resource availability and state-dependence in the foraging strategy of blood-feeding mosquitoes. Evol Ecol Res 10: 1111-1130.

MacDonald G (1957) The epidemiology and control of malaria. Oxford University Press, Oxford, UK.

Magnarelli LA (1978) Nectar-feeding by female mosquitoes and its relation to follicular development and parity. J Med Entomol 14: 527-530.

Magnarelli LA (1979) Diurnal nectar-feeding of *Aedes cantator* and *Ae. sollicitans* (Diptera: Culicidae). Environ Entomol 8: 949-955.

Magnarelli LA (1980) Bionomics of *Psorophora ferox* (Diptera: Culicidae): Seasonal occurrence and acquisition of sugars. J Med Entomol 17: 328-332.

Magnarelli LA and Anderson JF (1977) Follicular development in salt marsh tabanidae (Diptera) and incidence of nectar feeding with relation to gonotrophic activity. Ann Entomol Soc Am 70: 529-533.

Maier WA, Becker-Feldman H and Seitz HM (1987) Pathology of malaria-infected mosquitoes. Parasitol Today 3: 216-218.

Manda H, Gouagna L, Githure J, Hassanali A and Foster W (2008) Rate of plant sugar digestion at different physiological status of females *Anopheles gambiae* and effects of plant diets quality on their lifespan and reproduction. In: Morris S and Vosloo A (eds.) Molecules to migration: the pressures of life. Medimond, Bologna, Italy, pp. 165-172.

Manda H, Gouagna LC, Foster WA, Jackson RR, Beier JC, Githure JI and Hassanali A (2007a) Effect of discriminative plant-sugar feeding on the survival and fecundity of *Anopheles gambiae*. Malar J 6: 113.

Manda H, Gouagna LC, Kabiru EW, Foster WA, Beier JC, Hassanali A and Githure JI (2007c) Discriminative feeding behavior of *Anopheles gambiae s.s*. on different plant species and effects on its survival, fecundity, and vector competence in a malaria endemic area of western Kenya. Proc 56th Meeting of Am Soc Trop Med Hyg (Abstract).

Manda H, Gouagna LC, Kabiru EW, Hassanali A, Yan G, Beier JC and Githure JI (2005) *Plasmodium falciparum* development in the midgut of *Anopheles gambiae s.s*. feeding on some predominant plants in western Kenya. Acta Trop 95S: S17-18 (Abstract).

Manda H, Gouagna LC, Nyandat E, Kabiru W, Jackson RR, Foster WA, Githure JI, Beier JC and Hassanali A (2007b) Discriminative feeding behaviour of *Anopheles gambiae s.s* on endemic plants in western Kenya. Med Vet Entomol 21: 103-111.

Mangel M and Clark CW (1988) Dynamic modeling in behavioral ecology. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ, USA.

Marinotti O, James AA and Ribeiro JM (1990) Diet and salivation in female *Aedes aegypti* mosquitoes. J Insect Physiol 36: 545-548.

Martinez-Ibarra JA, Rodriguez MH, Arredondo-Jimenez JI and Yuval B (1997) Influence of plant abundance on nectar feeding by *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae) in southern Mexico. J Med Entomol 34: 589-593.

Mauer DJ and Rowley WA (1999) Attraction of *Culex pipiens pipiens* (Diptera: Culicidae) to flower volatiles. J Med Entomol 36: 503-507.

McCall PJ and Eaton G (2001) Olfactory memory in the mosquito *Culex quinquefasciatus*. Med Vet Entomol 15: 197-203.

McCall PJ and Kelly DW (2002) Learning and memory in disease vectors. Trends Parasitol 18: 429-433.
McCall PJ, Mosha FW, Njunwa KJ and Sherlock K (2001) Evidence for memorized site-fidelity in *Anopheles arabiensis*. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 95: 587-590.
McCrae AWR (1989) Differences in sugar-feeding activity between tropical and temperate mosquitoes: field observations and their implications. Vector Ecol Newsletter 20: 16.
Midega JT, Mbogo CM, Mwambi H, Wilson MD, Ojwang G, Mwangangi JM, Nzovu JG, Githure JI, Yan G and Beier JC (2007) Estimating dispersal and survival of *Anopheles gambiae* and *Anopheles funestus* along the Kenyan coast by using mark-release-recapture methods. J Med Entomol 44: 923-929.
Morrison AC, Costero A, Edman JD and Scott TW (1999) Increased fecundity of female *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae) fed only human blood prior to release in Puerto Rico. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 15: 98-104.
Mostowy WM and Foster WA (2004) Antagonistic effects of energy status on meal size and egg-batch size of *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae) J Vector Ecol 29: 84-93.
Muirhead-Thompson RC (1951) Mosquito behavior in relation to malaria transmission in the tropics. E. Arnold, London, UK.
Müller GC and Schlein Y (2004) Nectar and honeydew feeding of *Phlebotomus papatasi* in a focus of *Leishmania major* in Neot Hakikar oasis. J Vector Ecol 29: 154-158.
Müller GC and Schlein Y (2005) Plant tissues: the frugal diet of mosquitoes in adverse conditions. Med Vet Entomol 19: 413-422.
Müller GC and Schlein Y (2006) Sugar questing mosquitoes in arid areas gather on scarce blossoms that can be used for control. Int J Parasitol 36: 1077-1080.
Müller GC and Schlein Y (2008) Efficacy of toxic sugar baits against adult cistern-dwelling *Anopheles claviger*. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 102: 480-484.
Müller GC, Beier JC, Traore SF, Toure MB, Traore MM, Bah S, Doumbia S and Schlein Y (2010a) Field experiments of *Anopheles gambiae* attraction to local fruits/seedpods and flowering plants in Mali to optimize strategies for malaria vector control in Africa using attractive toxic sugar bait methods. Malar J 9: 262.
Müller GC, Beier JC, Traore SF, Toure MB, Traore MM, Bah S, Doumbia S and Schlein Y (2010b) Successful field trial of attractive toxic sugar bait (atsb) plant-spraying methods against malaria vectors in the *Anopheles gambiae* complex in Mali, west Africa. Malar J 9: 210-210.
Müller GC, Junnila A and Schlein Y (2010c) Effective control of adult *Culex pipiens* by spraying an attractive toxic sugar bait solution in the vegetation near larval habitats. J Med Entomol 47: 63-66.
Müller GC, Kravchenko VD and Schlein Y (2008) Decline of *Anopheles sergentii* and *Aedes caspius* populations following presentation of attractive toxic (spinosad) sugar bait stations in an oasis. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 24: 147-149.
Müller GC, Revay EE and Schlein Y (2011) Relative attraction of the sand fly *Phlebotomus papatasi* to local flowering plants in the Dead Sea region. J Vector Ecol 36: S187-S194.
Müller GC, Xue RD and Schlein Y (2010d) Seed pods of the carob tree *Ceratonia siliqua* are a favored sugar source for the mosquito *Aedes albopictus* in coastal Israel. Acta Trop 116: 235-239.
Muller GC, Xue RD and Schlein Y (2011) Differential attraction of *Aedes albopictus* in the field to flowers, fruits and honeydew. Acta Trop 118: 45-49.
Naksathit AT and Scott TW (1998) Effect of female size on fecundity and survivorship of *Aedes aegypti* fed only human blood versus human blood plus sugar. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 14: 148-152.
Nasci RS (1991) Influence of larval and adult nutrition on biting persistence in *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Med Entomol 28: 522-526.
Nayar JK (1978) The detection of nectar sugars in field-collected *Culex nigripalpus* and its application. Ann Entomol Soc Am 71: 55-59.
Nayar JK and Sauerman DM (1975) The effects of nutrition on survival and fecundity in Florida mosquitoes part 2: utilization of a blood meal for survival. J Med Entomol 12: 99-103.
Ng'habi K, Huho BJ, Nkwengulila G, Killeen GF, Knols BJG and Ferguson HM (2008) Sexual selection in mosquito swarms: may the best man lose? Anim Behav 76: 105-112.
Norris LC, Fornadel CM, Hung WC, Pineda FJ and Norris DE (2010) Frequency of multiple blood meals taken in a single gonotrophic cycle by *Anopheles arabiensis* mosquitoes in Macha, Zambia. Am J Trop Med Hyg 83: 33-37.

Nunes RD, de Oliveira RL and Braz GRC (2008) A novel method for measuring fructose ingestion by mosquitoes. J Vector Ecol 33: 225-231.

O'Meara GF (1987) Nutritional ecology of blood-feeding Diptera. In: Slansky F and Rodriguez JG (eds.) Nutritional ecology of insects, mites, spiders and related invertebrates. Wiley, New York, NY, USA, pp. 741-764.

Okanda FM, Dao A, Njiru BN, Arija J, Akelo HA, Toure Y, Odulaja A, Beier JC, Githure JI, Yan G, Gouagna LC, Knols BJG and Killeen GF (2002) Behavioural determinants of gene flow in malaria vector populations: *Anopheles gambiae* males select large females as mates. Malar J 1: 10.

Okech BA, Gouagna LC, Kabiru EW, Beier JC, Yan G and Githure JI (2004) Influence of age and previous diet of *Anopheles gambiae* on the infectivity of natural *Plasmodium falciparum* gametocytes from human volunteers. J Insect Science 4: 33.

Okech BA, Gouagna LC, Killeen GF, Knols BGJ, Kabiru EW, Beier JC, Yan G and Githure JI (2003) Influence of sugar availability and indoor microclimate on survival of *Anopheles gambiae* (Diptera: Culicidae) under semifield conditions in western Kenya. J Med Entomol 40: 657-663.

O'Meara GF (ed.) (1985) Ecology of autogeny in mosquitoes. Ecology of mosquitoes: Proceedings of a workshop. Fla. Med. Entomol. Lab, Vero Beach, FL, USA.

Patterson RS, Smittle BJ and DeNeve RT (1969) Feeding habits of male southern house mosquitoes on P-labeled and unlabeled plants. J Econ Entomol 62: 1455-1458.

Pumpuni CB, Demaio J, Kent M, Davis JR and Beier JC (1996) Bacterial population dynamics in three anopheline species: The impact on *Plasmodium* sporogonic development. Am J Trop Med Hyg 54: 214-218.

Rasgon JL, Styer LM and Scott TW (2003) *Wolbachia*-induced mortality as a mechanism to modulate pathogen transmission by vector arthropods. J Med Entomol 40: 125-132.

Reeves WC, Brookman B and Hammon W (1948) Studies on the flight range of certain *Culex* mosquitoes using a fluorescent dye marker, with notes on *Culiseta* and *Anopheles*. Mosq News 8: 62.

Reisen WK (2004) Lessons from the past: historical studies by the University of Maryland and the University of California, Berkeley. Wageningen UR Frontis Series 2: 25-32.

Reisen WK, Meyer RP and Milby MM (1986) Patterns of fructose feeding by *Culex tarsalis* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Med Entomol 23: 366-373.

Renshaw M, Service MW and Birley MH (1994) Host finding, feeding patterns and evidence for a memorized home range of the mosquito *Aedes cantans*. Med Vet Entomol 8: 187-193.

Renshaw M, Silver JB and Service MW (1995) Differential lipid reserves influence host seeking behaviour in the mosquitoes *Aedes cantans* and *Aedes punctor*. Med Vet Entomol 9: 381-387.

Rhainds M (2010) Female mating failures in insects. Entomol Exp Appl 136: 211-226.

Ribeiro J, Rowton ED and Charlab R (2000) Salivary amylase activity of the phlebotomine sand fly, *Lutzomyia longipalpis*. Insect Biochem Mol Biol 30: 271-277.

Riehle MA and Jacobs-Lorena M (2005) Using bacteria to express and display anti-parasite molecules in mosquitoes: Current and future strategies. Insect Biochem Mol Biol 35: 699-707.

Riehle MA, Moreira CK, Lampe D, Lauzon C and Jacobs-Lorena M (2007) Using bacteria to express and display anti-*Plasmodium* molecules in the mosquito midgut. Int J Parasitol 37: 595-603.

Rivero A and Ferguson HM (2003) The energetic budget of *Anopheles stephensi* infected with *Plasmodium chabaudi*: is energy depletion a mechanism for virulence? Proc R Soc B 270: 1365-1371.

Robich RM and Denlinger DL (2005) Diapause in the mosquito *Culex pipiens* evokes a metabolic switch from blood feeding to sugar gluttony. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 102: 15912-15917.

Roff DA (1992) The evolution of life histories: theory and analysis, Springer, Berlin, Germany.

Roitberg BD and Friend WG (1992) A general theory for host seeking decisions in mosquitoes. Bull Math Biol 54: 401-412.

Roitberg BD, Keiser S and Hoffmeister T (2010) State dependent attacks in a mosquito. Physiol Entomol 35: 46-51.

Roitberg BD, Smith JJ and Friend WG (1994) Host response profiles: A new theory to help us understand why and how attractants attract. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 10: 333-338.

Ross R (1910) The prevention of malaria. John Murray, London, UK.

Rund, SSC, Hou TY, Ward SM, Collins FH and Duffield GE (2011) Genome-wide profiling of diel and circadian gene expression in the malaria vector *Anopheles gambiae*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 108: E421-E430.

Russell CB and Hunter FE (2002) Analysis of nectar and honeydew feeding in *Aedes* and *Ochlerotatus* mosquitoes. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 18: 86-90.

Russell PF, West LD, Manwell RD and MacDonald G (1963) Practical malariology. Oxford University Press, Oxford, UK.

Samish M and Akov S (1972) Influence of feeding on midgut protease activity in *Aedes aegypti*. Israel J Entomol 7: 41-48.

Scaraffia PY and Wells MA (2003) Proline can be utilized as an energy substrate during flight of *Aedes aegypti* females. J Insect Physiol 49: 591-601.

Schaefer CH and Miura T (1972) Sources of energy utilized by natural populations of the mosquito, *Culex tarsalis*, for overwintering. J Insect Physiol 18: 797-805.

Schiefer BA, Ward RA and Eldridge BF (1977) *Plasmodium cynomolgi*: Effects of malaria infection on laboratory flight performance of *Anopheles stephensi* mosquitoes. Exp Parasitol 41: 397-404.

Schlein Y (1986) Sandfly diet and leishmania. Parasitology today 2: 175-177.

Schlein Y and Jacobson RL (1994) Mortality of *Leishmania major* in *Phlebotomus papatasi* caused by plant feeding of the sand flies. Am J Trop Med Hyg 50: 20-27.

Schlein Y and Jacobson RL (1999) Sugar meals and longevity of the sandfly *Phlebotomus papatasi* in an arid focus of *Leishmania major* in the Jordan valley. Med Vet Entomol 13: 65-71.

Schlein Y and Jacobson RL (2001) Hunger tolerance and *Leishmania* in sandflies. Nature 414: 168.

Schlein Y and Muller GC (1995) Assessment of plant tissue feeding by sand flies (Diptera: Psychodidae) and mosquitoes (Diptera: Culicidae). J Med Entomol 32: 882-887.

Schlein Y and Müller GC (2008) An approach to mosquito control: Using the dominant attraction of flowering *Tamarix jordanis* trees against *Culex pipiens*. J Med Entomol 45: 384-390.

Schlein Y and Pener H (1990) Bait fed adult *Culex pipiens* carry the larvicide *Bacillus sphaericus* to the larval habitat. Med Vet Entomol 4: 283-288.

Schlein Y and Warburg A (1986) Phytophagy and the feeding cycle of *Phlebotomus papatasi* (Diptera: Psychodidae) under experimental conditions. J Med Entomol 23: 11-15.

Schlein Y and Yuval B (1987) Leishmaniasis in the Jordan valley iv. Attraction of *Phlebotomus papatasi* (Diptera: Psychodidae) to plants in the field. J Med Entomol 24: 87-90.

Schlein Y, Jacobson RL and Muller GC (2001) Sand fly feeding on noxious plants: A potential method for the control of leishmaniasis. Am J Trop Med Hyg 65: 300-303.

Schwartz A and Koella JC (2002) Melanization of *Plasmodium falciparum* and c-25 sephadex beads by field-caught *Anopheles gambiae* (Diptera: Culicidae) from southern Tanzania. J Med Entomol 39: 84-88.

Scott TW, Amerasinghe PH, Morrison AC, Lorenz LH, Clark GG, Strickman D, Kittayapong P and Edman JD (2000) Longitudinal studies of *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae) in Thailand and Puerto Rico: blood feeding frequency. J Med Entomol 37: 89-101.

Scott TW, Clark GG, Lorenz LH, Amerasinghe PH, Reiter P and Edman JD (1993) Detection of multiple blood feeding in *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae) during a single gonotrophic cycle using a histologic technique. J Med Entomol 30: 94-99.

Scott TW, Githeko AK, Fleisher A, Harrington LC and Yan G (2006) DNA profiling of human blood in anophelines from lowland and highland sites in western Kenya. Am J Trop Med Hyg 75: 231-237.

Scott TW, Naksathit A, Day JF, Kittayapong P and Edman JD (1997) A fitness advantage for *Ae. aegypti* and the viruses it transmits when females feed only on human blood. Am J Trop Med Hyg 57: 235-239.

Shaukat AM, Breman JG and McKenzie FE (2010) Using the entomological inoculation rate to assess the impact of vector control on malaria parasite transmission and elimination. Malar J 9: 122-122.

Shroyer DA and Sanders DP (1977) The influence of carbohydrate-feeding and insemination on oviposition of an indiana strain of *Aedes vexans* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Med Entomol 14: 121-127.

Shuel RW (1992) The production of nectar and pollen. In: Grout RA (ed.) The hive and the honey bee, 4th ed. Dadant and Sons, Hamilton, IL, USA, pp. 401-425.

Sim C and Denlinger DL (2009) Transcription profiling and regulation of fat metabolism genes in diapausing adults of the mosquito *Culex pipiens*. Physiol. Genomics 39: 202-209.

Simpson MG and Laurence BR (1979) Incorporation of radioactive precursors into filarial larvae of *Brugia* developing in susceptible and refractory mosquitoes. J Parasitol 65: 732-736.

Smith SM and Gadawski RM (1994) Nectar feeding by the early spring mosquito *Aedes provocans*. Med Vet Entomol 8: 201-213.

Somani BL, Khanade J and Sinha R (1987) A modified anthrone-sulfuric acid method for the determination of fructose in the presence of certain proteins. Anal Biochem 167: 327-330.

South SH and Arnqvist G (2011) Male, but not female, preference for an ornament expressed in both sexes of the polygynous mosquito *Sabethes cyaneus*. Anim Behav 81: 645-651.

Souza-Neto JA, Machado FP, Lima JB, Valle D and Ribolla PEM (2007) Sugar digestion in mosquitoes: Identification and characterization of three midgut α-glucosidases of the neo-tropical malaria vector *Anopheles aquasalis* (Diptera: Culicidae). Comp Biochem Phys A: Molec & Integr Physiol 147: 993-1000.

Spencer CY, Pendergast IV TH and Harrington LC (2005) Fructose variation in the dengue vector, *Aedes aegypti*, during high and low transmission seasons in the Mae Sot region of Thailand. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 21: 177-181.

Stephens DW and Krebs JR (1986) Foraging theory. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ, USA.

Stone CM, Hamilton IM and Foster WA (2011) A survival and reproduction trade-off is resolved in accordance with resource availability by virgin female mosquitoes. Anim Behav 81: 765-774.

Stone CM, Jackson BT and Foster WA (2012) Effects of bed net use, female size, and plant abundance on the first meal choice (blood vs sugar) of the malaria mosquito *Anopheles gambiae*. Malar J 11: 3.

Stone CM, Taylor RM, Roitberg BD and Foster WA (2009) Sugar deprivation reduces insemination of *Anopheles gambiae* (Diptera: Culicidae), despite daily recruitment of adults, and predicts decline in model populations. J Med Entomol 46: 1327-1337.

Straif SC and Beier JC (1996) Effects of sugar availability on the blood feeding behaviour of *Anopheles gambiae* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Med Entomol 33: 608-612.

Styer LM, Carey JR, Wang JL and Scott TW (2007a) Mosquitoes do senesce: Departure from the paradigm of constant mortality. Am J Trop Med Hyg 76: 111-117.

Styer LM, Minnick SL, Sun AK and Scott TW (2007b) Mortality and reproductive dynamics of *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae) fed human blood. Vector Borne Zoonotic Dis 7: 86-98.

Suwanchaichinda C and Paskewitz SM (1998) Effects of larval nutrition, adult body size, and adult temperature on the ability of *Anopheles gambiae* (Diptera: Culicidae) to melanize sephadex beads. J Med Entomol 35: 157-161.

Suzuki R, Zhang Y, Iino T, Kosako Y, Komagata K and Uchimura T (2010) *Asaia astilbes*, *Asaia platycodi*, and *Asaia prunellae*, novel acetic acid bacteria isolated from flowers in japan. J Gen App Microbiol 56: 339-346.

Takken W, Klowden MJ and Chambers GM (1998) Effect of body size on host seeking and blood meal utilization in *Anopheles gambiae sensu stricto* (Diptera: Culicidae): the disadvantage of being small. J Med Entomol 35: 639-645.

Telang A and Wells MA (2004) The effect of larval and adult nutrition on successful autogenous egg production by a mosquito. J Insect Physiol 50: 677-685.

Tesh RB, Guzman H and Wilson ML (1992) Trans-beta-farnesene as a feeding stimulant for the sand fly *Lutzomyia longipalpis* (Diptera: Psychodidae). J Med Entomol 29: 226-231.

Tomberlin JK, Rains GC, Allan SA, Sanford MR and Lewis WJ (2006) Associative learning of odor with food-or blood-meal by *Culex quinquefasciatus* say (Diptera: Culicidae). Naturwissenschaften 93: 551-556.

Tripet F, Aboagye-Antwi F and Hurd H (2008) Ecological immunology of mosquito-malaria interactions. Trends Parasitol 24: 219-227.

Tseng JM, Jones CJ and Hogsette JA. (1983) Nectar feeding and the stable fly, *Stomoxys calcitrans* (Diptera: Muscidae). J. Florida Anti-Mosq Assoc 54: 40-41.

Tsunoda T, Fukuchi A, Nanbara S and Takagi M (2010) Effect of body size and sugar meals on oviposition of the yellow fever mosquito, *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Vector Ecol 35: 56-60.

Vaidyanathan R, Fleisher AE, Minnick SL, Simmons KA and Scott TW (2008) Nutritional stress affects mosquito survival and vector competence for west nile virus. Vector Borne Zoonotic Dis 8: 727-732.

Van Den Hurk AF, Johnson PH, Hall-Mendelin S, Northill JA, Simmons RJ, Jansen CC, Frances SP, Smith GA and Ritchie SA (2007) Expectoration of flaviviruses during sugar feeding by mosquitoes (Diptera: Culicidae). J Med Entomol 44: 845-850.

Van Handel E (1967) Determination of fructose and fructose-yielding carbohydrates with cold anthrone. Anal Biochem 19: 193-194.

Van Handel E (1972) The detection of nectar in mosquitoes. Mosq News 32: 458-458.

Van Handel E, Edman JD, Day JF, Scott TW, Clark CG, Reiter P and Lynn HC (1994) Plant-sugar, glycogen, and lipid assay of *Aedes aegypti* collected in urban Puerto Rico and rural Florida. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 10: 149-153.

Vargo AM and Foster WA (1982) Responsiveness of female *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae) to flower extracts. J Med Entomol 19: 710-718.

Vaughan JA, Noden BH and Beier JC (1994) Prior blood feeding effects on susceptibility of *Anopheles gambiae* (Diptera: Culicidae) to infection with cultured *Plasmodium falciparum* (Haemosporida: Plasmodiidae). J Med Entomol 31: 445-449.

Verhoek BA and Takken W (1994) Age effects on the insemination rate of *Anopheles gambiae s.l.* in the laboratory. Entomol Exp App 72: 167-172.

Vrzal EM, Allan SA and Hahn DA (2010) Amino acids in nectar enhance longevity of female *Culex quinquefasciatus* mosquitoes. J Insect Physiol: 1659-1664.

Walker ED and Edman JD (1985) The influence of host defensive behavior on mosquito (Diptera: Culicidae) biting persistence. J Med Entomol 22: 370-372.

Watanabe M, Kamimura K and Kubota K (1973) A simplified method for the analysis of various sugars fed the mosquito, *Culex pipiens* sl jap. J Sanit Zool 24: 17-21.

Weathersby AB and Noblet R (1973) *Plasmodium gallinaceum*: Development in *Aedes aegypti* maintained on various carbohydrate diets. Exp Parasitol 34: 426-431.

WHO (2004) Global strategic framework for integrated vector management. CDS/CPE/PVC/2004.10. Geneva: World Health Organization.

Wittie J (2003) The effect of sugar and blood-host type on the survival, fecundity, biting frequency, and persistence of the eastern tree-hole mosquito, *Ochlerotatus triseriatus* (Diptera: Culicidae). MSc Thesis, The Ohio State University, Columbus, OH, USA.

Xue RD and Barnard DR (1999) Effects of partial blood engorgement and pretest carbohydrate availability on the repellency of deet to *Aedes albopictus*. J Vector Ecol 24: 111.

Xue RD, Ali A and Barnard DR (2008) Host species diversity and post-blood feeding carbohydrate availability enhance survival of females and fecundity in *Aedes albopictus* (Diptera: Culicidae). Exp Parasitol 119: 225-228.

Xue RD, Barnard DR and Muller GC (2010) Effects of body size and nutritional regimen on survival in adult *Aedes albopictus* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Med Entomol 47: 778-782.

Xue RD, Kline DL, Ali A and Barnard DR (2006) Application of boric acid baits to plant foliage for adult mosquito control. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 22: 497-500.

Yamada Y, Katsura K, Kawasaki H, Widyastuti Y, Saono S, Seki T, Uchimura T and Komagata K (2000) *Asaia bogorensis*, an unusual acetic acid bacterium in the alpha-proteobacteria. Int J Syst Evol Microbiol 50: 823.

Yan G, Severson DW and Christensen BM (1997) Costs and benefits of mosquito refractoriness to malaria parasites: implications for genetic variability of mosquitoes and genetic control of malaria. Evolution 51: 441-450.

Yuval B (1992) The other habit: sugar feeding by mosquitoes. Bull Soc Vector Ecol 17: 150-156.

Yuval B (2006) Mating systems of blood-feeding flies. Annu Rev Entomol 51: 413-440.

Yuval B and Bouskila A (1993) Temporal dynamics of mating and predation in mosquito swarms. Oecologia 95: 65-69.

Yuval B, Holliday-Hanson ML and Washino R (1994) Energy budget of swarming male mosquitoes. Ecol Entomol 19: 74-78.

4. Vector competence for arboviruses in relation to the larval environment of mosquitoes

Barry W. Alto and L. Philip Lounibos

Abstract

Mosquito vector competence studies are reviewed to identify the species and environmental conditions that modify susceptibility to infection and transmission of pathogens. Most studies on vector competence have focused on environmental conditions experienced by adults, but the larval environment shapes the phenotypes of adult mosquitoes and may, thereby, alter vector competence for arthropod-borne (arbo)viruses. This review summarizes results of studies on the effects of nutrition, competition, temperature and insecticides during the larval stages on adult vector competence for arboviruses. A statistical analysis of previously published work supported the conclusion that larval environment may significantly alter susceptibility to infection, dissemination, and virus transmission. These effects show multiple and environmentally specific effects on barriers to virus infection. Involvement of multiple virus barriers in the adult mosquito suggests that several factors may be responsible for the alteration of vector competence by larval environment.

Keywords: arbovirus, competition, insecticide, nutrient limitation, temperature, vector competence

Introduction

Studies to the assess ability of mosquitoes to vector pathogens have played a central role in advancing our understanding of mosquito-borne disease transmission and led to improvements in control practices. Vector competence is the intrinsic permissiveness of an arthropod to infection, replication, and transmission of a pathogen (Hardy 1988, Woodring *et al.* 1996) and it serves as a measure of vectoring ability. Measurements of vector competence can be integrated with other ecological and behavioural characteristics of mosquitoes (abundance, longevity, feeding habit) to estimate vectorial capacity. Vectorial capacity, the average number of potentially infective bites received by a host in a single day, may be used to guide control efforts aimed at reducing contact rate between infected vectors and target hosts. A central goal of mosquito vector competence studies is to identify the conditions that modify competence in order to further our understanding of interactions between mosquitoes and pathogens and to aid efforts to minimize transmission risk. Both environmental and genetic factors influence arthropod-borne (arbo)virus infection processes in mosquitoes. Although numerous mosquito species may be capable of transmitting particular arboviruses, usually far fewer contribute substantially to transmission in nature because of genetic or environmental barriers related to vectoring ability, including vector competence. Most studies on vector competence have focused on environmental conditions experienced by adults (e.g. ambient temperature, viral dose) but environmental conditions of immature stages may have latent effects that continue to adulthood and alter arbovirus vector competence.

Growth and development of mosquitoes occurs during the aquatic stages, so the immature environment shapes traits of adults, some of which may relate to vector competence for arboviruses and disease transmission. The immature stages of mosquitoes occupy a variety of aquatic environments which vary in quality and quantity of nutrients, primarily from allochthonous detritus that forms the basal resources for microorganisms eaten by mosquito larvae (Fish and Carpenter 1982, Lounibos *et al.* 1993, Merritt *et al.* 1992, Walker *et al.* 1991, 1997). Different types

W. Takken and C.J.M. Koenraadt (eds.), *Ecology of parasite-vector interactions*, Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases 3, DOI 10.3920/978-90-8686-744-8_4, © Wageningen Academic Publishers 2013

and quantities of detritus influence individual development, growth, survival, as well as population dynamics and community structure (e.g. species assemblages), and these effects may be modified by ambient temperature. Equally as important are biotic interactions (e.g. predation, competition, parasitism), many of which primarily occur during the larval stages. Regulation of populations of mosquitoes in permanent ground water habitats is strongly influenced by predation, whereas competition appears to be a more important regulatory mechanism in ephemeral and container aquatic habitats (Juliano 2007, Service 1985).

Studies of mosquito vector competence, even when quantitative comparisons are made between species, rarely consider the possibility that biotic interactions may influence vector competence for arboviruses. For mosquitoes, biotic interactions shaping adult traits are largely experienced during the larval stages. Direct interactions include predation, interference, mutualism, and parasitism. Indirect interactions occur through intermediary species, and they can be most generally categorized as either feeding chains or other interactive modifications (Peacor and Werner 2000, 2001, Werner and Peacor 2003, Wooton 1994, 2002). Alterations in phenotypes from species interactions and other aspects of the larval environment are assumed to arise from phenotypic plasticity. Alternatively, alterations in phenotypes may also be due to selection among individuals for different phenotypes (Hetchel and Juliano 1997). Regardless of the mechanism, if alterations in phenotypes also translate to altered susceptibility to viral infection and transmission, then there is a possibility that the larval environment may influence disease transmission.

Typically, arbovirus transmission by mosquitoes involves acquisition in the midgut of an infectious blood meal, infection of midgut cells, dissemination of virus from the midgut to secondary tissues including the salivary glands, and inoculation of a vertebrate host during probing and feeding (Hardy *et al.* 1983, Woodring *et al.* 1996). Transmission from mosquito to host depends on whether the founding virus population, usually acquired by bite, successfully overcomes barriers to dissemination. The relative efficacy of barriers that impede the progression of virus infection in mosquitoes may depend on the specific virus, mosquito species, or even the geographic origin of the mosquito or virus (e.g. Bennett *et al.* 2002, Gubler *et al.* 1979, Tabachnick *et al.* 1985). Identified barriers to infection include the midgut infection and escape barriers and salivary gland infection and escape barriers (Hardy *et al.* 1983, Woodring *et al.* 1996). Both the midgut infection and escape barriers are dose-dependent so that higher doses of virus increase the probability of infection and its progression to other tissues. Differences in vector competence are reduced, sometimes to the point of eliminating resistance to viral infection in mosquitoes, when the midgut infection and escape barriers are bypassed via intrathoracic inoculation (Gubler and Rosen 1976, Hardy *et al.* 1978), underscoring the importance of natural infection processes to vector competence. The salivary gland infection and escape barriers ultimately determine whether a disseminated infection may be transmitted to a host through virus-infected saliva during probing and feeding.

Although our understanding of the molecular basis for barriers to virus infection is rudimentary, recent advances on the expression of immunity related genes have been possible by completion of annotated genome sequences for the mosquitoes *Aedes aegypti* (L.) and *Anopheles gambiae* Giles (reviewed in Fragkoudis *et al.* 2009). Ingestion of arboviruses is known to induce antimicrobial immune pathways including immune deficiency (Imd), Toll (Ramirez and Dimopoulos 2010, Sanders *et al.* 2005, Xi *et al.* 2008), Janus kinase-signal transducers and activator of transcription (JAK/STAT) (Fragkoudis *et al.* 2009, Sanders *et al.* 2005, Souza-Neto *et al.* 2009), and RNA interference (RNAi) (Cirimotich *et al.* 2009, Keene *et al.* 2004, Khoo *et al.* 2010). The relative role and sequence of immune signaling between linked pathways that lead to modification in viral infection and replication are only known in part for a few mosquito species and viruses *in vivo,* e.g. *Ae. aegypti*

and Sindbis virus (Cirimotich *et al.* 2009, Khoo *et al.* 2010, Sanders *et al.* 2005); and *Ae. aegypti* and dengue virus (Ramirez and Dimopoulos 2010, Sánchez-Vargas *et al.* 2009, Xi *et al.* 2008). Moreover, immune pathways may be virus-specific, as is the case with *Drosophila melanogaster* Meigen, and modified by the environment (reviewed in Xi *et al.* 2008). For instance, exposure to temperature and other types of environmental stress may up-regulate the expression of heat shock proteins in mosquitoes (Zhao *et al.* 2010). In some cases these proteins may influence virus infection, as demonstrated by *An. gambiae* heat shock protein cognate 70B which reduces o'nyong-nyong virus replication (Sim *et al.* 2007). If the environmental conditions experienced by larvae lead to expression of immune-related genes in nature, then such molecular changes may affect vector competence for arboviruses (Muturi, unpublished results).

There is an intellectual gap to be traversed between the ecology of the immature stages and adult vectoring ability. The current chapter limits our investigation into this area of research to vector competence for arboviruses. Our aim is to connect the importance of different environmental influences on larvae to mosquito biology and vector competence (Table 1). Specifically, we will use this review as a basis to formalize tests of hypotheses generated from published literature regarding the nature and extent of larval environmental influences on vector competence, identify plausible mechanism(s) for altered vector competence, and discuss areas for future research to further our understanding of larval environmental influences on susceptibility to virus infection and transmission. For purposes of this review, assays of mosquitoes for virus infection are categorized into infection, dissemination and transmission. Our reasoning is that these categories enable us to better identify particular virus barriers that may be modified by the larval environment. Infection refers to the presence of virus in mosquito midguts or in mosquito bodies and absence of virus in other tissues (e.g. legs). Dissemination refers to the presence of virus in tissues other than the midgut. Evidence for transmission comes either from the presence of virus in mosquito saliva or in vertebrate hosts after infected mosquitoes are allowed to probe/feed.

Nutrition

Decomposing organic matter in the form of plant detritus and decomposing invertebrates serve as the basal resources for microorganisms that form the diet for mosquito larvae (Kaufmann *et al.* 2010, Merritt *et al.* 1992). Spatio-temporal variation in the availability of organic matter is likely to determine habitat quality for mosquitoes. The quantity and quality of nutrients available to mosquitoes largely determine growth and development during the larval stages. Upon eclosion, the size and nutrient reserves of adults are directly related to the nutrient conditions that the larvae experienced. It has been long suspected that mosquito size, and associated physiological status and fitness, may influence susceptibility to virus infection and transmission. Studies on the role of larval nutrition on vector competence are biased towards container-inhabiting mosquitoes due to their importance in the transmission of arboviruses as well as their ease of manipulation.

Large adult *Aedes triseriatus* Say from nutrient rich larval conditions were less likely to be infected and transmit LaCrosse encephalitis virus (LACV) than small adults from nutrient-deprived larvae (Grimstad and Haramis 1984, Grimstad and Walker 1991, Patrican and DeFoliart 1985). These nutrient-dependent effects on transmission were observed for both horizontal (by bite) and vertical (transovarial) routes of transmission (Patrican and DeFoliart 1985). Although mechanism(s) responsible for altered vector competence were not identified, differences in the midgut morphology were suggested to be responsible for higher rates of LACV dissemination from the midgut in small-sized adults due to a thinner basement membrane (fewer basal laminae) than detected in large-sized adults (Grimstad and Walker 1991). Field collections of pupae were

Table 1. Larval environments of mosquitoes and adult vector competence for arboviruses.

Mosquito species	Arbovirus	Larval environment	Altered performance	Infection[1]	Dissemination[1]	Transmission[1]	Reference
Ae. aegypti							
	CHIKV	elevated temperature	development, survivorship	.	+	.	Mourya *et al.* 2004
	DENV-2	elevated temperature	.	.	+	.	Yadav *et al.* 2005
		intra-, interspecific competition	size, survivorship, development, λ′	0	0	.	Alto *et al.* 2008a
			size	+	+	.	Alto *et al.* 2008b
		intraspecific competition	size	.	-	.	Sumanochitrapon *et al.* 1998
	RRV	nutrient deprivation	size	-	.	.	Nasci and Mitchell 1994
	SINV	elevated temperature	size, development, survivorship, λ′	+	+	.	Muturi, unpublished results
			size, development, survivorship	+	+	.	Muturi and Alto 2011
		insecticide malathion	size, development, survivorship, λ′	+	+	.	Muturi and Alto 2011; Muturi, unpublished results
			size, development, survivorship	0	+	.	Muturi *et al.* 2011
		intra-, interspecific competition	size, survivorship, development, λ′	0	0	.	Alto *et al.* 2005
		intraspecific competition	size, survivorship, development	0	+	.	Muturi *et al.* 2011
		nutrient deprivation	size, development, survivorship	+	+	.	Muturi, unpublished results
Ae. albopictus							
	CHIKV	elevated temperature	size, development, survivorship	-	-	.	Westbrook *et al.* 2010
	DENV-2	intra-, interspecific competition	size, survivorship, development, λ′	+	+	.	Alto *et al.* 2008a
			size	+	+	.	Alto *et al.* 2008b
		nutrient deprivation	.	.	+	.	Zhang *et al.* 1993
	SINV	insecticide malathion	size, development, survivorship	0	0	.	Muturi *et al.* 2011
		intra-, interspecific competition	size, survivorship, development, λ′	+	+	.	Alto *et al.* 2005
		intraspecific competition	size, development, survivorship	0	0	.	Muturi *et al.* 2011
Ae. taeniorhynchus							
	RVFV	elevated temperature	.	-	+	.	Turell 1993
	VEEV	elevated temperature	.	-	+	.	Turell 1993

Table 1. Continued.

Mosquito species Arbovirus	Larval environment	Altered performance	Infection[1]	Dissemination[1]	Transmission[1]	Reference
Ae. triseriatus						
LACV	field collected pupae	size	.	+	+	Paulson and Hawley 1991
	intra-, interspecific competition	size, survivorship	+	+	.	Bevins 2008
	nutrient deprivation	size	0	+	+	Grimstad and Haramis 1984
		size	+	+	+	Grimstad and Walker 1991
		size	.	+	+	Paulson and Hawley 1991
		size, development	.	+	+	Patrican and DeFoliart 1985
Ae. vigilax						
RRV	elevated temperature	.	0	0	.	Kay and Jennings 2002
	nutrient deprivation	size	0	0	0	Jennings and Kay 1999
Cx. annulirostris						
MVEV	elevated temperature	.	+	.	+	Kay *et al.* 1989b
	nutrient deprivation	size	0	.	0	Kay *et al.* 1989a
Cx. tarsalis						
WEEV	elevated temperature	.	_	.	.	Hardy *et al.* 1990
Cx. tritaeniorhynchus						
JEV	nutrient deprivation	.	.	.	+	Takahashi 1976
WNV	elevated temperature	size, development, survivorship	0	.	.	Baqar *et al.* 1980
	intraspecific competition	size, development, survivorship	+[2]	.	.	Baqar *et al.* 1980
	nutrient deprivation	size, development, survivorship	0	.	.	Baqar *et al.* 1980

[1] Symbols +, -, and 0, show increases, decreases, and no change in infection parameters. Periods (.) indicate that these measurements were not recorded.
[2] Baqar *et al.* (1980) showed that *Culex tritaeniorhynchus* from intermediate larval rearing densities (2.0 larvae/ml) had significantly lowered rates of West Nile virus infection than mosquitoes from low (0.5 larvae/ml) and high (4.0 larvae/ml) densities.

used to further address whether the size of *Ae. triseriatus* in natural populations could be related to vector competence. Rates of disseminated infections and transmission after imbibing LACV infected blood were negatively related to mosquito size, as measured by both pupal weight and wing length for two strains of *Ae. triseriatus* (Paulson and Hawley 1991). These relationships appear to be attributable to environment and not genetic determinants (Anderson *et al.* 2005), since vector competence was indistinguishable among F1 progeny from well-fed larvae of small and large sized parental mosquitoes (Paulson and Hawley 1991). Similarly, small adult *Aedes albopictus* Skuse derived from nutrient-deprived larvae had significantly higher rates of dissemination of dengue-2 virus than large adults from nutrient rich larval conditions (Zhang *et al.* 1993). Electron microscopic observation of mesenteronal tissue showed that adults from nutrient-deprived larvae had thinner basement membranes (6-12 laminae) than adults from nutrient rich larval conditions (14-19 laminae). Moreover, adults from field collections of *Ae. albopictus* pupae had body sizes and rates of dengue-2 virus infection similar to those adults from nutrient-deprived larval conditions (Zhang *et al.* 1993). Takahashi (1976) showed a trend for reductions in the length of the extrinsic incubation period for Japanese encephalitits virus in *Culex tritaeniorhynchus* Giles from nutritionally-deprived larvae. However, the relationship between nutrition and vector competence for other mosquito species and viruses has yielded inconsistent outcomes ranging from no effects, e.g. *Aedes vigilax* Skuse and Ross River virus (Jennings and Kay 1999); *Culex annulirostris* Skuse and Murray Valley encephalitis virus (Kay *et al.* 1989a), to decreasing competence with nutrient deprivation, e.g. *Ae. aegypti* and Ross River virus (Nasci and Mitchell 1994). Thus, nutrient-dependent changes in competency for arboviruses may, at least in part, depend on the species of mosquitoes and viruses.

Intra- and interspecific competition

Density-dependent interactions play a critical role in regulating populations and may have implications for understanding vector biology, control, and improved predictability for risk of disease transmission. For mosquitoes these regulatory forces act strongly on the immature aquatic stages and subsequently impact the size and fitness of the adult population. Regulation of populations of mosquitoes using container and ephemeral habitats appears to be strongly influenced by density-dependent competition, a source of mortality (e.g. Arrivillaga and Barrera 2004, Barrera and Medialdea 1996, Barrera *et al.* 2006, Juliano 2007, Service 1985, Southwood *et al.* 1972). Along the same lines, management of mosquito-borne diseases largely depends on the application of larvicides that induce mortality and subsequently reduce the density of adult mosquito vectors. Surprisingly, we know very little in terms of how these multiple sources of mortality influence arboviral vector competence of surviving adults.

One of the earliest studies to investigate the relationship between competition and vector competence focused on *Cx. tritaeniorhynchus* and infection with West Nile virus (Baqar *et al.* 1980). Moderate competition (2 larvae/ml) significantly reduced susceptibility of *Cx. tritaeniorhynchus* to West Nile virus infection relative to low and high competition (0.5 larvae/ml and 4 larvae/ml, respectively). Although a clear pattern of larval density effects on infection with West Nile virus was not identified, the study showed that the larval environment has effects that continue to influence interactions between the adult mosquito and arboviruses. Nearly two decades later a competition experiment using F1 *Ae. aegypti* from field collections in three geographic locations in Thailand demonstrated that large mosquitoes from low intraspecific competition had higher dissemination of dengue-2 virus than small mosquitoes from high competition (Sumanochitrapon *et al.* 1998). These effects also appeared to be stronger in mosquitoes from some geographic

locations over others, suggesting a possible interaction between genotype and competition in dengue vector competence.

Only recently have researchers begun to investigate the role of interspecific competition in modifying arbovirus vector competence in mosquitoes. Research in this area was prompted by widespread invasions by the Asian tiger mosquito *Ae. albopictus* (reviewed in Benedict *et al.* 2007). *Aedes albopictus* immature stages occupy water-filled containers along with other mosquito species. In the USA, the treehole mosquito *Ae. triseriatus* and yellow fever mosquito *Ae. aegypti* are common occupants of containers and vectors of LaCrosse and dengue viruses, respectively. Competitive interactions between these species are well documented and influence individual life history traits, population dynamics and community structure. The establishment of *Ae. albopictus*, a competent laboratory and natural vector of several arboviruses, in new regions poses a risk to human health because it may become involved in existing disease transmission cycles of established pathogens or newly introduced pathogens. Additionally, interspecific interactions between *Ae. albopictus* and other mosquito species may alter the relative abundance of the adult populations of vector species or affect the phenotypes of mosquitoes that relate to vectoring ability such as vector competence.

Ae. albopictus is competitively superior in its larval stages to native *Ae. triseriatus* (Aliabadi and Juliano 2002, Livdahl and Willey 1991, Novak *et al.* 1993, Teng and Apperson 2000). Therefore, interspecific interactions between the larvae of these species are predicted to impose asymmetric nutritional stress on *Ae. triseriatus* via resource depletion, perhaps with similar consequences for susceptibility to LACV infection as was the case among nutritionally-deprived *Ae. triseriatus* (see above). Using a replacement series design, Bevins (2008) investigated competitive interactions between larvae of *Ae. triseriatus* and *Ae. albopictus* and their consequences for *Ae. triseriatus* infection with LACV. The presence of *Ae. albopictus* increased *Ae. triseriatus* mortality but the surviving individuals were larger than in treatments containing only *Ae. triseriatus*, perhaps attributable to release from competition among survivors. Reciprocal effects on *Ae. albopictus* performance measurements were not observed, consistent with other studies that demonstrated the competitive superiority of *Ae. albopictus*. Large *Ae. triseriatus* from interspecific treatments (containing *Ae. albopictus*) had higher infection and dissemination rates of LACV compared to intraspecific treatments of *Ae. triseriatus* (Bevins 2008). In contrast to studies on nutrition and LACV infection in *Ae. triseriatus* (see above), larger, not smaller, mosquitoes had enhanced vector competence, suggesting that size alone is not an accurate predictor of susceptibility to infection and transmission of LACV. Despite the apparent release from competition for *Ae. triseriatus* in interspecific treatments, the viral competency of these large sized individuals was still enhanced due to interactions with *Ae. albopictus*, a superior competitor. Studies on competitive interactions in mosquitoes commonly measure multiple population growth correlates as well as an estimate of the per capita rate of change (e.g. r', Livdahl and Sugihara 1984) because in many instances the effects of competition are complex, and interpretation of single or a few performance measurements may not accurately reflect outcomes at the population level. It is therefore plausible that the large *Ae. triseriatus* with enhanced competence for LACV from interspecific treatments experienced stress in other ways that were not fully captured by measuring size-related effects of competition.

The invasion of *Ae. albopictus* in the USA has been well-documented, including its influence on established mosquito species (Moore 1999, O'Meara *et al.* 1995, 1993). The spread of *Ae. albopictus* in southeastern USA in the 1980-1990s was associated with a decline in the abundance and geographic distribution of the yellow fever mosquito *Ae. aegypti* (Hobbs *et al.* 1991, Mekuria and

Hyatt 1995, O'Meara *et al.* 1995). Interspecific interactions between these two species appear to have contributed to declines in *Ae. aegypti* (Juliano *et al.* 2004). Several mechanisms have been proposed to explain displacements of *Ae. aegypti* populations (reviewed by Lounibos 2002, 2007), but superiority of *Ae. albopictus* in larval resource competition has received the most attention (e.g. Juliano 1998). Using a small response surface design, Alto *et al.* (2008a) showed intraspecific and interspecific larval competition altered individual life history traits, population performance, and vector competence for dengue-2 virus (DENV-2). Specifically, for laboratory strains of *Ae. albopictus,* but not *Ae. aegypti,* high levels of competition enhanced susceptibility to infection and dissemination with DENV-2, and these effects were presumed to be attributable to reductions in midgut infection and escape barriers (Figure 1) (Alto *et al.* 2008a). In a companion study, smaller *Ae. aegypti* and *Ae. albopictus* were more likely to become infected and to disseminate DENV-2 than larger individuals, independent of rearing conditions (Alto *et al.* 2008b). In a similarly designed experiment completed earlier using the same mosquito strains, competition-enhanced infection in *Ae. albopictus* with Sindbis virus (SINV) was observed (Alto *et al.* 2005). A separate study using more recently colonized Florida strains of mosquitoes showed that intraspecific competition enhanced dissemination of SINV in *Ae. aegypti* but not *Ae. albopictus* (Muturi *et al.* 2011). Although reasons for differences in the results between species and strains remain unclear, these studies showed a general relationship between competitive stress (lengthened development, reduced growth and survival) and weakening of midgut barriers. Also, it appears that competitive stress may alter other aspects of viral infection because high competition significantly increased SINV, but not DENV-2, viral titer in *Ae. albopictus* with disseminated infections, suggesting a reduction in the innate immune response to limit virus replication (Alto *et al.* 2005). Although the mechanism(s) responsible for these observed effects were unclear, it appears that multiple immune processes may be compromised because midgut barriers and viral titer were modified by the effects of

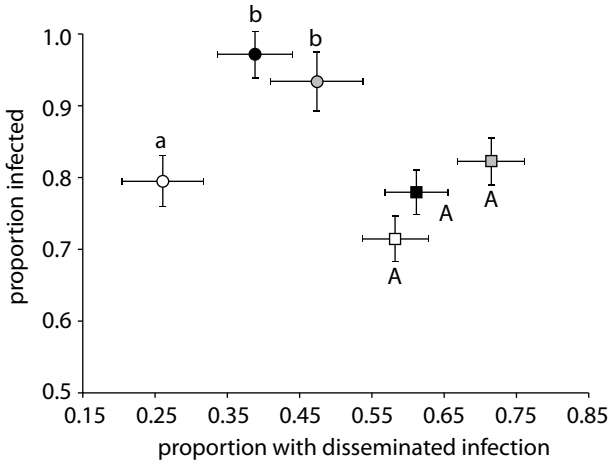


Figure 1. Proportion of Aedes aegypti *and* Aedes albopictus *infected and with disseminated infections after fed blood containing dengue-2 virus. Mosquitoes were exposed to intra- and inter-specific competition as larvae (Alto* et al. *2008a). Competition treatments consisted of initial number of larvae of* Ae. albopictus *:* Ae. aegypti *per container – 160:0 (open circle), 320:0 (filled circle), 160:160 (grey circle and grey square), 0:320 (filled square) and 0:160 (open square). Bivariate means followed by different lower- and uppercase letters show significant differences for* Ae. albopictus *and* Ae. aegypti, *respectively. Circles show* Ae. albopictus *and squares show* Ae. aegypti.

competition. Differences in competitive effects on virus replication may be related to the type of arbovirus being considered (e.g. SINV = *Alphavirus*, DENV = *Flavivirus*) as well as the species and strain of mosquito.

Temperature

Temperature is one of the most commonly studied of environmental factors affecting biological processes, including seasonal and geographic differences in temperature as well as anticipated climate change effects. Understanding temperature impacts on interactions between arthropods and pathogens will assist in predicting disease transmission patterns which are likely to be altered by anticipated climate change (Lafferty 2009, Rogers and Randolph 2006, Tabachnick 2010). The body temperature of mosquitoes is directly proportional to ambient temperature, thereby influencing growth, development, population dynamics (Alto and Juliano 2001a,b, Lounibos *et al.* 2002) and arbovirus infection including the extrinsic incubation period (EIP) which is the time from initial acquisition of virus infection to capacity to transmit (Chamberlain and Sudia 1955, Hardy *et al.* 1983). Consistent observations have documented that increases in adult maintenance temperatures are associated with enhanced vector competence as measured by higher net rates of infection, transmission and reductions in EIP for several viruses and mosquito species (e.g. Anderson *et al.* 2010, Chamberlain and Sudia 1955, Davis 1932, Hardy *et al.* 1983, Kay and Jennings 2002, Kay *et al.* 1989a,b, Richards *et al.* 2009, 2007, Turell 1993).

Although most investigations of temperature effects on vector competence have focused on adult mosquitoes, fewer studies have determined whether ambient temperatures acting on the immature stages of mosquitoes affect the vector competence of adults for arboviruses. However, temperatures experienced during the immature stages shape the adult phenotype e.g. nutritional reserves (Briegel and Timmermann 2001, Briegel *et al.* 2001a,b), so it seems plausible that such temperature effects also modify interactions between arboviruses and mosquito adults. *Aedes taeniorhynchus* Wiedemann reared at 19 °C had significantly higher infection, but not dissemination, rates of Rift Valley fever and Venezuelan equine encephalitis viruses than mosquitoes from 26 °C (Turell 1993). Larval rearing temperatures of 18, 24, and 32 °C altered development and growth rates of *Ae. albopictus* and resulted in adults with different competence for chikungunya virus. Infection rates did not differ among mosquitoes, but *Ae. albopictus* from 18 °C were significantly larger and had dissemination rates six times higher than mosquitoes from the warmest larval rearing conditions (32 °C) (Westbrook *et al.* 2010, Figure 2). These results suggest that the global spread of CHIKV vector *Ae. albopictus* in recent decades (Juliano and Lounibos 2005, Lounibos 2002) coupled with emergence of chikungunya virus in Italy (Powers and Logue 2007, Rezza *et al.* 2007), La Réunion (Paquet *et al.* 2006), Indonesia, Sri Lanka, and Singapore (Seneviratne *et al.* 2007) may pose greater epidemiological risks. In particular, high altitudes such as highlands of La Réunion where *Ae. albopictus* develops in cooler temperatures, may enhance risks of disease transmission. However, we caution against firm conclusions at this point since temperature is known to alter other parameters of vectorial capacity, and the net effect on risk of disease transmission is unclear. Results from this study are consistent with other field studies where cooler temperatures correlate with enhanced vector competence of Western equine encephalitis virus in a population of *Culex tarsalis* Coquillett (Hardy *et al.* 1990) and Murray Valley encephalitits virus transmission by *Cx. annulirostris* (Kay *et al.* 1989b). Taken together, these studies suggest that temperature effects experienced during the immature stages have opposite effects on arboviral competence compared to incubation temperature of adults (i.e. positive associations between temperature and vector competence). Low rearing temperature of immature stages typically results in larger sized adult mosquitoes (e.g. Lyimo *et al.* 1992; Westbrook *et al.* 2010) that imbibe larger volumes of blood and

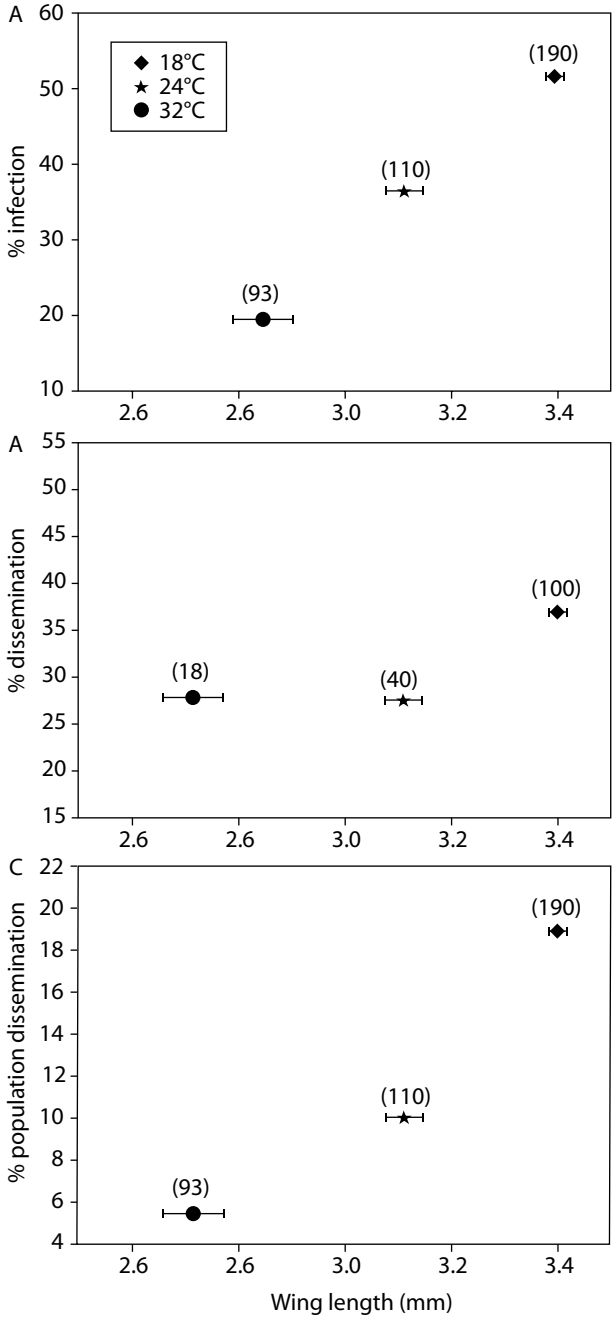


Figure 2. Percent of Aedes albopictus *infected and with disseminated infections after fed blood containing chikungunya virus. Mosquitoes were exposed to different temperatures as larvae. Numbers in the parentheses show the number of mosquitoes assayed for viral infection (Westbrook* et al. *2010).*

presumably more virus. It is therefore plausible that higher initial doses of viruses imbibed by large mosquitoes reared at cool temperatures may play a role in altered vector competence.

Other studies have found little or no identifiable relationships (Baqar *et al.* 1980, Kay and Jennings 2002) or opposite effects between larval rearing temperature and viral competence in mosquitoes. Elevated rearing temperature (30 vs. 20 °C or 32 vs. 25 °C) during larval and pupal development led to enhanced rates of infection and dissemination with adult *Ae. aegypti* and Sindbis virus (Muturi and Alto 2011, Muturi, unpublished results). Similarly, short-term exposure of larvae to heat shock (range from 36-44.5 °C) enhanced vector competence of *Ae. aegypti* for chikungunya virus (Mourya *et al.* 2004) and DENV-2 (Yadav *et al.* 2005). The molecular basis for observed temperature-dependent enhancement or depression of infection or dissemination is not well studied, but some researchers have hypothesized that temperature-induced up-regulation and down-regulation of stress (e.g. heat shock proteins) and immunoresponsive genes may affect susceptibility of mosquitoes to viral infection (Mourya *et al.* 2004, Muturi, unpublished results, Yadav *et al.* 2005).

Insecticides

Integrated mosquito management heavily relies on the use of insecticides directed at adult and immature mosquitoes. Control efforts assume that an externally applied source of mortality (e.g. insecticide) will act additively with other sources of mortality in nature to reduce overall numbers of adult mosquitoes. However, there may be environmental conditions that promote alternative outcomes, a possibility when two or more sources of mortality act in non-additive ways to reduce or increase the numbers of adult mosquitoes (Juliano 2007, Service 1985). For example, simulated mortality through removal of larvae in water-filled containers with suboptimal nutrients increased the number and size of *Ae. aegypti* that emerged to adulthood (Agudelo-Silva and Spielman 1984). If these results hold true under natural conditions then mosquito control by larviciding in nutrient-limited populations may increase the number of adults and perhaps life span of adults due to evidence for positive relationships between size and life expectancy in *Aedes* mosquitoes (Briegel *et al.* 2001, Haramis 1985, Reiskind and Lounibos 2009, Steinwascher 1982). Furthermore, insecticide-induced alterations in surviving mosquitoes may be associated with phenotypic variations in arboviral vector competence, either through sublethal exposure of insecticides or indirectly by modifications in the environment (e.g. release from competition). For example, insecticide resistant genes may in some instances have pleiotropic effects and result in changes in vector ability such as longevity, behaviour, and arboviral vector competence (reviewed in Rivero *et al.* 2010). Phenotypic variation related to mosquito vectoring ability could be due to a plasticity which would occur in the life span of the mosquito or selection where an alteration in the genetic structure of the population has occurred across generations (e.g. insecticide resistance).

To examine the interaction between competition and insecticide treatment, Muturi *et al.* (2011a) exposed Florida strains of *Ae. aegypti* and *Ae. albopictus* to intraspecific larval competition and a low concentration of the organophosphate insecticide malathion. They tested the hypothesis that the presence of malathion would alleviate larval competition and alter vector competence for Sindbis virus. This investigation, as well as follow-up studies, deliberately focused on container-inhabiting *Aedes* because the effects of competition are known to affect their vector competence and regulation of populations. As predicted, competition and malathion treatments reduced survival to adulthood. The presence of malathion appeared to have reduced competition as demonstrated by faster development and larger mosquitoes among survivors. However, it is also possible, but perhaps less likely, that malathion selectively favoured larger and faster developing mosquitoes. Exposure to malathion and competition independently led to a doubling of the

rate of virus dissemination in *Ae. aegypti* but not *Ae. albopictus*. Enhanced viral competence was observed among small, competitively stressed mosquitoes and large individuals exposed to malathion, an indication that size alone was not responsible for altered competence. These effects of malathion on vector competence suggest a degree of complexity that is not simply attributable to an alleviation of larval competition. If this were the case, then we would expect that *Ae. aegypti* exposed to malathion should have similar competence as *Ae. aegypti* in low competition intraspecific treatments in the absence of malathion. On the contrary, malathion-exposed *Ae. aegypti* had elevated rates of dissemination, similar in magnitude to those observed for *Ae. aegypti* from high larval competition treatments in the absence of malathion. Therefore it seems that direct exposure to malathion, and not indirect effects of malathion-mediated release from competition, alters arboviral vector competence, perhaps attributable to differential expression of immunity related genes induced by the presence of malathion. Additionally, the effects of malathion on viral competence may be modified by other environmental factors. For example, exposure to malathion during development of the immature stages at high temperature (30 °C) enhanced *Ae. aegypti* viral infection and dissemination with Sindbis virus, but these effects were not observed at low temperature (20 °C) (Muturi and Alto 2011). This latter study reaffirmed the notion that size *per se* does not dictate vector competence since the sizes of mosquitoes with enhanced competence in the presence and absence of malathion at 30 °C were similar (Muturi and Alto 2011).

Muturi (unpublished results) exposed Florida strains of *Ae. aegypti* to one of several environmental stressors during the aquatic stages (starvation, nutrient limitation, insecticide malathion or elevated temperature) to identify differential expression of stress and immunity-related genes and to relate these to vector competence for Sindbis virus. Differential expression of stress and immunity-related genes were measured in larvae and adult female *Ae. aegypti*. In larvae, elevated temperature was associated with up regulation in gene expression of cecropin, defensin and CYP6Z6, whereas suboptimal nutrients and exposure to a low dose of malathion increased expression of cecropin and transferrin, respectively, relative to the controls. In contrast, starvation led to down-regulation of defensin, cecropin, transferrin, HSP70, HSP83, and CYP6Z6. A subset of these genes was investigated in adult females. Transferrin was up-regulated in all treatments except starvation, and defensin was up-regulated in starvation and the elevated temperature treatments. Variation in mosquito performance (survival, development, size) was specific to the particular environmental stressor, but all stressors enhanced susceptibility to viral infection and dissemination among infected mosquitoes. Although the specific details of immune pathways still require resolution, these observations suggest that environmental conditions experienced by the immature stages may modify the expression of genes related to viral infection in mosquitoes.

Synthesis of environmental influences on vector competence

Our review of the literature suggested that environmental influences on larvae have, in some instances, consequences for vector competence for arboviruses. Further, the relationship between larval environment and vector competence may differ depending on the particular environment. In order to provide additional resolution on the issue, we extracted information on sample sizes and susceptibility to infection, dissemination, and transmission from all the studies presented in Table 1 to construct tests for the following null hypotheses:

Null hypotheses:

H_0: Nutrient deprivation does not alter vector competence
H_0: Competition does not alter vector competence
H_0: Elevated temperature does not alter vector competence
H_0: Exposure to insecticide does not alter vector competence

Hypotheses were tested by maximum likelihood categorical analyses of contingency tables (PROC CATMOD, SAS 2002) based on counts of individual mosquitoes being categorized as + or – for the presence or absence of virus, respectively. That is, responses from individual mosquitoes were used as data points. Separate maximum likelihood (ML) ANOVA tests were used for each larval environment and measure of vector competence (infection, dissemination, transmission) in order to more clearly identify viral barriers that may be modified by the environment. In instances where more than two levels were available within larval environmental treatments we used only the extremes (e.g. low, high) and excluded intermediate levels. The goal of these tests was to identify overall patterns of larval environment and vector competence for arboviruses, so no attempt was made to separate analyses by virus or mosquito species.

A total of 6,377 mosquitoes was used for the analysis for susceptibility to infection, 7,073 mosquitoes for the analysis of disseminated infection and 1,665 for the analysis of virus transmission. The ML ANOVA showed no significant nutrition effect for susceptibility to infection with arboviruses. However, mosquitoes from nutrient rich conditions were less likely to disseminate and transmit virus than individuals from nutrient-deprived conditions (Table 2). Thus, larval nutrition appears to have negligible effects on midgut infection barrier and primarily alters vector competence through changes in the midgut escape and transmission barriers. The ML ANOVA demonstrated a significant competition effect for susceptibility to infection and virus dissemination with enhanced susceptibility to infection and dissemination in adults from high competition larval environments (Table 2). These results suggest that both midgut infection and escape barriers are compromised by larval competition. An assessment for competitive effects on virus transmission was not feasible since no transmission studies have been performed. The ML ANOVA showed that warm rearing temperature significantly decreased susceptibility to infection and virus transmission but did not significantly influence dissemination in infected mosquitoes (Table 2). Rearing temperatures appear to influence both midgut and virus transmission barriers. However, we caution the interpretation of the generality of temperature effects on virus transmission because it was based on a single study. The ML ANOVA demonstrated that exposure to low concentrations of insecticide enhanced rates of infection and dissemination (Table 2). Insecticidal exposure effects on virus transmission have not been performed to date.

An overall assessment of these results suggest that larval environment (1) does alter vector competence for arboviruses, (2) influences multiple virus barriers in the adult mosquito, and (3) appears to be directionally similar in its influence on virus barriers for a given larval environment (e.g. midgut infection and escape barriers for competition).

Table 2. Maximum likelihood analyses of variance for the effects of larval nutrition, competition, temperature and insecticide on susceptibility to infection, dissemination and transmission of arboviruses.

Source Vector competence measure	Direction of test[1]	Estimate	Std. Error	df	χ^2	*P*-value	References
Nutrition							
Infection	High, +	-0.0286	0.0314	1	0.83	0.36	Baqar *et al.* 1980, Grimstad and Haramis 1984, Grimstad and Walker 1991, Jennings and Kay 1999, Kay *et al.* 1989a, Muturi unplished results, Nasci and Mitchell 1994
Dissemination	High, +	-0.1767	0.0246	1	51.74	<0.0001	Grimstad and Haramis 1984, Grimstad and Walker 1991, Jennings and Kay 1999, Muturi unpublished results, Patrican and DeFoliart 1985, Paulson and Hawley 1991, Zhang *et al.* 1993
Transmission	High, +	-0.1736	0.0261	1	44.31	<0.0001	Grimstad and Haramis 1984, Grimstad and Walker 1991, Jennings and Kay 1999, Kay *et al.* 1989a, Patrican and DeFoliart 1985, Paulson and Hawley 1991, Takahashi 1976
Competition							
Infection	High, +	0.1140	0.0257	1	19.66	<0.0001	Alto *et al.* 2005, 2008a, Baqar *et al.* 1980, Bevins 2008, Muturi *et al.* 2011
Dissemination	High, +	0.1934	0.0234	1	68.08	<0.0001	Alto *et al.* 2005, 2008a, Bevins 2008, Muturi *et al.* 2011, Sumanochitrapon *et al.* 1998
Transmission[2]	.	.	.	.	.	.	.
Temperature							
Infection	High, +	-0.1505	0.0219	1	47.05	<0.0001	Baqar *et al.* 1980, Hardy *et al.* 1990, Kay and Jennings 2002, Kay *et al.* 1989b, Muturi and Alto 2011, Muturi unpublished results, Westbrook *et al.* 2010
Dissemination	High, +	0.0267	0.0238	1	1.26	0.2624	Kay and Jennings 2002, Mourya *et al.* 2004, Muturi and Alto 2011, Muturi unpublished results, Turell 1993, Westbrook *et al.* 2010, Yadav *et al.* 2005
Transmission	High, +	-0.2652	0.1265	1	4.39	0.0361	Kay *et al.* 1989b
Insecticide							
Infection	Control, +	-0.0713	0.0283	1	6.34	0.0118	Muturi and Alto 2011, Muturi *et al.* 2011, Muturi unpublished results
Dissemination	Control, +	-0.0966	0.0316	1	9.33	0.0023	Muturi and Alto 2011, Muturi *et al.* 2011, Muturi unpublished results
Transmission[2]	.	.	.	.	.	.	.

[1] Symbols + and – denote the presence or absence of virus. 'High' refers to the level of nutrients, competition and temperature. The 'direction of the test' denotes the reference point from which the test generates maximum likelihood (ML) estimates. Take for example nutrition effects on virus dissemination; there is a significant negative relationship (ML estimate of -0.1767) between high nutrition and disseminated virus infection.

[2] Periods (.) indicate that data are lacking to construct a statistical test.

Plausible mechanisms

The mechanisms responsible for changes in adult vector competence for arboviruses attributable to the larval environment are not entirely clear. In most instances published studies aimed to identify the nature of larval environmental effects on adult competence for viruses but not the mechanism(s) responsible. It seems reasonable to postulate that the mechanism(s) responsible for changes in adult competence attributable to nutrient limitation and competition may be similar, given that both these factors deprive larvae of nutrients and induce similar alterations in life histories (delayed development, reduced growth and survival). However, determinants of adult competence attributable to ambient temperature and exposure to insecticides during larval growth and development are entirely different stressors and so, their mechanism(s) may differ.

Studies investigating effects of larval nutrition attempted to identify plausible mechanisms by pointing out relationships between adult traits (body size, midgut basement membrane) and competence. Grimstad and Walker (1991) suggested that the strength of the midgut escape barrier in *Ae. triseriatus* was related to size of adult females. These authors hypothesized that the weakening of the midgut escape barrier was caused by nutrient-induced reductions in the basal lamina of the midgut epithelium. These results were consistent with some but not all other investigations of larval nutrient effects on adult vector competence for arboviruses (Table 1). Studies that have identified positive relationships between size and vector competence have suggested that large mosquitoes ingest higher numbers of viruses in blood meals than small mosquitoes (Nasci and Mitchell 1994, Westbrook *et al.* 2010). The expectation in these instances is that higher viral doses associated with larger blood meals increases the probability of midgut infection.

It is likely that size alone is not causally related to altered vector competence, at least when not taking into account the particular larval conditions that produced different sized mosquitoes (e.g. temperature, nutrients, insecticide). The most convincing evidence to support this conclusion comes from studies that produce a range of mosquito sizes with enhanced vector competence. *Ae. aegypti* larvae exposed to insecticide malathion and competition/nutrient limitation resulted in the production of large and small sized adults, respectively, with enhanced viral infection and dissemination relative to control treatments (Muturi *et al.* 2011, unpublished results). These studies demonstrated that in a majority of cases larval environment does indeed alter adult competence for arboviruses, usually with competence enhanced by stress, but the mechanism(s) are probably not simply related directly to mosquito size. Different larval conditions may alter adult vector competence by different mechanisms and these effects may be specific to the virus and mosquito species. Also, for any given larval environment, there may be multiple mechanisms influencing adult competence during the viral infection process, from initial infection in the midgut to transmission. Further advances in identifying plausible mechanisms responsible for altered adult competence have emerged from studies relating differential expression of immune and stress-specific genes to vector competence, suggesting multiple and complex immune responses which need further clarification to identify the details of the immune pathways (Muturi unpublished results).

Conclusions and future directions

This review demonstrates that the larval environment alters adult competence for viruses under laboratory conditions as well as in collections of mosquitoes from the field (Paulson and Hawley 1991). The latter area of research is understudied and we need to address whether larval environment factors in nature alter adult competence. For instance, much of the environmental variation in the field cannot adequately be represented under laboratory conditions. Additionally,

laboratory colonies of mosquitoes, even after only a few generations breeding in a laboratory setting, may not accurately reflect field populations. Laboratory colonization may therefore have consequences for environmental effects on vector competence for arboviruses (e.g. environment x genotype interaction).

Although some studies have attempted to associate adult traits (body size, midgut basement membrane) to competence there appears to be inconsistencies in these relationships. What is the mechanism(s) responsible for the observed changes in adult competence? It is likely that several factors are responsible, especially since it appears that multiple barriers to virus infection and transmission may be influenced by different larval environments (Table 2). Recent advances in molecular biology and our understanding of the expression of immunity related genes have improved the capacity to identify plausible mechanisms responsible for altered adult competence. A further understanding of larval environmental influences on adult competence for viruses will come from the application of these newly developed methods. Molecular studies are valuable as correlates to alterations in vector competence but evidence for causation of actual mechanism(s) probably will require additional experimental manipulations (e.g. gene silencing).

Currently, we have only a rudimentary knowledge of the relationships between larval conditions, altered expression of immunity related genes and viral competence (Muturi unpublished results). Ideally, studies should identify the differential expression of immunity related genes but also the immune pathways including the sequence of immunity events in the mosquito that relate to the viral infection process from initial midgut infection to transmission. These studies will also elucidate whether antiviral molecular responses to infection are similar between different mosquito species and viruses, the latter which differ in genomic structure and replication. Lastly, vector competence is only one parameter that goes into determining disease transmission and studies will need to incorporate other factors as well such as adult life span, biting behaviour, and adult density. Models that incorporate these factors will assist in identifying the net effect of larval environment on disease transmission.

Acknowledgements

We are grateful to C.J.M. Koenraadt and W. Takken for an invitation to write this chapter as well as providing reviews. We thank C. Westbrook for permission to publish results in Figure 2 and Naoya Nishimura for statistical assistance.

References

Agudelo-Silva F and Spielman A (1984) Paradoxical effects of simulated larviciding on production of adult mosquitoes. Am J Trop Med Hyg 33: 1267-1269.

Aliabadi BK and Juliano SA (2002) Escape from gregarine parasites affects the competitive impact of an invasive mosquito. Biol Invas 4: 283-297.

Alto BW and Juliano SA (2001a) Temperature effects on the dynamics of *Aedes albopictus* (Diptera: Culicidae) populations in the laboratory. J Med Entomol 38: 548-556.

Alto BW and Juliano SA (2001b) Precipitation and temperature effects on populations of *Aedes albopictus* (Diptera: Culicidae): implications for range expansion. J Med Entomol 38: 646-656.

Alto BW, Lounibos LP, Higgs S and Juliano SA (2005) Larval competition differentially affects arbovirus infection in *Aedes* mosquitoes. Ecology 86: 3279-3288.

Alto BW, Lounibos LP, Mores CN and Reiskind MH (2008a) Larval competition alters susceptibility of adult *Aedes* mosquitoes to dengue infection. Proc R Soc B 275: 463-471.

Alto BW, Reiskind MH and Lounibos LP (2008b) Size alters susceptibility of vectors to dengue virus infection and dissemination. Am J Trop Med Hyg 79: 688-695.

Anderson JR, Schneider JR, Grimstad PR and Severson DW (2005) Quantitative genetics of vector competence for La Crosse virus and body size in *Ochlerotatus hendersoni* and *Ochlerotatus triseriatus* interspecific hybrids. Genetics 169: 1529-1539.

Anderson SL, Richards SL, Tabachnick WJ and Smartt CT (2010) Effects of West Nile virus dose and extrinsic incubation temperature on temporal progression of vector competence in *Culex pipiens quinquefasciatus*. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 26: 103-107.

Arrivillaga J and Barrera R (2004) Food as a limiting factor for *Aedes aegypti* in water-storage containers. J Vector Ecol 29: 11-20.

Baqar S, Hayes CG and Ahmed T (1980) The effect of larval rearing conditions and adult age on the susceptibility of *Culex tritaeniorhynchus* to infection with West Nile virus. Mosq News 40: 165-171.

Barrera R and Medialdea V (1996) Development time and resistance to starvation of mosquito larvae. J Nat Hist 30: 447-458.

Barrera R, Amador M and Clark GG (2006) Ecological factors influencing *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae) productivity in artificial containers in Salinas, Puerto Rico. J Med Entomol 43: 484-492.

Benedict MQ, Levine RS, Hawley WA and Lounibo LP (2007) Spread of the tiger: global risk of invasion by the mosquito *Aedes albopictus*. Vector Borne Zoonotic Dis 7: 76-85.

Bennett KE, Olson KE, de L. Munoz M, Fernandez-Sala I, Farfan-Ale JA, Higgs S, Black IV, WC and Beaty BJ (2002) Variation in vector competence for dengue 2 virus among 24 collections of *Aedes aegypti* from Mexico and the United States. Am J Trop Med Hyg 67: 85-92.

Bevins SN (2008) Invasive mosquitoes, larval competition, and indirect effects on the vector competence of native mosquito species (Diptera: Culicidae). Biol Invas 10: 1109-1117.

Briegel H and Timmermann SE (2001) *Aedes albopictus* (Diptera: Culicidae): Physiological aspects of development and reproduction. J Med Entomol 38: 566-571.

Briegel H, Knusel I and Timmermann SE (2001b) *Aedes aegypti*: size, reserves, survival, and flight potential. J Vector Ecol 26: 21-31.

Briegel H, Waltert A and Kuhn R (2001a) Reproductive physiology of *Aedes* (*Aedimorphus*) *vexans* (Diptera: Culicidae) in relation to flight potential. J Med Entomol 38: 557-565.

Chamberlain RW and Sudia WD (1955) The effects of temperature upon the extrinsic incubation of Eastern equine encephalitis in mosquitoes. Am J Hyg 62: 295-305.

Cirimotich CM, Scott JC, Phillips AT, Geiss BJ and Olson KE (2009) Suppression of RNA interference increases alphavirus replication and virus-associated mortality in *Aedes aegypti* mosquitoes. BMC Microbiol 9: 49.

Davis NC (1932) The effect of various temperatures in modifying the extrinsic incubation period of yellow fever virus in *Aedes aegypti*. Am J Hyg 16: 163-176.

Fish D and Carpenter SR (1982) Leaf litter and larval mosquito dynamics in tree-hole ecosystems. Ecology 63: 283-288.

Fragkoudis, R, Attarzadeh-Yazdi G, Nash AA, Fazakerley JK and Kohl A (2009) Advances in dissecting mosquito innate immune responses to arbovirus infection. J Gen Virol 90: 2061-2072.

Grimstad PR and Haramis LD (1984) *Aedes triseriatus* (Diptera: Culicidae) and La Crosse virus. III. Enhanced oral transmission by nutrition-deprived mosquitoes. J Med Entomol 21: 249-256.

Grimstad PR and Walker ED (1991) *Aedes triseriatus* (Dipera: Culicidae) and La Crosse virus. IV. Nutritional deprivation of larvae affects the adult barriers to infection and transmission. J Med Entomol 28: 378-386.

Gubler DJ and Rosen L (1976) Variation among geographic strains of *Aedes albopictus* in susceptibility to infection with dengue viruses. Am J Trop Med Hyg 25: 318-325.

Gubler DJ, Nalim S, Tan R, Saipan H and Sulianti Saroso J. 1979. Variation in susceptibility to oral infection with dengue viruses among geographic strains of *Aedes aegypti*. Am J Trop Med Hyg 28: 1045-1052.

Haramis LD (1985) Larval nutrition, adult body size, and the biology of *Aedes triseriatus*. In: Lounibos LP, Rey JR and Frank JH (eds.) Ecology of mosquitoes: Proceedings of a Workshop, Florida Medical Entomology Laboratory, Vero Beach, FL, USA, pp. 431-437.

Hardy JL (1988) Susceptibility and resistance of vector mosquitoes. In: Monath TP (ed.) The arboviruses: epidemiology and ecology. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, USA, pp. 87-126.

Hardy JL, Apperson, GS, Asman SM and Reeves WC (1978) Selection of a strain of *Culex tarsalis* highly resistant to infection following ingestion of Western equine encephalomyelitis virus. Am J Trop Med Hyg 27: 313-321.

Hardy JL, Houk EJ, Kramer LD and Reeves WC (1983) Intrinsic factors affecting vector competence of mosquitoes for arboviruses. Ann Rev Entomol 28: 229-262.

Hardy JL, Meyer RP, Presser SB and Milby MM (1990) Temporal variations in the susceptibility of a semi-isolated population of *Culex tarsalis* to peroral infection with western equine encephalomyelitis and St. Louis encephalitis viruses. Am J Trop Med Hyg 42: 500-511.

Hechtel L and Juliano SA (1997) Effects of a predator on prey metamorphosis: Plastic responses by prey or selective mortality? Ecology 78: 838-851.

Hobbs JH, Hughes EA and Eichold BH (1991) Replacement of *Aedes aegypti* by *Aedes albopictus* in Mobile, Alabama. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 7: 488-489.

Jennings CD and Kay BH (1999) Dissemination barriers to Ross River virus in *Aedes vigilax* and the effects of larval nutrition on their expression. Med Vet Entomol 13: 431-438.

Juliano SA (1998) Species introduction and replacement among mosquitoes: interspecific resource competition or apparent competition? Ecology 79: 255-268.

Juliano SA (2007) Population dynamics. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 23 (Suppl 2): 265-275.

Juliano SA and Lounibos LP (2005) Ecology of invasive mosquitoes: effects on resident species and on human health. Ecol Lett 8: 558-574.

Juliano SA, Lounibos LP and O'Meara GF (2004) A field test for competitive effects of *Aedes albopictus* on *Aedes aegypti* in south Florida: differences between sites of coexistence and exclusion? Oecologia 139: 583-593.

Kaufmann MG, Pelz-Stelinski KS, Yee DA, Juliano SA, Ostrom PH and Walker ED (2010) Stable isotope analysis reveals detrital resource base sources of the tree hole mosquito, *Aedes triseriatus.* Ecol Entomol 35: 586-593.

Kay BH and Jennings CD (2002) Enhancement or modulation of vector competence of *Ochlerotatus vigilax* (Diptera: Culicidae) for Ross River virus by temperature. J Med Entomol 39: 99-105.

Kay BH, Edman JD, Fanning ID and Mottram P (1989a) Larval diet and the vector competence of *Culex annulirostris* (Diptera: Culicidae) for Murray Valley encephalitis virus. J Med Entomol 26: 487-488.

Kay BH, Fanning ID and Mottram P (1989b) Rearing temperature influences flavivirus vector competence of mosquitoes. Med Vet Entomol 3: 415-422.

Keene, KM, Foy BD, Sanchez-Vargas I, Beaty BJ, Blair CD and Olson KE (2004) RNA interference acts as a natural antiviral response to o'nyong-nyong virus (*Alphavirus; Togaviridae*) infection of *Anopheles gambiae*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 101: 17240-17245.

Khoo CCH, Sanchez-Vargas I, Olson KE and Franz AWE (2010) The RNA interference pathway affects midgut infection- and escape barriers for Sindbis virus in *Aedes aegypti*. BMC Microbiol 10: 130.

Lafferty, KD (2009) The ecology of climate change and infectious diseases. Ecology 90: 888-900.

Livdahl TP and Sugihara G (1984) Non-linear interactions of populations and the importance of estimating per capita rates of change. J Anim Ecol 53: 573-580.

Livdahl TP and Willey MS (1991) Prospects for an invasion – Competition between *Aedes albopictus* and *Aedes triseriatus*. Science 253: 189-191.

Lounibos LP (2002) Invasions by insect vectors of human disease. Ann Rev Entomol 47: 233-266.

Lounibos LP (2007) Competitive displacement and reduction. J Am Mosq Control Assoc. 23 (Suppl 2): 276-282.

Lounibos LP, Nishimura N and Escher RL (1993) Fitness of a treehole mosquito: influences of food type and predation. Oikos 667: 114-118.

Lounibos LP, Suárez S, Menéndez, Nishimura N, Escher RL, O'Connell SM and Rey JR (2002) Does temperature affect the outcome of larval competition between *Aedes aegypti* and *Aedes albopictus*? J Vector Ecol 27: 86-95.

Lyimo EO, Takken W and Koella JC (1992) Effect of rearing temperature and larval density on larval survival, age at pupation and adult size of *Anopheles gambiae*. Entomol Exp Appl 63: 265-271.

Mekuria Y and Hyatt MG (1995) *Aedes albopictus* in South Carolina. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 9: 352-355.

Merritt RW, Dadd RH and Walker ED (1992) Feeding behavior, natural food, and nutritional relationships of larval mosquitoes. Ann Rev Entomol 37: 349-376.

Moore CG (1999) *Aedes albopictus* in the United States: current status and prospects for further spread. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 15: 221-227.

Mourya DT, Yadav P and Mishra AC (2004) Effect of temperature stress on immature stages and susceptibility of *Aedes aegypti* mosquitoes to chikungunya virus. Am J Trop Med Hyg 70: 346-350.

Muturi EJ and Alto BW (2011) Larval environmental temperature and insecticide exposure alter Aedes aegypti competence for arboviruses. Vector Borne Zoonotic Dis 11: 1157-1163.

Muturi EJ, Costanzo K, Kesavaraju B and Alto BW (2011) Can insecticides and larval competition alter susceptibility of *Aedes* mosquito to arbovirus infection? J Med Entomol 48: 429-436.

Nasci RS and Mitchell CJ (1994) Larval diet, adult size, and susceptibility of *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera, Culicidae) to infection with Ross River virus. J Med Entomol 31: 123-126.

Novak MG, Higley LG, Christianssen CA and Rowley WA (1993) Evaluating larval competition between *Aedes albopictus* and *A. triseriatus* (Diptera: Culicidae) through replacement series. Environ Entomol 22: 311-318.

O'Meara GF, Evans LF, Gettman AD and Cuda JP (1995) Spread of *Aedes albopictus* and decline of *Ae. aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae) in Florida. J Med Entomol 32: 554-562.

O'Meara GF, Gettman AD, Evans LF and Curtis GA (1993) The spread of *Aedes albopictus* in Florida. Am Entomol 39: 163-172.

Paquet C, Quatresous I, Solet JL, Sissoko D, *et al.* (2006) Chikungunya outbreak in Reunion: epidemiology and surveillance, 2005 to early January 2006. Eur Surveill 11: e0602023.

Patrican LA and DeFoliart GR (1985) Lack of adverse effect of transovarially acquired La Crosse virus infection on the reproductive capacity of *Aedes triseriatus* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Med Entomol 22: 604-611.

Paulson SL and Hawley WA (1991) Effect of body size on the vector competence of field and laboratory populations of *Aedes triseriatus* for La Crosse virus. J Am Mosq Assoc 7: 170-175.

Peacor SD and Werner EE (2000) Predator effects on an assemblage of consumers through induced changes in consumer foraging behavior. Ecology 81: 1998-2010.

Peacor SD and Werner EE (2001) The contribution of trait-mediated indirect effects of a predator. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 98: 3904-3908.

Powers AM and Logue CH (2007) Changing patterns of chikungunya virus: re-emergence of a zoonotic arbovirus. J Gen Virol 88: 2363-2377.

Ramirez JL and Dimopoulos G (2010) The Toll immune signaling pathway control conserved anti-dengue defenses across diverse *Ae. aegypti* strains and against multiple dengue virus serotypes. Dev Comp Immunol 34: 625-629.

Reiskind MH and Lounibos LP (2009) Effects of intraspecific larval competition on adult longevity in the mosquitoes *Aedes aegypti* and *Aedes albopictus*. Med Vet Entomol 23: 62-68.

Rezza G, Nicoletti L, Angelini R, Romi R, Finarelli AC, Panning M, Cordioli P, Fortuna C, Boros S, Magurano F, Silvi G, Angelini P, Dottori M, Ciufolini MG, Majori GC and Cassone A (2007) Infection with chikungunya virus in Italy: an outbreak in a temperate region. Lancet 370: 1840-1846.

Richards SL, Lord CC, Pesko K and Tabachnick WJ (2009) Environmental and biological factors influencing *Culex pipiens quinquefasciatus* Say (Diptera: Culicidae) vector competence for Saint Louis encephalitis virus. Am J Trop Med Hyg 81: 264-272.

Richards SL, Mores CN, Lord CC and Tabachnick WJ (2007) Impact of extrinsic incubation temperature and virus exposure on vector competence of *Culex pipiens quinquefasciatus* Say (Diptera: Culicidae) for West Nile virus. Vector Borne Zoonotic Dis 7: 629-636.

Rivero A, Vézilier J, Weill M, Read AF and Gandon S (2010) Insecticide control of vector-borne diseases: when is insecticide resistance a problem? PLoS Path 6: e1001000.

Rogers DJ and Randolph SE (2006) Climate change and vector-borne diseases. Adv Parasitol 62: 345-381.

Sánchez-Vargas I, Scott JC, Poole-Smith BK, Franz AWE, Barbosa-Solomieu V, Wilusz J, Olson KE and Blair CD (2009) Dengue virus type 2 infections of *Aedes aegypti* are modulated by the mosquito's RNA interference pathway. PLoS Path 5: e1000299.

Sanders HR, Foy BD, Evans AM, Ross LS, Beaty BJ, Olson KE and Gill SS (2005) Sindbis virus induces transport processes and alters expression of innate immunity pathway genes in the midgut of the disease vector, *Aedes aegypti*. Insect Biochem Mol Biol 35: 1293-1307.

SAS Institute, 2002. SAS/STAT user's guide, ver. 9.0. SAS Institute Inc., Cary, NC, USA.

Seneviratne SL, Gurugama P and Perera J (2007) Chikungunya viral infections: an emerging problem. J Travel Med 14: 320-325.

Service MW (1985) Population dynamics and mortalities of mosquito preadults. In: Lounibos LP, Rey JR and Frank JH, (eds.) Ecology of mosquitoes: Proceedings of a Workshop, Florida Medical Entomology Laboratory, Vero Beach, FL, USA, pp. 185-201.

Sim C, Hong YS, Tsetsarkin KA, Vanlandingham DL, Higgs S and Collins FH (2007) *Anopheles gambiae* heat shock protein cognate 70B impedes o'nyong-nyong virus replication. BMC Genomics 8: 231.

Southwood TRE, Murdie B, Yasuno N, Tonn RJ and Reader PM (1972) Studies on the life budget of *Aedes aegypti* in Wat Samphaya, Bangkok, Thailand. Bull Wld Hlth Org 46: 211-226.

Souza-Neto JA, Sim S and Dimopoulos B (2009) An evolutionary conserved function of the JAK-STAT pathway in anti-dengue defense. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 106: 17841-17846.

Steinwascher K (1982) Relationship between pupal mass and adult survivorship and fecundity for *Aedes aegypti*. Environ Entomol 11: 150-153.

Sumanochitrapon W, Strickman D, Sithiprasasna R, Kittayapong P and Innis BL (1998) Effect of size and geographic origin of *Aedes aegypti* on oral infection with Dengue-2 virus. Am J Trop Med Hyg 58: 283-286.

Tabachnick WJ (2010) Challenges in predicting climate and environmental effects on vector-borne disease episystems in a changing world. J Exp Biol 213: 946-954.

Tabachnick WJ, Wallis GP, Aitken TH, Miller BR, Amato GA, *et al.* (1985) Oral infection of *Aedes aegypti* with yellow fever virus: geographic variation and genetic considerations. Am J Trop Med Hyg 34: 1219-1224.

Takahashi M (1976) The effects of environmental and physiological conditions of *Culex tritaeniorhynchus* on the pattern of transmission of Japanese encephalitis virus. J Med Entomol 13: 275-284.

Teng H-J and Apperson CS (2000) Development and survival of immature *Aedes albopictus* and *Aedes triseriatus* (Diptera: Culicidae) in the laboratory: effects of density, food, and competition on response to temperatures. J Med Entomol 37: 40-52.

Turell MJ (1993) Effect of environmental temperature on the vector competence of *Aedes taeniorhynchus* for Rift Valley fever and Venezuelan equine encephalitis viruses. Am J Trop Med Hyg 49: 672-676.

Walker ED, Kaufman MG, Ayres MP, Riede MH and Merritt RW (1997) Effects of variation in quality of leaf detritus on growth of the eastern tree-hole mosquito, *Aedes triseriatus* (Diptera: Culicidae). Can J Zool 75: 706-718.

Walker ED, Lawson DL, Merritt RW, Morgan WT and Klug MJ (1991) Nutrient dynamics, bacterial populations, and mosquito productivity in tree hole ecosystems and microcosms. Ecology 72: 1529-1546.

Werner EE and Peacor SD (2003) A review of trait mediated indirect interactions in ecological communities. Ecology 84: 1083-1100.

Westbrook CJ, Reiskind MH, Pesko KN, Green KE and Lounibos LP (2010) Larval environmental temperature and the susceptibility of *Aedes albopictus* Skuse (Diptera: Culicidae) to chikungunya virus. Vector Borne Zoonotic Dis 10: 241-247.

Woodring JL, Higgs S and Beaty BJ (1996) Natural cycles of vector-borne pathogens. In: Beaty BJ and Marquardt WC (eds.) The biology of disease vectors. University Press of Colorado, Niwot, CO, USA, pp. 51-72.

Wootton JT (1994) The nature and consequences of indirect effects in ecological communities. Ann Rev Ecol Syst 25: 443-466.

Wootton JT (2002) Indirect effects in complex ecosystems: recent progress and future challenges. J Sea Res 48: 157-172.

Xi Z, Ramirez JL and Dimopoulous G (2008) The *Aedes aegypti* Toll pathway controls dengue virus infection. PLoS Path 4: e10000098.

Yadav P, Barde PV, Gokhale MD, VipatV, Mishra AC, Pal JK and Mourya DT (2005) Effect of temperature and insecticide stresses on *Aedes aegypti* larvae and their influence on the susceptibility of mosquitoes to dengue-2 virus. Southeast Asian J Trop Med Public Health 36: 1139-1144.

Zhang S, He G, Xu L, Lin Q and Zhang S (1993) Effects of larval nutrition on susceptibility of *Aedes albopictus* to dengue 2 virus. Arbovirus Research in Australia 6: 44-48.

Zhao L, Becnel JJ, Clark GG and Linthicum KJ (2010) Expression *of AeaHsp26* and *AeaHsp83* in *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae) larvae and pupae in response to heat shock stress. J Med Entomol 47: 367-375.

5. Relevant temperatures in mosquito and malaria biology

Krijn P. Paaijmans and Matthew B. Thomas

Abstract

Most biological process-based models that approximate malaria risk use mean (usually monthly) outdoor air temperature to estimate the various mosquito and parasite life history variables that influence disease transmission intensity. However, mosquitoes, and parasites within them, do not experience 'average temperatures', but are exposed to temperatures that can fluctuate considerably throughout the day. In addition, endophilic mosquitoes will be exposed to indoor temperatures and not directly to outdoor air temperature. Further, mosquito larvae live in aquatic habitats and so again, are not exposed directly to outdoor air temperatures. In this chapter we highlight how these different temperatures can all change malaria risk predictions. To understand malaria dynamics, inform operational control objectives and predict consequences of climate change, we need a better mechanistic understanding of vector-parasite interactions, with improved integration of the biological and environmental parameters at a scale relevant to conditions actually experienced by both mosquitoes and malaria parasites.

Keywords: *Anopheles* vectors, *Plasmodium* malaria, aquatic habitats, daily temperature variability, ectotherms, climate change

Introduction

A proper understanding of the basic biology and ecology of both mosquito vectors and malaria parasites is a prerequisite for development of effective and sustainable malaria control (e.g. Chaves and Koenraadt 2010, Ferguson *et al.* 2010, Marsh 2010). Given the global impact of malaria, it is rather surprising that after more than 100 years of malaria research the mechanistic link between environmental variables, such as temperature, and the risk of malaria remains poorly defined (Lafferty 2009, Paaijmans *et al.* 2009b, 2010b, Pascual *et al.* 2009).

The influence of temperature on malaria can be explored by the basic reproductive number (R_0), which defines the number of cases of a disease that arise from one case of the disease introduced into a population of susceptible hosts. R_0 is commonly described by the formula (Rogers and Randolph 2006):

$$R_0 = \frac{1}{r}\left[\frac{ma^2bcp^{EIP}}{-\ln p}\right] \quad (1)$$

where m is the vector:human ratio, a vector biting frequency, bc transmission coefficients defining vector competence, p daily vector survival rate, EIP the extrinsic incubation or development period of the parasite within the vector, and r the recovery rate of the vertebrate hosts from infection.

Given that 6 out of 7 of these parameters relate in some way to mosquito abundance, ecology or physiology and that mosquitoes are small ectotherm insects, it is clear that the transmission intensity of malaria will be strongly influenced by environmental temperature (see e.g. Craig *et al.* 1999, Guerra *et al.* 2008, Harvell *et al.* 2002, Parham and Michael 2010, Patz and Olson 2006, Rogers and Randolph 2006).

W. Takken and C.J.M. Koenraadt (eds.), *Ecology of parasite-vector interactions*, Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases 3, DOI 10.3920/978-90-8686-744-8_5, © Wageningen Academic Publishers 2013

In general, ectothermic performance across temperature is traditionally summarized as a nonlinear asymmetric curve (Brière *et al.* 1999, Lactin *et al.* 1995, Logan *et al.* 1976). This non-linear relationship has been described for various malaria mosquito and parasite life-history characteristics, such as immature mosquito development (Bayoh and Lindsay 2003), length of the gonotrophic cycle (Lardeux *et al.* 2008) and parasite development time (Ikemoto 2008, Paaijmans *et al.* 2009b) (Figure 1).

Most biological process-based models that approximate malaria risk use mean (usually monthly) outdoor air temperature to estimate various variables that influence disease transmission intensity (Craig *et al.* 1999, Guerra *et al.* 2008, Guerra *et al.* 2010, Killeen *et al.* 2000, Martens *et al.* 1999, Rogers and Randolph 2000). The aim of this chapter is to critically revisit this approach by exploring whether outdoor mean air temperature is the appropriate environmental driver for understanding different aspects of mosquito and parasite biology. Specifically, for traits relating to the adult mosquitoes we consider the influence of mean vs. variable temperatures and outdoor vs. indoor temperatures. Additionally, for the juvenile mosquitoes we consider the influence of air vs. water temperatures.

Overview of methods

Temperature-dependent physiological models

We use two types of temperature-dependent models (i.e. the widely-applied linear rate models and nonlinear asymmetric thermodynamic models (Figure 1)) to compare the effects of these different environmental metrics on various mosquito/malaria life history traits that influence malaria transmission, considering both current and future climate scenarios (note we consider climatic change to include changes in local conditions due to factors such as deforestation (Afrane *et al.* 2008, Lindblade *et al.* 2000) or changes in building structure (Atieli *et al.* 2009, Okech *et al.* 2004a,b)).

To examine the effects of temperature on mosquito/parasite life history traits we used a range of published thermal performance curves (Figure 1). For malaria parasite development we compared

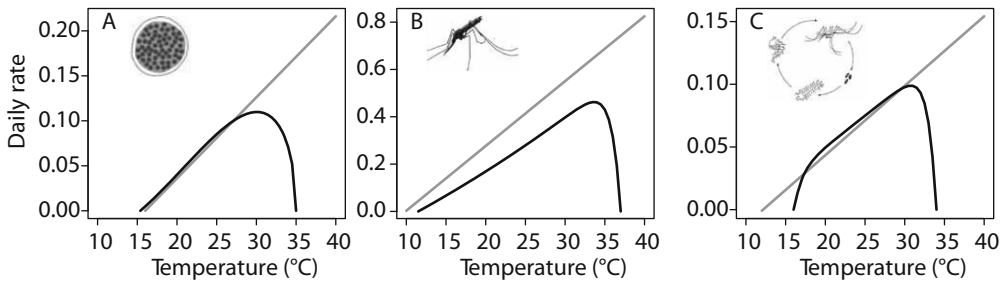


Figure 1. Published thermal performance curves showing the relationship between temperature (in °C) and (A) parasite development rate, (B) the inverse of the gonotrophic cycle length, (C) larval development rate. Grey lines show linear thermal performance curves presented by (A, B) Detinova (1962) and (C) Craig et al. *(1999). Black lines represent the non-linear thermal performance curves presented by (A) Paaijmans* et al. *(2009b), (B) Lardeux* et al. *(2008) and (C) Bayoh and Lindsay (2003).*

the linear rate model of Detinova (1962) with the equivalent non-linear thermodynamic model of Paaijmans *et al.* (2009b). For the gonotrophic cycle (or feeding frequency) we used the linear rate model of Detinova (1962) and the non-linear thermodynamic model of Lardeux *et al.* (2008). Finally, for larval development we compared the linear rate model of Craig *et al.* (1999) with the non-linear thermodynamic model of Bayoh and Lindsay (2003).

Rates were calculated at 30 min intervals using either the mean temperature, or the actual temperature at that given time-point (see below). Growth rates were accumulated until they reached a value of 1, which defines the completion of the rate process (see Paaijmans *et al.* 2009b).

Environmental temperature data

The minimum and maximum air temperature data used in the Section 'Mean vs. variable temperature' were obtained from the National Climatic Data Center (http://www.ncdc.noaa.gov/oa/mpp/freedata.html). Mean monthly air temperature and mean monthly daily temperature range (DTR) were calculated at five met-stations (Kericho, Nakuru, Kisumu, Voi and Khartoum) in East Africa for March 2001. The indoor and outdoor minimum and maximum temperature data that are used in the Section 'Outdoor vs. indoor temperature' were recorded in Tanzania by Bødker *et al.* (2003). Air temperatures and water temperatures reported in the Section 'Water vs. air temperature' were derived from the studies of Paaijmans *et al.* (2008, 2010a).

Modeling daily temperature variation between minimum and maximum temperatures

The phase and form of the diurnal rhythm of the air temperature (T) is given by a sinusoidal progression during daytime (Equation 2) and a decreasing exponential curve during the night (Equation 3) (Parton and Logan 1981):

$$T = T_{min} + (T_{max} - T_{min}) \sin\left[\pi \frac{t - 12 + D/2}{D + 2p}\right] \tag{2}$$

for $t_{rise} \leq t < t_{set}$

$$T = \frac{T_{min} - T_{set} \exp(-N/\tau) + (T_{set} - T_{min}) \exp(-(t - t_{set})/\tau)}{1 - \exp(-N/\tau)} \tag{3}$$

for $t_{set} \leq t < t_{rise}$

where T_{min} and T_{max} (°C) are the minimum and maximum daily air temperature, respectively, t (hours) the time, D (12 hours) the daylength, p (hours) the time duration between solar noon and maximum air temperature, t_{rise} (hours) the time of sunrise, t_{set} (hours) the time of sunset, T_{set} (°C) the temperature at sunset, N (hours) the duration of the night and τ the nocturnal time constant.

Using the reported minimum and maximum temperatures in the Sections 'Mean vs. variable' and 'outdoor vs. indoor' temperature, we modeled the air temperature at 30 min intervals. Mean temperatures are calculated with these 30 min interval data, and not by taking the mean of the minimum and maximum temperature.

Effects of temperature on transmission intensity (basic reproduction rate) of malaria

Temperature affects multiple parameters that comprise R_0. However, for simplicity, in the following sections we consider changes in single parameters only. In Sections 'Mean vs. variable' and ' outdoor vs. indoor' temperature we consider the extrinsic incubation period and feeding frequency (the latter is given by the inverse of the gonotrophic cycle length). Unless stated, we follow others and assume a median daily mosquito survivorship of 0.860 (Kiszewski *et al.* 2004) and a maximum mosquito lifespan of 31 days (Guerra *et al.* 2008).

In the Section 'Water vs. air temperature' we consider changes in larval development period and its effect on population growth rate (which will affect the vector:host ratio). For this we calculate the intrinsic rate of increase, *r*, using the analytical approximation:

$$r = \ln R_n / G \quad (4)$$

where R_n the net reproductive rate and *G* is mean length of a generation (Gotelli 2001). Parameter estimates for *G* and R_n were derived from the study of Afrane *et al.* (2006) who measured adult longevity and daily reproductive fitness for *Anopheles gambiae* Giles at a lowland and highland site in Western Kenya during the rainy season when mean air temperatures were almost identical to those of the current study. Net reproductive rate (R_n) was estimated directly by Afrane *et al.* (2006) with values of R_n=346.0 and R_n=434.8 for the lowland and highland sites, respectively. Mean length of a generation was calculated as the median time for adult reproduction (24.7 and 20.7 days for the lowland and highland sites, respectively, data derived from Afrane *et al* (2006)) plus the relevant duration of larval development from this study to obtain the mean length of a complete generation (i.e. including all immature stages).

The reported changes in R_0 or *r* might be conservative if other mosquito and parasite life-history traits scale similarly with temperature. However, there is a possibility that there are trade-offs between traits, whereby a gain in one trait could be offset be losses in another. For example, in many biological systems, faster development at higher temperatures is costly and can trade-off with survival. For several parasite species it has been shown that development rates interact with survival (e.g. Kutz *et al.* 2009, Studer *et al.* 2010), and for *An. gambiae*, faster immature development at warmer temperatures is offset by fewer numbers surviving (Bayoh and Lindsay 2003). However, potential trade-offs between traits remain largely unexplored for malaria so they are not further considered here. Nonetheless, understanding the potentially complex effects of temperature across multiple interacting traits is an important area for further research.

Mean vs. variable temperature

Mosquitoes and parasites are poikilothermic, and therefore their temperature will track that of their direct surrounding environment. The daily temperature range (DTR; the difference between the daily minimum and maximum temperature) can easily be larger than 10 °C in Africa (Geerts 2003, Paaijmans *et al.* 2010b) (Table 1). Thus, mosquitoes, and parasites within them, do not experience 'average temperatures', but are exposed to temperatures that can fluctuate considerably throughout the day.

In an earlier theoretical study we assessed the potential effects of temperature fluctuation on development of the malaria parasites within the mosquito and revealed that parasite development is expected to be faster under fluctuating low temperatures, and slower under fluctuating high

Table 1. Mean monthly air temperature and mean monthly daily temperature range (DTR) as recorded in March 2001 at five meteorological stations in East Africa. Data obtained from the National Climatic Data Center.

	Kericho	Nakuru	Kisumu	Voi	Khartoum
altitude	1,976 m	1,901 m	1,146 m	579 m	380 m
N[1]	23 days	30 days	31 days	28 days	29 days
Mean T_a	16.7 °C	19.9 °C	23.9 °C	27.7 °C	29.5 °C
DTR	11.6 °C	14.9 °C	13.0 °C	13.3 °C	15.9 °C

[1] Number of days with available temperature (minimum and maximum) data in March 2001.

temperatures, compared with the respective baseline mean temperatures (Paaijmans *et al.* 2009b). In follow-up experimental studies we showed that this theory is robust, and extends to various aspects of life-history of the mosquito (Paaijmans *et al.* 2010b).

The observed non-linear rate summation effect is characterized as the Kaufmann effect (Kaufmann 1932) or Jensen's inequality (see e.g. Ruel and Ayres 1999) and has long been recognized in a range of host-pathogen/parasite systems (see e.g. Arthurs *et al.* 2003, Giannakou *et al.* 1999, Ruissen *et al.* 1993, Scherm and Van Bruggen 1994, Xu 1996) and for many insect-related rate processes in general (Worner 1992), but until recently has not been considered with respect to mosquitoes and pathogens.

To show the potential effects of daily temperature variability on parasite development and feeding frequency, we selected temperature data sets from five locations in East Africa (Table 1, Figure 2A) The extent of malaria transmission in these areas is not uniquely determined by temperature but we select them here to illustrate differential effects of temperature across diverse environments.

Extrinsic incubation period

As indicated previously, daily temperature fluctuation around cool temperatures acts to speed up parasite development relative to the baseline mean temperatures. This can be seen in the cooler areas of Kericho and Nakuru, with effects getting more pronounced as temperatures decline (nonlinear model; Figure 2B).

In Nakuru, parasites are predicted to fully develop in 26.6 days (i.e. within the maximum mosquito lifespan) when temperature fluctuates, but to take 32.5 days (i.e. beyond the maximum mosquito lifespan) at the baseline mean temperature (Figure 2B).

If we relax the mosquito lifespan threshold, and apply a maximum mosquito lifespan of 56 days as used by Craig *et al.* (1999), parasite development will be completed within mosquito lifespan in Kericho under variable temperature conditions (51.9 days), but not at the baseline mean temperature (189.2 days). This means that at the fringes of malaria transmission, fluctuation makes transmission possible at lower mean temperature.

Fluctuation around warmer temperatures has the reverse effect, slowing down growth rate relative to the equivalent constant mean temperatures. This effect is more pronounced as mean

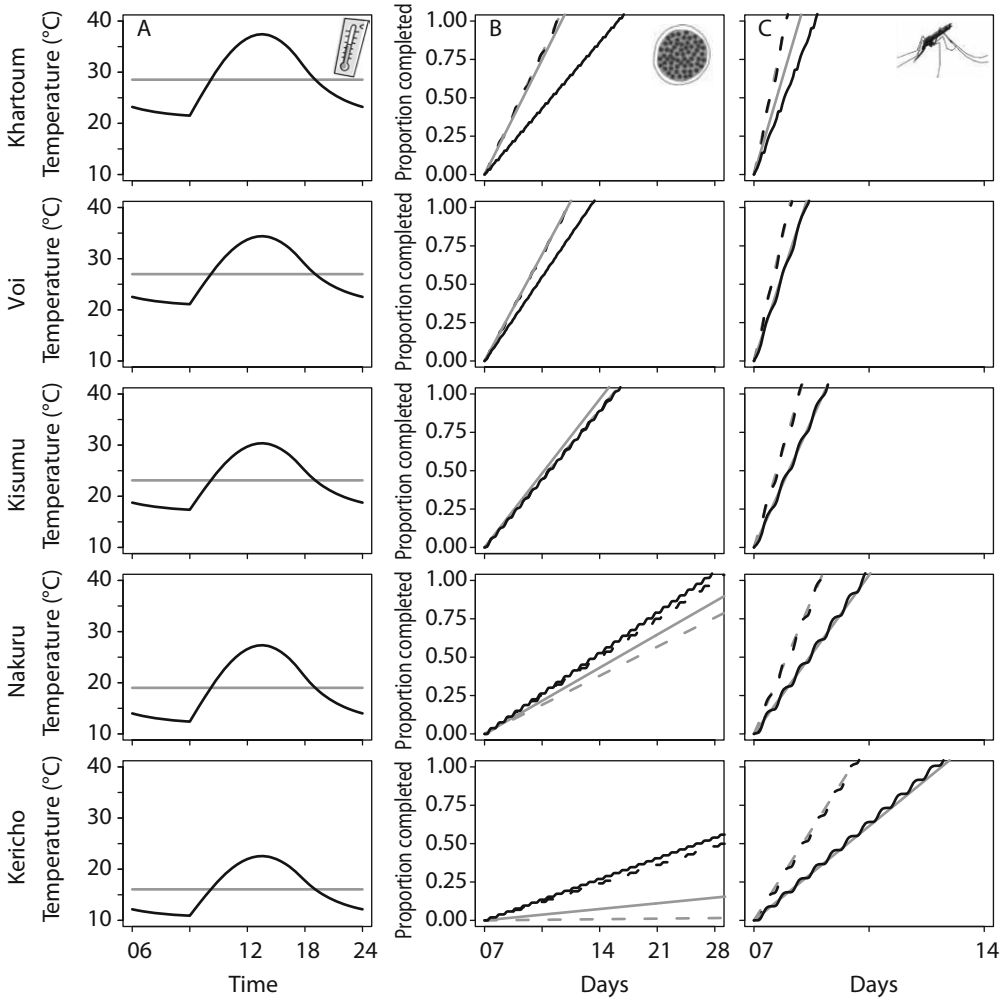


Figure 2. (A) Mean monthly temperatures (°C; grey lines) and modeled mean monthly daily temperature fluctuations (°C; black lines) at five different met-stations in East-Africa (March 2001). (B) Parasite development times, and (C) gonotrophic cycle lengths, at these locations, as estimated by the mean temperature (grey lines) or by taking daily temperature fluctuation into account (black lines). Dashed lines show development as predicted with the linear models, solid lines as predicted with the non-linear models. Development/cycle is completed when the proportion equals 1. Drawings of oocysts were generated by the US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/HTML/Malaria.htm).

temperatures increase (Figure 2B, Kisumu: lengthened by 1.2 days, Voi by 2.7 days, and Khartoum by 6.9 days).

Qualitatively similar results are observed with the linear rate development model of Detinova (Figure 2B) when temperature fluctuates around lower mean temperatures (for Kericho and Nakuru). However, there is no difference in EIP estimates when applying the mean temperature or daily temperature variability in the warmer areas. This is due to the fact that temperature fluctuates over the linear part of the growth curve, so gains during daytime are offset by losses during nighttime. Furthermore, there is no upper temperature threshold in this type of model, so growth rate continues to increase with temperature.

Gonotrophic cycle length

The effect of daily temperature variation on the length of the gonotrophic cycle is much less pronounced than its effects on *EIP*. In Kericho fluctuation reduces the gonotrophic cycle by 0.5 days, whereas in Khartoum fluctuation creates a delay of 0.9 days, compared with the baseline mean temperatures (nonlinear model; Figure 2C).

These smaller effects are caused by the shape of the temperature-dependent model, which spans a wider temperature range than that of the *EIP* (Figure 1A,B). So in most of the selected areas, temperature will fluctuate over the linear part of the thermal performance curve.

Detinova's equation predicts no difference in gonotrophic cycle length when temperature variability is considered, due to a combination of a low minimum threshold temperature (9.9 °C) and temperatures fluctuating along the linear part of the growth curve (Figure 2C). However, the accuracy of the Detinova model is questionable since it predicts very short gonotrophic cycles even at cooler temperatures (e.g. 6 and 4 days in Kericho and Nakuru, respectively), which is at odds with empirical data (Afrane *et al.* 2005, Lardeux *et al.* 2008).

Changing climate

The relative effects of increases in mean temperature are likely to be less than expected when daily temperature fluctuation is taken into account (see Paaijmans *et al.* 2009b). We have illustrated this further in Figure 3, where we consider influence of temperature variation on a generic non-linear thermal performance curve (Figure 3A) (this curve is not specific for any particular life history trait but is used for illustration).

When we consider a longer-term prospective scenario with increases in mean monthly temperature of 3.2 °C, corresponding to the median increase in terrestrial temperature predicted by the IPCC for the months March-May in East-Africa by 2100 (Christensen *et al.* 2007), we see that at cooler temperatures the relative change in rate is much less at larger DTRs compared to the change in rate at the baseline constant temperature (black arrows in Figure 3B). However, it is important to note that the rate itself is already higher.

At higher temperatures, it is not necessarily the case that climate warming will only result in higher rates: no effect of further warming could be observed at certain DTRs (e.g. upper grey arrow in Figure 3B), and at some mean temperature-DTR combinations a decrease in rate could be observed under climate warming.

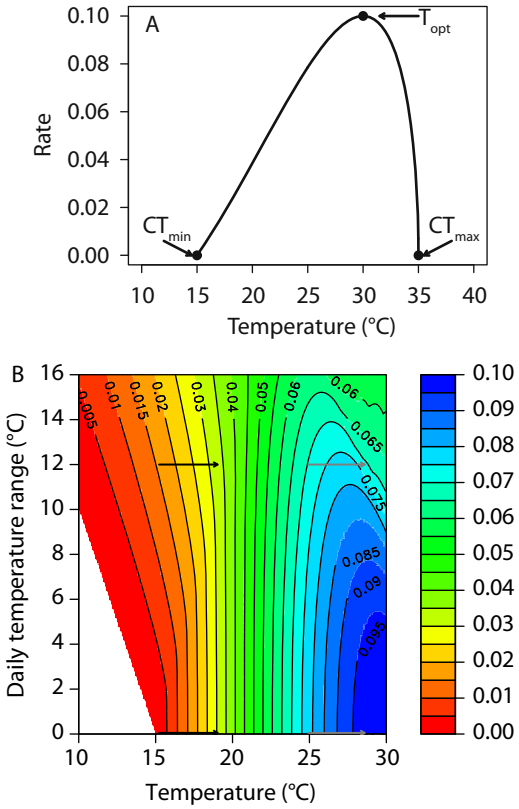


Figure 3. (A) Typical asymmetrical thermal ectotherm performance curve, indicating lower (CT_{min}) and upper (CT_{max}) critical temperatures for a given rate process and the temperature at which performance is maximum (T_{opt}). For illustration purposes we have selected a window of operation of 20 °C, which is typical for many insect species (Dixon et al. *2009), and a rate process that completes in 10 days at T_{opt}. (B) The rate of the same exemplary life-history trait across a range of mean temperatures (10-30 °C) and a wide range of daily temperature ranges (0-16 °C). Arrows indicate a shift in the mean temperature of approx. 3.2 °C due to global warming (see text).*

An additional complication is that global warming is unlikely to result in a symmetrical shift in minimum and maximum temperatures. Several studies predict proportionately greater increases in daily minima than in daily maxima, resulting in decreases in DTR (Easterling *et al.* 1997, King'uyu *et al.* 2000, Lobell *et al.* 2007), although the reverse is possible at local scales (Hulme *et al.* 2001, King'uyu *et al.* 2000). Defining the nature of these changes at particular sites will be important for predicting local changes in disease burdens because changes in DTR can exacerbate or mitigate the influence of increases in mean temperatures, depending on initial starting conditions (Paaijmans *et al.* 2009b).

Short-term changes in climate, due to e.g. land-use changes, could also result in an asymmetrical shift of the daily minimum and maximum temperature. Work by Afrane *et al.* (2005) showed that both the mean and maximum temperatures increased substantially following deforestation in a

highland area in western Kenya. Again, diurnal temperature fluctuation could reduce the relative impact of such changes in mean temperature on life-history characteristics, although the non-linearities, together with changes in DTR, make patterns complex.

In summary, neither the essential transmission parameters nor the upper or lower temperature thresholds for transmission can be estimated with the mean temperature alone. Models that ignore diurnal variation overestimate malaria risk in warmer environments and underestimate risk in cooler environments, and will tend to exaggerate the impact of climate change.

Outdoor vs. indoor temperature

The gonotrophic cycle of an anopheline mosquito can be as short as two days, but could take over a week, depending on temperature (Afrane *et al.* 2005, Lardeux *et al.* 2008, Rúa *et al.* 2005). As oviposition, host-seeking and blood-meal uptake are likely to happen in a single night, mosquitoes can spend a considerable part of the gonotrophic cycle (and hence their adult life) resting, during which the blood meal is digested and eggs develop.

An. gambiae s.s., arguably the most important malaria vector in sub-Saharan Africa, will spend a considerable time indoors, as it typically rests indoors (endophily) (Githeko *et al.* 1996b, Faye *et al.* 1997, Highton *et al.* 1979, Mnzava *et al.* 1995, Service 1970), although the reverse (exophily) has been reported (Bockarie *et al.* 1994; Mahande *et al.* 2007).

Unfortunately, there are only a few studies that actually measure the mean indoor and outdoor temperature simultaneously, and even fewer studies that keep track of the actual daily temperature variability in both environments. A generality in those studies is that the mean indoor temperature in traditional houses tends to be a few degrees Celsius higher than the outdoor temperature (Afrane *et al.* 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, Alonso *et al.* 2011, Bødker *et al.* 2003, Garnham 1945, 1948, Minakawa *et al.* 2006), and this observation is qualitatively robust to changes in altitude. Thus, endophilic mosquitoes, and parasites within them, will be exposed to warmer temperatures than the outdoor air temperature.

Using indoor and outdoor temperature data from a study carried out in Tanzania (Bødker *et al.* 2003) (Figure 4A), we assessed the effects of these different microclimate datasets on the extrinsic incubation period of the parasite and gonotrophic cycle length of the mosquito.

Extrinsic incubation period

When we compare mean outdoor with mean indoor temperatures, applying a nonlinear model, we see that warmer indoor temperatures result in faster parasite development, with the difference getting larger with altitude (3.6 and 12.2 days faster at 640 and 1,040 m, respectively). At 1,686 m *EIP* is successfully completed indoors (30.1 days), whereas outdoor temperatures are too low for successful development (Figure 4B).

Comparing estimates based on the outdoor and indoor actual temperature fluctuations yields qualitatively similar results (Figure 4B). Also, incorporating DTR into the model has no real effect on *EIP* when compared to the baseline mean temperatures, but the reasons for the outdoor and indoor environment are different. Outdoor temperatures fluctuate along the linear part of the growth model. Indoors the DTRs are simply too small to have any impact.

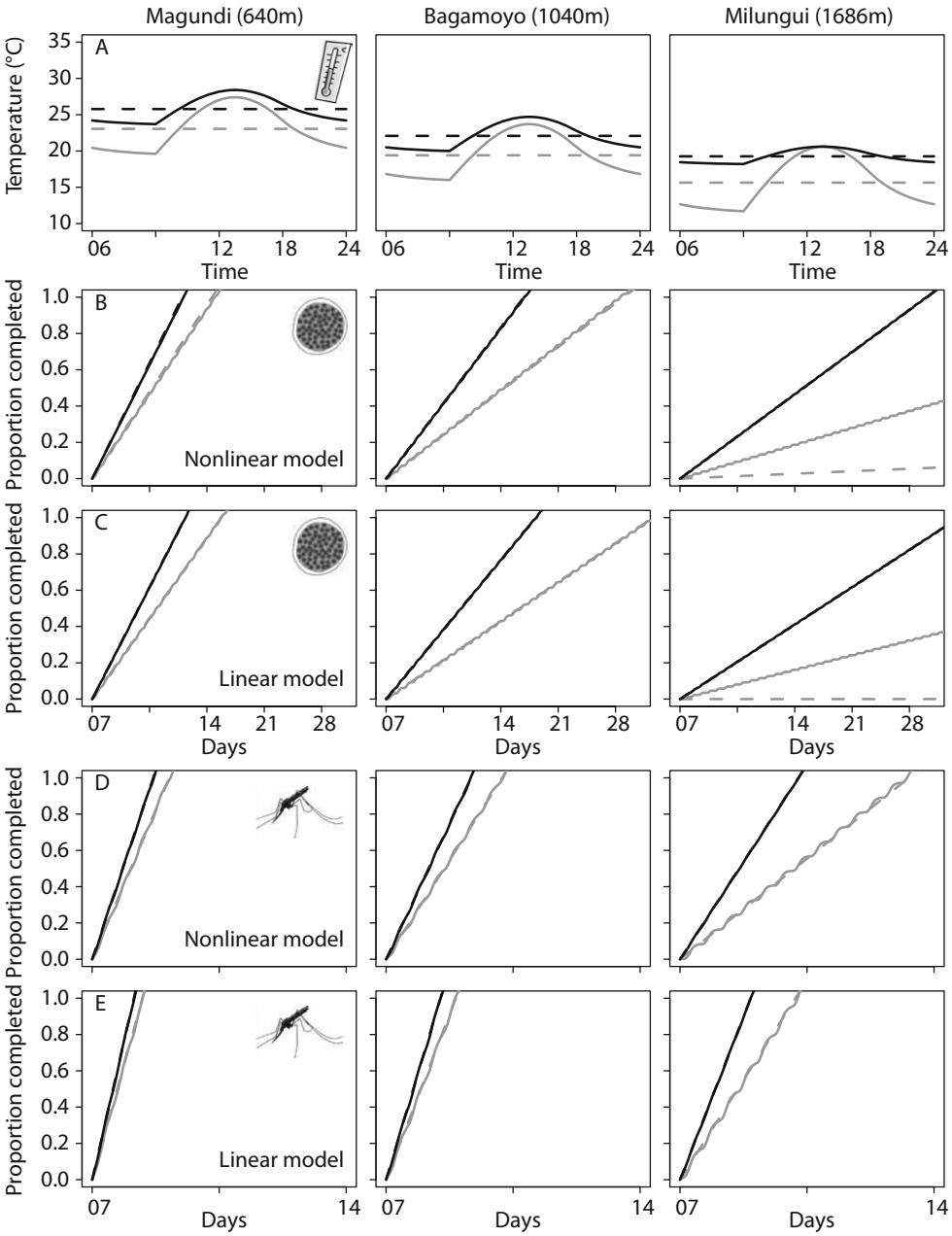


Figure 4. (A) Mean temperatures (°C; dashed lines) and modeled daily temperature dynamics (°C; solid lines) outside (°C; grey lines) and inside (°C; black lines) human dwellings, as recorded by Bødker et al. *(2003). (B, C) Parasite development times, and (D, E) gonotrophic cycle length, are modeled using the mean outdoor temperature (dashed grey lines), mean indoor temperature (dotted black lines) or the daily temperature fluctuation recorded outdoors (solid grey lines) or indoors (solid black lines). (B, D) Estimates with the non-linear models, (C, E) Estimates with the linear models. Development/cycle is completed when the proportion equals 1. Drawings of oocysts are generated by the US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/HTML/Malaria.htm).*

Having said that, large DTRs of 10-15 °C are observed indoors, including in highland environments (Okech *et al.* 2004a; Okech *et al.* 2004b; Afrane *et al.* 2006; Afrane *et al.* 2008). In the study by Bødker *et al.* (2003) that we used as an example here, temperature data are averaged over a period of several months, masking any larger day-to-day variations in DTR.

The linear Detinova model predicts that parasites will not develop successfully at 1,686 m (for neither indoor nor outdoor temperature data) (Figure 4C). At 1,040 m parasites will similarly not be able to complete development in exophilic mosquitoes, whereas the non-linear model predicts that malaria will fully develop in exo- and endophilic mosquitoes and in endophilic mosquitoes at 1,040 and 1,686 m, respectively. The difference between the two models is due to a small difference in the lower minimum threshold temperature for parasite development (Figure 1A).

Gonotrophic cycle length

Again, as seen in the Section 'Mean vs. variable temperature', a qualitatively similar outcome is observed for the gonotrophic cycle length. Compared to indoor conditions, and applying a nonlinear model, outdoor temperatures lengthen the gonotrophic cycle by 0.9 and 1.7 days at 640, 1,040 m altitude, respectively, and predictions based on the mean temperature are similar to those based on the daily temperature variability (Figure 4D). At 1,686 m, the gonotrophic cycle takes 6.1 (mean) or 5.9 days (DTR) longer to complete, compared to the indoor temperature. The reasons for the small differences in the length of the gonotrophic cycle between mean vs. fluctuating temperature are similar to those discussed in the previous Section 'Mean vs. variable temperature'. The Detinova curve again predicts much shorter gonotrophic cycles (see Section 'Mean vs. variable temperature', Figure 4E).

Changing climate

The potential effects of a changing climate on the outdoor air temperature, and hence on mosquito and parasite life-history characteristics, is described in the previous section. How indoor microclimate will be affected by longer-term climate change is hard to predict. There are multiple factors that will ultimately play a role. Humans can manipulate their direct thermal environment by changing the nature of the building structure (Atieli *et al.* 2009, Okech *et al.* 2004a,b), or its surroundings (Afrane *et al.* 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008). Mosquitoes might also react to unfavourable indoor conditions; in a study exploring the effects of steadily increasing temperature on behaviour (Kirby and Lindsay 2004), *An. gambiae* and *An. arabiensis* Patton exhibited escape responses at 33 °C and 35.7 °C, respectively.

Moreover, the use of insecticides on bednets (ITNs) (Lindsay *et al.* 1991, Lines *et al.* 1987, Mbogo *et al.* 1996, Miller *et al.* 1991), on eaves curtains (Githeko *et al.* 1996a) or by spraying insecticides indoors (IRS) (Service *et al.* 1978), all have the potential to keep/drive malaria vectors outdoors. This change in behaviour means that vectors will immediately be exposed to different microclimatic conditions.

The well-documented consequences of deforestation on climate provide us with an insight of climate warming on a very short temporal scale. Deforestation in cooler highland areas in western Kenya result in warmer mean and maximum indoor temperatures, increasing the indoor DTR (Afrane *et al.* 2005, 2006). Increases in the minimum temperature have also been observed after deforestation (Afrane *et al.* 2008). Such changes in temperature could result in increased parasite development rates and shorter gonotrophic cycles. Both have been observed empirically: for *EIP*, see Afrane *et al.* (2008) and for gonotrophic cycle length, see Afrane *et al.* (2005).

In summary, existing models that use outdoor air temperatures will tend to underestimate the speed of rate processes such as parasite development, blood meal digestion and egg-production of indoor resting mosquito populations, with differences being larger in cooler environments. The impact of climate warming is hard to assess due to many uncertainties. Clearly we need a better understanding of mosquito whereabouts and the associated microclimate.

Water vs. air temperature

The relationship between immature mosquito biology and temperature is central to numerous studies exploring the temporal and/or spatial patterns of malaria risk (Bayoh and Lindsay 2003, Craig *et al.* 1999, Ebi *et al.* 2005, Hoshen and Morse 2004, Ikemoto 2008, Pascual *et al.* 2006). A feature of nearly all such studies is the use of mean ambient air temperature to drive the relevant growth processes. While this might be appropriate for processes relating to transmission by the adult mosquito (but see Sections 'Mean vs. variable' and 'outdoor vs. indoor' temperature), the immature stages of malaria mosquitoes, such as *An. gambiae*, inhabit aquatic environments such as small, transient, sunlit pools (e.g. Gimnig *et al.* 2001, Mutuku *et al.* 2006).

Water temperatures are generally higher than corresponding air temperatures throughout most of the day, with mean water temperature exceeding mean air temperature by a few degrees Celsius, in both lowland and highland areas (Table 2, Figure 5A, Minakawa *et al.* 2006, Munga *et al.* 2005, Munga *et al.* 2006, Paaijmans *et al.* 2008, 2010a). Given the fundamental fact that mosquito larvae live in aquatic and not terrestrial habitats, immature mosquitoes do not experience air temperatures, but are exposed to warmer water temperatures.

To illustrate the difference in impact of water vs. air temperature on mosquito biology, we estimated immature development using both linear and non-linear development models (Figure 1C), driven by temperatures recorded in a lowland (Kisian) and highland area (Fort Ternan) in western Kenya. A day with predominant clear sky was selected. Mean air and water temperature, as well as daily temperature ranges are given in Table 2 and Figure 5A.

Table 2. Mean air and water temperatures, and their daily temperature ranges, as recorded on a day with no overcast in a lowland and a highland site in western Kenya.

Kisian (1,126 m)	29 March 2005
Total incoming short wave radiation	26.8 MJ/m^2
Mean air temperature	23.8 °C
DTRair	13.3 °C
Mean water temperature	28.4 °C
DTRwater	11.9 °C
Fort Ternan (1,552 m)	22 May 2006
Total incoming short wave radiation	26.7 MJ/m^2
Mean temperature	19.5 °C
DTR	12.7 °C
Mean water temperature	25.1 °C
DTRwater	12.1 °C

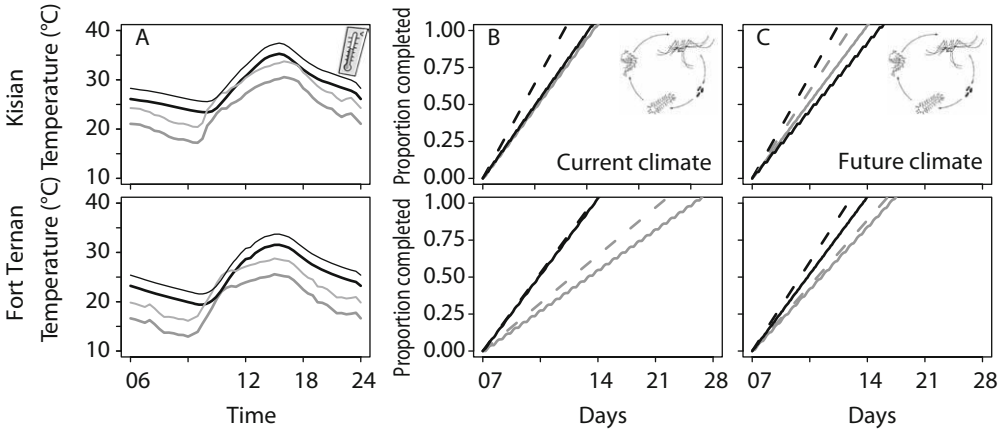


Figure 5. (A) Air temperature (grey lines) and water temperature dynamics (black lines) in a typical mosquito breeding puddle as recorded in Kisian and Fort Ternan, a lowland and a highland site, respectively, in western Kenya. Thick lines are actual measured temperatures, thin lines the forecasted temperatures (see text). (B, C) Immature development times predicted with the non-linear model using the mean temperature (dashed lines) or the daily temperature variation (solid lines) of the air (grey lines) or water temperatures (black lines). (C) Similar to B, but now showing the effects of climate warming on larval development times. Development is completed when the proportion equals 1.

Water temperatures in Kisian and Fort Ternan were higher than corresponding air temperatures throughout the day, with mean water temperature exceeding mean air temperature by 4.6 and 5.6 °C, respectively.

Larval development times

Larval development rates as estimated with mean water temperatures are much higher than estimates that are based on mean air temperatures. Higher mean water temperatures shorten larval development times by 3.6 days in the lowland and 8.3 days in the highland area (nonlinear model; Figure 5B).

When daily water temperature variability is included in the model, we get qualitatively similar results: larval duration is shortened by 0.6 days in Kisian compared to fluctuating air temperatures. The fact that immature mosquito develop slower under variable conditions, compared to constant conditions, is caused by a period of high water temperatures during daytime, which slow down and even inhibit development for a short period during the day (Figure 5B). In the highland area larval duration is shortened by 12 days, compared with estimates based on the variable air temperature (Figure 5B). This is not only the result of the air temperature being lower than the water temperature, and hence predicting lower development rates; another factor is that air temperatures drop below the minimum critical temperature for larval development (CTmin) during night-time, resulting in a shorter period of growth compared to estimates that are based on fluctuating water temperatures.

The immature development times that are derived using aquatic temperatures in the current study are consistent with the observed larval development times in several field studies in western Kenya (Gimnig *et al.* 2002, Minakawa *et al.* 2006, Munga *et al.* 2006, Paaijmans *et al.* 2009a).

The linear model provides a qualitatively similar outcome to the nonlinear model described above (4.4 days reduction in development time in the lowlands, and 10.8 days in the highlands, under both mean and variable conditions; data not shown), as the models overlap over a large part of the operable temperature range. The linear model does, however, not capture the slower development (as described above) at the lower temperature end due to differences in model-shape at cooler temperatures (Figure 1C). Due to a combination of (1) there being no upper temperature threshold in the linear model, and (2) the fact that temperatures observed in our field sites fluctuate over the linear part of the growth curve, the linear model predicts similar development rates in both constant and variable environments.

Changing climate

The relative impact of temperature warming is likely to be less when the relevant water temperatures are taken into account. This is because (1) water temperature of typical malaria mosquito breeding sites is higher than the surrounding air temperature, and therefore the baseline larval development and population growth rates themselves are much higher, and will therefore see a smaller increase compared to estimates that are based on the air temperature (Paaijmans *et al.* 2010a) and (2) the actual increase in water temperature is expected to be less than the actual increase in air temperature since the slopes of the regression lines describing the relationship between water and air temperature are <1 (Paaijmans *et al.* 2010a).

To illustrate this we consider a longer-term prospective scenario with increases in mean monthly air temperature of 3.2 °C (see Section 'Mean vs. variable temperature'). The actual increase in water temperature is expected to be to be 3.2×0.677 (slope) = 2.2 °C. For simplicity we assumed no changes in the diurnal ranges of air and water temperatures (Figure 5A).

Adding the projected increase of 3.2 °C in temperature to current mean air temperatures dramatically shortens larval development times (Figure 5C) and increase population growth rates. Again, however, the magnitude of these effects is greatly reduced when the relationship between air and water temperature is taken into account; instead of decreases in larval development times of 2.7 days in the lowland and 5.8 days in the highland area, development times are predicted to shorten by only 0.8 days and 1.7 days, respectively.

As a consequence, the increases in population growth rates compared to present day are predicted to be in the order of 2.3% in the lowland area and 5.1% in the highland area rather than 7.4% and 15.9%, respectively, as predicted with the mean air temperature.

When temperature variability is taken into account similar patterns emerge; instead of decreases in larval development times of 1.3 days in the lowland and 8.9 days in the highland area, development times are predicted to lengthen by 1.1 days and shorten by 0.1 days, respectively. The longer larval development time in the lowlands is caused by the fact that larvae are exposed even longer to unfavourable temperatures during daytime, which inhibit development. This results in a decrease in population growth rate of 2.8% compared to present day, rather than an increase of 3.3% in the lowland area. In the highland area there is an increase in the intrinsic rate of increase of only 0.4% rather than the 23.7% that is predicted with the variable air temperature.

Essentially, although warming is expected to increase growth rate via effects on larval development, the relative change is expected to be much less, and could even be reversed, when the relevant water temperatures are considered.

Unfortunately, we have a poor understanding of how climate warming will eventually change the daily temperature dynamics of mosquito breeding habitats. On shorter time scales, changes in microclimate due to deforestation (or swamp reclamation) have been observed to increase mean temperatures in larval habitats (increase of 4.8 °C in the lowland and 4.7 °C in the highland area), with larger increases in the daily maximum water temperature than in the daily minimum water temperature. In these warmer pools, larval development times are shortened by several days in the lowlands, and by a week or more in a cooler highland area (Minakawa *et al.* 2006).

In summary, air temperature alone does not provide an appropriate variable for estimating immature mosquito development or for setting threshold temperatures. Existing models will tend to underestimate mosquito population growth under current conditions. On the other hand, the relative increases in larval development rates predicted due to climate change are substantially less. Again, existing models may overestimate relative increases in population growth under future climate change.

Concluding remarks

This book chapter highlights how the standard use of the mean outdoor air temperature in malaria risk models fails to capture important features of the actual microclimate experienced by mosquitoes. Immature and adult mosquitoes, as well as the parasites within the adults, are likely to be exposed to considerable different temperatures than currently taken into account. In addition, daily temperature variations (in outdoor and indoor air temperature, as well as in water temperature) and the type of model (linear vs. non-linear) that is used clearly affect malaria risk predictions as well.

Given the need to understand malaria dynamics for setting operational control objectives and for predicting consequences of climate change, this chapter highlights an urgent need to develop a better mechanistic understanding of vector-parasite interactions, with improved integration of the biological and environmental parameters at a scale relevant to conditions actually experienced by both mosquitoes and malaria parasites.

Acknowledgements

This project was supported by a Netherlands Organisation for Scientific Research (NWO) grant and a NSF-EID program grant (#EF-0914384).

References

Afrane YA, Lawson BW, Githeko AK and Yan G (2005) Effects of microclimatic changes caused by land use and land cover on duration of gonotrophic cycles of *Anopheles gambiae* (Diptera: Culicidae) in western Kenya highlands. J Med Entomol 42: 974-980.

Afrane YA, Little TJ, Lawson BW, Githeko AK and Yan GY (2008) Deforestation and vectorial capacity of *Anopheles gambiae* giles mosquitoes in malaria transmission, Kenya. Emerg Infect Dis 14: 1533-1538.

Afrane YA, Zhou G, Lawson BW, Githeko AK and Yan G (2006) Effects of microclimatic changes caused by deforestation on the survivorship and reproductive fitness of *Anopheles gambiae* in western Kenya highlands. Am J Trop Med Hyg 74: 772-778.

Afrane YA, Zhou G, Lawson BW, Githeko AK and Yan G (2007) Life-table analysis of *Anopheles arabiensis* in western Kenya highlands: effects of land covers on larval and adult survivorship. Am J Trop Med Hyg 77: 660-666.

Alonso D, Bouma MJ and Pascual M (2011) Epidemic malaria and warmer temperatures in recent decades in an East African highland. Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences 278: 1661-1669.

Arthurs S, Heinz KM, Thompson S and Krauter PC (2003) Effect of temperature on infection, development and reproduction of the parasitic nematode *Thripinema nicklewoodi* in *Frankliniella occidentalis*. Biocontrol 48: 417-429.

Atieli H, Menya D, Githeko A and Scott T (2009) House design modifications reduce indoor resting malaria vector densities in rice irrigation scheme area in western Kenya. Malar J 8: 9.

Bayoh MN and Lindsay SW (2003) Effect of temperature on the development of the aquatic stages of *Anopheles gambiae* sensu stricto (Diptera: Culicidae). Bull Entomol Res 93: 375-381.

Bødker R, Akida J, Shayo D, Kisinza W, Msangeni HA, Pedersen EM and Lindsay SW (2003) Relationship between altitude and intensity of malaria transmission in the Usambara Mountains, Tanzania. J Med Entomol 40: 706-717.

Bockarie MJ, Service MW, Barnish G, Maude GH and Greenwood BM (1994) Malaria in a rural area of Sierra Leone. III. Vector ecology and disease transmission. Ann Trop Med Parasitol 88: 251-262.

Brière JF, Pracros P, Le Roux AY and Pierre JS (1999) A novel rate model of temperature-dependent development for arthropods. Environ Entomol 28: 22-29.

Chaves LF and Koenraadt CJM (2010) Climate change and highland malaria: fresh air for a hot debate. Q Rev Biol 85: 27-55.

Christensen JH, Hewitson B, Busuioc A, Chen A, Gao X, Held I, Jones R, Kolli RK, Kwon W-T, Laprise R, Rueda VM, Mearns L, Menéndez CG, Räisänen J, Rinke A, Sarr A and Whetton P (2007) Regional climate projections. In: Solomon S, Qin D, Manning M, Chen Z, Marquis M, Averyt KB, Tignor M and Miller HL (eds.) Climate change 2007: the physical science basis, contribution of working group I to the fourth assessment report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK, pp. 847-940.

Craig MH, Snow RW and Le Sueur D (1999) A climate-based distribution model of malaria transmission in sub-Saharan Africa. Parasitol Today 15: 105-111.

Detinova TS (1962) Age-grouping methods in Diptera of medical importance. World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland.

Dixon AFG, Honěk A, Keil P, Kotela MAA, Šizling AL and Jarošík V (2009) Relationship between the minimum and maximum temperature thresholds for development in insects. Funct Ecol 23: 257-264.

Easterling DR, Horton B, Jones PD, Peterson TC, Karl TR, Parker DE, Salinger MJ, Razuvayev V, Plummer N, Jamason P and Folland CK (1997) Maximum and minimum temperature trends for the globe. Science 277: 364-367.

Ebi KL, Hartman J, Chan N, McConnell J, Schlesinger M and Weyant J (2005) Climate suitability for stable malaria transmission in Zimbabwe under different climate change scenarios. Clim Change 73: 375-393.

Faye O, Konate L, Mouchet J, Fontenille D, Sy N, Hebrard G and Herve JP (1997) Indoor resting by outdoor biting females of *Anopheles gambiae* complex (Diptera: Culicidae) in the sahel of northern Senegal. J Med Entomol 34: 285-289.

Ferguson HM, Dornhaus A, Beeche A, Borgemeister C, Gottlieb M, Mulla MS, Gimnig JE, Fish D and Killeen GF (2010) Ecology: a prerequisite for malaria elimination and eradication. PLoS Med 7: e1000303.

Garnham P (1945) Malaria epidemics at exceptionally high altitudes in Kenya. Br Med Bull 2: 456-457.

Garnham P (1948) The incidence of malaria at high altitudes. J Nat Mal Soc 7: 275-284.

Geerts B (2003) Empirical estimation of the monthly-mean daily temperature range. Theor Appl Clim 74: 145-165.

Giannakou IO, Pembroke B, Gowen SR and Douloumpaka S (1999) Effects of fluctuating temperatures and different host plants on development of *Pasteuria penetrans* in *Meloidogyne javanica*. J Nematol 31: 312-318.

Gimnig JE, Ombok M, Kamau L and Hawley WA (2001) Characteristics of larval anopheline (Diptera: Culicidae) habitats in western Kenya. J Med Entomol 38: 282-288.

Gimnig JE, Ombok M, Otieno S, Kaufman MG, Vulule JM and Walker ED (2002) Density-dependent development of *Anopheles gambiae* (Diptera: Culicidae) larvae in artificial habitats. J Med Entomol 39: 162-172.

Githeko AK, Adungo NI, Karanja DM, Hawley WA, Vulule JM, Seroney IK, Ofulla AVO, Atieli FK, Ondijo SO, Genge IO, Odada PK, Situbi PA and Oloo JA (1996a) Some observations on the biting behavior of *Anopheles gambiae* s.s., *Anopheles arabiensis*, and *Anopheles funestus* and their implications for malaria control. Exp Parasitol 82: 306-315.

Githeko AK, Service MW, Mbogo CM and Atieli FK (1996b) Resting behaviour, ecology and genetics of malaria vectors in large scale agricultural areas of western Kenya. Parassitologia 38: 481-489.

Gotelli N (2001) A primer of ecology. Sinauer Associates, Inc, Sunderlands, MA, USA.

Guerra CA, Gikandi PW, Tatem AJ, Noor AM, Smith DL, Hay SI and Snow RW (2008) The limits and intensity of *Plasmodium falciparum* transmission: Implications for malaria control and elimination worldwide. PLoS Med 5: 300-311.

Guerra CA, Howes RE, Patil AP, Gething PW, Van Boeckel TP, Temperley WH, Kabaria CW, Tatem AJ, Manh BH, Elyazar IRF, Baird JK, Snow RW and Hay SI (2010) The international limits and population at risk of *Plasmodium vivax* transmission in 2009. PLoS Negl Trop Dis 4: e774.

Harvell CD, Mitchell CE, Ward JR, Altizer S, Dobson AP, Ostfeld RS and Samuel MD (2002) Climate warming and disease risks for terrestrial and marine biota. Science 296: 2158-2162.

Highton RB, Bryan JH, Boreham PFL and Chandler JA (1979) Studies on the sibling species *Anopheles gambiae* Giles and *Anopheles arabiensis* Patton (Diptera: Culicidae) in the Kisumu area, Kenya. Bull Entomol Res 69: 43-53.

Hoshen MB and Morse AP (2004) A weather-driven model of malaria transmission. Malar J 3:32.

Hulme M, Doherty R, Ngara T, New M and Lister D (2001) African climate change: 1900-2100. Clim Res 17: 145-168.

Ikemoto T (2008) Tropical malaria does not mean hot environments. J Med Entomol 45: 963-969.

Kaufmann O (1932) Some remarks on the influence of temperature fluctuations on the developmental duration and dispersion of insects and its graphical representation by catenary and hyperbola (In German). Z Morphol Ökol Tiere 25: 353-361.

Killeen GF, McKenzie FE, Foy BD, Schieffelin C, Billingsley PF and Beier JC (2000) A simplified model for predicting malaria entomologic inoculation rates based on entomologic and parasitologic parameters relevant to control. Am J Trop Med Hyg 62: 535-544.

King'uyu SM, Ogallo LA and Anyamba EK (2000) Recent trends of minimum and maximum surface temperatures over eastern Africa. J Clim 13: 2876-2886.

Kirby MJ and Lindsay SW (2004) Responses of adult mosquitoes of two sibling species, *Anopheles arabiensis* and *A. gambiae* s.s. (Diptera: Culicidae), to high temperatures. Bull Entomol Res 94: 441-448.

Kiszewski A, Mellinger A, Spielman A, Malaney P, Sachs SE and Sachs J (2004) A global index representing the stability of malaria transmission. Am J Trop Med Hyg 70: 486-498.

Kutz SJ, Jenkins EJ, Veitch AM, Ducrocq J, Polley L, Elkin B and Lair S (2009) The Arctic as a model for anticipating, preventing, and mitigating climate change impacts on host-parasite interactions. Vet Parasitol 163: 217-228.

Lactin DJ, Holliday NJ, Johnson DL and Craigen R (1995) Improved rate model of temperature-dependent development by arthropods. Environ Entomol 24: 68-75.

Lafferty KD (2009) Calling for an ecological approach to studying climate change and infectious diseases. Ecology 90: 932-933.

Lardeux FJ, Tejerina RH, Quispe V and Chavez TK (2008) A physiological time analysis of the duration of the gonotrophic cycle of *Anopheles pseudopunctipennis* and its implications for malaria transmission in Bolivia. Malar J 7: 17.

Lindblade KA, Walker ED, Onapa AW, Katungu J and Wilson ML (2000) Land use change alters malaria transmission parameters by modifying temperature in a highland area of Uganda. Trop Med Int Health 5: 263-274.

Lindsay SW, Adiamah JH, Miller JE and Armstrong JRM (1991) Pyrethroid-treated bednet effects on mosquitoes of the *Anopheles gambiae* complex in The Gambia. Med Vet Entomol 5: 477-483.

Lines JD, Myamba J and Curtis CF (1987) Experimental hut trials of permethrin-impregnated mosquito nets and eave curtains against malaria vectors in Tanzania. Med Vet Entomol 1: 37-51.

Lobell DB, Bonfils C and Duffy PB (2007) Climate change uncertainty for daily minimum and maximum temperatures: a model inter-comparison. Geo Res Letters 34: 5.

Logan JA, Wollkind DJ, Hoyt SC and Tanigoshi LK (1976) An analytic model for description of temperature dependent rate phenomena in arthropods. Environ Entomol 5: 1133-1140.

Mahande A, Mosha F, Mahande J and Kweka E (2007) Feeding and resting behaviour of malaria vector, *Anopheles arabiensis* with reference to zooprophylaxis. Malar J 6: 100.

Marsh K (2010) Research priorities for malaria elimination. Lancet 376: 1626-1627.

Martens P, Kovats RS, Nijhof S, de Vries P, Livermore MTJ, Bradley DJ, Cox J and McMichael AJ (1999) Climate change and future populations at risk of malaria. Global Environ Change 9: S89-S107.

Mbogo CNM, Baya NM, Ofulla AVO, Githure JI and Snow RW (1996) The impact of permethrin-impregnated bednets on malaria vectors of the Kenyan coast. Med Vet Entomol 10: 251-259.

Mnzava AEP, Rwegoshora RT, Wilkes TJ, Tanner M and Curtis CF (1995) *Anopheles arabiensis* and *Anopheles gambiae* chromosomal inversion polymorphism, feeding and resting behavior in relation to insecticide house spraying in Tanzania. Med Vet Entomol 9: 316-324.

Miller JE, Lindsay SW and Armstrong JRM (1991) Experimental hut trials of bednets impregnated with synthetic pyrethroid or organophosphate insecticide for mosquito control in The Gambia. Med Vet Entomol 5: 465-476.

Minakawa N, Omukunda E, Zhou G, Githeko A and Yan G (2006) Malaria vector productivity in relation to the highland environment in Kenya. Am J Trop Med Hyg 75: 448-453.

Munga S, Minakawa N, Zhou G, Barrack O-OJ, Githeko AK and Yan G (2005) Oviposition site preference and egg hatchability of *Anopheles gambiae*: effects of land cover types. J Med Entomol 42: 993-997.

Munga S, Minakawa N, Zhou G, Mushinzimana E, Barrack O-OJ, Githeko AK and Yan G (2006) Association between land cover and habitat productivity of malaria vectors in western Kenyan highlands. Am J Trop Med Hyg 74: 69-75.

Mutuku FM, Alaii JA, Bayoh MN, Gimnig JE, Vulule JM, Walker ED, Kabiru E and Hawley WA (2006) Distribution, description, and local knowledge of larval habitats of *Anopheles gambiae* s.l. in a village in western Kenya. Am J Trop Med Hyg 74: 44-53.

Okech BA, Gouagna LC, Knols BGJ, Kabiru EW, Killeen GF, Beier JC, Yan G and Githure JI (2004a) Influence of indoor microclimate and diet on survival of *Anopheles gambiae* s.s. (Diptera: Culicidae) in village house conditions in western Kenya. Int J Trop Insect Sci 24: 207-212.

Okech BA, Gouagna LC, Walczak E, Kabiru EW, Beier JC, Yan G and Githure JI (2004b) The development of *Plasmodium falciparum* in experimentally infected *Anopheles gambiae* (Diptera: Culicidae) under ambient microhabitat temperature in western Kenya. Acta Trop 92: 99-108.

Paaijmans K, Imbahale S, Thomas M and Takken W (2010a) Relevant microclimate for determining the development rate of malaria mosquitoes and possible implications of climate change. Malar J 9:196.

Paaijmans KP, Blanford S, Bell AS, Blanford JI, Read AF and Thomas MB (2010b) Influence of climate on malaria transmission depends on daily temperature variation. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 107: 15135-15139.

Paaijmans KP, Huijben S, Githeko AK and Takken W (2009a) Competitive interactions between larvae of the malaria mosquitoes *Anopheles arabiensis* and *Anopheles gambiae* under semi-field conditions in western Kenya. Acta Trop 109: 124-130.

Paaijmans KP, Jacobs AFG, Takken W, Heusinkveld BG, Githeko AK, Dicke M and Holtslag AAM (2008) Observations and model estimates of diurnal water temperature dynamics in mosquito breeding sites in western Kenya. Hydrol Proc 22: 4789-4801.

Paaijmans KP, Read AF and Thomas MB (2009b) Understanding the link between malaria risk and climate. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 106: 13844-13849.

Parham PE and Michael E (2010) Modeling the effects of weather and climate change on malaria transmission. Environ Health Perspect 118: 620-626.

Parton WJ and Logan JA (1981) A model for diurnal variation in soil and air temperature. Agr Met 23: 205-216.

Pascual M, Ahumada JA, Chaves LF, Rodó X and Bouma M (2006) Malaria resurgence in the East African highlands: temperature trends revisited. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 103: 5829-5834.

Pascual M, Dobson AP and Bouma MJ (2009) Underestimating malaria risk under variable temperatures. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 106: 13645-13646.

Patz JA and Olson SH (2006) Malaria risk and temperature: Influences from global climate change and local land use practices. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 103: 5635-5636.

Rogers DJ and Randolph SE (2000) The global spread of malaria in a future, warmer world. Science 289: 1763-1766.

Rogers DJ and Randolph SE (2006) Climate change and vector-borne diseases. In: Hay SI, Graham A and Rogers DJ (eds.) Global mapping of infectious diseases: methods, examples and emerging applications (Advances in Parasitology), Elsevier, San Diego, CA, USA, pp. 345-381.

Rúa GL, Quiñones ML, Vélez ID, Zuluaga JS, Rojas W, Poveda G and Ruiz D (2005) Laboratory estimation of the effects of increasing temperatures on the duration of gonotrophic cycle of *Anopheles albimanus* (Diptera: Culicidae). Mem Inst Oswaldo Cruz 100: 515-520.

Ruel JJ and Ayres MP (1999) Jensen's inequality predicts effects of environmental variation. Trends Ecol Evol 14: 361-366.

Ruissen MA, Vandervossen RTM and Kocks CG (1993) Growth of *Xanthomonas campestris* pv. *campestris* populations at constant and variable temperatures. Neth J Plant Path 99: 173-179.

Scherm H and Van Bruggen AHC (1994) Effects of fluctuating temperatures on the latent period of lettuce downy mildew (*Bremia lactucae*). Phytopathology 84: 853-859.

Service MW (1970) Ecological notes on species A and B of the *Anopheles gambiae* complex in the Kisumu area of Kenya. Bull Entomol Res 60: 105-108.

Service MW, Joshi GP and Pradhan GD (1978) Survey of *Anopheles gambiae* (species A) and *An. arabiensis* (species B) of *An. gambiae* Giles complex in the Kisumu area of Kenya following insecticidal spraying with OMS-43 (Fenitrothion). Ann Trop Med Parasitol 72: 377-386.

Studer A, Thieltges DW and Poulin R (2010) Parasites and global warming: net effects of temperature on an intertidal host-parasite system. Mar Ecol Prog Ser 415: 11-22.

Worner SP (1992) Performance of phenological models under variable temperature regimes: consequences of the Kaufmann or rate summation effect. Environ Entomol 21: 689-699.

Xu XM (1996) The effects of constant and fluctuating temperatures on the length of the incubation period of apple powdery mildew (*Podosphaera leucotricha*). Plant Pathol 45: 924-932.

6. Evolutionary aspects of *Anopheles-Plasmodium* interactions

Louis Lambrechts and Jacob C. Koella

Abstract

Interactions between *Plasmodium* parasites and their *Anopheles* vectors are central to the epidemiology of human malaria. This chapter highlights how an evolutionary perspective on *Anopheles-Plasmodium* interactions can provide important insights into the history, distribution and dynamics of malaria transmission. It focuses on three aspects: (1) the macro-evolutionary history of malaria parasites in relation with their vectors, (2) the micro-evolutionary mechanisms shaping mosquito-parasite interactions and their impact on malaria transmission, and (3) the contribution of evolutionary concepts in the assessment of novel strategies to control malaria. The geographical distribution of diverse anopheline species and populations has played an important role in the past and present distribution of malaria. In particular, speciation processes and genetic differentiation of vectors may have been important drivers of the evolution of human malaria parasites. A full understanding of the epidemiology of malaria also requires careful consideration of the micro-evolutionary relationships between mosquitoes and malaria parasites. Malaria parasites have evolved, for example, to manipulate several parameters of the vector biology that are expected to increase their transmission. Finally, an evolutionary approach is useful for assessing the feasibility of innovative malaria control strategies such as the release of transgenic mosquitoes. Considering the epidemiological feedback and the evolutionary response of wild mosquito and parasite populations is crucial for predicting the evolutionary trajectory of such a control measure. A major challenge for future research is to obtain quantitative, epidemiologically relevant estimates of the critical parameters underlying *Anopheles-Plasmodium* interactions in natural systems.

Keywords: vector-parasite interactions, malaria epidemiology, parasite manipulation, evolutionary feedback, genetically modified mosquitoes

Introduction

This chapter deals with evolutionary aspects of the interactions between malaria parasites and their mosquito vectors. Rather than exhaustively covering the topic, it describes examples of three aspects: macro-evolutionary patterns, the role of evolutionary ecology in shaping epidemiology, and the use of evolutionary ideas for control. The section 'Role of mosquitoes in evolutionary history of *Plasmodium*' reviews approaches of population biology and phylogenetics that have shed light on the macro-evolutionary history of malaria parasites in relation with their mosquito vectors. In particular, it describes the association of mammalian *Plasmodium* species with their specialization to *Anopheles* mosquito vectors, and the link between anopheline diversity and the current distribution of *Plasmodium* species and populations. The next Section 'Evolutionary ecology of mosquito-malaria interactions' describes the micro-evolutionary mechanisms shaping interactions between *Plasmodium* and mosquitoes and their impact on malaria transmission. Special emphasis is put on recent insights provided by ecological immunology approaches into the role of mosquito immunity in malaria transmission. Finally, the Section 'Evolutionary assessment of genetically-modified mosquitoes for malaria control' focuses on the contribution of evolutionary concepts in the assessment of novel strategies to control malaria based on the release of transgenic mosquitoes. Specifically, it examines the conditions and consequences of the evolution of mosquito resistance to a lethal genetic construct (population suppression strategy)

W. Takken and C.J.M. Koenraadt (eds.), *Ecology of parasite-vector interactions*, Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases 3, DOI 10.3920/978-90-8686-744-8_6, © Wageningen Academic Publishers 2013

and evolution of parasite resistance to genetically engineered mosquito resistance (population replacement strategy).

Role of mosquitoes in the evolutionary history of *Plasmodium* parasites

With the exception of a single species of lizard malaria, *Plasmodium mexicanum*, which is transmitted by sandflies, all known *Plasmodium* species use mosquitoes (Culicidae) as vectors (Ayala and Lee 1970). While avian and reptilian malaria parasites are transmitted by many mosquito species from several genera (Levine 1988), all known *Plasmodium* species of mammals are transmitted by mosquitoes of the genus *Anopheles*. Recent phylogenetic analyses indicate that *Plasmodium* species infecting mammalian hosts form a well-supported clade associated with anopheline vectors (Figure 1). Although this clade is paraphyletic (it includes parasites of the genus *Hepatocystis*), it suggests that expansion of *Plasmodium* parasites into mammals, including humans, corresponds with specialization into anophelines. This switch from culicine to anopheline mosquitoes, coincident with the expansion into mammals, is believed to have occurred once (Martinsen *et al.* 2008). It is unknown whether specialization into mosquitoes of the genus *Anopheles* is a cause or a consequence of *Plasmodium* expansion into mammals, for a phylogenetic pattern does not enable to infer the mechanism that drove evolution. Nevertheless, the striking associations between the phylogeny of *Plasmodium* parasites and their vertebrate and insect host taxa clearly reveal their three-way phylogenetic interdependence.

The evolutionary origin of *Plasmodium falciparum*, the deadliest human malaria parasite, has been a highly debated topic over the last two decades (Prugnolle *et al.* 2011). What has been controversial is whether *P. falciparum* became a human pathogen as a result of a transfer from ancestral birds, rodents or primates. The most recent evidence supports the origin of *P. falciparum* in gorillas (Liu *et al.* 2010). Although the exact time of the cross-species transmission event is unclear, this finding suggests a relatively recent origin of *P. falciparum*. It supports the view that

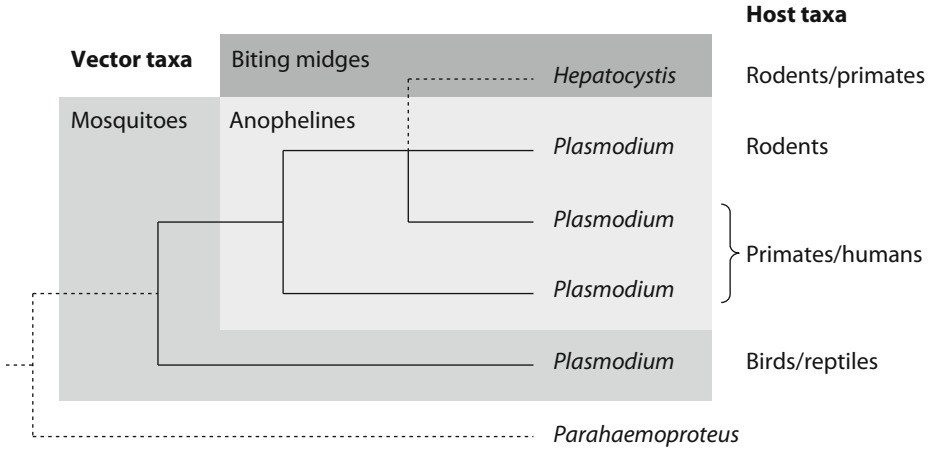


Figure 1. Schematic relationships between the phylogeny of Plasmodium *parasites and their vertebrate host and vector taxa. All clades shown are well supported across different phylogenetic methods. This simple phylogram ignores the only* Plasmodium *species transmitted by sandflies. Adapted from Martinsen* et al. *(2008).*

P. falciparum emerged and expanded in the human population within the last 6,000 years (Rich *et al.* 1998, Volkman *et al.* 2001), coincidental with the emergence of agricultural societies in sub-Saharan Africa. The change in lifestyle from small nomadic groups to larger settled communities would have provided conditions for sustained *P. falciparum* transmission (Hume *et al.* 2003).

In addition, it has been proposed that the expansion of *P. falciparum* in the last few thousand years was facilitated by the speciation process of African mosquito vectors of the *Anopheles gambiae* Giles species complex (Coluzzi *et al.* 2002). The most efficient *P. falciparum* vector species in the complex is *An. gambiae sensu stricto* (*s.s.*). Originally from the African rain forest, this highly anthropophilic species is thought be the product of a speciation process driven by environmental change following the agricultural revolution. Unlike most other anopheline species, *An. gambiae s.s.* mosquitoes typically breed in small, temporary, sunlit freshwater pools. Opening of the vegetation cover by human agriculture, therefore, would have created increased opportunities for larval breeding. Subsequent spread of *An. gambiae s.s.* from the rain forests into savanna areas probably occurred through close association with humans. Interestingly, this scenario is echoed by the current expansion of *Anopheles darlingi* Root, the principal South American malaria vector, following deforestation of the Amazon Basin (Vittor *et al.* 2009).

In Africa, *An. gambiae s.s.* is further diversifying into sympatric ecotypes named M and S (Lawniczak *et al.* 2010). This diversification, probably promoted by adaptation to different larval habitats, may have important consequences for malaria transmission, for the adaptive divergence between incipient species includes that of immune genes conferring resistance to *Plasmodium* (White *et al.* 2010). Another example of diversification is a recently discovered outdoor-resting (exophilic) subgroup of *An. gambiae s.s.*, which lives in sympatry with its indoor-resting (endophilic) counterparts (Riehle *et al.* 2011). This previously unknown population subgroup appears to be highly susceptible to wild *P. falciparum* isolates, and may play a key role in malaria transmission in places where disease control relies primarily on indoor-based vector control measures.

The geographical distribution of anopheline species and populations is clearly an important factor underlying the past and present distribution of human malaria (Hume *et al.* 2003). For example, the relatively inefficient malaria vectors in North Africa (*Anopheles pharoensis* Theobald and *Anopheles sergentii* Theobald) and in the Middle East (*Anopheles pulcherrimus* Theobald) probably constrained the expansion of *P. falciparum* out of Africa (Hume *et al.* 2003). At a more local scale, the genetic structure of vector populations may also play an important role in shaping that of malaria parasites. Combined with the genetic structure of mosquito populations, genetic specificity of compatibility between malaria parasites and their mosquito vectors, both at the species (Billingsley and Sinden 1997) and at the intraspecific level (Christophides *et al.* 2002, Harris *et al.* 2010, Lambrechts *et al.* 2005), promotes opportunities for parasite adaptation to local vector species and populations.

A textbook example of parasite local adaptation to vector species is provided by *Plasmodium vivax*, a human malaria species, in southern Mexico. Two malaria vector species are present at the southern tip of the region between the Pacific coast and the Guatemala border, but with largely non-overlapping geographic distributions. *Anopheles albimanus* Wiedermann is found in the costal region whereas *Anopheles pseudopunctipennis* Theobald occurs in the foothills region. Using microsatellite markers to characterize parasite samples from 98 localities in an area of less than 100 km^2, (Joy *et al.* 2008) found that *P. vivax* consisted of three genetically distinct populations. One population (Figure 2A; white dots) is distributed in the coastal ecoregion, where *An. albimanus* is found, whereas the two other populations (Figure 2A; gray and black dots) are found in the

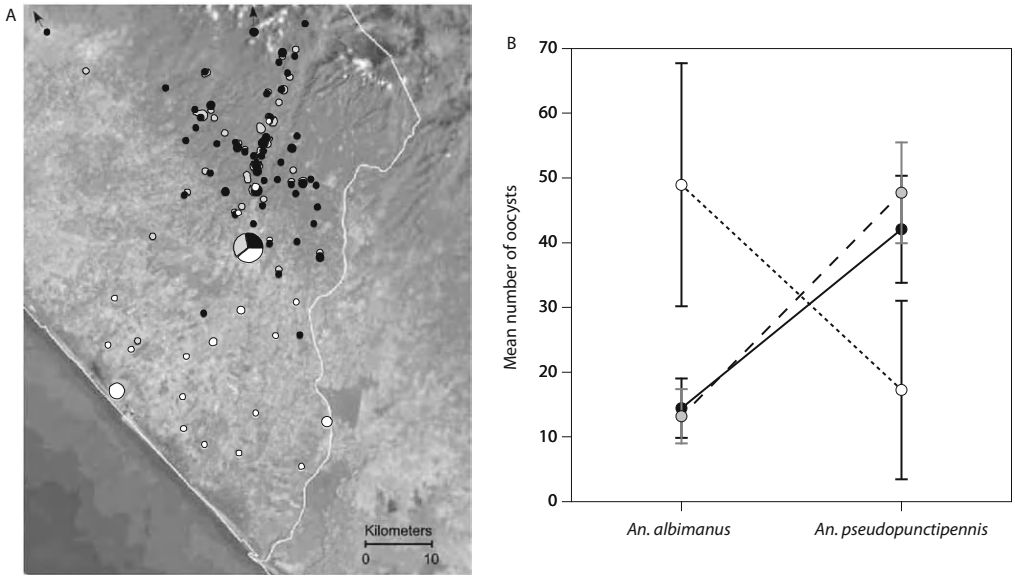


Figure 2. Pattern of adaptation to local vectors in Plasmodium vivax *malaria. (A) Spatial genetic structure of* P. vivax *populations in the Pacific coastal region of southern Chiapas State, Mexico. Each sample was assigned to one of three identified genetically different populations, indicated by different colours. Circle size is proportional to the frequency of the sample, with the exception of the town of Tapachula in the centre. (B) Infection intensities observed in experimental infections of each combination of the three parasite populations and the two mosquito species. Lines represent the parasite genotypes according to the colours of panel A. Vertical bars are 95% confidence intervals. The interaction between mosquito species and parasite genotype is highly statistically significant (*P*<0.0001). Modified, with permission, from (Joy* et al. *2008).*

foothills ecoregion, where *An. pseudopunctipennis* occurs. When they were artificially exposed to the three parasite populations in the laboratory, the two mosquito species were significantly more susceptible to the parasite genotypes encountered in their own ecoregion (Figure 2B). The number of parasite oocysts developing on the mosquitoes' midgut was, on average, about three times higher in sympatric mosquito-parasite combinations than in allopatric pairs. This pattern is suggestive of parasite adaptation to local vectors, indicating that vector distribution can play an important role in generating parasite population structure (Joy *et al.* 2008). Although this process may also act at the mosquito population level within a single vector species, it has, to our knowledge, to date not been documented. In one study that examined the genetic co-structure between *An. gambiae* and *P. falciparum* populations, no pattern was found because of the lack of detectable genetic structure (Prugnolle *et al.* 2008). Because of the recent range expansion of vector and parasite populations, it is very challenging to find neutral markers that are genetically differentiated. In this case, reciprocal experimental infections provide an alternative test of local adaptation (Harris *et al.* 2012).

Understanding the factors shaping the adaptive evolution of *Plasmodium* populations has fundamental implications for public health (Mackinnon and Marsh 2010). Arguably, too little attention has been paid to the role of vectors, relative to humans (e.g. Tanabe *et al.* 2010), in

driving the evolution of malaria parasites at different spatial and temporal scales. In addition to the patterns of genetic compatibility between vector and parasites populations discussed above, variation in host preference among vectors may also have evolutionary and epidemiologically important consequences for malaria transmission (Lyimo and Ferguson 2009). For example, evolutionary invasion analysis accounting for variation in vector anthropophily can help to predict the risk of emergence of *Plasmodium knowlesi*, usually considered a macaque malaria species, in the human population (Yakob *et al.* 2010). More generally, a deeper understanding of macro-evolutionary relationships between *Plasmodium* and their vectors, as well as with their vertebrate hosts, will provide important insights into the history, distribution and incidence of malaria.

Evolutionary ecology of mosquito-malaria interactions

While the precedent section discussed macro-evolutionary patterns among species, this section considers evolutionary forces within single parasite-vector associations, thereby linking micro-evolutionary dynamics with epidemiology.

The epidemiology of malaria is generally summarized by a single metric, the basic reproductive number (R_0), which represents the number of subsequent infections that arise from a single malaria case introduced into an entirely susceptible host population. Mathematically, R_0 can be found from the Ross-MacDonald dynamics (MacDonald 1957) as

$$R_0 = \frac{ma^2e^{-\mu T}}{r\mu} \quad (1)$$

where m is the density of mosquitoes per human host, a is the daily biting rate on humans, μ is the daily mortality rate of mosquitoes, T is the duration in days of the parasite's developmental period within a mosquito (the extrinsic incubation period), and r is the daily recovery rate of infected humans. More precisely, one must distinguish between the biting rate of uninfected mosquitoes on infectious humans, i.e. with gametocytes circulating in their blood (a_1), and the biting rate of mosquitoes that are infectious, i.e. with sporozoites in their salivary glands (a_2). One should also distinguish between the mortality rate of mosquitoes during the parasite's development (μ_1) and the mortality rate once the mosquitoes are infectious (μ_2). Malaria transmission also depends on successful completion of the parasite's development within the mosquito. This is summarized with a parameter, b, which combines the probability that the mosquito becomes infected upon biting a gametocytic human, the probability that the parasite survives through the extrinsic incubation period, and the probability that the bite of a mosquito with sporozoites in its salivary glands infects a human. Thus, Equation 1 can be modified to:

$$R_0 = \frac{ma_1a_2be^{-\mu_1 T}}{r\mu_2} \quad (2)$$

It is striking to note, as MacDonald (1957) realized, that the intensity of malaria transmission is almost exclusively determined by traits related to either the mosquito or the mosquito-parasite interaction. Therefore, the evolutionary pressure for malaria parasites to increase the intensity of transmission will mostly be directed at their interaction with the vectors. Indeed, malaria parasites are able to manipulate most of the parameters in Equation 2 in a way that is expected to increase R_0.

First, infection by the transmissible stages of malaria in humans increases their attractiveness to mosquitoes. Thus, in a semi-natural situation in western Kenya, about twice as many mosquitoes were attracted to children with gametocytes, the infectious stage of malaria in humans, than to children with no detectable infection or with a non-infectious stage of the parasite, but no

gametocytes (Lacroix *et al.* 2005). In other words, the biting rate of uninfected mosquitoes on infectious humans (parameter a_1 in Equation 2) is higher than the biting rate on non-infectious humans, which is epidemiologically irrelevant.

Second, infection by the transmissible stages of malaria in mosquitoes increases their biting rate. In natural situations, mosquitoes with sporozoites, the infectious stage of malaria in the vector, are almost twice as likely to feed on more than one host than mosquitoes without sporozoites (Koella *et al.* 1998). One of the suspected underlying mechanisms is that sporozoites can reduce the activity of apyrase (Rossignol *et al.* 1984), an anticoagulant injected with the mosquito's saliva. As a consequence, mosquitoes take up less blood during the limited time available for a feeding attempt, which increases the probability that the mosquito bites a second time to top up its blood meal (Koella *et al.* 2002). Sporozoites also make mosquitoes more persistent if their blood-feeding attempts are not successful (Anderson *et al.* 1999). Overall, sporozoites increase the biting rate of infectious mosquitoes (parameter a_2 in Equation 2). Note that, as biting is risky (Day and Edman 1984, Edman *et al.* 1984), sporozoites that manipulate the biting rate of mosquitoes also increase their feeding-associated mortality rate (Anderson *et al.* 2000). However, the selective pressure for increased biting overrides the pressure for lower mortality (Koella 1999).

Third, infection by the non-transmissible stages of malaria in mosquitoes decreases their biting rate. Malaria parasites at the oocyst stage do not profit from mosquito biting, because they cannot be transmitted. Rather, any (risky) biting reduces the probability that mosquitoes survive the parasite's extrinsic incubation period. Therefore, oocysts decrease the mosquitoes' biting rate by manipulating them in the opposite way of sporozoites: they decrease persistence if feeding is prevented (Anderson *et al.* 1999), and if feeding is interrupted they decrease the likelihood that the mosquitoes make a second feeding attempt to top up their blood meal (Koella *et al.* 2002). A recent study in Mozambique suggested that malaria parasites may also reduce their vector's biting rate by delaying gonotrophic cycles in *Anopheles funestus* Giles (Charlwood and Tomas 2011).

Thus, four of the parameters in Equation 2 are affected by manipulation of the mosquito's biting behaviour by malaria parasites. Unfortunately, quantitative estimates for malaria-induced changes of these parameters under field conditions are not available. Clearly, however, even small changes of each parameter in Equation 2 will have a large effect on transmission intensity because they act on R_0 in a multiplicative way. Accounting for manipulation of the biting behaviour of mosquitoes by malaria parasites may help to understand the unusually intense malaria transmission in endemic areas. Whereas, for example, the basic reproductive number (a measure of the intensity of transmission) of common childhood diseases ranges within about 10 to 30 (Anderson and May 1991), it can reach more than 1000 for malaria (Smith *et al.* 2007). Importantly, ignoring the evolutionary forces that shape malaria-mosquito relationships would be misleading for entomological studies designed to understand the epidemiology of malaria. For example, mosquito biting rates on gametocytic humans, and biting rates and mortality rates of infected mosquitoes are epidemiologically relevant parameters, whereas biting and mortality rates of mosquitoes in the absence of infection are epidemiologically irrelevant. Measuring the latter would therefore not only underestimate the intensity of malaria transmission, potentially by a considerable amount, but might also underestimate the efforts needed for its control.

Evolutionary forces acting on the mosquito's biting rate also apply to parameter *b* in Equation 2, which represents the ability of malaria parasites to complete their development within the mosquito. As malaria parasites manipulate the mosquito's biting and mortality rates away from values that maximize their reproductive success (Koella 1999), natural selection is expected

to favour mosquitoes that resist infection. In experimental infections, however, a substantial proportion of mosquitoes appear to be susceptible to malaria. For example, *P. falciparum* oocysts developed in 30% of *An. gambiae* mosquitoes exposed to gametocytes in a recent study in East Africa (Menge *et al.* 2006).

To date, most attempts to explain the observed variability of mosquito resistance to malaria have focused on elucidating its genetic basis. Selection procedures demonstrated the existence of a genetic basis for resistance (Collins *et al.* 1986, Vernick *et al.* 1995). Conclusions from these laboratory studies were confirmed with the identification of quantitative trait loci that explain the resistance of field-caught mosquitoes against malaria (Menge *et al.* 2006, Niaré *et al.* 2002, Riehle *et al.* 2006). In parallel, functional studies have revealed the complexity of molecular mechanisms underlying mosquito resistance to malaria. Although resistance also depends on other physiological factors than immunity (Vlachou *et al.* 2005), it is largely governed by a variety of immune responses, which are initiated by pattern recognition receptors regulating downstream effector mechanisms through signal modulation and transduction (for a recent review see Yassine and Osta 2010). Despite considerable progress, it is debatable whether the current understanding, mostly based on molecular studies in laboratory models, of the immune response of anophelines against malaria adequately addresses the complexities of resistance and the intimate co-evolutionary processes between malaria and mosquitoes in nature (Boëte 2009, Boëte 2005, Cohuet *et al.* 2006, Michel *et al.* 2006, see related Chapter by Pike *et al.* in this book).

One complicating factor is that environmental variation can have a considerable effect on the expression of resistance, including its genetic basis. For example, symbiotic gut bacteria (Dong *et al.* 2009, Meister *et al.* 2009) and parasitic microsporidia (Bargielowski and Koella 2009) strongly influence the prevalence of *Plasmodium* infection in mosquitoes. In addition, the concentration of sugar fed to mosquitoes after infection by malaria affects not only infection success, but also the differences among isofemale lines, i.e. the extent to which genes contribute to the observed variation of resistance (Hurd 2007, Lambrechts *et al.* 2006a).

More importantly, the interaction between malaria and mosquitoes is not governed by the mosquito's genes alone, but by the interaction between the mosquito's and the parasite's genes (Harris *et al.* 2010, Lambrechts *et al.* 2005), as is the case for many host-parasite interactions (Lambrechts *et al.* 2006b). Thus, a particular gene variant may make mosquitoes (partly) resistant against some malaria genotypes but not to others, while other gene variants make other mosquitoes resistant to other malaria genotypes. As a consequence, it is unlikely that a single resistance gene variant can confer resistance against all malaria genotypes, and that a single malaria genotype can overcome all mosquito resistance gene variants. Such a situation leads to either of two co-evolutionary outcomes: a stable coexistence of multiple resistance variants, or continuous cycling of the different variants (e.g. Leonard 1994). Due to such genotype-by-genotype interactions and their evolutionary dynamics, it is not very surprising that attempts to find adaptive signatures in anti-*Plasmodium* mosquito immune genes, which test for positive, directional selection on gene variants, were inconclusive so far (Obbard *et al.* 2008, Parmakelis *et al.* 2008, Slotman *et al.* 2007).

The realization that studies of laboratory systems provide limited insights into the intimately co-evolved systems of malaria and mosquitoes in nature is bringing molecular biologists and evolutionary ecologists together to study the variation of mosquito resistance against malaria in their natural ecological and evolutionary context, an emerging field referred to as the 'ecological immunology' of mosquito-malaria interactions (Tripet *et al.* 2008). This approach focuses on

questions of function and adaptation, with less emphasis on the molecular mechanisms of immunity and resistance (Schmid-Hempel 2005). At the centre of this approach is the idea that a balance between evolutionary costs and benefits determines the level of resistance in a population. On the one hand, as discussed above, malaria parasites manipulate the mosquito's biting rate and mortality away from the mosquito's optimum. Malaria infection can also directly affect the mosquito's physiology, reducing its fecundity and survival (reviewed in Tripet *et al.* 2008). Because of such fitness costs associated with malaria infection, resistance is clearly beneficial to the mosquito. On the other hand, the mosquito's immune response and resistance also involve costs, which are thought to result in part from physiological trade-offs due to shared pathways between immune responses and other physiological functions (Tripet *et al.* 2008). Such an evolutionary trade-off was demonstrated by the observation that mosquitoes selected for rapid development have a weaker melanisation immune response than those selected for slow development (Koella and Boëte 2002). Because of the genetic correlation between the two traits, any evolutionary change in one trait would be associated with changes in the other trait. Overall, it is expected that evolution will increase resistance (resulting from increased immune function) only to the level where its benefit is balanced by its cost.

That evolution balances costs and benefits may be the main mechanism for the maintenance of susceptibility in natural populations (Boëte and Koella 2003, Tripet *et al.* 2008, see Chapter 2 in this book by Pike *et al.*). This evolutionary perspective may also help to understand why the number of malaria oocysts observed in naturally infected mosquitoes is low. Indeed, most mosquitoes infected with *P. falciparum* in natural populations have a single oocyst of the parasite (e.g. Lyimo and Koella 1992), whereas in laboratory systems they harbour many more. One possible explanation is that evolution has led to a balance between the disadvantages and advantages of resistance. On the one hand, weak resistance would lead to high oocyst loads, which would result in substantial damage. For example, the ability to manipulate biting rate increases with parasite load. Re-analysis of the data in Koella *et al.* (1998) shows that whereas about 22% of the mosquitoes infected with sporozoites bit more than one person if their sporozoite load was lower than the median, about 36% did so if their sporozoite load was greater than the median. On the other hand, a very effective immune response leading to complete parasite clearance is likely to be very costly, both in terms of expenditure of energy and in terms of the production of toxic compounds such as melanin. Therefore, an intermediate level of resistance, enabling low-level infection with moderate pathogenic effects, may be optimal for the mosquito. While some preliminary data support this idea (Boëte *et al.* 2004), the idea has not been formally tested.

This section emphasized that fully understanding the epidemiology of malaria and the biology of its vectors requires careful consideration of the micro-evolutionary relationships between mosquitoes and malaria parasites. Although the influence of evolutionary forces on the vectorial capacity of mosquitoes for malaria has been clearly demonstrated by proof-of-principle, qualitative experiments, much work remain to be done to turn predictions and speculations into quantitative assessments. Understanding how the co-evolution of malaria and mosquitoes affects the epidemiology of malaria and the pattern of resistance of mosquitoes in nature remains a major challenge.

Evolutionary assessment of genetically-modified mosquitoes for malaria control

This last section is intended to illustrate how the approach of evolutionary ecology described in the previous section can be used to assess the feasibility of a malaria control strategy. As it is beyond the scope of this chapter (and current knowledge) to give a detailed and quantitative

prediction, we restrict ourselves to a few selected studies describing critical aspects rather than giving an extensive review of the relevant literature. In the prospect of releasing genetically-modified mosquitoes to control or eliminate malaria, it is crucial to understand the potential evolutionary trajectory and evaluate the impact on the incidence of disease. More details on this topic are available in several earlier publications (Boëte and Koella 2002, Koella and Boëte 2003, Koella and Zaghloul 2008).

Failure of existing malaria control methods have stimulated research to develop novel, innovative strategies. In the last two decades, breakthroughs in the molecular genetics of mosquitoes have provided the groundwork for implementing vector control strategies based on the release of genetically-modified mosquitoes (Alphey *et al.* 2002, Catteruccia 2007, Christophides 2005). These strategies aim at either replacing the existing wild vector population with engineered vectors that are refractory to the pathogen (population replacement) (Nirmala and James 2003) or eliminating the wild vector population using a genetic system that reduces reproductive capacity (population suppression) (Alphey *et al.* 2008). In the case of a population replacement strategy, the task is two-fold. It consists of (1) genetically engineering mosquitoes that are refractory to the pathogen and (2) driving the genetic construct conferring refractoriness to fixation into the wild target population. Although transgenic mosquito lines impaired in malaria transmission have been created in the laboratory (Corby-Harris *et al.* 2010, Ito *et al.* 2002), much remains to be done before these proofs-of-principle are converted into a feasible malaria control tool (Hill *et al.* 2005). One of the major challenges ahead is optimization of genetic drive systems to deliver the refractory transgenes into wild vector populations (Marshall and Taylor 2009). Naturally occurring selfish genetic elements, such as transposons, meiotic drive genes, endosymbiotic bacteria or homing endonuclease genes, are promising candidates to develop such genetic drive systems (Sinkins and Gould 2006). A synthetic selfish genetic element has been shown to drive population replacement in *Drosophila* (Chen *et al.* 2007), and very recently in *An. gambiae* (Windbichler *et al.* 2011).

By contrast, genetic strategies of vector population suppression generally do not require such a gene drive system because they rely on the repeated mass releases of transgenic sterile insects (Alphey *et al.* 2008). The disabled insects mate with wild individuals in the target population, thereby reducing its reproductive output, and potentially resulting in the subsequent collapse of the wild population if sufficient numbers of sexually competitive transgenic insects are released. The potential of this strategy has been recently supported by the successful elimination of caged populations of the dengue virus vector *Aedes aegypti* L. under semi-field conditions (Wise de Valdez *et al.* 2011), and during a recent open-field trial on the Cayman Islands (Harris *et al.* 2011). Thus, despite reduced mating competitiveness and smaller adult body size of genetically-modified mosquitoes compared to their wild type counterparts (Bargielowski *et al.* 2011a,b), frequent releases can compensate for the fitness costs.

There are at least three critical aspects that are often overlooked in the development of malaria control strategies based on genetically-modified mosquitoes. First, in the case of a population replacement strategy, the epidemiological feed back on the population genetic process influences the conditions allowing fixation of the trait of interest. The spread of an allele conferring refractoriness to malaria in a mosquito population was examined by a model combining population genetics with epidemiology (Boëte and Koella 2002). This model demonstrated that because the change in malaria prevalence in the human population feeds backs onto the mosquito fitness, which depends in part on the evolutionary costs and benefits of refractoriness, fixation of refractoriness requires a genetic drive mechanism that increases the frequency of inheritance of the genetic element compared to regular Mendelian inheritance. Although refractoriness confers

a clear evolutionary advantage to the mosquitoes when parasite prevalence is high (Marrelli *et al.* 2007), this advantage decreases progressively when transmission and parasite prevalence are decreasing due to the spread of refractoriness (Lambrechts *et al.* 2008). Luckily, a moderate efficacy of the drive mechanism is enough to spread a refractoriness allele to fixation in most situations (Boëte and Koella 2002).

Second, the evolutionary response of the parasite can significantly threaten the effectiveness of the intervention outcome. Parasites are often able to evade or suppress the defence mechanisms of their hosts, including *Plasmodium* parasites in their mosquito vectors (Boëte *et al.* 2004, Lambrechts *et al.* 2007). A co-evolutionary model predicted that the optimal level of malaria parasite investment into evasion or suppression mechanisms depends on the relative investment into defence mechanisms of the mosquito (Koella and Boëte 2003). Thus, in the case of a vector population replacement strategy, introducing a genetic construct conferring refractoriness to malaria infection may alter this co-evolutionary balance towards greater investment of the parasite into evading or suppressing the refractoriness mechanism. This would result in a decreased efficacy of refractoriness, which was showed to dramatically reduce the impact of the control programme on malaria prevalence in the human population (Boëte and Koella 2002, Koella and Zaghloul 2008). One way of avoiding, or at least delaying, this co-evolutionary response may be to transform mosquitoes with mechanisms of refractoriness that are not found in natural systems. It would be less likely that standing genetic variation for suppressing or evading the refractory mechanism is already present in the parasite population. Therefore, the co-evolutionary response would be delayed until the necessary mutations have arisen.

Third, in the case of a population suppression strategy, it is important to carefully consider the evolutionary response of the wild vector population. For example, evolution of resistance to the lethal mechanism is a potential threat to population suppression strategies based on the release of mosquitoes carrying a dominant, repressible, lethal genetic construct. Mathematical modelling showed that although resistant alleles are unable to spread to fixation, they can become more common than the alternative susceptible allele and therefore have a detrimental impact on the release program (Alphey *et al.* 2011).

In conclusion, there is much to gain by including an evolutionary approach to assess the feasibility of using genetically-modified mosquitoes for malaria control. Not only evolutionary mathematical modelling, but also experimental evolutionary ecology, can provide important insights into the potential success of these strategies (Boëte and Koella 2003).

Conclusions and perspectives

The evolutionary forces underlying the vectorial capacity of anopheline mosquitoes for malaria parasites are still poorly understood. One of the greatest challenges for future research is to obtain quantitative, epidemiologically relevant estimates of some of the critical parameters underlying malaria transmission. This will only be achieved by studying natural systems of *Anopheles-Plasmodium* interactions. At least in studies designed with the goal of understanding malaria epidemiology, efforts must be made so that experiments emulate more closely the natural conditions that are meaningful for parasite transmission. For example, whether malaria parasites kill their vectors has been largely debated (Ferguson and Read 2002), but most of the studies on the effect of malaria infection on mosquito survival ignore feeding-associated mortality, which is likely to account for most of the mortality in nature. A related challenge is to account for the influence of manifold abiotic factors on mosquito-parasite interactions and their implications

for malaria transmission. For example, the impact of short-term temperature fluctuations on the development of malaria parasites in mosquitoes has recently been revealed, either speeding up or slowing down processes depending on the mean temperature (Paaijmans *et al.* 2010). This highlights the need for a better understanding of the mechanistic link between environmental heterogeneity and vectorial capacity. More generally, deciphering mosquito-parasite dynamics and co-evolution will require moving from laboratory conditions to more realistic systems.

References

Alphey L, Beard CB, Billingsley P, Coetzee M, Crisanti A, Curtis C, Eggleston P, Godfray C, Hemingway J, Jacobs-Lorena M, James AA, Kafatos FC, Mukwaya LG, Paton M, Powell JR, Schneider W, Scott TW, Sina B, Sinden R, Sinkins S, Spielman A, Toure Y and Collins FH (2002) Malaria control with genetically manipulated insect vectors. Science 298: 119-121.

Alphey L, Nimmo D, O'Connell S and Alphey N (2008) Insect population suppression using engineered insects. Adv Exp Med Biol 627: 93-103.

Alphey N, Bonsall MB and Alphey L (2011) Modeling resistance to genetic control of insects. J Theor Biol 270: 42-55.

Anderson RA, Knols BG and Koella JC (2000) *Plasmodium falciparum* sporozoites increase feeding-associated mortality of their mosquito hosts Anopheles gambiae s.l. Parasitology 120 (Pt 4): 329-333.

Anderson RA, Koella JC and Hurd H (1999) The effect of *Plasmodium* yoelii nigeriensis infection on the feeding persistence of *Anopheles stephensi* Liston throughout the sporogonic cycle. Proc Biol Sci 266: 1729-1733.

Anderson RM and May RM (1991) Infectious diseases of humans: dynamics and control. Oxford University Press, Oxford, UK.

Ayala SC and Lee D (1970) Saurian malaria: development of sporozoites in two species of phlebotomine sandflies. Science 167: 891-892.

Bargielowski I, Alphey L and Koella JC (2011a) Cost of mating and insemination capacity of a genetically modified mosquito *Aedes aegypti* OX513A compared to its wild type counterpart. PLoS ONE 6: e26086.

Bargielowski I and Koella JC (2009) A possible mechanism for the suppression of *Plasmodium* berghei development in the mosquito *Anopheles gambiae* by the microsporidian *Vavraia culicis*. PLoS ONE 4: e4676.

Bargielowski I, Nimmo D, Alphey L and Koella JC (2011b) Comparison of life history characteristics of the genetically modified OX513A line and a wild type strain of *Aedes aegypti*. PLoS ONE 6: e20699.

Billingsley PF and Sinden RE (1997) Determinants of malaria-mosquito specificity. Parasitology Today 13: 297-301.

Boëte C (2009) *Anopheles* mosquitoes: not just flying malaria vectors... especially in the field. Trends Parasitol 25: 53-55.

Boëte C (2005) Malaria parasites in mosquitoes: laboratory models, evolutionary temptation and the real world. Trends Parasitol 21: 445-447.

Boëte C and Koella JC (2002) A theoretical approach to predicting the success of genetic manipulation of malaria mosquitoes in malaria control. Malar J 1: 3.

Boëte C and Koella JC (2003) Evolutionary ideas about genetically manipulated mosquitoes and malaria control. Trends Parasitol 19: 32-38.

Boëte C, Paul RE and Koella JC (2004) Direct and indirect immunosuppression by a malaria parasite in its mosquito vector. Proc R Soc Lond B Biol Sci 271: 1611-1615.

Catteruccia F (2007) Malaria vector control in the third millennium: progress and perspectives of molecular approaches. Pest Manag Sci 63: 634-640.

Charlwood JD and Tomas EV (2011) Do developing malaria parasites manipulate their mosquito host? Evidence from infected *Anopheles funestus* (Giles) from Mozambique. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 105: 352-354.

Chen CH, Huang H, Ward CM, Su JT, Schaeffer LV, Guo M and Hay BA (2007) A synthetic maternal-effect selfish genetic element drives population replacement in *Drosophila*. Science 316: 597-600.

Christophides GK (2005) Transgenic mosquitoes and malaria transmission. Cell Microbiol 7: 325-333.

Christophides GK, Zdobnov E, Barillas-Mury C, Birney E, Blandin S, Blass C, Brey PT, Collins FH, Danielli A, Dimopoulos G, Hetru C, Hoa NT, Hoffmann JA, Kanzok SM, Letunic I, Levashina EA, Loukeris TG, Lycett G, Meister S, Michel K, Moita LF, Muller HM, Osta MA, Paskewitz SM, Reichhart JM, Rzhetsky A, Troxler L, Vernick KD, Vlachou D, Volz J, Von

Mering C, Xu J, Zheng L, Bork P and Kafatos FC (2002) Immunity-related genes and gene families in *Anopheles gambiae*. Science 298: 159-165.

Cohuet A, Osta MA, Morlais I, Awono-Ambene PH, Michel K, Simard F, Christophides GK, Fontenille D and Kafatos FC (2006) *Anopheles* and *Plasmodium*: from laboratory models to natural systems in the field. EMBO Rep 7: 1285-1289.

Collins FH, Sakai RK, Vernick KD, Paskewitz S, Seeley DC, Miller LH, Collins WE, Campbell CC and Gwadz RW (1986) Genetic selection of a *Plasmodium*-refractory strain of the malaria vector *Anopheles gambiae*. Science 234: 607-610.

Coluzzi M, Sabatini A, della Torre A, Di Deco MA and Petrarca V (2002) A polytene chromosome analysis of the *Anopheles gambiae* species complex. Science 298: 1415-1418.

Corby-Harris V, Drexler A, Watkins de Jong L, Antonova Y, Pakpour N, Ziegler R, Ramberg F, Lewis EE, Brown JM, Luckhart S and Riehle MA (2010) Activation of Akt signaling reduces the prevalence and intensity of malaria parasite infection and lifespan in *Anopheles stephensi* mosquitoes. PLoS Pathog 6: e1001003.

Day JF and Edman JD (1984) Mosquito engorgement on normally defensive hosts depends on host activity patterns. J Med Entomol 21: 732-740.

Dong Y, Manfredini F and Dimopoulos G (2009) Implication of the mosquito midgut microbiota in the defense against malaria parasites. PLoS Pathog 5: e1000423.

Edman JD, Day JF and Walker ED (1984) Field confirmation of laboratory observations on the differential antimosquito behavior of herons. Condor 86: 91-92.

Ferguson HM and Read AF (2002) Why is the effect of malaria parasites on mosquito survival still unresolved? Trends Parasitol 18: 256-261.

Harris AF, Nimmo D, McKemey AR, Kelly N, Scaife S, Donnelly CA, Beech C, Petrie WD and Alphey L (2011) Field performance of engineered male mosquitoes. Nature Biotechnol 29: 1034-1037.

Harris C, Lambrechts L, Rousset F, Abate L, Nsango SE, Fontenille D, Morlais I and Cohuet A (2010) Polymorphisms in *Anopheles gambiae* immune genes associated with natural resistance to *Plasmodium falciparum*. PLoS Pathog 6.

Harris C, Morlais I, Churcher TS, Awono-Ambene P, Gouagna LC, Dabire RK, Fontenille D and Cohuet A (2012) *Plasmodium falciparum* produce lower infection intensities in local versus foreign *Anopheles gambiae* populations. PLoS ONE 7: e30849.

Hill CA, Kafatos FC, Stansfield SK and Collins FH (2005) Arthropod-borne diseases: vector control in the genomics era. Nat Rev Microbiol 3: 262-268.

Hume JC, Lyons EJ and Day KP (2003) Human migration, mosquitoes and the evolution of *Plasmodium falciparum*. Trends Parasitol 19: 144-149.

Hurd H (2007) Nature or nurture in mosquito resistance to malaria? Trends Parasitol 23: 135-138.

Ito J, Ghosh A, Moreira LA, Wimmer EA and Jacobs-Lorena M (2002) Transgenic anopheline mosquitoes impaired in transmission of a malaria parasite. Nature 417: 452-455.

Joy DA, Gonzalez-Ceron L, Carlton JM, Gueye A, Fay M, McCutchan TF and Su XZ (2008) Local adaptation and vector-mediated population structure in *Plasmodium vivax* malaria. Mol Biol Evol 25: 1245-1252.

Koella JC (1999) An evolutionary view of the interactions between anopheline mosquitoes and malaria parasites. Microbes Infect 1: 303-308.

Koella JC and Boëte C (2003) A model for the coevolution of immunity and immune evasion in vector-borne diseases with implications for the epidemiology of malaria. Am Naturalist 161: 698-707.

Koella JC and Boëte C (2002) A genetic correlation between age at pupation and melanization immune response of the yellow fever mosquito *Aedes aegypti*. Evolution 56: 1074-1079.

Koella JC, Rieu L and Paul REL (2002) Stage-specific manipulation of a mosquito's host-seeking behavior by the malaria parasite *Plasmodium gallinaceum*. Behavioral Ecology 13: 816-820.

Koella JC, Sorensen FL and Anderson RA (1998) The malaria parasite, *Plasmodium falciparum*, increases the frequency of multiple feeding of its mosquito vector, *Anopheles gambiae*. Proc R Soc Lond B Biol Sci 265: 763-768.

Koella JC and Zaghloul L (2008) Using evolutionary costs to enhance the efficacy of malaria control via genetically manipulated mosquitoes. Parasitology 135: 1489-1496.

Lacroix R, Mukabana WR, Gouagna LC and Koella JC (2005) Malaria infection increases attractiveness of humans to mosquitoes. PLoS Biol 3: e298.

Lambrechts L, Chavatte JM, Snounou G and Koella JC (2006a) Environmental influence on the genetic basis of mosquito resistance to malaria parasites. Proc Biol Sci 273: 1501-1506.

Lambrechts L, Fellous S and Koella JC (2006b) Coevolutionary interactions between host and parasite genotypes. Trends Parasitol 22: 12-16.

Lambrechts L, Halbert J, Durand P, Gouagna LC and Koella JC (2005) Host genotype by parasite genotype interactions underlying the resistance of anopheline mosquitoes to *Plasmodium falciparum*. Malar J 4: 3.

Lambrechts L, Koella JC and Boëte C (2008) Can transgenic mosquitoes afford the fitness cost? Trends Parasitol 24: 4-7.

Lambrechts L, Morlais I, Awono-Ambene PH, Cohuet A, Simard F, Jacques JC, Bourgouin C and Koella JC (2007) Effect of infection by *Plasmodium falciparum* on the melanization immune response of *Anopheles gambiae*. Am J Trop Med Hyg 76: 475-480.

Lawniczak MK, Emrich SJ, Holloway AK, Regier AP, Olson M, White B, Redmond S, Fulton L, Appelbaum E, Godfrey J, Farmer C, Chinwalla A, Yang SP, Minx P, Nelson J, Kyung K, Walenz BP, Garcia-Hernandez E, Aguiar M, Viswanathan LD, Rogers YH, Strausberg RL, Saski CA, Lawson D, Collins FH, Kafatos FC, Christophides GK, Clifton SW, Kirkness EF and Besansky NJ (2010) Widespread divergence between incipient *Anopheles gambiae* species revealed by whole genome sequences. Science 330: 512-514.

Leonard KJ (1994) Stability of equilibria in a gene-for-gene coevolution model of host-parasite interactions. Phytopathology 84: 70-77.

Levine ND (1988) The protozoan phylum Apicomplexa, 2. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, USA.

Liu W, Li Y, Learn GH, Rudicell RS, Robertson JD, Keele BF, Ndjango JB, Sanz CM, Morgan DB, Locatelli S, Gonder MK, Kranzusch PJ, Walsh PD, Delaporte E, Mpoudi-Ngole E, Georgiev AV, Muller MN, Shaw GM, Peeters M, Sharp PM, Rayner JC and Hahn BH (2010) Origin of the human malaria parasite *Plasmodium falciparum* in gorillas. Nature 467: 420-425.

Lyimo EO and Koella JC (1992) Relationship between body size of adult *Anopheles gambiae* s.l. and infection with the malaria parasite *Plasmodium falciparum*. Parasitology 104 (Pt 2): 233-237.

Lyimo IN and Ferguson HM (2009) Ecological and evolutionary determinants of host species choice in mosquito vectors. Trends Parasitol 25: 189-196.

MacDonald G (1957) The epidemiology and control of malaria. Oxford University Press, London, UK.

Mackinnon MJ and Marsh K (2010) The selection landscape of malaria parasites. Science 328: 866-871.

Marrelli MT, Li C, Rasgon JL and Jacobs-Lorena M (2007) Transgenic malaria-resistant mosquitoes have a fitness advantage when feeding on *Plasmodium*-infected blood. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 104: 5580-5583.

Marshall JM and Taylor CE (2009) Malaria control with transgenic mosquitoes. PLoS Med 6: e20.

Martinsen ES, Perkins SL and Schall JJ (2008) A three-genome phylogeny of malaria parasites (*Plasmodium* and closely related genera): evolution of life-history traits and host switches. Mol Phylogenet Evol 47: 261-273.

Meister S, Agianian B, Turlure F, Relogio A, Morlais I, Kafatos FC and Christophides GK (2009) *Anopheles gambiae* PGRPLC-mediated defense against bacteria modulates infections with malaria parasites. PLoS Pathog 5: e1000542.

Menge DM, Zhong D, Guda T, Gouagna L, Githure J, Beier J and Yan G (2006) Quantitative trait loci controlling refractoriness to *Plasmodium falciparum* in natural *Anopheles gambiae* mosquitoes from a malaria-endemic region in western Kenya. Genetics 173: 235-241.

Michel K, Suwanchaichinda C, Morlais I, Lambrechts L, Cohuet A, Awono-Ambene PH, Simard F, Fontenille D, Kanost MR and Kafatos FC (2006) Increased melanizing activity in *Anopheles gambiae* does not affect development of *Plasmodium falciparum*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 103: 16858-16863.

Niaré O, Markianos K, Volz J, Oduol F, Toure A, Bagayoko M, Sangare D, Traore SF, Wang R, Blass C, Dolo G, Bouare M, Kafatos FC, Kruglyak L, Toure YT and Vernick KD (2002) Genetic loci affecting resistance to human malaria parasites in a West African mosquito vector population. Science 298: 213-216.

Nirmala X and James AA (2003) Engineering *Plasmodium*-refractory phenotypes in mosquitoes. Trends Parasitol 19: 384-387.

Obbard DJ, Callister DM, Jiggins FM, Soares DC, Yan G and Little TJ (2008) The evolution of TEP1, an exceptionally polymorphic immunity gene in *Anopheles gambiae*. BMC Evol Biol 8: 274.

Paaijmans KP, Blanford S, Bell AS, Blanford JI, Read AF and Thomas MB (2010) Influence of climate on malaria transmission depends on daily temperature variation. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 107: 15135-15139.

Parmakelis A, Slotman MA, Marshall JC, Awono-Ambene PH, Antonio-Nkondjio C, Simard F, Caccone A and Powell JR (2008) The molecular evolution of four anti-malarial immune genes in the *Anopheles gambiae* species complex. BMC Evol Biol 8: 79.

Pike AD, Cirimotich CM and Dimopoulos G (2013) Impact of transgenic immune deployment on mosquito fitness. In: Koenraadt CJM and Takken W (eds.) Ecology of vector-parasite interactions. Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases, Vol. 3. Wageningen Academic Publishers, Wageningen, the Netherlands, pp. 19-33.

Prugnolle F, Durand P, Jacob K, Razakandrainibe F, Arnathau C, Villarreal D, Rousset F, de Meeus T and Renaud F (2008) A comparison of *Anopheles gambiae* and *Plasmodium falciparum* genetic structure over space and time. Microbes Infect 10: 269-275.

Prugnolle F, Durand P, Ollomo B, Duval L, Ariey F, Arnathau C, Gonzalez JP, Leroy E and Renaud F (2011) A fresh look at the origin of *Plasmodium falciparum*, the most malignant malaria agent. PLoS Pathog 7: e1001283.

Rich SM, Licht MC, Hudson RR and Ayala FJ (1998) Malaria's eve: evidence of a recent population bottleneck throughout the world populations of *Plasmodium falciparum*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 95: 4425-4430.

Riehle MM, Guelbeogo WM, Gneme A, Eiglmeier K, Holm I, Bischoff E, Garnier T, Snyder GM, Li X, Markianos K, Sagnon N and Vernick KD (2011) A cryptic subgroup of *Anopheles gambiae* is highly susceptible to human malaria parasites. Science 331: 596-598.

Riehle MM, Markianos K, Niare O, Xu J, Li J, Toure AM, Podiougou B, Oduol F, Diawara S, Diallo M, Coulibaly B, Ouatara A, Kruglyak L, Traore SF and Vernick KD (2006) Natural malaria infection in *Anopheles gambiae* is regulated by a single genomic control region. Science 312: 577-579.

Rossignol PA, Ribeiro JM and Spielman A (1984) Increased intradermal probing time in sporozoite-infected mosquitoes. Am J Trop Med Hyg 33: 17-20.

Schmid-Hempel P (2005) Evolutionary ecology of insect immune defenses. Annu Rev Entomol 50: 529-551.

Sinkins SP and Gould F (2006) Gene drive systems for insect disease vectors. Nat Rev Genet 7: 427-435.

Slotman MA, Parmakelis A, Marshall JC, Awono-Ambene PH, Antonio-Nkondjo C, Simard F, Caccone A and Powell JR (2007) Patterns of selection in anti-malarial immune genes in malaria vectors: evidence for adaptive evolution in LRIM1 in *Anopheles arabiensis*. PLoS ONE 2: e793.

Smith DL, McKenzie FE, Snow RW and Hay SI (2007) Revisiting the basic reproductive number for malaria and its implications for malaria control. PLoS Biol 5: e42.

Tanabe K, Mita T, Jombart T, Eriksson A, Horibe S, Palacpac N, Ranford-Cartwright L, Sawai H, Sakihama N, Ohmae H, Nakamura M, Ferreira MU, Escalante AA, Prugnolle F, Bjorkman A, Farnert A, Kaneko A, Horii T, Manica A, Kishino H and Balloux F (2010) *Plasmodium falciparum* accompanied the human expansion out of Africa. Curr Biol 20: 1283-1289.

Tripet F, Aboagye-Antwi F and Hurd H (2008) Ecological immunology of mosquito-malaria interactions. Trends Parasitol 24: 219-227.

Vernick KD, Fujioka H, Seeley DC, Tandler B, Aikawa M and Miller LH (1995) *Plasmodium gallinaceum*: a refractory mechanism of ookinete killing in the mosquito, *Anopheles gambiae*. Experimental Parasitology 80: 583-595.

Vittor AY, Pan W, Gilman RH, Tielsch J, Glass G, Shields T, Sanchez-Lozano W, Pinedo VV, Salas-Cobos E, Flores S and Patz JA (2009) Linking deforestation to malaria in the Amazon: characterization of the breeding habitat of the principal malaria vector, *Anopheles darlingi*. Am J Trop Med Hyg 81: 5-12.

Vlachou D, Schlegelmilch T, Christophides GK and Kafatos FC (2005) Functional genomic analysis of midgut epithelial responses in *Anopheles* during *Plasmodium* invasion. Curr Biol 15: 1185-1195.

Volkman SK, Barry AE, Lyons EJ, Nielsen KM, Thomas SM, Choi M, Thakore SS, Day KP, Wirth DF and Hartl DL (2001) Recent origin of *Plasmodium falciparum* from a single progenitor. Science 293: 482-484.

White BJ, Lawniczak MK, Cheng C, Coulibaly MB, Wilson MD, Sagnon N, Costantini C, Simard F, Christophides GK and Besansky NJ (2010) Adaptive divergence between incipient species of *Anopheles gambiae* increases resistance to *Plasmodium*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 108: 244-249.

Windbichler N, Menichelli M, Papathanos PA, Thyme SB, Li H, Ulge UY, Hovde BT, Baker D, Monnat RJ, Jr, Burt A and Crisanti A (2011) A synthetic homing endonuclease-based gene drive system in the human malaria mosquito. Nature 473: 212-215.

Wise de Valdez MR, Nimmo D, Betz J, Gong HF, James AA, Alphey L and Black WC (2011) Genetic elimination of dengue vector mosquitoes. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 108: 4772-4775.

Yakob L, Bonsall MB and Yan G (2010) Modelling knowlesi malaria transmission in humans: vector preference and host competence. Malar J 9: 329.

Yassine H and Osta MA (2010) *Anopheles gambiae* innate immunity. Cell Microbiol 12: 1-9.

Species-specific interactions

7. Tick – *Borrelia* interactions: burden or benefit?

Fedor Gassner and Nienke Hartemink

Abstract

A key factor in the success of parasites is the ability to move between hosts. Some parasites make use of an intermediate arthropod host to move between their primary hosts. Several examples exist where such parasites manipulate their intermediate host to enhance their transmission, but examples for ticks are scarce. In this chapter, we describe how *Borrelia burgdorferi sensu lato*, the causative agent of Lyme borreliosis, is associated with changes in the behaviour, physiology and survival of *Ixodes* ticks. Such changes can lead to more effective host finding for the tick and better colonisation of new hosts by *Borrelia*. We discuss how these changes may lead to an increased transmission (risk) of *Borrelia*. A next-generation matrix approach is applied to model potential effects of increased tick survival on the basic reproduction number R_0 of *Borrelia*. Using this approach, we show that *Borrelia*-associated increased survival of ticks can have a profound effect on the circulation of spirochaetes, and hence on Lyme borreliosis risk. Future studies would ideally resolve the mechanisms behind the described changes, and establish experimentally whether *Borrelia* can enhance its circulation between hosts.

Keywords: behaviour, *Borrelia*, *Ixodes*, Lyme, manipulation, R_0, tick

Introduction

A critical step in the life cycle of all parasites is to move from one host to the next. Many parasites can readily disperse between hosts without the help of a third biological party. Such dispersal can be passive, for example bacteria, fungi and viruses that become airborne as single or clumped individuals, or adhered to moist or dust aerosols. Other parasites disperse actively by use of flagella or muscular propulsion. More complex forms of parasitic dispersal occur when a parasite uses another intermediate organism for their dispersal. Often, this intermediate organism is an arthropod, which is then referred to as a vector.

Many examples exist of parasites that modify their vector to for their own benefit (see for reviews Dobson 1988, Hurd 2003, Lefèvre and Thomas 2008, Schaub 2006). For example, mosquito host-searching and blood-feeding behaviour can be affected by malaria parasites (Koella and Packer 1996, Koella *et al.* 2002) and sandflies show altered feeding behaviour when they are infected with *Leishmania* parasites (Ready 2008, Rogers and Bates 2007). Parasite-driven change of vector behaviour can result in an increased transmission rate of the pathogen, and, therefore, increased human health risks.

In contrast to the numerous examples of parasite-mediated changes in insects, few examples exist for the class of Arachnida. It is unlikely that such mechanisms are biased for insects alone. Indeed, some examples exist for effects of bacteria that alter mite behaviour (Schütte and Dicke 2008, Schütte *et al.* 2006). Despite the medical and veterinary importance of tick-borne diseases, very few studies have focussed on potential pathogen-mediated changes in the biology of ticks. In this chapter, we describe how specific interactions enable the transmission of the spirochete *Borrelia burgdorferi sensu lato*, the causative agent of Lyme borreliosis, by the sheep tick *Ixodes ricinus* L. (Acari: Ixodidae) between hosts.

W. Takken and C.J.M. Koenraadt (eds.), *Ecology of parasite-vector interactions*, Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases 3, DOI 10.3920/978-90-8686-744-8_7, © Wageningen Academic Publishers 2013

Among blood-sucking arthropod vectors that transmit pathogenic agents, ticks hold the reputation of being able to transmit the greatest diversity of pathogens (Anderson and Magnarelli 2008). Apart from *Borrelia* species, the sheep tick *I. ricinus,* with its distribution throughout Europe, western Asia and North Africa, and its closely related American (*Ixodes scapularis* Say and *Ixodes pacificus* Cooley & Kohls) and Asian (*Ixodes persulcatus* Schulze) counterparts are known to transmit an array of other pathogens. The most important human pathogens are tick-borne encephalitis virus (Europe and Asia) and *Anaplasma*, *Rickettsia* and *Babesia* species. Over the past decades, transmission of *B. burgdorferi s.l.* by several species of hard ticks within the *Ixodes* genus has received increasing attention. *Borrelia* species are known to cause Lyme borreliosis in humans as well as livestock and pets, and are prevalent across the northern hemisphere.

Although decreasing in some areas, the incidence of Lyme borreliosis seems to increase throughout most of its range (Heyman *et al.* 2010, Smith and Takkinen 2006). Part of the increase may be attributed to increased awareness and improved diagnostic tools. In addition, changes in climatic conditions and land use can strongly affect ticks, their hosts, their habitat and pathogen transmission dynamics, leading to spatial as well as temporal variation in (pathogen infected) tick abundance. Human behaviour also affects the intensity of contact with ticks carrying pathogens, for example by increasing activity in habitats with high tick densities (Lane *et al.* 2004).

Apart from the established pathogens, ticks harbour a great diversity of other, mostly undescribed, micro-organisms (Halos *et al.* 2006, Stanek 2009, Van Overbeek *et al.* 2008). Such organisms may play a role in symbiotic or pathogenic relations with the tick. Their pathogenic traits, their interactions with other pathogens, and their impact on tick biology largely remain to be studied.

The ecology of Lyme borreliosis

The ecology that underlies Lyme borreliosis includes seven interrelated components that can all be affected by climate and human influence (Figure 1). Covering all components, human influence, such as host or habitat alteration, and the climate, especially dry or cold conditions, strongly affect the ecology of Lyme borreliosis. For example, *I. ricinus* is very susceptible to desiccation, preferring a relative humidity >80%, and will become active at temperatures above ~4 °C (Lees 1946, 1948, Perret *et al.* 2000, Sonenshine 1991). Hosts form a key component in the ecology of Lyme borreliosis by providing ticks with a blood meal, by acting as reservoir for *Borrelia* and by providing dispersion for ticks as well as pathogens. Such hosts are closely associated with habitat characteristics, and most host species are subject to predation. In turn, these predators may act as host for the tick. A classical example may be the role of wood mice (*Apodemus sylvaticus* L.) as reservoir for *Borrelia* species and blood host for immature *I. ricinus* (Matuschka *et al.* 1992). These mice are associated with forested habitats, a habitat shared by the red fox (*Vulpes vulpes* L.), a common predator for small rodents. In turn, the red fox can act as blood host to ticks (Gern 2008). Consequently, predator prey population fluctuations can have profound effects on tick and *Borrelia* population dynamics. Of course, other alternative blood hosts will also play a role in most habitats and may either amplify or reduce local risk for Lyme borreliosis, and thereby add to the complexity of Lyme borreliosis ecology.

Ticks are also strongly influenced by soil and vegetation characteristics, two factors that are in turn strongly interrelated. Vegetation may attract hosts, for example by providing shelter or food, but can also provide a suitable microclimate for tick survival. Soil characteristics in turn affect tick abundance, since ticks depend on a suitable litter layer for shelter, rehydration during dry

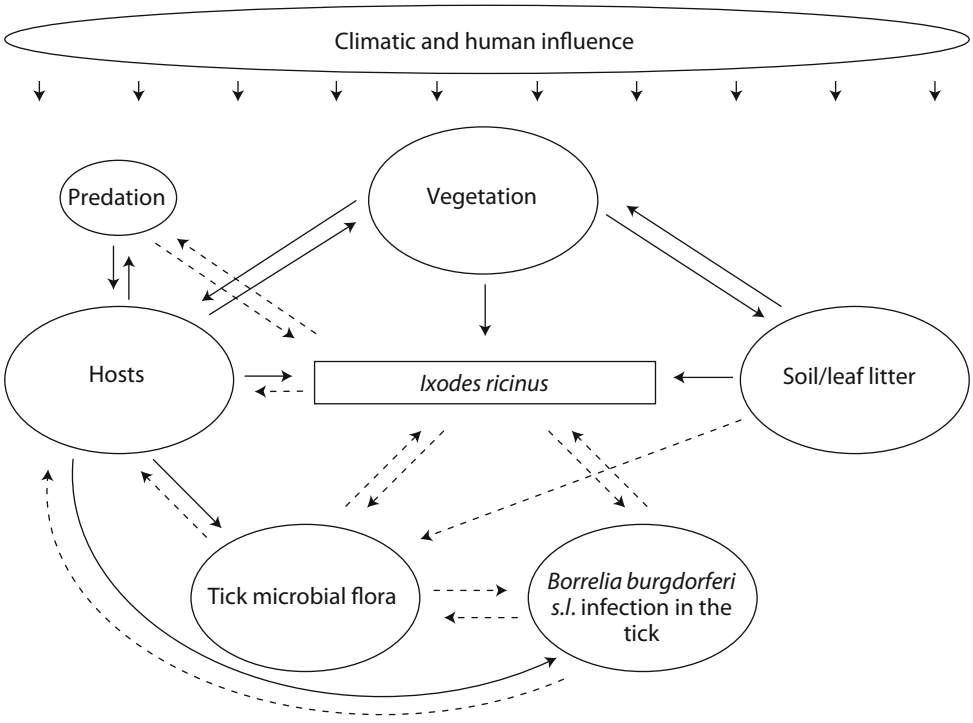


Figure 1. Schematic representation of the ecology of Ixodes ricinus *ticks. Solid lines indicate pathways that have been extensively studied, dotted lines indicate interactions that are unstudied or scarcely studied (Gassner, 2010).*

periods and as a refuge during diapause events. Indeed, abundance of *Ixodes* ticks is correlated to properties of the litter layer (Eisen *et al.* 2004, Gassner *et al.* 2011).

The range of micro-organisms and viruses that can be found in ticks are either transmitted from hosts during blood meals, or transmitted vertically from mother to eggs and trans-stadially from egg to larva, from larva to nymph and from nymph to adult. Other transmission mechanisms have not been described, but some micro-organisms could potentially be picked up from the soil. Microorganisms could potentially invade the tick body along with other penetrating parasites such as nematodes or parasitic wasps (Plantard *et al.* 2012, Tijsse-Klasen *et al.* 2011). Interactions between various viruses, nematodes, bacteria and protozoa inside ticks remain largely unstudied, but simultaneous transmission of two pathogens to a host may be beneficial for either pathogen.

Perhaps the most essential determinant in the ecology of Lyme borreliosis is the tick's succes of finding a host and thereby transmit and/or pick up *Borreliae*. This depends not only on host density, but also on the activity of the tick. Any mechanism that may enhance tick activity may therefore contribute to the ability of *Borrelia* to invade a new host, and therefore contribute to an increased basic reproduction number R_0.

Biology of Ixodes ricinus *and* Borrelia burgdorferi sensu lato

Given the fact that suitable environmental conditions and host availability are present, the tick life cycle can be completed in three years under natural conditions (Randolph *et al.* 2002), but under unsuitable conditions, may be stretched to six years (Figure 2). After hatching or moulting, newly-emerged ticks start questing (i.e. searching for a host in the vegetation) when environmental conditions are suitable (Lees 1948, Perret *et al.* 2000, Randolph and Storey 1999). During questing, ticks stay in ambush in the undergrowth to grab hold of passing hosts. While active, the forelegs are protruded in order to sense host presence using the ticks Haller's organ, which contain olfactory sensilla. During periods of desiccating conditions, ticks descend close to or in the litter layer to restore their water balance by taking up water vapour from the air. The tick utilizes a variety of vertebrate hosts for its three blood meals, which are needed for successive moulting from larva to nymph, from nymph to adult and for the development of eggs by adult females (Figure 2). In general, larvae stay close to the ground, where they attach to small hosts such as rodents and song birds, as well as occasionally to larger hosts (Vor *et al.* 2010). Nymphs have a much wider

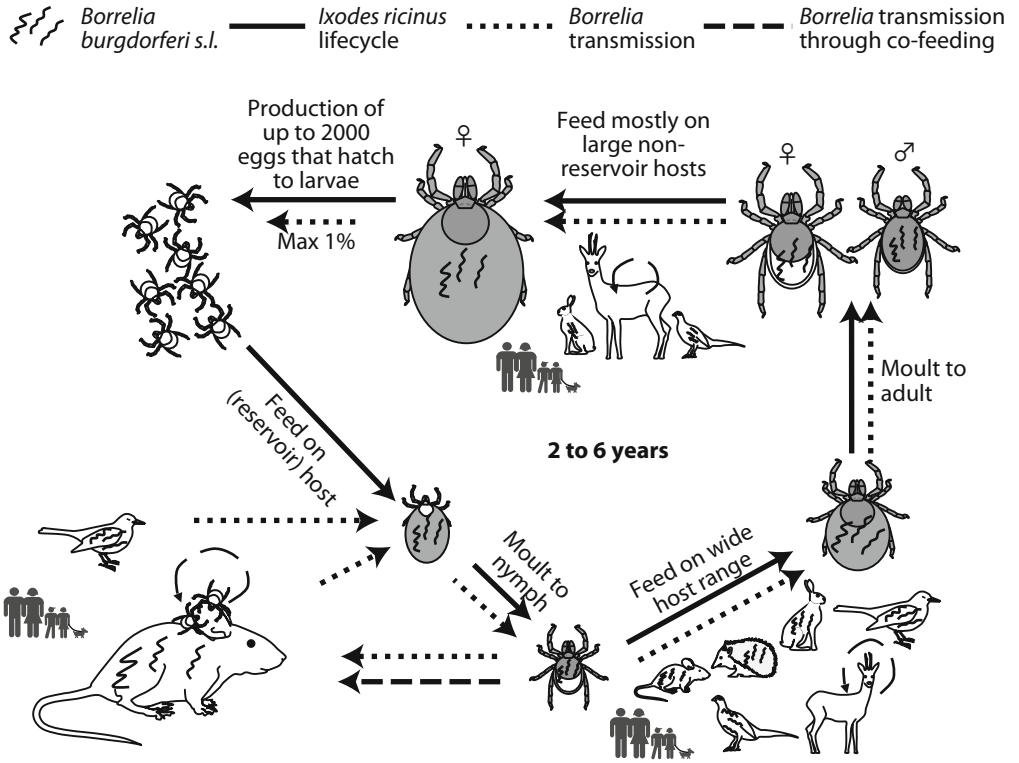


Figure 2. Life cycle of Ixodes ricinus *in relation to the natural circulation of* Borrelia burgdorferi s.l. *among several hosts. Note that all tick life stages feed on humans next to their natural hosts. The hosts that are drawn with* Borrelia *represent reservoir hosts that can re-infect ticks through a systemic infection. The depicted hosts represent the diversity of hosts, the true host range may be larger in nature (Modified with permission after Gassner 2010).*

host preference and tend to use questing points from ground level up to approximately 50 cm. Adult females preferably feed on larger hosts such as deer, while the adult males mate several females either in the vegetation or on hosts, without taking substantial blood meals. The adults tend to climb higher into the vegetation, from ground level to approximately 150 cm (Mejlon and Jaenson 1997).

Borrelia species can be acquired by the tick by a blood meal on a reservoir-competent host, and can be maintained trans-stadially and passed to the next host during the second and third blood meal. In turn, vertebrate hosts can become (systemically) infected by *Borrelia* species through the bite of an infected tick (Figure 2). These transmission processes, from tick to host and vice versa, are referred to as systemic transmission. A second route is non-systemic or co-feeding transmission: ticks acquire the pathogen from infected ticks feeding at sites in their immediate vicinity without the need for a systemic infection in the host (Gern and Rais 1996, Ogden 1997, Patrican 1997, Richter *et al.* 2002). The quantitative contribution of non-systemic transmission to the maintenance of Lyme borreliosis spirochaetes through common reservoirs such as rodents is subject to debate (Randolph and Gern 2003, Richter *et al.* 2003), but co-feeding transmission can facilitate tick to tick transmission in otherwise reservoir incompetent hosts such as sheep (Ogden, 1997). The role of transovarial transmission –from an infected female adult to her offspring – for *Borrelia* is not clear. A fraction of (unfed) larva in the field is infected with *Borrelia*, suggesting that they have been infected via this route (Rauter and Hartung 2005). However, in laboratory experiments eggs failed to inherit *Borrelia* (*afzelii*) from their infected mother (Matuschka *et al.* 1998). Whether the infected larvae in the field are a result of partial feeding (e.g. as a result of host death, damaging immune responses to the tick bite, or physical disturbance by the host), transovarial transmission, lack of *Borrelia* detection specificity, or differences between *Borrelia* genospecies remains to be investigated.

Although mice and songbirds are considered to be the primary reservoir of *Borrelia* species, other species of mammals, birds and lizards have also been identified to be able to transmit *Borreliae* to feeding ticks (reviewed in Piesman and Gern 2008). Globally, the genus *Borrelia* consists of at least 16 genospecies (Margos *et al.* 2011), commonly named *Borrelia burgdorferi sensu lato*. In Europe, several *Borrelia* species have been associated with specific hosts, where *Borrelia* species infections are confined mostly by the host immune system. Of the most common species, *B. afzelii* and *Borrelia bavariensis* are associated with rodents. *Borrelia valaisiana* and *Borrelia garinii* have been associated with birds and *Borrelia lusitaniae* has been associated with lizards (Hanincová *et al.* 2003a,b, Humair *et al.* 1999).

Borrelia – tick interactions

Travelling through various environments

Borrelia bacteria may find various environments during the course of their transmission, which may be accompanied by specific gene expression to adapt to these environments. Part of this adaptation is regulated through a range of *Borrelia* outer surface proteins (Osp's). Inside the reservoir host body, *Borreliae* may reside in various tissues such as heart, joints, brains and skin, or be transported in the host blood circulation (Barbour *et al.* 2009, Gray *et al.* 1999, Hanincová *et al.* 2003a, Kurtenbach *et al.* 1998, Schwan *et al.* 1988). Inside these environments, the spirochaetes are continuously exposed to various components in the host immune system, while causing a persistent infection, which can last months in the case of rodents (Gern *et al.* 1994). Once a tick attaches to an infected and reservoir-competent host, the *Borreliae* can be ingested, ending up in

the tick midgut along with ingested host blood. Here, they will remain during the remaining blood meal of the tick, attach to the midgut lumen, and be exposed to the immune as well as digestive system of the tick. After engorgement by the tick, the *Borreliae* face the challenge of surviving during the tick transstadial moulting process, which can be followed by prolonged periods of diapause, questing or quiescence. Although the physiology of *Borrelia* and the tick at the time of the blood meal have been extensively studied, little is known about the physiology of *Borrelia* during the period between blood meals.

Once the tick attaches to a new host to take a blood meal, *Borreliae* will detach from the midgut lumen and proliferate, while migrating through the tick haemolymph to the salivary glands. The duration of this process differs per tick species and *Borrelia* species; in *B. burgdorferi sensu stricto* infected *I. scapularis* it was found to take place within 36-48 hours (De Silva and Fikrig 1995). However, for *B. afzelii* in *I. ricinus*, dissemination from the midgut to the salivary glands is much faster and can result in *Borrelia* transmission within 24 hours (Crippa *et al.* 2002). Therefore, it is generally advised to remove attached ticks within 24 hours after attachment, but the sooner the better. The *Borrelia* OspC is involved in the migration (Schwan and Piesman 2002), but once arrived in the salivary glands, *Borreliae* will be actively injected into the new host along with the tick saliva.

In summary, *Borrelia* is exposed to different within-host environments, as well as at least three different within-tick environments (i.e. midgut lumen, haemolymph and salivary glands). Specific tick- as well as *Borrelia*-induced interactions during the tick-borne phase of *Borrelia* will be described below, with an emphasis on saliva assisted transmission, *Borrelia*-associated behavioural changes in the tick and *Borrelia*-associated increase in tick survival. For reviews on the first topic see Mannelli *et al.* (2012) and Schuijt *et al.* (2011).

Tick – Borrelia *interaction during feeding: saliva assisted transmission*

The feeding stage of *I. ricinus* takes at least three days for larvae, to up to 7 to 10 days for adult females. Throughout the feeding period, the tick salivary glands secrete a wide array of pharmacologically active molecules. The primary function of these molecules is to suppress blood clotting, inflammatory responses and immune responses in the host. Suppressing these processes in the host, as well as in ingested blood, is highly important due to the long feeding period of the tick, which is among the highest of blood-feeding ectoparasites. Some of these salivary products are known to aid pathogens in their transmission, a process referred to as saliva-assisted transmission (SAT). SAT can be direct, where salivary molecules interact with the pathogen or the host in favour of the pathogen and/or the tick. Indirect SAT can refer to non-systemic transmission through the co-feeding process described above, where pathogens are exchanged in the direct vicinity of the tick bite, without the need of a systemic infection. Several tick-borne pathogens have been associated with SAT in *I. ricinus*, including tick-borne encephalitis virus, *Francisella tularensis, B. lusitaniae* and *B. afzelii* (Nuttall and Labuda 2008). In North America, SAT has been described for *B. burgdorferi sensu stricto* in *I. scapularis* ticks (Ramamoorthi *et al.* 2005, Zeidner *et al.* 2002).

A well-described mechanism of SAT in *I. ricinus* and *I. scapularis* is the excretion of the Salp15 protein (Hovius *et al.* 2008, Ramamoorthi *et al.* 2005, Schuijt *et al.* 2008), which has also been described in *I. persulcatus* and *I. pacificus* (Hojgaard *et al.* 2009). Salp15 suppresses a T-cell mediated immune response in the host, and binds to the *Borrelia* OspC. This binding provides *Borrelia* with a tick-produced protective coat against host antibodies. This mechanism has been experimentally established for several, but not yet all, relevant *Borrelia* genospecies (Hovius *et al.* 2008).

Interestingly, genes encoding for Salp15 are more strongly upregulated during blood feeding of *Borrelia*-infected ticks compared to uninfected ticks (Ramamoorthi *et al.* 2005). In this way, *Borrelia*-mediated changes in the tick physiology may enhance survival of *Borrelia*.

Tick – Borrelia *interactions during non-feeding periods*

Borrelia is generally assumed to remain bound to the tick midgut lumen by outer surface proteins (Osp's). Although many processes, molecules and gene expression profiles have been described for tick-*Borrelia* interactions during the blood-feeding stage, very little is known about tick-*Borrelia* interactions in between blood meals, i.e. in unengorged ticks that have moulted after their blood meal and are either questing in the undergrowth or inactive in the litter layer. It is generally assumed that *Borrelia* remains molecularly bound to the midgut lumen of flat ticks using OspA, and possibly OspB, which bind to the tick receptor molecule TROSPA (Pal *et al.* 2004).

To date, several interactions between ticks and *Borrelia* in the non-feeding phase have been reported, including *Borrelia* associated changes in tick behaviour, phenotype, development or response to abiotic factors.

Borrelia-*induced behavioural modifications*

Effects of infection with *Borrelia* on *I. ricinus* have rarely been examined in the laboratory. Lecfort and Durden (1996) showed some effects of infection with *B. burgdorferi s.s.* on the behaviour of laboratory-reared *I. scapularis*. They found overall decreased activity in infected adult ticks, whereas infected nymphs showed increased phototaxis and increased activity on the vertical surfaces during their experiments. Increased activity in nymphs would potentially increase the transmission potential of *Borrelia*. Nymphs are, in case of absence or low rate of transovarial transmission, the most important source of infection for naïve rodents, which are in turn needed for infection of naïve larvae. As adult ticks are less likely to feed on reservoir-competent hosts, behavioural changes in this life stage are less useful for *Borrelia* species transmission. Alekseev *et al.* (2000) found reduced activity in infected individuals for both *I. ricinus* and *I. persulcatus* during 3 min behavioural assays, whereas increased activity was observed in *Borrelia*-infected adult *I. persulcatus* that also showed morphological anomalies. These contradictory results are likely to be influenced by experimental setup (i.e. strong influence of the observer on tick behaviour) and the short time span of the experiments. Later on, Perret (2003) showed that field collected *Borrelia*-infected, *I. ricinus* nymphs display increased activity over prolonged periods of time under desiccating conditions compared to uninfected nymphs. In a recent experiment, velocity and the duration of walking activities were elevated in wild-captured as well as laboratory-reared *B. afzelii*-infected versus uninfected *I. ricinus* nymphs (Gassner 2010). In theory, increased tick activity can substantially increase the host contact rate, especially with ground-dwelling rodents. This behaviour may lead to increased survival of ticks, as well as increased *Borrelia* transmission (Hurd 2009). However, future experimental evidence is required to elucidate this behaviour.

Field observations of behavioural changes in *Borrelia*-infected members of the *I. ricinus* species complex are rare. For example, more *Borrelia*-infected *I. pacificus* ticks were found on vertical objects such as tree trunks compared to the surrounding litter (Lane *et al.* 2007). In Germany, adult *I. ricinus* females attached to human volunteers were more frequently infected with *Borrelia* species compared to the infection prevalence of female ticks collected by blanket dragging in the same area where the volunteers had walked (Faulde and Robbins 2008). Although field evidence

for *Borrelia*-driven behavioural changes in *I. ricinus* is mostly indirect, it supports the observations of increased activity due to *Borrelia*-infections in the lab.

Next to increased host-finding chance, the increased walking speed of infected ticks – in the study of Gassner (2010) there was an ~10% increase in the mean velocity – can cause ticks to find a suitable attachment place more efficiently on the host, and thereby lower the chance of detection or falling off prior to attachment.

Hence, we argue that *Borrelia*-induced behavioural changes can increase *Borrelia* transmission in nature. Additionally, the risk of a bite from an infected tick may be higher than the risk of a bite of an uninfected tick under similar densities of both groups in the field. The potential impact of *Borrelia*-associated behavioural changes on the R_0 of *Borrelia* will be discussed later in this chapter.

Borrelia-*associated changes in response to microclimate*

Next to *Borrelia*-associated increased activity of ticks, other recent observations indicate that *Borrelia*-infected *I. ricinus* ticks are better equipped to withstand desiccation conditions. Hermann and Gern (2010) found increased resistance to desiccation in nymphal as well as adult *Borrelia*-infected *I. ricinus*, compared to uninfected nymphs and adults. Here, the load of *Borrelia* spirochetes was quantified, indicating that a load of over 160,000 spirochetes decreases adult survival, whereas increased desiccation resistance was observed below this threshold. In nymphs, no threshold was found; *Borrelia* presence was associated with increased desiccation resistance. Interestingly, the *Borrelia*-associated effects were most profound for *B. afzelii* compared to other *Borrelia* genospecies. A study performed in 2008 using field-collected *I. ricinus* nymphs also shows an increased survival in *Borrelia* infected nymphs under desiccating conditions (Gassner, 2010).

A possible mechanism explaining increased desiccation resistance may be related to the tick's physiology of fat metabolism. Ticks store a relatively large quantity of brown fat, a high density and high energy form of fat storage in arthropods, during their blood meal, which is used as primary energy source during the in-between blood meal stage. The only way for *Ixodes* ticks to restore their water content is by active absorption of water vapour from the air. This process requires energy, which the tick can produce from the stored brown fat. An additional advantage of metabolising brown fat could be the generation of water (Chapman 1982), but no evidence exists for this in ticks. In both studies of Hermann and Gassner, fat content is indicated to play a key role in the increased desiccation resistance in infected ticks (Gassner 2010, Hermann and Gern 2010). Noteworthy, since the fat content is the tick's primary energy resource in between blood meals, increased activity of ticks may also be related to *Borrelia*-mediated changes in the tick fat metabolism.

This hypotheses is supported by observations on blood meal size and development in *Borrelia*-infected as well as uninfected *I. ricinus* feeding on field collected wood mice (*Apodemus sylvaticus*) (Gassner 2010). Here, blood meal size of larvae as well as post-moulting weight of infected nymphs was larger in *Borrelia*-infected ticks. These results would benefit from further evidence, since variation in the size of field collected larvae, which was not measured, may have had some effect. Moreover, feeding laboratory reared larvae on the same mice did not yield significant differences in engorgement size and post-ecdysis nymphal size.

In summary, *Borrelia* infections in ticks are associated with increased walking velocity, prolonged walking activity, increased desiccation resistance, and increased energy storage. The combined

effects of these observations will have a profound effect on tick survival and host finding. The potential contribution of this effect on the basic reproduction number of *Borrelia* is simulated below using a modelling approach.

Assessing the impact: a theoretical model

The effects described in the previous sections – the increased activity and survival of nymphs and adults will undoubtedly have an impact on the transmission of Lyme borreliosis. Due to the complexity of the system, it is hard to quantify the contribution of the described effects to the rate of *Borrelia* transmission in the field. However, a first assessment of the impact can be done by gauging the hypothetical effect on the basic reproduction number.

The basic reproduction number, or R_0, is defined as the average number of secondary cases caused by one infectious individual placed in a population consisting entirely of susceptibles (Diekmann *et al.* 1990). The value of R_0 is a measure of the likely success of invasion into a naïve population. If it is higher than 1, an outbreak of the disease is possible; if it is smaller than 1, the disease will die out. Also, in case of an outbreak, R_0 will determine the initial exponential increase in the number of inflected, and hence it is a measure for the (initial) transmission success. A method to derive the basic reproduction number for a tick-borne disease like Lyme borreliosis – using a next-generation matrix approach – has been described in Hartemink *et al.* (2008). Several of the parameters presented in this matrix model refer to processes that might be affected by the above-described fitness effects. The increased activity in infected ticks would result in a higher probability of finding a new host, since infected ticks can quest more actively and they are more likely to live long enough to find new hosts than uninfected ticks. In the matrix model, the host finding probability is not modeled explicitly; it is incorporated in the parameter describing the survival between life stages. This means that we can assess the effect of higher survival rate and increased activity in infected nymphs (and the resulting higher host finding rates) by using a higher value for the survival probability from feeding larva to feeding nymph (S_N). Similarly, by applying a higher value for S_A (the survival probability from feeding nymph to feeding female adult), we can gauge the effect of increased survival and activity in female adults.

Hence, we assess the hypothetical impact of the fitness effects by adjusting the estimates for S_N, and S_A and comparing the resulting R_0 values to the R_0 value based on the default parameter set. The parameters concerned are the survival probability from feeding larva to feeding nymph (S_N) and the survival probability from feeding nymph to feeding female adult (S_A). Based on the results described in this chapter, we used a conservative 50% increase for both parameters. For the other parameters, the values were the same as used in the paper by Hartemink *et al.* (2008). The sole exception is r_A, the per-egg probability of transovarial transmission; for this parameter we considered the original value (0.1) to be too high and we used 0.01 instead (a 1% probability per egg, in line with current insights (Rauter and Hartung 2005)). Since the fraction of blood meals taken on competent hosts can vary substantially, R_0 is shown as a function of this fraction, rather than as a single number.

In Figure 3 the different curves for R_0 are plotted: the bottom line reflects the R_0 values based on the default set of parameter values, whereas the other lines represents the curves for situation with a 50% increase in S_N, S_A or both.

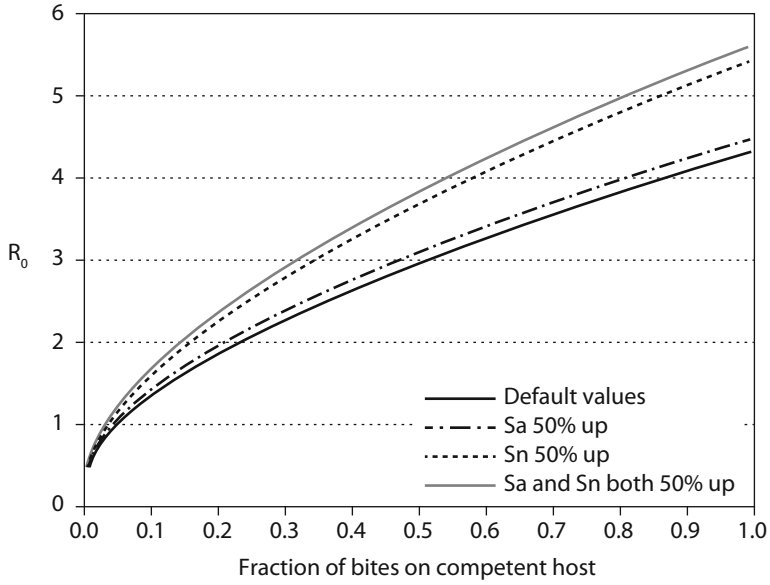


Figure 3. The effect of increased parameter values for S_N and S_A on the predicted value of the basic reproduction number R_0, based on a simple R_0 model. A 50% increase in the survival of nymphs (S_N) would have a considerable effect on the value of R_0, whereas a similar increase in the survival of adults (S_A) has less impact.

Interpretation of model

Even though the method applied here is based on rough estimates for parameter values and the modelled values for R_0 should not be interpreted as absolute values for any particular situation, our results clearly show that *Borrelia*-induced changes in survival of the tick would have an impact on disease transmission. Also, changes in nymph survival are likely to have more impact than changes in adult survival. This can be explained by looking at the biology of the transmission process.

Since transovarial transmission happens only occasionally, if at all, larvae are rarely infected (see for instance Zhioua *et al.* (1994) and Richter *et al.* (2012)). Larvae may pick up the infection during their first blood meal and moult into (infected) nymphs. These nymphs may in turn infect hosts, or other ticks, in the case of non-systemic transmission. The route from hosts to larvae that in their second blood meal infect hosts, is most probably the most important in the transmission cycle of Lyme borreliosis (see also Davis and Bent, 2011). For this route, the survival of feeding larva to feeding nymph is essential. It is therefore not surprising that an increase in this survival will have a large impact on total number of new cases per case, which here serves as a proxy for the transmission. The survival of feeding larva to feeding nymph is largely determined by two factors. The first factor is the survival of the nymph between blood meals, during which moisture stress is a key factor. The second factor is the success of unfed nymphs to successfully find a host and start their blood meal. *Borrelia*-associated effects are shown to affect both desiccation resistance

as well as tick activity. Both mechanisms potentially contribute strongly to the success of nymphs to successfully find a blood meal (S_N).

Parameter S_A, the survival of infected feeding nymphs to feeding female adult ticks, will affect the number of hosts that become infected through a bite of an infected female, but this number is comparatively low, because adult ticks usually do not feed on competent hosts. Therefore, the expected contribution of the adult ticks is lower and the increase in S_A has less effect than the increase in S_N.

Of course, a higher fitness of infected ticks may also affect other parameters in the model, such as the number of infected attached nymphs and adult ticks per host. However, since these effects are even more difficult to quantify, we choose to show only the most direct and straightforward effects, and indeed, these effects already indicate that the impact of the fitness effects on R_0 can be quite substantial.

Concluding remarks

Evidently, several *Borrelia*-associated modifications can be observed in ticks. We mentioned induced production of a protein that protects *Borrelia* against the host immune system, increased activity and increased desiccation resistance. The consequences of increased desiccation resistance may be that local dryer (micro)climate conditions in tick-infested habitats can select for higher densities of *Borrelia* infected ticks, resulting in local hot spots of *Borrelia* transmission.

We showed that in theory the R_0 of *Borrelia* can increase substantially if the *Borrelia*-associated modifications contribute to a better survival of feeding larvae to feeding nymphs. Such increased survival can benefit both the tick as *Borrelia*, and may hence be regarded as mutualistic interaction. In future studies epidemiologists should be aware of the differences in biology between infected and uninfected ticks to prevent an underestimation of Lyme borreliosis risk.

The questions that remain for future work are whether the observed *Borrelia*-associated changes affect tick-host contact and consequently the transmission rate of *Borrelia*. Increased understanding of the mechanisms in tick-*Borrelia*-host interactions may also contribute to the discovery of anti-tick vaccines (Schuijt *et al.* 2011). Eventually, preventing tick bites is more effective than finding a vaccine or cure against each of the many pathogens that can be transmitted by ticks and should therefore be among the priorities of strategies for the prevention of Lyme disease.

References

Alekseev AN, Jensen PM, Dubinina HV, Smirnova LA, Makrouchina NA and Zharkov SD (2000) Peculiarities of behaviour of taiga (*Ixodes persulcatus*) and sheep (*Ixodes ricinus*) ticks (Acarina: Ixodidae) determined by different methods. Folia Parasit 47: 147-153.

Anderson JF and Magnarelli LA (2008) Biology of ticks. Dis Clin North Am 22: 195-215.

Barbour AG, Bunikis J, Travinsky B, Hoen AG, Diuk-Wasser MA, Fish D and Tsao JI (2009) Niche partitioning of *Borrelia burgdorferi* and *Borrelia miyamotoi* in the same tick vector and mammalian reservoir species. Am J Trop Med Hyg 81: 1120-1131.

Chapman RF (1982) The insects, structure and function. Hodder and Stoughton, London, UK.

Crippa M, Rais O and Gern L (2002) Investigations on the mode and dynamics of transmission and infectivity of *Borrelia burgdorferi sensu stricto* and *Borrelia afzelii* in *Ixodes ricinus* ticks. Vector-Borne Zoonot 2: 3-9.

Davis S and Bent SJ (2011) Loop analysis for pathogens: niche partitioning in the transmission graph for pathogens of the North American tick *Ixodes scapularis*. J Theor Biol 269: 96-103.

De Silva AM and Fikrig E (1995) Growth and migration of *Borrelia burgdorferi* in *Ixodes* ticks during blood feeding. Am J Trop Med Hyg 53: 397-404.

Diekmann O, Heesterbeek JA and Metz JA (1990) On the definition and the computation of the basic reproduction ratio R_0 in models for infectious diseases in heterogeneous populations. J Math Biol 28: 365-382.

Dobson AP (1988) The population biology of parasite-induced changes in host behavior. Q Rev Biol 63: 139-165.

Eisen L, Eisen RJ, Chang CC, Mun J and Lane RS (2004) Acarologic risk of exposure to *Borrelia burgdorferi* spirochaetes: long-term evaluations in north-western California, with implications for Lyme borreliosis risk-assessment models. Med Vet Ent 18: 38-49.

Faulde M and Robbins R (2008) Tick infestation risk and *Borrelia burgdorferi* s.l. infection-induced increase in host-finding efficacy of female *Ixodes ricinus* under natural conditions. Exp Appl Acarol 44: 137-145.

Gassner F (2010) Tick tactics: interactions between habitat characteristics, hosts and microorganisms in relation to the biology of the sheep tick *Ixodes ricinus*. Dissertation, Wageningen University, Wageningen, the Netherlands.

Gassner F, Van Vliet AJH, Burgers SLGE, Jacobs F, Verbaarschot P, Hovius EKE, Mulder S, Verhulst NO, Van Overbeek LS and Takken W (2011) Geographic and temporal variations in population dynamics of *Ixodes ricinus* and associated *Borrelia* infections in the Netherlands. Vector-Borne Zoonot 11: 523-532.

Gern L (2008) *Borrelia burgdorferi sensu lato*, the agent of Lyme borreliosis: life in the wilds. Parasite 15: 244-247.

Gern L and Rais O (1996) Efficient transmission of *Borrelia burgdorferi* between cofeeding *Ixodes ricinus* ticks (Acari: Ixodidae). J Med Entomol 33: 189-192.

Gern L, Siegenthaler M, Hu CM, Leuba-Garcia S, Humair PF and Moret J (1994) *Borrelia burgdorferi* in rodents (*Apodemus flavicollis* and *A. sylvaticus*): duration and enhancement of infectivity for *Ixodes ricinus* ticks. Eur J Epidemiol 10: 75-80.

Gray JS, Kirstein F, Robertson JN, Stein J and Kahl O (1999) *Borrelia burgdorferi sensu lato* in *Ixodes ricinus* ticks and rodents in a recreational park in south-western Ireland. Exp Appl Acarol 23: 717-729.

Halos L, Mavris M, Vourc'h G, Maillard R, Barnouin J, Boulouis H-J and Vayssier-Taussat M (2006) Broad-range PCR-TGGE for the first-line detection of bacterial pathogen DNA in ticks. Vet res 37: 245-253.

Hanincová K, Schäfer SM, Etti S, Sewell HS, Taragelová V, Ziak D, Labuda M and Kurtenbach K (2003a) Association of *Borrelia afzelii* with rodents in Europe. Parasitology 126: 11-20.

Hanincová K, Taragelová V, Koci J, Schafer SM, Hails R, Ullmann AJ, Piesman J, Labuda M and Kurtenbach K (2003b) Association of *Borrelia garinii* and *B. valaisiana* with songbirds in Slovakia. Appl Env Microbiol 69: 2825-2830.

Hartemink NA, Randolph SE, Davis SA and Heesterbeek JAP (2008) The basic reproduction number for complex disease systems: defining R_0 for tick-borne infections. Am Nat 171: 743-754.

Herrmann C and Gern L (2010) Survival of *Ixodes ricinus* (Acari: Ixodidae) under challenging conditions of temperature and humidity is influenced by *Borrelia burgdorferi sensu lato* infection. J Med Entomol 47: 1196-1204.

Heyman P, Cochez C, Hofhuis A, Van der Giessen J, Sprong H, Porter SR, Losson B, Saegerman C, Donoso-Mantke O, Niedrig M and Papa A (2010) A clear and present danger: tick-borne diseases in Europe. Exp Rev Anti-Infe 8: 33-50.

Hojgaard A, Biketov SF, Shtannikov AV, Zeidner NS and Piesman J (2009) Molecular identification of Salp15, a key salivary gland protein in the transmission of Lyme disease spirochetes, from *Ixodes persulcatus* and *Ixodes pacificus* (Acari: Ixodidae). J Med Entomol 46: 1458-1463.

Hovius JWR, Schuijt TJ, De Groot KA, Roelofs JJTH, Oei GA, Marquart JA, De Beer R, Van't Veer C, Van Der Poll T, Ramamoorthi N, Fikrig E and Van Dam AP (2008) Preferential protection of *Borrelia burgdorferi sensu stricto* by a Salp15 homologue in *Ixodes ricinus* saliva. J Inf Dis 198: 1189-1197.

Humair PF, Rais O and Gern L (1999) Transmission of *Borrelia afzelii* from *Apodemus* mice and *Clethrionomys* voles to *Ixodes ricinus* ticks: differential transmission pattern and overwintering maintenance. Parasitol 118: 33-42.

Hurd H (2003) Manipulation of medically important insect vectors by their parasites. Ann Rev Entomol 48: 141-161.

Hurd H (2009) Evolutionary drivers of parasite-induced changes in insect life-history traits. From theory to underlying mechanisms. In: Webster JP (ed.) Natural history of host-parasite interactions. Advances in parasitology Vol. 68, Academic Press, Waltham, MA, USA, pp. 85-110.

Koella JC and Packer MJ (1996) Malaria parasites enhance blood-feeding of their naturally infected vector *Anopheles punctulatus*. Parasitol 113: 105-109.

Koella JC, Rieu L and Paul REL (2002) Stage-specific manipulation of a mosquito's host-seeking behaviour by the malaria parasite *Plasmodium gallinaceum*. Behav Ecol 13: 816-820.

Kurtenbach K, Peacey M, Rijpkema SGT, Hoodless AN, Nuttall PA and Randolph SE (1998) Differential transmission of the genospecies of *Borrelia burgdorferi sensu lato* by game birds and small rodents in England. Appl Environm Microbiol 64: 1169-1174.

Lane RS, Mun J, Peribáñez MA and Stubbs HA (2007) Host-seeking behavior of *Ixodes pacificus* (Acari: Ixodidae) nymphs in relation to environmental parameters in dense-woodland and woodland-grass habitats. J Vect Ecol 32: 342-357.

Lane RS, Steinlein DB and Mun J (2004) Human behaviors elevating exposure to *Ixodes pacificus* (Acari: Ixodidae) nymphs and their associated bacterial zoonotic agents in a hardwood forest. J Med Entomol 41: 239-248.

Lees AD (1946) The water balance in *Ixodes ricinus* L. and certain other species of ticks. Parasitol 37: 1-20.

Lees AD (1948) The sensory physiology of the sheep tick, *Ixodes ricinus* L. J Exp Biol 33: 379-410.

Lefcort H and Durden LA (1996) The effect of infection with lyme disease spirochetes (*Borrelia burgdorferi*) on the phototaxis, activity, and questing height of the tick vector *Ixodes scapularis*. Parasitol 113 97-103.

Lefèvre T and Thomas F (2008) Behind the scene, something else is pulling the strings: Emphasizing parasitic manipulation in vector-borne diseases. Infect Genet Evol 8: 504-519.

Mannelli A, Bertolotti L, Gern L and Gray J (2012) Ecology of *Borrelia burgdorferi sensu lato* in Europe: transmission dynamics in multi-host systems, influence of molecular processes and effects of climate change. FEMS Microbiol Rev 36: 837-861.

Margos G, Vollmer SA, Ogden NH and Fish D (2011) Population genetics, taxonomy, phylogeny and evolution of *Borrelia burgdorferi sensu lato*. Infect Genet Evol 11: 1545-1563.

Matuschka FR, Fischer P, Heiler M, Richter D and Spielman A (1992) Capacity of european animals as reservoir hosts for the Lyme disease spirochete. J Inf Dis 165: 479-483.

Matuschka FR, Schinkel TW, Klug B, Spielman A and Richter D (1998) Failure of *Ixodes* ticks to inherit *Borrelia afzelii* infection. Appl Environ Microbiol 64: 3089-3091.

Mejlon HA and Jaenson TGT (1997) Questing behaviour of *Ixodes ricinus* ticks (Acari: Ixodidae). Exp Appl Acarol 21: 747-754.

Nuttall PA and Labuda M (2008) Saliva-assisted transmission of tick-borne pathogens. In: Bowman AD and Nuttall P (eds.) Ticks, biology, disease and control. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK, pp. 205-219.

Ogden NH (1997) Natural lyme disease cycles maintained via sheep by co-feeding ticks. Parasitol 115: 591.

Pal U, Li X, Wang T, Montgomery RR, Ramamoorthi N, Desilva AM, Bao F, Yang X, Pypaert M, Pradhan D, Kantor FS, Telford S, Anderson JF and Fikrig E (2004) Trospa, an *Ixodes scapularis* receptor for *Borrelia burgdorferi*. Cell 119: 457-468.

Patrican LA (1997) Acquisition of Lyme disease spirochetes by cofeeding *Ixodes scapularis* ticks. Am J Trop Med Hyg 57: 589-593.

Perret JL (2003) Computer assisted laboratory observations and field studies of the host-finding behaviour of the tick *Ixodes ricinus* (Acarina: Ixodidae): ecological implications of climate and light, Dissertation, University of Neuchâtel, Neuchâtel, Switzerland.

Perret JL, Guigoz E, Rais O and Gern L (2000) Influence of saturation deficit and temperature on *Ixodes ricinus* tick questing activity in a lyme borreliosis-endemic area (Switzerland). Parasitol Res 86: 554-557.

Piesman J and Gern L (2008) Lyme borreliosis in Europe and North America. In: Bowman AD and Nuttall P (eds.) Ticks, biology, disease and control. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK, pp. 220-252.

Plantard O, Bouju-Albert A, Malard M-A, Hermouet A, Capron G and Verheyden H (2012) Detection of *Wolbachia* in the tick *Ixodes ricinus* is due to the presence of the hymenoptera endoparasitoid *Ixodiphagus hookeri*. PLoS One 7: e30692.

Ramamoorthi N, Narasimhan S, Pal U, Bao F, Yang XF, Fish D, Anguita J, Norgard MV, Kantor FS, Anderson JF, Koski RA and Fikrig E (2005) The Lyme disease agent exploits a tick protein to infect the mammalian host. Nature 436: 573-577.

Randolph SE and Gern L (2003) Reply to Richter *et al.* (2002): Co-feeding transmission and its contribution to the perpetuation of the Lyme disease spirochete *Borrelia afzelii*. Emerg Infect Dis 9: 893-894.

Randolph SE, Green RM, Hoodless AN and Peacey MF (2002) An empirical quantitative framework for the seasonal population dynamics of the tick *Ixodes ricinus*. Int J Parasitol 32: 979-989.

Randolph SE and Storey K (1999) Impact of microclimate on immature tick-rodent host interactions (Acari: Ixodidae): implacations for parasite transmission. J Med Entomol 36: 741-748.

Rauter C and Hartung T (2005) Prevalence of *Borrelia burgdorferi sensu lato* genospecies in *Ixodes ricinus* ticks in Europe: A metaanalysis. Appl Env Microbiol 71: 7203-7216.

Ready PD (2008) *Leishmania* manipulates sandfly feeding to enhance its transmission. Trends Parasitol 24: 151-153.

Richter D, Debski A, Hubalek Z. and Matuschka F-R. (2012) Absence of Lyme disease spirochetes in larval *Ixodes ricinus* ticks. Vector Borne Zoon Dis 12: 21-27.

Richter D, Allgöwer R and Matuschka F-R (2003) Co-feeding transmission and its contribution to the perpetuation of the lyme disease spirochete *Borrelia afzelii* (in reply to Randolph and Gern 2003). Emerg Infect Dis 9: 895-896.

Richter D, Allgöwer R and Matuschka F-R (2002) Co-feeding transmission and its contribution to the perpetuation of the Lyme disease spirochete *Borrelia afzelii*. Emerg Infect Dis 8: 1421-1425.

Rogers ME and Bates PA (2007) Leishmania manipulation of sand fly feeding behavior results in enhanced transmission. PLoS Patog 3: e91.

Schaub GA (2006) Parasitogenic alterations of vector behaviour. Int J Med Microbiol 296: 37-40.

Schuijt TJ, Hovius JW, Van der Poll T, Van Dam AP and Fikrig E (2011) Lyme borreliosis vaccination: the facts, the challenge, the future. Trends Parasitol 27: 40-47.

Schuijt TJ, Hovius JW, Van Burgel ND, Ramamoorthi N, Fikrig E and Van Dam AP (2008) The tick salivary protein Salp15 inhibits the killing of serum-sensitive *Borrelia burgdorferi sensu lato* isolates. Infect Immun 76: 2888-2894.

Schütte C and Dicke M (2008) Verified and potential pathogens of predatory mites (Acari: Phytoseiidae). Exp Appl Acarol 46: 307-328.

Schütte C, Poitevin O, Negash T and Dicke M (2006) A novel disease affecting the predatory mite *Phytoseiulus persimilis* (Acari, Phytoseiidae): disease transmission by adult females. Exp Appl Acarol 39: 85-103.

Schwan TG, Burgdorfer W, Schrumpf ME and Karstens RH (1988) The urinary bladder, a consistent source of *Borrelia burgdorferi* in experimentally infected white-footed mice (*Peromyscus leucopus*). J Clin Microbiol 26: 893-895.

Schwan TG and Piesman J (2002) Vector interactions and molecular adaptations of Lyme disease and relapsing fever spirochetes associated with transmission by ticks. Emerg Inf Dis 8: 115-121.

Smith R and Takkinen J (2006) Lyme borreliosis: Europe-wide coordinated surveillance and action needed? Euro Surveillance 11: E060622 060621.

Sonenshine DE (1991) Biology of ticks, Vol. 1. Oxford University Press, New York, NY, USA.

Stanek G (2009) Pandora's box: pathogens in *Ixodes ricinus* ticks in central Europe. Wien Klin Wochensch 121: 673-683.

Tijsse-Klasen E, Braks M, Scholte E-J and Sprong H (2011) Parasites of vectors – *Ixodiphagus hookeri* and its *Wolbachia* symbionts in ticks in the Netherlands. Parasites & Vectors 4: 228.

Van Overbeek L, Gassner F, Lombaers van der Plas C, Kastelein P, Nunes-da Rocha U and Takken W (2008) Diversity of *Ixodes ricinus* tick-associated bacterial communities from different forests. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 66: 72-84.

Vor T, Kiffner C, Hagedorn P, Niedrig M and Rähe F (2010) Tick burden on European roe deer (*Capreolus capreolus*). Exp Appl Acarol: 1-13.

Zeidner NS, Schneider BS, Nuncio MS, Gern L and Piesman J (2002) Coinoculation of *Borrelia* spp. with tick salivary gland lysate enhances spirochete load in mice and is tick species-specific. J Parasitol 88: 1276-1278.

Zhioua E, Aeschlimann A and Gern L (1994) Infection of field-collected *Ixodes ricinus* (Acari: Ixodidae) larvae with *Borrelia burgdorferi* in Switzerland. J Med Entomol 31: 763-766.

8. *Wolbachia* in *Aedes* mosquitoes: towards biological control of vector-borne diseases

Luciano A. Moreira

Abstract

Dengue causes an enormous impact on global public health with 50 million cases every year. Vector control is predominantly focused on the application of insecticides against adult mosquitoes. However, current methods of vector control are often not sustainable for long periods because of the emergence of insecticide resistance. In this context, the discovery and application of alternative methods are extremely important. A new approach for biological control of diseases transmitted by mosquitoes has recently been proposed that uses an endosymbiotic bacterium (*Wolbachia pipientis*) in order to interfere with the transmission of pathogens. The advantage of using this bacterium is that infected females have a reproductive advantage due to a cytoplasmic incompatibility (CI), which leads to an increase in numbers of infected individuals in the wild. When *Aedes aegypti* mosquitoes (that naturally lack this bacterium) were transinfected with *Wolbachia* it was discovered that the presence of bacteria inhibits the replication of pathogens such as dengue and chikungunya viruses as well as filarial and avian malaria parasites. More recently *Ae. aegypti* mosquitoes harbouring a *Drosophila-Wolbachia* strain have been released in Australia and were able to quickly spread in the wild. In this chapter we review the possibility of applying this endosymbiotic bacteria as potential biological control of human diseases transmitted by mosquito vectors.

Keywords: *Aedes*, biological control, dengue, *Wolbachia*

Introduction

Vector-borne diseases such as malaria, leishmaniasis and dengue heavily impact on human mortality and morbidity throughout the world. With the increase of human movement (Adams and Kapan 2009) and the effects of global warming (Barclay 2008, Pachauri and Reisinger 2007) the expansion and resurgence of pathogens (Gould and Solomon 2008) such as dengue (DENV) and chikungunya (CHIKV) are becoming an increasing threat (Ng and Ojcius 2009, Staples *et al.* 2009). Dengue fever is being recently named as the most important disease affecting communities in tropical and sub-tropical regions around the world with 50 million cases annually and causing thousands of deaths (WHO 2009). A new approach to dengue control was proposed that targets mosquito longevity rather than their abundance, by introducing a strain of the bacterium *Wolbachia pipientis* (Hertig and Wolbach 1924), which causes a reduction in survival of *Aedes aegypti* L. mosquitoes (Brownstein *et al.* 2003, Cook *et al.* 2008, Rasgon *et al.* 2003, Sinkins and O'Neill 2000). Since the extrinsic incubation period of viruses and parasites within the mosquito vector is long (about 15 days) compared with the longevity of the insect (about 30 days in the field), the *Wolbachia* infection that may invade the mosquito population and causes a reduction in longevity of *Ae. aegypti*, is expected to reduce the transmission of pathogens without eliminating the mosquito population (Brownstein *et al.* 2003, Rasgon *et al.* 2003, Sinkins and O'Neill 2000). The *Wolbachia* wMelPop-CLA strain originating from *Drosophila melanogaster* Meigen was successcully introduced into *Ae. aegypti* (McMeniman *et al.* 2009). Mosquitoes containing this strain of *Wolbachia* died significantly sooner compared to their counterparts that lacked bacteria. Besides the effect on the insect longevity, and with great surprise was the discovery that the

W. Takken and C.J.M. Koenraadt (eds.), *Ecology of parasite-vector interactions*, Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases 3, DOI 10.3920/978-90-8686-744-8_8, © Wageningen Academic Publishers 2013

presence of bacteria in mosquitoes increases the resistance towards pathogens (Bian *et al.* 2010, Kambris *et al.* 2009, Moreira *et al.* 2009, Walker *et al.* 2011) as also shown in *Drosophila* flies for fly-specific viruses (Hedges *et al.* 2008, Teixeira *et al.* 2008). In this chapter we discuss the potential use of *Wolbachia* in biological control of diseases transmitted by mosquito vectors.

Phenotypic effects of *Wolbachia* in mosquitoes

Wolbachia are Gram-negative, obligatory intracellular bacteria, which manipulate host reproduction to ensure vertical transmission (from mother to offspring) (Sinkins *et al.* 1997). In the last decades *Wolbachia* was widely found infecting different species of invertebrates, with reports on arthropods such as insects (Jeyaprakash and Hoy 2000, Stouthamer *et al.* 1999, Werren *et al.* 1995), arachnids (Breeuwer and Jacobs 1996), crustaceans (Cordaux *et al.* 2001, Gotoh *et al.* 2003) and isopods, although they are also found in nematodes (Bandi *et al.* 1998, 2001). The first report of *Wolbachia* was in the reproductive tissues of *Culex pipiens* L. (Hertig and Wolbach 1924), being named *Wolbachia pipientis* (Hertig 1936). Recent statistical analysis confirmed the wide distribution of this bacterium among invertebrates, with an estimate of positivity in up to 65% of all insect species (Hilgenboecker *et al.* 2008), confirming previous findings of infection of 20 to 70% of insect species (Jeyaprakash and Hoy 2000).

In order to guarantee vertical transmission, the bacteria manipulate their hosts in various ways such as feminisation, male killing, parthenogenesis as well as through the mechanism of cytoplasmic incompatibility (Figure 1). As the latter is the most common phenomenon in mosquitoes this effect will be briefly explained below.

Cytoplasmic incompatibility

Cytoplasmic incompatibility (CI) is the most common effect caused by *Wolbachia* on arthropod reproduction. The phenotype results in the production of aberrant progeny originating from strains that harbour insects and various cytoplasmic factors that will affect the proper assembly of chromosomes in sperm soon after fertilisation. Typically, the paternal chromosomes are eliminated, leading to the formation of haploid embryos. In eggs of incompatible crosses, only the female pronucleus forms individual chromosomes and proceeds to the first division. The paternal

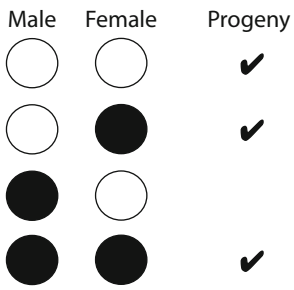


Figure 1. Unilateral mechanism of cytoplasmic incompatibility (CI). Crosses between infected males with uninfected females produce no viable offspring due to CI. Crosses involving Wolbachia*-infected females (in black) have higher chance of producing viable offspring, increasing the number of infected individuals in the population.*

pronucleus, which appears as a mass of chromatin tends to fragment during the first mitotic division. The effect of CI is usually unidirectional: incompatible crossing occurs between infected males and uninfected females, whereas reciprocal crosses between males free of bacteria and infected females produce normal offspring (Figure 1). However, there are reports of bidirectional incompatibility when species of insects (usually mosquitoes and *Drosophila*) hosts more than one strain of bacteria (Stouthamer *et al.* 1999, Yen and Barr 1971).

Wolbachia in *Aedes* mosquitoes

Early studies involved observations of *Rickettsia*-like organisms within mosquito ovaries and eggs. Following the work of Hertig in *Culex* (Hertig 1936), the first report of *Wolbachia* in mosquitoes came with the work by Yen (1975) on members of the *Aedes scutellaris* group (such as *Aedes cooki* Belkin, *Aedes polynesiensis* Marks, *Aedes albopictus* Skuse, *Aedes riversi* Bohart & Ingram). The ultrastructure of *Wolbachia* was then thoroughly studied in this same group by Wright and colleagues, who identified round shape structures within mosquito ovaries. They claimed that the nurse cells of the scutellaris group (unlike those in *Cx. pipiens*) are rarely infected with *Wolbachia* (Wright and Barr 1980).

The Asian tiger mosquito *Ae. albopictus* is native to Asia and the South Pacific and is an important vector of dengue and chikungunya viruses in some places of Southeast Asia (Kumari *et al.* 2011, Ratsitorahina *et al.* 2008, Rudnick and Chan 1965, Tsetsarkin *et al.* 2011). *Wolbachia* infections were first found in the ovaries of this mosquito (Dobson *et al.* 2001, 2004, Sinkins *et al.* 1995a, Wright and Wang 1980). Today it is well known that nearly all populations of *Ae. albopictus* harbour two different *Wolbachia* strains named *w*AlbA (A group) and *w*AlbB (B group) (Kittayapong *et al.* 2000, Ruang-Areerate *et al.* 2003, Sinkins *et al.* 1995a). Studies on the cytoplasmic incompatibility between both strains, towards the potential use of this feature as a mean of population suppression, have been performed by several groups (Dobson *et al.* 2001, 2004, Sinkins *et al.* 1995a, Tortosa *et al.* 2010).

Interestingly *Wolbachia* has never been found in wild *Ae. aegypti* (Kittayapong *et al.* 2000) nor in any anopheline mosquitoes (vectors of human malaria parasites) (Kittayapong *et al.* 2000, Rasgon and Scott 2004b, Ricci *et al.* 2002). The reason for this is unknown.

Transinfection of *Wolbachia* into *Aedes aegypti*

The success of *Wolbachia* transinfection between different insect taxa is dependent on the ability of this bacterium to adapt to new intracellular environments (Braig *et al.* 1994, Xi *et al.* 2005a). An example of successful transinfection in species of same genus involved the wAlbB *Wolbachia* strain from *Ae. albopictus* which was successfully established into *Ae. aegypti* using cytoplasmic transfer of embryos (Xi *et al.* 2005b). *Wolbachia*-infected mosquitoes exhibit cytoplasmic incompatibility and cage experiments have demonstrated that infected mosquitoes were able to reach fixation within seven generations (Xi *et al.* 2005b). Also, both *Wolbachia* strains from *Ae. albopictus* (*w*AlbA and *w*AlbB) were injected into *Ae. aegypti* adults and infected strains were able to persist over several generations (Ruang-Areerate and Kittayapong 2006).

However, the transfer of *Wolbachia* strains from other groups of insects seems to follow a prerequisite of cellular adaptation to the mosquito, which can be regarded as critical for successful transinfection. Thus, in order to facilitate the transfer of *Wolbachia* from *D. melanogaster* cells to *Ae. aegypti*, the *w*MelPop strain was first transferred to a mosquito cell line to allow adaptation to that intracellular environment (McMeniman *et al.* 2008). After continuous serial passage in mosquito

cell cultures for more than three years, the mosquito cell line became adapted to the strain of *Wolbachia,* named *w*MelPop-CLA (CLA-cell line adapted), which was later stably introduced into *Ae. aegypti* by microinjection of embryos (McMeniman *et al.* 2009). Two positive-*Wolbachia* strains were generated after a trial period of selection in early generations and both strains remained highly infected since then. Laboratory experiments using *Ae. aegypti* infected with wMelPop-CLA showed that the bacteria decreased adult longevity with approximately 50% (McMeniman *et al.* 2009, Yeap *et al.* 2011). This reduction in life expectancy of female *Ae. aegypti* may result in a significant decrease in the transmission of dengue virus by mosquitoes, if this ability to shorten the life in the laboratory ought to be reproduced under field conditions.

It is well known that the mosquito age is a critical factor for the transmission of pathogens (Dye 1992) as viruses and parasites go through an extrinsic incubation period (EIP) within the mosquito. The EIP is the time from ingestion of the pathogen until it is transmitted to the next vertebrate host and is a key component to calculate the vectorial capacity of diseases (Meyer 1989).

Influence of *Wolbachia* towards host-pathogen interactions

The interaction of *Wolbachia* with their hosts has the possibility of directly affecting their fitness (positively or negatively) or being regarded as silent or neutral. Therefore, the relation between the bacterium and the host can be regarded as mutualistic or parasitic (Brownlie *et al.* 2009, Werren *et al.* 2008).

In *Armadillidium vulgare* Latreille it has been shown that a particular strain of *Wolbachia* (*w*VulC) lowers haemocyte densities, increases septicaemia in their haemolymph and reduces their lifespan compared to individuals harbouring another bacterium strain or aposymbiotic (*Wolbachia*-free) ones (Braquart-Varnier *et al.* 2008). This phenomenon directly points to the fact that this microorganism can affect its host immunity. In another study, *Drosophila* infected with *Wolbachia* exhibited lower levels of encapsulation of parasitic wasp eggs than cured ones (Fytrou *et al.* 2006).

Recent studies in *Drosophila* have shown that infection with *Wolbachia* can protect flies from infection with RNA viruses (Hedges *et al.* 2008, Teixeira *et al.* 2008). The *Wolbachia* wMelPop and wMelCS strains that infect *D. melanogaster* induced reduction in mortality when the flies were infected with various pathogenic viruses including the *Drosophila* C virus, Flock House virus (FHV) and locusts paralysis virus (Cricket paralysis virus).

As the strain of *Wolbachia* wMelPop promoted protection against RNA viruses in *Drosophila*, it was important to test the effect of wMelPop-CLA on the vectorial competence of *Ae. aegypti* transinfected lines (McMeniman *et al.* 2009). For that, mosquitoes infected and uninfected with *Wolbachia* were exposed to dengue and Chikungunya viruses. The same mosquitoes were also tested with the avian malaria parasite, *Plasmodium gallinaceum*. The results showed that the presence of *Wolbachia* caused a drastic reduction in the presence or the development of these three unrelated pathogens, which opens new possibilities for controlling mosquito-borne diseases (Moreira *et al.* 2009). More recently it was shown that the bacterium (wMelPop-CLA) also provides protection against nematodes that cause lymphatic filariasis (Kambris *et al.* 2009) and blocked *Plasmodium falciparum* in somatically infected *Anopheles gambiae* Giles mosquitoes (Hughes *et al.* 2011), suggesting that some strains of *Wolbachia* may inhibit a wide range of human pathogens.

As viral interference is not ubiquitous among the strains of *Wolbachia* (Moreira *et al.* 2009, Osborne *et al.* 2009) the mechanisms behind the ability of bacteria to gain resistance against pathogens

are unknown. Although some effector genes (such as defensin, cecropin) were up-regulated in *Ae. aegypti* mosquitoes infected with *w*MelPop-CLA, key components of signalling pathways (Toll, IMD and Jak-STAT) do not appear to be transcriptionally modulated by *Wolbachia* (Kambris *et al.* 2010, Moreira *et al.* 2009). Previous studies have also revealed that some genes of the IMD and Jak-STAT pathways, involved in the control of infection by RNA viruses in insects (Huszar and Imler 2008), are differentially regulated in *Ae. aegypti* infected with dengue (Xi *et al.* 2008).

The ability of the CLA-wMelPop strain to provide protection against dengue virus may also be dependent on competition for essential components of host cells, as observed in infection with DENV-2 in cells infected with mosquito-CLA wMelPop (Moreira *et al.* 2009). Moreover, in *D. melanogaster* there is evidence that strains of *Wolbachia* get much of their energy through the metabolism of amino acids (Wu *et al.* 2004), including threonine – an amino acid required in the activation of expression of vitellogenin (Vg) in *Ae. aegypti* (Attardo *et al.* 2006). Recently McMeniman and colleagues hypothesized the existence of a competition between wMelPop *Wolbachia* and *Ae. aegypti* to obtain threonine required for expression of Vg and subsequently inhibition of egg development (McMeniman *et al.* 2011). Alternatively, it is known that insects also need to get cholesterol and other fatty acids in the diet (Blitzer *et al.* 2005) and, as the *Wolbachia* and other bacteria do not synthesise cholesterol, they might need to get it from the insect host (Lin and Rikihisa 2003, Wu *et al.* 2004). Cholesterol is known to be a key fatty acid necessary for successful replication of flaviviruses and that must be obtained from the host cell (Lu *et al.* 1999, Mackenzie *et al.* 2007). Likewise *Plasmodium* also depend on the mosquito lipids (Atella *et al.* 2009), suggesting that cholesterol may be a critical nutrient required by both the pathogen and the *Wolbachia* within the mosquito.

The distribution of *Wolbachia* in different tissues of the mosquito, as well as the density of the same insect host cells may be an important determinant in the ability of bacteria to interfere with the pathogens. *Wolbachia* strains that provide protection in *Drosophila simulans* Sturtevant, are closely related to wMelPop from *D. melanogaster* and are also found in high densities in flies (Osborne *et al.* 2009). But recently, the non-virulent strain *w*Mel (also from *Drosophila*), although present in much lower densities than *w*MelPop, promotes significant protection against DENV-2 in transinfected *Ae. aegypti* mosquitoes, resulting in a total blockage of dengue transmission under experimental conditions (Walker *et al.* 2011). Perhaps, a combination of bacterial tissue tropism, host immunity upregulation and competition for host cell resources is what is needed for pathogen blockage.

Contrarily to observations in *Drosophila*, the strains of *Wolbachia* (Hedges *et al.* 2008, Teixeira *et al.* 2008) which naturally reside in mosquitoes, have very limited ability to protect against viruses. *Ae. albopictus* infected with the non-virulent strains of *Wolbachia* (wAlbA and wAlbB) (Sinkins *et al.* 1995b) are still vectors of dengue virus (Kyle and Harris 2008). Likewise, *Armigeres subalbatus* Coquillett mosquitoes infected with another strain of *Wolbachia* showed no evidence of interference with the Japanese encephalitis virus (Tsai *et al.* 2006). Recently, the strain of *Wolbachia w*Pip native of *Culex quinquefasciatus* Say, was shown to have some protective effect against West Nile virus (Glaser and Meola 2010). However, this effect was much less pronounced when compared with the effects on dengue virus in transinfected *Ae. aegypti* (Moreira *et al.* 2009, Walker *et al.* 2011).

Practical application

The practical approach of using *Wolbachia* to control the spread of mosquito-borne diseases has been around for a long time (Curtis and Sinkins 1998, Rasgon and Scott 2004a, Sinkins *et al.* 1997). The mechanism of CI has been experimentally used in the wild in order to eradicate a population of *Cx. quinquefasciatus* (formerly: *Culex pipiens fatigans*) in Burma. Although adult numbers decreased to very low levels, the authors were not able to completely eliminate the local vector population (Laven 1967). More than a decade ago it has been proposed to use *Wolbachia* as a tool for spreading gene(s) of interest in field populations. The initial idea was to transform this bacterium by placing, for example, a refractoriness gene and, with the action of cytoplasmic incompatibility (CI) the bacteria would invade the wild population carrying the gene of interest (Curtis and Sinkins 1998). However since then, several laboratories have been trying to transform the bacteria with no success and the inability of this microorganism to live in a cell free medium appears to be the main impairment.

The CI mechanism has been proposed as an alternative to the Sterile Insect Technique (SIT) where males harbouring a different *Wolbachia* strain from the one present in one particular area could be released and suppress local mosquito population by effectively sterilizing their female counterparts (Calvitti *et al.* 2010). *Ae. polynesiensis* is the main vector of human filariasis in the South Pacific. The use of incompatible *Wolbachia*-infected mosquito strains is been sought as infected males can be released and then decrease natural mosquito populations through the CI mechanism (Chambers *et al.* 2011).

The discovery that certain strains of *Wolbachia* may interact with pathogens by blocking their development in mosquitoes shifted the focus for the use of this bacterium and the previous life-shortening approach has been put on hold in favour of other, more effective, strategies. More recently, the use of *Wolbachia*-transinfected mosquito strains shows the potential of causing significant effects in disease control programmes around the world.

After a long and broad risk analysis step performed by two Australian research and regulatory agencies (CSIRO and APVMA) (Murphy *et al.* 2010) the release of *Wolbachia*-infected mosquitoes in the wild has been approved (DeBarro *et al.* 2011). In the beginning of January 2011 two localities that previously had undergone through a vast programme of community engagement, received the first *Wolbachia*-positive *Ae. aegypti* mosquitoes in nature (http://www.eliminatedengue.org). This process was followed by 9-10 weeks of adult mosquitoes releases and even with the occurrence of a cyclone they were able to invade natural populations, reaching up to 100% after the introduction has been halted (Hoffmann *et al.* 2011) (Figure 2). Soon the same approach will be used in other countries as Vietnam, Thailand, Indonesia and Brazil. If the *Wolbachia*-positive mosquitoes released in the field have the same ability of blocking the dengue virus the way it has been shown in laboratory conditions it will bring a big impact on disease control in the world. Further studies using the available *Wolbachia-Aedes* strains towards other dengue serotypes and other arboviroses such as yellow fever are most welcomed to expand the potential use of this strategy towards other diseases (Van den Hurk *et al.* 2012).

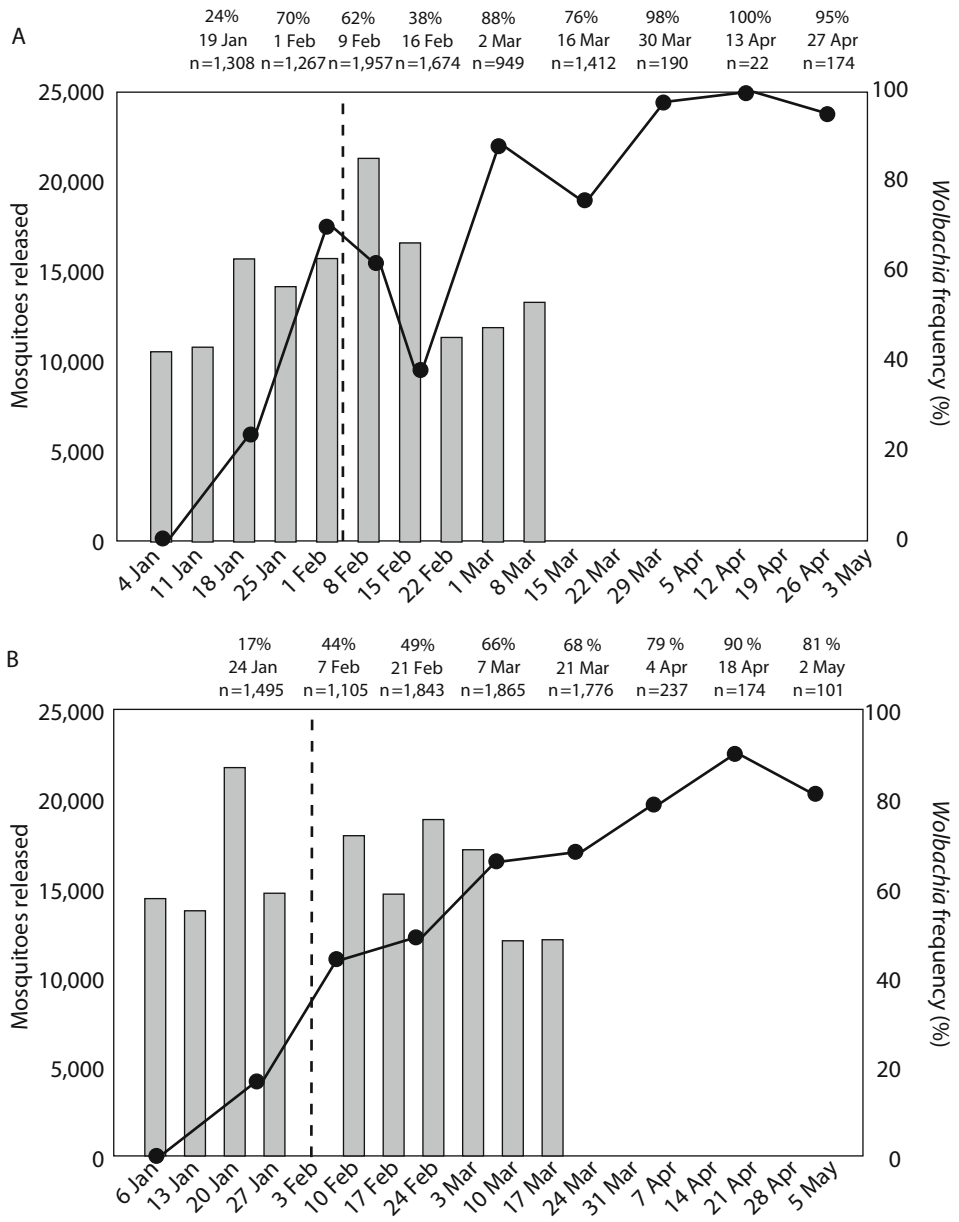


Figure 2. Number of mosquitoes released, timing of releases, and changes in infection frequencies over time. Data based on monitoring with ovitraps at (A) Yorkeys Knob and (B) Gordonvale. Ten releases were carried out at each site. Lower numbers were collected late in the season because of a reduction in trapping intensity and the advent of the dry season. Tropical Cyclone Yasi landed on 3 February (dotted line) and disrupted Wolbachia *monitoring collections at Yorkeys Knob. A planned release at Gordonvale on 3 February was cancelled (Hoffmann* et al. *2011).*

Acknowledgements

LAM is a fellow of CNPq and funded by CNPq, FAPEMIG and the Brazilian Ministry of Health.

References

Adams B and Kapan DD (2009) Man bites mosquito: understanding the contribution of human movement to vector-borne disease dynamics. PLoS One 4: e6763.

Atella GC, Bittencourt-Cunha PR, Nunes RD, Shahabuddin M and Silva-Neto MA (2009) The major insect lipoprotein is a lipid source to mosquito stages of malaria parasite. Acta Trop 109: 159-162.

Attardo GM, Hansen IA, Shiao SH and Raikhel AS (2006) Identification of two cationic amino acid transporters required for nutritional signaling during mosquito reproduction. J Exp Biol 209: 3071-3078.

Bandi C, Anderson TJ, Genchi C and Blaxter ML (1998) Phylogeny of *Wolbachia* in filarial nematodes. Proc Biol Sci 265: 2407-2413.

Bandi C, Trees AJ and Brattig NW (2001) *Wolbachia* in filarial nematodes: evolutionary aspects and implications for the pathogenesis and treatment of filarial diseases. Vet Parasitol 98: 215-238.

Barclay E (2008) Is climate change affecting dengue in the Americas? Lancet 371: 973-974.

DeBarro PJ, Murphy B, Jansen CC and Murray J (2011) The proposed release of the yellow fever mosquito, *Aedes aegypti* containing a naturally occurring strain of *Wolbachia pipientis*, a question of regulatory responsibility. J Verbr Lebensm, DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/s00003-011-0671-x.

Bian G, Xu Y, Lu P, Xie Y and Xi Z (2010) The endosymbiotic bacterium *Wolbachia* induces resistance to dengue virus in *Aedes aegypti*. PLoS Pathog 6: e1000833.

Blitzer EJ, Vyazunova I and Lan Q (2005) Functional analysis of AeSCP-2 using gene expression knockdown in the yellow fever mosquito, Aedes aegypti. Insect Mol Biol 14: 301-307.

Braig HR, Guzman H, Tesh RB and O'Neill SL (1994) Replacement of the natural *Wolbachia* symbiont of *Drosophila simulans* with a mosquito counterpart. Nature 367: 453-455.

Braquart-Varnier C, Lachat M, Herbinière J, Johnson M, Caubet Y, Bouchon D and Sicard M (2008) *Wolbachia* mediate variation of host immunocompetence. PLoS One 3: e3286.

Breeuwer JA and Jacobs G (1996) *Wolbachia*: intracellular manipulators of mite reproduction. Exp Appl Acarol 20: 421-434.

Brownlie JC, Cass BN, Riegler M, Witsenburg JJ, Iturbe-Ormaetxe I, McGraw EA and O'Neill SL (2009) Evidence for metabolic provisioning by a common invertebrate endosymbiont, *Wolbachia* pipientis, during periods of nutritional stress. PLoS Pathog 5: e1000368.

Brownstein JS, Hett E and O'Neill SL (2003) The potential of virulent *Wolbachia* to modulate disease transmission by insects. J Invertebr Pathol 84: 24-29.

Calvitti M, Moretti R, Lampazzi E, Bellini R and Dobson SL (2010) Characterization of a new *Aedes albopictus* (Diptera: Culicidae)-*Wolbachia pipientis* (Rickettsiales: Rickettsiaceae) symbiotic association generated by artificial transfer of the wPip strain from *Culex pipiens* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Med Entomol 47: 179-187.

Chambers EW, Hapairai L, Peel BA, Bossin H and Dobson SL (2011) Male mating competitiveness of a *Wolbachia*-introgressed *Aedes polynesiensis* strain under semi-field conditions. PLoS Negl Trop Dis 5: e1271.

Cook PE, McMeniman CJ and O'Neill SL (2008) Modifying insect population age structure to control vector-borne disease. In: Aksoy S (ed.) Transgenesis and the management of vector-borne disease. Landes Biosciences, Austin, TX, USA.

Cordaux R, Michel-Salzat A and Bouchon D (2001) *Wolbachia* infection in crustaceans: novel hosts and potential routes for horizontal transmission. J Evol Biol 14: 237-243.

Curtis CF and Sinkins SP (1998) *Wolbachia* as a possible means of driving genes into populations. Parasitology 116 Suppl: S111-115.

Dobson SL, Marsland EJ and Rattanadechakul W (2001) *Wolbachia*-induced cytoplasmic incompatibility in single- and superinfected *Aedes albopictus* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Med Entomol 38: 382-387.

Dobson SL, Rattanadechakul W and Marsland EJ (2004) Fitness advantage and cytoplasmic incompatibility in *Wolbachia* single- and superinfected *Aedes albopictus*. Heredity 93: 135-142.

Dye C (1992) The analysis of parasite transmission by bloodsucking insects. Annu Rev Entomol 37: 1-19.

Fytrou A, Schofield PG, Kraaijeveld AR and Hubbard SF (2006) *Wolbachia* infection suppresses both host defence and parasitoid counter-defence. Proc Biol Sci 273: 791-796.

Glaser RL and Meola MA (2010) The native *Wolbachia* endosymbionts of *Drosophila melanogaster* and *Culex quinquefasciatus* increase host resistance to West Nile virus infection. PLoS One 5: e11977.

Gotoh T, Noda H and Hong XY (2003) *Wolbachia* distribution and cytoplasmic incompatibility based on a survey of 42 spider mite species (Acari: Tetranychidae) in Japan. Heredity 91: 208-216.

Gould EA and Solomon T (2008) Pathogenic flaviviruses. Lancet 371: 500-509.

Hedges LM, Brownlie JC, O'Neill SL and Johnson KN (2008) *Wolbachia* and virus protection in insects. Science 322: 702.

Hertig M (1936) The rickettsia, *Wolbachia pipientis* (gen. et sp. n.) and associated inclusions of the mosquito, *Culex pipiens*. Parasitology 28: 453-486.

Hertig M and Wolbach SB (1924) Studies on rickettsia-like micro-organisms in insects. J Med Res 44: 329-374.327.

Hilgenboecker K, Hammerstein P, Schlattmann P, Telschow A and Werren JH (2008) How many species are infected with *Wolbachia*? A statistical analysis of current data. FEMS Microbiol Lett 281: 215-220.

Hoffmann AA, Montgomery BL, Popovici J, Iturbe-Ormaetxe I, Johnson PH, Muzzi F, Greenfield M, Durkan M, Leong YS, Dong Y, Cook H, Axford J, Callahan AG, Kenny N, Omodei C, McGraw EA, Ryan PA, Ritchie SA, Turelli M and O'Neill SL (2011) Successful establishment of *Wolbachia* in *Aedes* populations to suppress dengue transmission. Nature 476: 454-457.

Hughes GL, Koga R, Xue P, Fukatsu T and Rasgon JL (2011) *Wolbachia* infections are virulent and inhibit the human malaria parasite *Plasmodium falciparum* in *Anopheles gambiae*. PLoS Pathog 7: e1002043.

Huszar T and Imler JL (2008) *Drosophila* viruses and the study of antiviral host-defense. Adv Virus Res 72: 227-265.

Jeyaprakash A and Hoy MA (2000) Long PCR improves *Wolbachia* DNA amplification: wsp sequences found in 76% of sixty-three arthropod species. Insect Mol Biol 9: 393-405.

Kambris Z, Blagborough AM, Pinto SB, Blagrove MS, Godfray HC, Sinden RE and Sinkins SP (2010) *Wolbachia* stimulates immune gene expression and inhibits *Plasmodium* development in *Anopheles gambiae*. PLoS Pathog 6: e1001143.

Kambris Z, Cook PE, Phuc HK and Sinkins SP (2009) Immune activation by life-shortening *Wolbachia* and reduced filarial competence in mosquitoes. Science 326: 134-136.

Kittayapong P, Baisley KJ, Baimai V and O'Neill SL (2000) Distribution and diversity of *Wolbachia* infections in Southeast Asian mosquitoes (Diptera: Culicidae). J Med Entomol 37: 340-345.

Kumari R, Kumar K and Chauhan LS (2011) First dengue virus detection in *Aedes albopictus* from Delhi, India: Its breeding ecology and role in dengue transmission. Trop Med Int Health 16: 949-954.

Kyle JL and Harris E (2008) Global spread and persistence of dengue. Annu Rev Microbiol 62: 71-92.

Laven H (1967) Eradication of *Culex pipiens fatigans* through cytoplasmic incompatibility. Nature 216: 383-384.

Lin M and Rikihisa Y (2003) Obligatory intracellular parasitism by *Ehrlichia chaffeensis* and *Anaplasma phagocytophilum* involves caveolae and glycosylphosphatidylinositol-anchored proteins. Cell Microbiol 5: 809-820.

Lu YE, Cassese T and Kielian M (1999) The cholesterol requirement for sindbis virus entry and exit and characterization of a spike protein region involved in cholesterol dependence. J Virol 73: 4272-4278.

Mackenzie JM, Khromykh AA and Parton RG (2007) Cholesterol manipulation by West Nile virus perturbs the cellular immune response. Cell Host Microbe 2: 229-239.

McMeniman CJ, Hughes GL and O'Neill SL (2011) A *Wolbachia* symbiont in *Aedes aegypti* disrupts mosquito egg development to a greater extent when mosquitoes feed on nonhuman versus human blood. J Med Entomol 48: 76-84.

McMeniman CJ, Lane AM, Fong AW, Voronin DA, Iturbe-Ormaetxe I, Yamada R, McGraw EA and O'Neill SL (2008) Host adaptation of a *Wolbachia* strain after long-term serial passage in mosquito cell lines. Appl Environ Microbiol 74: 6963-6969.

McMeniman CJ, Lane RV, Cass BN, Fong AW, Sidhu M, Wang YF and O'Neill SL (2009) Stable introduction of a life-shortening *Wolbachia* infection into the mosquito *Aedes aegypti*. Science 323: 141-144.

Meyer R (1989) Estimation of vectorial capacity: pathogen extrinsic incubation and vector competence. Bull Soc Vector Ecol 14: 60-66.

Moreira LA, Iturbe-Ormaetxe I, Jeffery JAL, Lu G, Pyke AT, Hedges LM, Rocha BC, Hall-Mendelin S, Day A, Riegler M, Hugo LE, Johnson KN, Kay BH, McGraw EA, Van den Hurk AF, Ryan PA and O'Neill SL (2009) A *Wolbachia* symbiont in *Aedes aegypti* limits infection with dengue, Chikungunya and *Plasmodium*. Cell 139: 1268-1278.

Murphy B, Jansen C, Murray J and De Barro P (2010) Risk analysis on the Australian release of *Aedes aegypti* (L.) (Diptera: Culicidae) containing *Wolbachia*. CSIRO Report, Australia.

Ng LF and Ojcius DM (2009) Chikungunya fever – re-emergence of an old disease. Microbes and Infection 11: 1163-1164.

Osborne SE, Leong YS, O'Neill SL and Johnson KN (2009) Variation in antiviral protection mediated by different *Wolbachia* strains in *Drosophila simulans*. PLoS Pathog 5: e1000656.

Pachauri RK and Reisinger A (2007) Climate Change 2007: Synthesis Report. IPCC, Geneva, Switzerland.

Rasgon JL and Scott TW (2004a) Impact of population age structure on *Wolbachia* transgene driver efficacy: ecologically complex factors and release of genetically modified mosquitoes. Insect Biochem Mol Biol 34: 707-713.

Rasgon JL and Scott TW (2004b) An initial survey for *Wolbachia* (Rickettsiales: Rickettsiaceae) infections in selected California mosquitoes (Diptera: Culicidae). J Med Entomol 41: 255-257.

Rasgon JL, Styer LM and Scott TW (2003) *Wolbachia*-induced mortality as a mechanism to modulate pathogen transmission by vector arthropods. J Med Entomol 40: 125-132.

Ratsitorahina M, Harisoa J, Ratovonjato J, Biacabe S, Reynes JM, Zeller H, Raoelina Y, Talarmin A, Richard V and Louis Soares J (2008) Outbreak of dengue and Chikungunya fevers, Toamasina, Madagascar, 2006. Emerg Infect Dis 14: 1135-1137.

Ricci I, Cancrini G, Gabrielli S, D'Amelio S and Favi G (2002) Searching for *Wolbachia* (Rickettsiales: Rickettsiaceae) in mosquitoes (Diptera: Culicidae): large polymerase chain reaction survey and new identifications. J Med Entomol 39: 562-567.

Ruang-Areerate T and Kittayapong P (2006) *Wolbachia* transinfection in *Aedes aegypti*: a potential gene driver of dengue vectors. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 103: 12534-12539.

Ruang-Areerate T, Kittayapong P, Baimai V and O'Neill SL (2003) Molecular phylogeny of *Wolbachia* endosymbionts in Southeast Asian mosquitoes (Diptera: Culicidae) based on wsp gene sequences. J Med Entomol 40: 1-5.

Rudnick A and Chan YC (1965) Dengue type 2 virus in naturally infected *Aedes albopictus* mosquitoes in Singapore. Science 149: 638-639.

Sinkins SP, Braig HR and O'Neill SL (1995a) *Wolbachia pipientis*: bacterial density and unidirectional cytoplasmic incompatibility between infected populations of *Aedes albopictus*. Exp Parasitol 81: 284-291.

Sinkins SP, Braig HR and O'Neill SL (1995b) *Wolbachia* superinfections and the expression of cytoplasmic incompatibility. Proc Biol Sci 261: 325-330.

Sinkins SP, Curtis CF and O'Neill SL (1997) The potential application of inherited symbiont systems to pest control. In: O'Neill SL, Hoffmann AA and Werren JH (eds.) Influential passengers. Oxford University Press, New York, NY, USA, pp. 155-175.

Sinkins SP and O'Neill SL (2000) *Wolbachia* as a vehicle to modify insect populations. In: James AA (ed.) Insect transgenesis: methods and applications, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, USA, pp. 271-287.

Staples JE, Breiman RF and Powers AM (2009) Chikungunya fever: an epidemiological review of a re-emerging infectious disease. Clin Infect Dis 49: 942-948.

Stouthamer R, Breeuwer JA and Hurst GD (1999) *Wolbachia pipientis*: microbial manipulator of arthropod reproduction. Annu Rev Microbiol 53: 71-102.

Teixeira L, Ferreira A and Ashburner M (2008) The bacterial symbiont *Wolbachia* induces resistance to RNA viral infections in *Drosophila melanogaster*. PLoS Biol 6: e2.

Tortosa P, Charlat S, Labbé P, Dehecq JS, Barré H and Weill M (2010) *Wolbachia* age-sex-specific density in *Aedes albopictus*: a host evolutionary response to cytoplasmic incompatibility? PLoS One 5: e9700.

Tsai KH, Huang CG, Wu WJ, Chuang CK, Lin CC and Chen WJ (2006) Parallel infection of Japanese encephalitis virus and *Wolbachia* within cells of mosquito salivary glands. J Med Entomol 43: 752-756.

Tsetsarkin KA, Chen R, Leal G, Forrester N, Higgs S, Huang J and Weaver SC (2011) Chikungunya virus emergence is constrained in Asia by lineage-specific adaptive landscapes. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 108: 7872-7877.

Van den Hurk AF, Hall-Mendelin S, Pyke AT, Frentiu FD, McElroy K, Day A, Higgs S and O'Neill SL (2012) Impact of *Wolbachia* on Infection with Chikungunya and Yellow Fever Viruses in the Mosquito Vector *Aedes aegypti*. PLoS Negl Trop Dis. 6: e1892

Walker T, Johnson PH, Moreira LA, Iturbe-Ormaetxe I, Frentiu FD, McMeniman CJ, Leong YS, Dong Y, Axford J, Kriesner P, Lloyd AL, Ritchie SA, O'Neill SL and Hoffmann AA (2011) The wMel *Wolbachia* strain blocks dengue and invades caged *Aedes aegypti* populations. Nature 476: 450-U101.

Werren JH, Baldo L and Clark ME (2008) *Wolbachia*: master manipulators of invertebrate biology. Nat Rev Microbiol 6: 741-751.

Werren JH, Zhang W and Guo LR (1995) Evolution and phylogeny of *Wolbachia*: reproductive parasites of arthropods. Proc Biol Sci 261: 55-63.

WHO (2009) Dengue and dengue hemorragic fever. Fact sheet, WHO, Geneva, Switzerland.

Wright JD and Barr AR (1980) The ultrastructure and symbiotic relationships of *Wolbachia* of mosquitoes of the *Aedes scutellaris* group. J Ultrastruct Res 72: 52-64.

Wright JD and Wang BT (1980) Observations on *Wolbachiae* in mosquitoes. J Inv Pathol 35: 200-208.

Wu M, Sun LV, Vamathevan J, Riegler M, Deboy R, Brownlie JC, McGraw EA, Martin W, Esser C, Ahmadinejad N, Wiegand C, Madupu R, Beanan MJ, Brinkac LM, Daugherty SC, Durkin AS, Kolonay JF, Nelson WC, Mohamoud Y, Lee P, Berry K, Young MB, Utterback T, Weidman J, Nierman WC, Paulsen IT, Nelson KE, Tettelin H, O'Neill SL and Eisen JA (2004) Phylogenomics of the reproductive parasite *Wolbachia pipientis* wMel: a streamlined genome overrun by mobile genetic elements. PLoS Biol 2: E69.

Xi Z, Dean JL, Khoo C and Dobson SL (2005a) Generation of a novel *Wolbachia* infection in *Aedes albopictus* (Asian tiger mosquito) via embryonic microinjection. Insect Biochem Mol Biol 35: 903-910.

Xi Z, Khoo CC and Dobson SL (2005b) *Wolbachia* establishment and invasion in an *Aedes aegypti* laboratory population. Science 310: 326-328.

Xi Z, Ramirez JL and Dimopoulos G (2008) The *Aedes aegypti* toll pathway controls dengue virus infection. Plos Pathog 4: e1000098.

Yeap HL, Mee P, Walker T, Weeks AR, O'Neill SL, Johnson P, Ritchie SA, Richardson KM, Doig C, Endersby NM and Hoffmann AA (2011) Dynamics of the 'popcorn' *Wolbachia* infection in outbred *Aedes aegypti* informs prospects for mosquito vector control. Genetics 187: 583-595.

Yen JH (1975) Transovarial transmission of *Rickettsia*-like microorganisms in mosquitoes. Ann N Y Acad Sci 266: 152-161.

Yen JH and Barr AR (1971) New hypothesis of the cause of cytoplasmic incompatibility in *Culex pipiens* L. Nature 232: 657-658.

9. Behaviour of sandflies infected with *Leishmania*

Paul D. Ready and Matthew E. Rogers

Abstract

Leishmaniasis is a 'neglected tropical disease', and there have been some significant recent advances in research on how *Leishmania* species, the causative agents of the disease, affect the behaviour of phlebotomine sandflies, their insect vectors. This chapter briefly describes the eco-epidemiology of some natural transmission cycles, focusing on the ones that are susceptible to laboratory experimentation. Research on these transmission cycles has often been prompted by their public health importance, although some vector-parasite associations have become models because of the ease of laboratory experimentation. The principal models of experimental infection are explained in some detail, to enable us to review the current knowledge of changes in sandfly behavioural traits that have been specifically related to *Leishmania* infections and might affect leishmaniasis transmission. Finally, we discuss how this knowledge could lead to new ways of controlling sandflies and leishmaniasis.

Keywords: *Leishmania* manipulation, parasite-vector interactions, phlebotomine behaviour, phlebotomine sandflies.

Introduction: eco-epidemiology of natural sandfly-*Leishmania* associations

Leishmaniasis is a 'neglected tropical disease', causing a high burden of disease in affected areas (WHO 2012). The parasites are vectored by phlebotomine sandflies. There have been some significant recent advances in research on how *Leishmania* species, the causative agents of the disease, affect the behaviour of phlebotomine sandflies, their insect vectors. The aims of this chapter are firstly to review the current knowledge of changes in sandfly behavioural traits that have been specifically related to *Leishmania* infections and might affect leishmaniasis transmission, and secondly to discuss how this knowledge could lead to new ways of controlling sandflies and leishmaniasis.

The main models of experimental infection will be explained in the Section 'Experimental models of *Leishmania*-sandfly interactions', but first we set out briefly the eco-epidemiology of their natural transmission cycles (Table 1). Research on these transmission cycles has often been prompted by their public health importance, although some vector-parasite associations have become models because of the ease of laboratory experimentation.

Old World zoonotic cutaneous leishmaniasis and anthroponotic cutaneous leishmaniasis

Old World (OW) zoonotic cutaneous leishmaniasis (ZCL) is mostly caused by *Leishmania (Leishmania) major* Yakimoff and Schokhor, which is specifically transmitted by *Phlebotomus (Phlebotomus) papatasi* Scopoli in North Africa and southwest Asia, *Phlebotomus (Phlebotomus) duboscqi* Neveu-Lemaire in sub-Saharan Africa and probably *Phlebotomus (Phlebotomus) salehi* Mesghali in southeast Iran, Pakistan and northwest India (Desjeux 2001, Killick-Kendrick 1990, Ready 2013). There are often tens of thousands of new human cases each year (WHO 2012), and most transmission occurs in arid rural environments where people live close to the gerbil and other rodent reservoir hosts (Parvizi and Ready 2008). In addition to the public health importance of ZCL, the transmission of *Le. major* by *P. papatasi* is an important laboratory model because

W. Takken and C.J.M. Koenraadt (eds.), *Ecology of parasite-vector interactions*, Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases 3, DOI 10.3920/978-90-8686-744-8_9, © Wageningen Academic Publishers 2013

*Table 1. Natural sandfly-*Leishmania *associations and laboratory models of experimental transmission. Of all these species, only those in subgenus* Leishmania (Viannia) *usually develop in the sandfly hindgut before anterior migration.*

Leishmaniasis	Region (bioclimate)	Parasite	Principal vector species or subgenus	Main references to laboratory models
Anthroponotic cutaneous leishmaniasis (ACL)	Africa, Asia (semi-arid)	*Leishmania (Leishmania) tropica*	*Phlebotomus (Paraphlebotomus) sergenti* *Phlebotomus (Adlerius) arabicus*	Killick-Kendrick (1990) Svobodová *et al.* (2006)
Zoonotic cutaneous leishmaniasis (ZCL)	Africa, Asia (arid, semi-arid)	*Leishmania (Le.) major*	*Phlebotomus (Phlebotomus) papatasi* *Phlebotomus (Phlebotomus) duboscqi*	Dobson *et al.* (2010) Sadlova and Volf (2009)
	Neotropics (equatorial, sub-humid)	*Leishmania (Viannia) braziliensis* and related species	*Lutzomyia (Helcocyrtomyia)* species *Lutzomyia (Nyssomyia)* species *Lutzomyia (Psychodopygus)* species *Lutzomyia (Trichophoromyia)* species *Lutzomyia* species group Migonei *Lutzomyia* species group Verrucarum	Killick-Kendrick (1990) Walters *et al.* (1989)
		Leishmania (Le.) mexicana and related species	*Lutzomyia (Nyssomyia) flaviscutellata* complex	Killick-Kendrick (1990)
			Lutzomyia (Lutzomyia) longipalpis (Experimental vector)	Bates (2007) Rogers *et al.* (2002) Rogers and Bates (2007)
Anthroponotic visceral leishmaniasis (AVL)	Indian subcontinent, north-east Africa (sub-humid)	*Leishmania (Le.) donovani*	*Phlebotomus (Euphlebotomus) argentipes* *Phlebotomus (Larroussius) orientalis*	Killick-Kendrick (1990) Molyneux and Killick-Kendrick (1987)
Zoonotic visceral leishmaniasis (ZVL)	Mediterranean, Asia, neotropics (semi-arid, sub-humid, equatorial)	*Leishmania (Le.) infantum* (Member of *Le. donovani* complex)	*Phlebotomus (Larroussius)* species *Lutzomyia longipalpis* *Lutzomyia evansi* species group Verrucarum	Killick-Kendrick (1990) Molyneux and Killick-Kendrick (1987) Rogers *et al.* (2010)

of the ease of culturing all the parasite developmental stages, colonizing this sand fly species, performing experimental transmissions to inbred mice (Kamhawi 2006) and even demonstrating genetic exchange between parasites within the vector (Akopyants *et al.* 2009).

In contrast, much less experimental research has been performed on the transmission of the other widespread causative agent of OW cutaneous leishmaniasis, *Leishmania (Leishmania) tropica* Wright (Killick-Kendrick 1990, Svobodová *et al.* 2006), and this can be explained by the greater difficulties of culturing these parasites and vectors as well as a lower public health profile. This parasite occurs in many of the same regions as *Le. major*, but it is usually associated with urban areas where it causes OW anthroponotic cutaneous leishmaniasis (ACL) and is transmitted by *Phlebotomus (Paraphlebotomus) sergenti* Parrot and related vectors, although it can cause ZCL and *Phlebotomus (Adlerius) arabicus* Theodor is an incriminated vector (Svobodová *et al.* 2006, Volf and Myskova 2007).

New World zoonotic cutaneous leishmaniasis

There are far more *Leishmania* species causing New World (NW) ZCL (Lainson *et al.* 1994). Those classified in the subgenus *Leishmania* are mostly in the *Leishmania mexicana* species complex, including *Le. mexicana* Biagi and *Leishmania amazonensis* Lainson and Shaw. These are easily cultured to produce developmental stages equivalent to those of *Le. major*, but unfortunately the natural vectors of the *Lutzomyia (Nyssomyia) flaviscutellata* Mangabeira complex are not so experimentally tractable (Killick-Kendrick 1990). Consequently, a permissive but unnatural vector, *Lutzomyia (Lutzomyia) longipalpis* (Lutz and Neiva), is often used for experimental transmissions (Rogers *et al.* 2002, 2004, 2008).

The vectors of the *Le. mexicana* species complex are often abundant in non-climax forests (Ready *et al.* 1983). In contrast, the more diverse *Lutzomyia* vectors of NW *Leishmania (Viannia)* species are usually more abundant in tropical forests and formerly forested regions (Killick-Kendrick 1990, Lainson *et al.* 1994, Ready 2013), where most NW ZCL is acquired (Desjeux 2001, WHO 2012). Unfortunately, neither the parasites, usually *Leishmania (Viannia) braziliensis* Vianna and related species, nor most of their vectors are suited to routine laboratory experimentation (Killick-Kendrick 1990).

Anthroponotic visceral leishmaniasis

Anthroponotic visceral leishmaniasis (AVL) is restricted to the Old World, and most transmission of the causative agent, *Leishmania (Leishmania) donovani* Laveran and Mesnil, is by *Phlebotomus (Euphlebotomus) argentipes* Annandale and Brunetti (Killick-Kendrick 1990) in peridomestic habitats in northeast India and nearby Bangladesh and Nepal (Bern *et al.* 2010).

Zoonotic visceral leishmaniasis

Unlike AVL, zoonotic visceral leishmaniasis (ZVL) occurs in both the Old World and the New World. This probably results from the causative agent, *Leishmania (Leishmania) infantum* Nicolle, being imported to the Americas in the reservoir host, the domestic dog (Quinnell and Courtenay 2009), and finding there a permissive vector, *L. longipalpis* (Killick-Kendrick 1990, Volf and Myskova 2007), that was pre-adapted to peridomestic habitats (Ready 2013). The OW vectors are usually *Phlebotomus (Larroussius)* species (Ready 2010).

Experimental models of *Leishmania*-sandfly interactions

As pool feeders, the females of *Phlebotomus* and *Lutzomyia* species obtain blood meals from mammals by using their mouthparts to break superficial capillaries and surrounding cutaneous tissues. Damage to the skin may release amastigotes of *Leishmania* that live within the phagolysosomes of macrophages and other phagocytes (Bates 2007, Kamhawi 2006). Shortly after taking a blood meal, the increase in pH and decrease in temperature in the midgut of the sandfly stimulate the parasite's transformation from the superficially aflagellated and rounded amastigote to the flagellated, more elongated and motile procyclic promastigote (Figure 1). This initiates a sequence of further morphological and molecular transformations, culminating in the occurrence of metacyclic promastogotes, the form infective to mammals, in the anterior thoracic midgut and foregut. This process has been confirmed by many observers of the development of *Le. major* in *P. papatasi* and a few *Leishmania* species in *L. longipalpis*, but the details for most *Leishmania*-sandfly combinations are either unknown or rely on limited reports (Table 1), as illustrated by the following examples.

Old World zoonotic cutaneous leishmaniasis models

Among the best studied interactions are those between *Le. major* and its natural vectors *P. papatasi* and the related *P. duboscqi* (Bates 2007, Kamhawi 2006). Two main waves of parasite loss occur in infected flies, corresponding to the digestion of the blood meal and its defecation (Pimenta *et al.* 1997, Rogers *et al.* 2008). The weakly motile procyclics divide in the blood meal within the sandfly's peritrophic membrane, a chitinous matrix secreted by the midgut. This matrix (Pimenta *et al.* 1997) and *Leishmania* secreted phosphoglycans (Kamhawi 2006) protect the procyclics from the sandfly's digestive proteases, including trypsins (Secundino *et al.* 2010). Transformation to the more motile nectomonad stage occurs on day 2-3, and coincides with disintegration of the peritrophic membrane. *Le. major* nectomonad promastigotes are known to congregate at the anterior end of the peritrophic membrane, suggesting that they are released by the action of their own chitinase (Shakarian and Dwyer 2000) and perhaps that of the sandfly (Ramalho-Ortigao *et al.* 2005, Sadlova and Volf 2009). It appears that nectomonads can only colonize the anterior thoracic midgut after the peritrophic membrane is completely broken down by sandfly chitinases (Sadlova and Volf 2009). Midgut peristalsis helps excrete the blood meal remains, and Vaidyanathan (2005) identified a secreted myoinhibitory neuropeptide of *Le. major* that arrested peristalsis. The non-replicating nectomonads have a predominant surface lipophosphoglycan (LPG) (Dobson *et al.* 2010), and this glycoconjugate protects them against agglutinating sandfly lectins (Kamhawi 2006) and permits specific attachment to the epithelium of midgut microvilli by binding to a galectin (Kamhawi *et al.* 2004), without which they can be expelled in the blood meal remains. The nectomonads migrate to the anterior thoracic midgut, where they transform by day 4 to leptomonad promastigotes (Kamhawi 2006). These replicate and by day 5-7 form large clusters around the stomodeal valve, at the junction of midgut and foregut. By day 6-9 some leptomonads have transformed to infective-stage metacyclic promastigotes, which were associated with a glycoconjugate-containing plug by Davies *et al.* (1990), one that might block the smooth ingestion of a subsequent bloodmeal and thereby facilitate transmission by regurgitation. Until the report of Killick-Kendrick and Rioux (2002), there were still supporters of an alternative hypothesis, namely that metacyclics and related forms had to reach the proboscis for transmission by inoculation (Bates 2007).

This model contains most of the interactions between *Leishmania* and the sandfly alimentary track, but only rarely has it been inferred that any interaction can alter sandfly behaviour in a way that

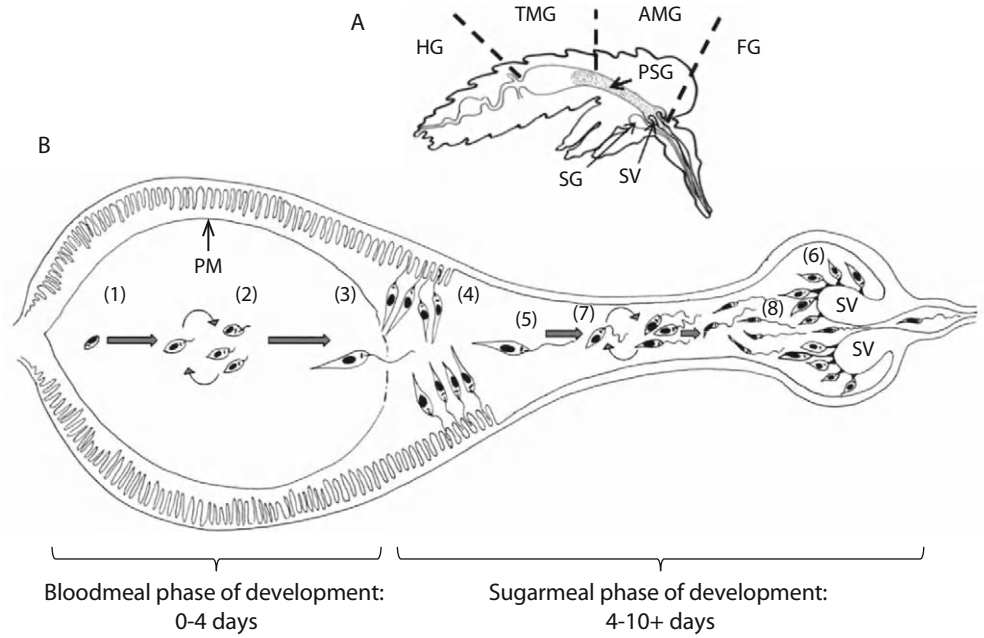


Figure 1. Typical development in a sandfly host of Leishmania (Leishmania) *species. (A) Anatomy of sandfly alimentary tract indicating position of promastigote secretory gel (PSG – stippled area). (B)* Leishmania *development in the sandfly midgut: (1) Amastigotes enter sandfly midgut when a sandfly bloodfeeds from an infected host. (2) Within 12-24 hours the amastigotes transform into a weakly motile, procyclic promastigote form which multiplies within the digesting bloodmeal. (3) At the end of digestion the procyclics transform into the non-divisional nectomonad forms which migrate through the peritophic matrix (PM) into the ectoperitophic space, before the bloodmeal is defecated. (4) Nectomonads attach to the microvilli of the midgut to resist expulsion by defecation then detach and resume their forward migration from the midgut (TMG) to the anterior thoracic midgut (AMG). (5) The majority of nectomonads transform into leptomonad promastigotes and resume multiplication in the anterior thoracic midgut. (6) It is suspected that a smaller proportion of nectomonads or leptomonads that first arrive at the stomodeal valve (SV) initiate a biological plug of parasites by attaching to the chitinous surface of the valve. To do this these haptomonad promastigotes modify their flagellum into a hemidesmosome-like attachment plaque. (7) Leptomonads are the main producers of filamentous proteophosphoglycan, which polymerises into a gel-like blockage in the anterior gut (the PSG) which allows parasites to access the foregut (FG) and promotes a regurgitative mode of transmission. (8) Finally, leptomonads differentiate into the mammal-infective metacyclic promastigotes which are deposited into skin when the sandfly takes another bloodmeal. HG, hindgut. SG, salivary gland. Not to scale.*

modifies transmission (see Section 'Manipulation of *Leishmania* of sandflies feeding on mammalian hosts'). Most interactions would seem to lead to adaptive selection of parasite strains and species capable of developing in their regional sandfly vectors. For example, the West African Seidman strain of *Le. major* has LPG permitting growth in the African *P. duboscqi* but not in the Mediterranean and Asiatic *P. papatasi* (Joshi *et al.* 2002), and some Asiatic strains of *Le. major* only develop in their regional populations of *P. papatasi* (Dobson *et al.* 2010, Kamhawi 2006). Experimental evidence is required to demonstrate manipulation of sandfly behaviour, for example to show that parasite

chitinase might shorten the time between sandfly blood meals by causing the early rupture of the anterior peritrophic membrane. The chitinase of *Le. major* does damage the stomodeal valve of *P. papatasi* (Schlein *et al.* 1992), but there is no proof that this causes a change in sandfly behaviour facilitating transmission, namely regurgitation, as it may be only a pathogenic by-product of infection (Bates 2007). Little is known about sandfly defence against *Leishmania* infections and any modulation of this by the parasite. In addition to sandfly lectins (Kamhawi 2006), a defensin of *P. duboscqi* has anti-*Le. major* activity (Boulanger *et al.* 2004), but the activity was not shown to be specific and so it need not demonstrate adaptive selection by this sandfly to the parasite. The best evidence for parasite modulation of sandfly defences comes from the species specificity of the myoinhibitory neuropeptide of *Le. major*. It arrested peristalsis in the sandfly hindgut, fully in *P. papatasi* but incompletely in *L. longipalpis*, and 100% inhibition was caused only by lysates of *Le. major*, not those of *Le. donovani* or *Le. braziliensis* (Vaidyanathan, 2005).

New World zoonotic cutaneous leishmaniasis models

As already mentioned (Section 'Introduction: eco-epidemiology of natural sandfly-*Leishmania* associations', Table 1), *Le. mexicana* is not naturally transmitted by *L. longipalpis*, even though they both occur in the neotropics, and so the interactions between them are not necessarily those of a co-evolving parasite and vector. However, they do provide a robust laboratory model, one that has not only demonstrated a pattern of infection similar to that of *Le. major* in *P. papatasi*, but also has revealed novel aspects of *Leishmania* subgenus-vector interactions. Shared characteristics (Bates 2007, Rogers *et al.* 2002) include the protection against proteases afforded by procyclic secreted phosphoglycans and the sandfly peritrophic membrane, the release of nectomonads from the latter by chitinases (Ramalho-Ortigao *et al.* 2005, Rogers *et al.* 2008, Sant'Anna *et al.* 2009), the defensive properties of sandfly lectins and *Leishmania* inhibitors of sandfly gut peristalsis (Kamhawi 2006), the sequence of parasite transformations and forward migration, and the blockage caused by a stomodeal plug that facilitates transmission by regurgitation (Rogers *et al.* 2002, 2004; Stierhof *et al*., 1999). However, key differences are: the protective role (in the closely related *Le. amazonensis*) of the major parasite surface glycoprotein, the metalloproteinase gp63 or leishmanolysin, in the early stage of infection in *L. longipalpis* but not *P. duboscqi* (Hajmová *et al.* 2004); nectomonad midgut binding not mediated by LPG (Rogers *et al.* 2004; Kamhawi 2006); and, the demonstration that chitinase enhances transmission to mice (Rogers *et al.* 2008).

Novel findings have flowed from establishing that the stomodeal blockage is caused by a promastigote secretory gel (PSG), which contains mostly filamentous proteophosphoglycan (fPPG) secreted by leptomonads as they multiply in the anterior midgut (Rogers *et al.* 2004). Finally, leptomonad promastigotes differentiate into the infective metacyclic promastigotes which are regurgitated with the PSG during blood-feeding. The fPPG component of PSG causes substantial exacerbation of disease in mice (Rogers *et al.* 2004, 2009). Moreover, the blockage of the stomodeal valve (Rogers and Bates 2007) and the damage caused it by chitinase (Rogers *et al.* 2008) have been shown to manipulate the behaviour of *L. longipalpis* such that transmission is enhanced (see Section 'Manipulation of *Leishamania* of sandflies feeding on mammalian hosts').

There are no laboratory models for routinely investigating how *Leishmania (Viannia)* species develop in their natural neotropical vectors, and so there have been no demonstrations of parasite manipulation of sandflies. However, the development of *Le. braziliensis*, *Leishmania (Viannia) panamensis* Lainson and Shaw and related parasites have been observed in the unnatural vector *L. longipalpis* (Bates 2007), suspected vectors such as *Lutzomyia migonei* França (Nieves and Pimenta 2000) and other *Lutzomyia* species (Walters *et al.* 1989). Characteristically, *Leishmania (Viannia)*

species establish infections by attaching to the pylorus and hindgut after escaping from the peritrophic membrane. Despite this different route, and the possibility of midgut attachment by metacyclic-like forms (Kamhawi 2006), the end result is the secretion of PSG and its association with metacyclics in the anterior thoracic midgut of the sandfly (Bates 2007).

Anthroponotic visceral leishmaniasis models

It has not been possible to investigate routinely the development of infections of *Le. donovani* in *P. argentipes*, because of the difficulty of establishing colonies of this sandfly species. However, 20th century transmission studies in India reported parasite forms and development patterns consistent with those of *Le. major* and *Le. mexicana* (Molyneux and Killick-Kendrick 1987). We could find no experimental demonstrations of *Leishmania* manipulating the behaviour of *P. argentipes*, even though it is susceptible to the infection of several *Leishmania* species, including *Le. major* and *Le. tropica* (Kamhawi 2006).

Zoonotic visceral leishmaniasis models

The parasite is believed to have an Old World origin, and so it is interesting that the development of promastigotes of *Le. infantum* has been studied in a wild population of one of its European vectors, *Phlebotomus ariasi* Tonnoir, in a rural zoonotic visceral leishmaniasis (ZVL) focus in southern France (Killick-Kendrick and Rioux 2002). Wild females were captured, offered blood meals on an infected dog, marked with a fluorescent powder unique for the day, released and then recaptured. Of 253 females recaptured, 124 contained promastigotes 7-29 days after feeding on the infected dog, and parasite development in the natural environment was similar to that of the *Leishmania* species mentioned above. The findings were reported to be consistent with transmission by regurgitation about 13 days post-infection, with routine transmission by inoculation without regurgitation being dismissed because parasites were found in the pharynx and proboscis only from days 19 and 22, respectively (Killick-Kendrick and Rioux 2002).

There have been many observations of the development of neotropical *Le. infantum chagasi* in its natural vector *L. longipalpis* (Molyneux and Killick-Kendrick 1987), including experimental transmission 7 days post-infection in the absence of proboscis infections (Lainson *et al.* 1977), a pattern consistent with transmission by regurgitation. A recent report demonstrated that PSG and metacyclics of *Le. infantum chagasi* are regurgitated by *L. longipalpis* and that the fPPG promoted the establishment of infections in mouse skin and the spleen (Rogers *et al.* 2010). This expands research on this parasite-vector combination – on metacyclogenesis, PSG production and biting persistence (Rogers and Bates 2007) – and the protocols in both papers provide a framework for a more natural experimental model.

Manipulation by *Leishmania* of sandflies feeding on mammalian hosts

Parasites exhibit many adaptations to ensure their transmission from one host to another. Manipulation is a particular type of adaptation, one where an infection elicits a specific behavioural response from the host of selective benefit to the parasite (Hurd 2003, Lefèvre *et al.* 2006). In this strict sense, there are only two reports (Rogers and Bates 2007, Rogers *et al.* 2008) that demonstrate manipulation of sandfly feeding behaviour by *Leishmania*. These two cases identify the manipulator molecules that enhance transmission, fPPG and chitinase respectively, and their effects on transmission, which has rarely been achieved for any investigation of parasite manipulation. The successful demonstration of sandfly manipulation by *Leishmania* was made

possible by using two of the models already described, namely the transmission of *Le. mexicana* and *Le. infantum* by *L. longipalpis*. There is clearly much scope for extending such investigations (see Section 'Evolution of *Leishmania* manipulation of sandfly behaviour') to other pairs of *Leishmania* and sandfly species, to different aspects of sandfly behaviour, and to other *Leishmania*-sandfly interactions. So far, the findings only relate to the two-way interactions within the sandfly and how these affect transmission by changing blood feeding persistence and duration, which are three-way interactions because they involve the mammalian host. Remaining to be investigated are the two-way *Leishmania*-mammal interaction and the three-way interaction when sandflies acquire an infection from a mammalian reservoir.

Rogers and Bates (2007) were the first to provide experimental support for the long-held assumption that *Leishmania* can manipulate the feeding behaviour of its sandfly vectors. They concluded that the parasite manipulates the timing of sandfly blood feeding to ensure that it coincides with peak numbers of infective metacyclics in and around the PSG plug that blocks the stomodeal valve and other parts of the anterior thoracic midgut. Parasite secretion of PSG was associated with differentiation of metacyclics, and the plug together with the metacyclics caused an increase in vector biting persistence on mice, as measured by re-feeding after interruption, and also promoted feeding on multiple hosts. The development rate of the parasites was experimentally accelerated, in order to demonstrate that *Leishmania* induced increased biting persistence only when metacyclics were present. The manipulation enhanced the infection of experimental hosts, demonstrating that transmission was optimised and providing a selective advantage to the parasite. This was the best evidence for concluding that the behavioural manipulation is adaptive (Rogers and Bates 2007), but other support (Hurd 2003) came from the complexity of the manipulation, the evidence of 'purposive design', and the independent origins of fPPG gel in other *Leishmania*-sand fly combinations. Rogers and Bates (2007) speculated that blockage by the PSG plug might promote the hunger state or alternatively increase the threshold blood volume required to inhibit blood-seeking behaviour.

In the second report on behavioural manipulation, Rogers *et al.* (2008) demonstrated that experimental over-expression of *Leishmania* chitinase gave rise to heavier stomodeal valve infections and longer feeding times, leading to faster evolving cutaneous lesions and larger final lesions in mice.

Evolution of *Leishmania* manipulation of sandfly behaviour

The question arises whether the sandfly has needed to respond to this behavioural manipulation by *Leishmania*. Has the manipulation introduced fitness costs for the sandfly? The answer is no, at least for the lifespan and fecundity of *L. longipalpis* in the laboratory (Rogers and Bates 2007). In natural environments, however, it is likely that there has been much parasite vector co-adaptation, although this might not be on-going (Rogers and Bates 2007). For example, promastigotes of *Le. infantum* have an optimum growth temperature in *P. ariasi* (Rioux *et al.* 1985) that lies within the temperature range of the natural resting sites of this vector (Ready 2008, 2013). It is not known if this parasite has recently adapted to these relatively cool sandfly resting sites, if it has manipulated the sandfly to change its resting sites or, perhaps more likely, is transmitted only in those parts of the sandfly's range that provide a suitable thermal environment. Co-adaptation need not involve co-cladogenesis or co-speciation of *Leishmania* and sandflies (Ready 2011), and the likelihood of this occurring diminishes when there is genetic exchange between vectors (Araki *et al.* 2009) and even parasites (Akopyants *et al.* 2009). Recently, hybrids of *Le. infantum* and *Le. major* have been isolated in Portugal (Ravel *et al.* 2006), and these are able to infect *P. papatasi* because they

have the *Le. major*-specific LPGs that permit midgut binding (Volf *et al.* 2007). Understanding the compatibility of parasite-vector combinations – partly by identifying permissive and specific vectors (Volf and Myskova 2007) – is fundamental for investigating *Leishmania* manipulation of sandfly feeding behaviour, but there are still many unknowns. The focus has been on the galectin-LPG binding that is characteristic of the specific vector *P. papatasi*. However, this interaction is 'necessary but not sufficient' for the survival of *Le. major* in *P. papatasi* (Dobson *et al.* 2010).

The identification of *Leishmania* manipulation of other sandfly behavioural traits will be complicated by the complexity of the organismal interactions. *Leishmania* constitutes just part of the microbiota of the sandfly midgut, which can contain competing bacteria (Dillon *et al.* 1996), to which the sandfly can react with catalases detrimental to *Leishmania* (Diaz-Albiter *et al.* 2011), and chemicals that change locally according to the preferred carbohydrates taken from aphid honey dew (Killick-Kendrick and Killick-Kendrick 1987) and plants (Junnila *et al.* 2011). Some arboviruses are specifically associated with sandflies (Dépaquit *et al.* 2010) and they might manipulate sandfly behaviour more than *Leishmania*, especially if they have a higher prevalence. Sandfly saliva can exacerbate leishmaniasis lesion development or provide some protection (Collin *et al.* 2009) but, in mouse models, it can have an antagonistic effect with fPPG rather than a synergistic one (Rogers *et al.* 2004). Salivary peptides need not display recent adaptive selection (Mahamdallie and Ready 2012).

What are the behavioural traits that are not only likely to be manipulated by *Leishmania* but also amenable to experimental investigation? The physical response of the mammalian host plays an important role in disturbing biting flies (Hurd 2003), including *L. longipalpis* feeding on experimental mice when sandfly blood feeding persistence enhances transmission (Rogers and Bates 2007). This sandfly forms blood feeding aggregations on hosts (Kelly and Dye 1996) and these can be cooperative with respect to the effects of saliva on shortening the duration of the blood meal and the quantity of blood ingested (Tripet *et al.* 2009). There are fitness implications, with long blood meals increasing the risks of hosts killing flies and larger blood meals leading to greater sandfly fecundity. To this set of interactions could be added the effects of fPPG from infected flies. The importance of fPPG will clearly depend on natural rates of infection with *Leishmania*. These are often low for *L. longipalpis* (Rogers and Bates 2007), which is even true for the vector of AVL, *P. argentipes* (Bern *et al.* 2010). A low infection rate in *L. longipalpis* might result in little selection against fPPG-regurgitating sandflies, even if they cause local disturbances of feeding aggregations because of their persistence and multiple blood feeding.

Conclusions: new ways of controlling leishmaniasis transmission

Some of the recent findings mentioned in this review lead directly to new ways of controlling leishmaniasis transmission. For example, the PSG produced by *Le. mexicana* or a chemically defined synthetic glycovaccine containing the glycans found in *Le. mexicana* PSG were found to provide protection against challenge by the bite of experimentally infected *L. longipalpis* (Rogers *et al.* 2006). However, most of the new knowledge of *Leishmani*a manipulation of sandflies has yet to be exploited for controlling the transmission of leishmaniasis. It offers the possibility of control using reduced amounts of insecticides and repellents (Ready 2010, WHO 2012) and avoiding the culling of reservoir hosts (Quinnell and Courtenay 2009). However, there will surely be many challenges to applying the new knowledge to achieve more ecologically friendly methods of effective integrated control (Ready 2013). Realism, not pessimism, is required to meet these challenges, most of which will probably arise because of the complexities of the behavioural interactions between sandflies and between sandflies and infecting *Leishmania*. For example, the male pheromones that attract female *L. longipalpis* to lekking sites on vertebrate hosts can

be synthesised and might be distributed peridomestically in NW ZVL foci in order to reduce transmission to humans (Bray *et al.* 2010), but such interventions or similar ones, for example zooprophylaxis using chickens, are only likely to be effective if the possibilities of unintentionally increasing human biting rates are fully investigated (Kelly and Dye 1996). Similarly, modelling is required to investigate how manipulating the aggregation behaviour of *L. longipalpis* (Tripet *et al.* 2009) will affect mammalian host exposure to fPPG and sandfly saliva. The question is whether the parasite manipulation of *L. longipalpis* and other sandfly vectors can itself be artificially manipulated for the purposes of prophylaxis. The achievement of this will require an awareness of the possibilities of unintentionally exacerbating disease (Rogers *et al.* 2008; Collin *et al.* 2009).

Acknowledgements

We thank our colleagues, especially those appearing in the references, for stimulating discussions. The research of MER on this review topic was supported by the Wellcome Trust grants 064945 and 078937.

References

Akopyants NS, Kimblin N, Secundino N, Patrick R, Peters N, Lawyer P, Dobson DE, Beverley SM and Sacks DL (2009) Demonstration of genetic exchange during cyclical development of *Leishmania* in the sand fly vector. Science 324: 265-268.

Araki AS, Vigoder FM, Bauzer LGSR, Ferreira EM, Souza NA, Araujo IB, Hamilton JGC, Brazil RP and Peixoto AA (2009) Molecular and behavioural differentiation among Brazilian populations of *Lutzomyia longipalpis* (Diptera: Psychodidae: Phlebotominae). PLoS Negl Trop Dis 3: e365.

Bates PA (2007) Transmission of *Leishmania* metacyclic promastigotes by phlebotomine sand flies. Int J Parasitol 37: 1097-1106.

Bern C, Courtenay O and Alvar J (2010) Of cattle, sand flies and men: a systematic review of risk factor analyses for south Asian visceral leishmaniasis and implications for elimination. PLoS Negl Trop Dis 4: e599.

Boulanger N, Lowenberger C, Volf P, Ursic R, Sigutova L, Sabatier L, Svobodova M, Beverley SM, Späth G, Brun R, Pesson B and Bulet P (2004) Characterization of a defensin from the sand fly *Phlebotomus duboscqi* induced by challenge with bacteria or the protozoan parasite *Leishmania major*. Infect Immun 72: 7140-7146.

Bray DP, Alves GB, Dorval ME, Brazil RP and Hamilton, JGC (2010) Synthetic sex pheromone attracts the leishmaniasis vector *Lutzomyia longipalpis* to experimental chicken sheds treated with insecticide. Parasit Vectors 3: 16.

Collin N, Gomes R, Teixeira C, Cheng L, Laughinghouse A, Ward JM, Elnaiem DE, Fischer L, Valenzuela JG, and Kamhawi S (2009) Sand fly salivary proteins induce strong cellular immunity in a natural reservoir of visceral leishmaniasis with adverse consequences for *Leishmania.* PLoS Pathog 5: e1000441.

Davies CR, Cooper AM, Peacock C, Lane RP and Blackwell JM (1990) Expression of LPG and GP63 by different developmental stages of *Leishmania major* in the sandfly *Phlebotomus papatasi*. Parasitol 101: 337-43.

Dépaquit J, Grandadam M, Fouque F, Andry PE, and Peyrefitte C. (2010) Arthropod-borne viruses transmitted by Phlebotomine sandflies in Europe: a review. Euro Surveill 15:19507.

Desjeux P (2001) The increase in risk factors for leishmaniasis worldwide. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 95: 239-243.

Diaz-Albiter H, Mitford R, Genta FA, Sant'Anna MRV and Dillon RJ (2011) Reactive oxygen species scavenging by catalase is important for female *Lutzomyia longipalpis* fecundity and mortality. PLoS ONE 6: e17486.

Dillon RJ, El Kordy E, Shehata M and Lane RP (1996) The prevalence of a microbiota in the digestive tract of *Phlebotomus papatasi*. Ann Trop Med Parasitol 90: 669-73.

Dobson DE, Kamhawi S, Lawyer P, Turco SJ, Beverley SM and Sacks DL (2010) *Leishmania major* survival in selective *Phlebotomus papatasi* sand fly vector requires a specific *SCG*-encoded lipophosphoglycan galactosylation pattern. PLoS Pathog 11: e1001185.

Hajmová M, Chang KP, Kolli B and Volf P (2004) Down-regulation of gp63 in *Leishmania amazonensis* reduces its early development in *Lutzomyia longipalpis*. Microbes Infect 6: 646-649.

Hurd H (2003) Manipulation of medically important insect vectors by their parasites. Annu Rev Entomol 48: 141-161.

Joshi PB, Kelly BL, Kamhawi S, Sacks DL and McMaster WR (2002) Targeted gene deletion in *Leishmania major* identifies leishmanolysin (GP63) as a virulence factor. Mol Biochem Parasitol 120: 33-40.

Junnila A, Muller GC and Schlein Y (2011) Identification of plant tissues from the gut of *Phlebotomus papatasi* by DNA analysis. Acta Trop 117: 14-18.

Kamhawi S (2006) Phlebotomine sand flies and *Leishmania* parasites: friends or foes? Trends Parasitol 22: 439-444.

Kamhawi S, Ramalho-Ortigao M, Pham VM, Kumar S, Lawyer PG, Turco SJ, Barillas-Mury C, Sacks DL and Valenzuela JG (2004) A role for insect galectins in parasite survival. Cell 119: 329-341.

Kelly DW and Dye C (1996) Pheromones, kairomones and aggregation behaviour in a field population of the sandfly *Lutzomyia longipalpis*. Anim Behav 53: 721-731.

Killick-Kendrick R (1990) Phlebotomine vectors of the leishmaniases: a review. Med Vet Entomol 4: 1-24.

Killick-Kendrick R and Killick-Kendrick M (1987) Honeydew of aphids as a source of sugar for *Phlebotomus ariasi*. Med Vet Entomol 1: 297-302.

Killick-Kendrick R and Rioux J-A (2002) Mark-release-recapture of sand flies fed on leishmanial dogs: the natural life-cycle of *Leishmania infantum* in *Phlebotomus ariasi*. Parassitologia 44: 67-71.

Lainson R, Shaw JJ, Silveira FT, De Souza AA, Braga RR and Ishikawa EA (1994) The dermal leishmaniases of Brazil, with special reference to the eco-epidemiology of the disease in Amazonia. Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz 89: 435-443.

Lainson R, Ward RD and Shaw JJ (1977) Experimental transmission of *Leishmania chagasi*, causative agent of neotropical visceral leishmaniasis, by the sandfly *Lutzomyia longipalpis*. Nature 266: 628-630.

Lefèvre T, Koella JC, Renaud F, Hurd H, Biron DG *et al.* (2006) New prospects for research on manipulation of insect vectors by pathogens. PLoS Pathog 2: e72.

Mahamdallie SS and Ready PD (2012) No recent adaptive selection on the apyrase of Mediterranean *Phlebotomus*: implications for using salivary peptides to vaccinate against canine leishmaniasis. Evol Appl 5: 293-305.

Molyneux DH and Killick-Kendrick R (1987) Morphology, ultrastructure and life cycles. In: Peters W and Killick-Kendrick R (eds.), The leishmaniases in biology and medicine, Vol. 1. Academic Press, London, UK, pp. 121-176.

Nieves E and Pimenta PF (2000) Development of *Leishmania (Viannia) braziliensis* and *Leishmania (Leishmania) amoazonensis* in the sand fly *Lutzomyia migonei* (Diptera: Psychodidae). J Med Entomol 37, 134-140.

Parvizi P and Ready PD (2008) Nested PCRs and sequencing of nuclear ITS-rDNA fragments detect three *Leishmania* species of gerbils in sandflies from Iranian foci of zoonotic cutaneous leishmaniasis. Trop Med Int Hlth 13: 1159-1171.

Pimenta PF, Modi GB, Pereira ST, Shahabuddin M and Sacks DL (1997) A novel role for the peritrophic matrix in protecting *Leishmania* from the hydrolytic activities of the sand fly midgut. Parasitol 115: 359-369.

Quinnell RJ and Courtenay O (2009) Transmission, reservoir hosts and control of zoonotic visceral leishmaniasis. Parasitol 136: 1915-1934.

Ramalho-Ortigao M, Kamhawi S, Joshi MB, Reynoso D, Lawyer PG, Dwyer DM, Sacks DL and Valenzuela JG (2005) Characterization of a blood activated chitinolytic system in the midgut of the sand fly vectors *Lutzomyia longipalpis* and *Phlebotomus papatasi*. Insect Mol Biol 14: 703-712.

Ravel C, Cortes S, Pratlong F, Morio F, Dedet JP and Campino L (2006) First report of genetic hybrids between two very divergent *Leishmania* species: *Leishmania infantum* and *Leishmania major*. Int J Parasitol 36, 1383-1388.

Ready PD (2008) Leishmaniasis emergence and climate change. In: De la Roque S (ed.). Climate change: impact on the epidemiology and control of animal diseases. Rev Sci Tech 27: 399-412.

Ready PD (2010) Leishmaniasis emergence in Europe. Euro Surveill 15: 19505.

Ready PD (2011) Should sandfly taxonomy predict vectorial and ecological traits? J Vect Ecol 36 (S1), S17-22.

Ready PD (2013) Biology of phlebotomine sandflies as vectors of disease agents. Annu Rev Entomol 58: 227-250.

Ready PD, Lainson R and Shaw JJ (1983) Leishmaniasis in Brazil: XX. Prevalence of 'enzootic rodent leishmaniasis' (*Leishmania mexicana amazonensis*), and apparent absence of 'pian bois' (*Leishmania braziliensis guyanensis*), in plantations of introduced tree species and in other non-climax forests in eastern Amazonia. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 77: 775-785.

Rioux J-A, Aboulker JP, Lanotte G, Killick-Kendrick R and Martini-Dumas A (1985) Ecologie des leishmanioses dans le sud de la France 21 – Influence de la température sur le développement de *Leishmania infantum* Nicolle, 1908 chez *Phlebotomus ariasi* Tonnoir, 1921. Etude expérimentale. Ann Parasit Hum Comp 60: 221-229.

Rogers ME and Bates PA (2007) *Leishmania* manipulation of sand fly feeding behaviour results in enhanced transmission. PLoS Pathog 3: e91.

Rogers ME, Chance ML and Bates PA (2002) The role of promastigote secretory gel in the origin and transmission of the infective stage of *Leishmania mexicana* by the sandfly *Lutzomyia longipalpis*. Parasitol 124: 495-507.

Rogers ME, Corware K, Müller I and Bates PA and (2010) *Leishmania infantum* proteophosphoglycans regurgitated by the bite of its natural sand fly vector, *Lutzomyia longipalpis*, promote parasite establishment in mouse skin and skin-distant tissues. Microbial Infect 11: 875-879.

Rogers ME, Hajmová M, Joshi MB, Sadlova J, Dwyer DM, Volf P and Bates P (2008) *Leishmania* chitinase facilitates colonization of sand fly vectors and enhances transmission to mice. Cell Microbiol 10: 1363-1372.

Rogers ME, Ilg T, Nikolaev AV, Ferguson MAJ and Bates PA (2004) Transmission of cutaneous leishmaniasis by sand flies is enhanced by regurgitation of fPPG. Nature 430: 463-467.

Rogers ME, Kropf P, Choi B-S, Dillon R, Podinovskaia M, Bates P and Müller I (2009) Proteophosphoglycans regurgitated by *Leishmania*-infected sand flies target the L-arginine metabolism of host macrophages to promote parasite survival. PLoS Pathog 5: e10000555.

Rogers ME, Sizova OV, Ferguson MAJ, Nikolaev AV and Bates PA (2006) Synthetic glycovaccine protects against the bite of *Leishmania*-infected sand flies. J Infect Dis 194: 512-518.

Sadlova J and Volf P (2009) Peritrophic matrix of *Phlebotomus duboscqi* and its kinetics during *Leishmania major* development. Cell Tissue Res 337: 313-325.

Sant'Anna MRV, Diaz-Albiter H, Mubaraki M, Dillon R and Bates PA (2009) Inhibition of trypsin expression in *Lutzomyia longipalpis* using RNAi enhances the survival of *Leishmania*. Parasites and Vectors 2: e62.

Schlein Y, Jacobson RL and Messer G (1992) *Leishmania* infections damage the feeding mechanism of the sandfly vector and implement parasite transmission by bite. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 89: 9944-9948.

Secundino N, Kimblin N, Peters NC, Lawyer P, Capul AA, Beverley SM, Turco SJ and Sacks D (2010) Proteophosphoglycan confers resistance of *Leishmania major* to midgut digestive enzymes induced by blood feeding in vector sand flies. Cell Microbiol 12: 906-918.

Shakarian AM and Dwyer DM (2000) Pathogenic *Leishmania* secrete antigenically related chitinases which are encoded by a highly conserved gene locus. Exp Parasitol 94: 238-242.

Stierhof Y-D, Bates PA, Jacobson RL, Rogers ME, Schlein Y, Handman E and Ilg T (1999) Filamentous proteophosphoglycan secreted by *Leishmania* promastigotes forms gel-like three-dimensional networks that obstructs the digestive tract of infected sandfly vectors. Europ J Cell Biol 78: 675-689.

Svobodová M, Volf P and Votýpka J (2006) Experimental transmission of *Leishmania tropica* to hyraxes (*Procavia capensis*) by the bite of *Phlebotomus arabicus*. Microbes Infect. 8: 1691-1694.

Tripet F, Clegg S, Elnaim D-E and Ward RD (2009) Cooperative blood-feeding and the function and implications of feeding aggregations in the sand fly, *Lutzomyia longipalpis* (Diptera: Psychodidae). PLoS Negl Trop Dis 3: e503.

Vaidyanathan R (2005) Isolation of a myoinhibitory peptide from *Leishmania major* (Kinetoplastida: Trypanosomatidae) and its function in the vector sand fly *Phlebotomus papatasi* (Diptera: Psychodidae). J Med Entomol 42: 142-152.

Volf P and Myskova J (2007) Sand flies and *Leishmania*: specific versus permissive vectors. Trends Parasitol 23: 91-92.

Volf P, Benkova I, Myskova J, Sadlova J, Campino L and Ravel C (2007) Increased transmission potential of *Leishmania major*/*Leishmania infantum* hybrids. Int J Parasitol 37: 589-593.

Walters LL, Chaplin GL, Modi GB and Tesh RB (1989) Ultrastructural biology of *Leishmania (Viannia) panamensis* (=*Leishmania braziliensis panamensis*) in *Lutzomyia gomezi* (Diptera: Psychodidae). Am J Trop Med Hyg 40: 19-39.

WHO (2012) World Health Organization. Available at: www.who.int/leishmaniasis/en/.

Strategic issues concerning vector-parasite interactions

10. Modelling the control of mosquito-borne diseases

Ace North and Penelope Hancock

Abstract

We focus on strategies for controlling the epidemiology of mosquito-borne diseases that target the mosquito vector. In order to assess a particular strategy of mosquito population control, two broad issues require attention: the dynamics of the population, and the impact of the intervention on those dynamics. We describe two modelling approaches that are important tools in these respective tasks. Firstly, backwards modelling, the method of using models to interpret complex data, is a valuable means to understanding mosquito ecology. We exemplify backwards modelling with a brief review of research into how larval competition impacts on mosquito population dynamics, an important question to answer given that this density dependent process may significantly interact with some intervention strategies. Secondly, forwards modelling, whereby models are used to forecast the outcome of interacting ecological processes, allows ecological knowledge to be utilised so that the impacts of a particular strategy can be predicted. In particular, forward models allow investigation of how the performance of strategies may vary across different ecological settings. We exemplify forward modelling with an illustrative model of how climatic temperature may influence the effectiveness of a fungal biopesticide intervention. We end the chapter with a brief discussion on important future directions.

Keywords: mosquito-born disease, population dynamics, mathematical model, density-dependance, vector control, biopesticide

Introduction

While strategies to control most infectious diseases aim to target the pathogen, vector-borne diseases offer an alternative target: the vector. Mosquitoes are vectors of a number of major diseases, including malaria, dengue fever, and yellow fever (Gubler 1998).

At present chemical insecticides are the mainstay of mosquito control, delivered via insecticide treated nets (ITNs) and indoor residual spraying of insecticides (IRS). In the case of malaria, these technologies have successfully suppressed or eliminated transmission in some locations (Curtis and Mnzava 2000, Haworth 1988, Killeen *et al.* 2007), but they have been unable to eliminate malaria from the worst affected parts of tropical Africa, where control is difficult due to poverty and climatic conditions that are conducive to endemic transmission (Ferguson *et al.* 2010). A number of novel strategies are under intensive development, including biological control methods involving the introduction of bacterial and fungal infections into mosquito populations (Blanford *et al.* 2005, McMeniman *et al.* 2009, Moreira *et al.* 2009, Scholte *et al.* 2005), and the release of genetically modified mosquitoes to suppress the native population or initiate the spread of phenotypes that do not transmit disease (Burt 2003, Thomas *et al.* 2000, Ward *et al.* 2011).

As such, a various arsenal will, it is hoped, be available to future practitioners of mosquito control (Takken and Knols 2009). Clearly, in order to inform the design of control programmes in different areas to meet specific targets, there is a need to understand the impacts of each technology on the mosquito population and its capacity to transmit disease. This will require detailed knowledge of the ecology of the target mosquito population (Ferguson *et al.* 2010).

W. Takken and C.J.M. Koenraadt (eds.), *Ecology of parasite-vector interactions*, Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases 3, DOI 10.3920/978-90-8686-744-8_10, © Wageningen Academic Publishers 2013

Models have an important role to play in both qualifying and quantifying the ecological consequences of the different control measures. Two types of modelling stand out in mosquito research, denoted in this chapter as `backward' and `forward' modelling (Figure 1). In the following Section 'Understanding mosquito ecology', we discuss how backward modelling, whereby models are sought to describe and explain observed population patterns, is becoming an important approach to understanding mosquito ecology. In order to illustrate the discussion, we focus on a particular aspect of mosquito ecology: the influence of larval competition on population-level dynamics. By contrast, forward modelling, whereby models are used to predict the outcome of interaction between ecological processes, has more often been used to asses the impacts of population control strategies (Section 'Models of strategies for controlling mosquito-borne diseases'). We note that the distinction between backward modelling as a tool to understand mosquito ecology, and forward modelling to understand mosquito control, is neither fundamental nor clear-cut, but rather a useful generalisation.

Understanding mosquito ecology

Despite the importance of mosquito ecology in determining patterns of disease transmission, our understanding of the basic ecology of relevant species is fragmented at best. For example, while a good deal is known about the habitat and blood-meal preferences of the important malaria vector *Anopheles gambiae* Giles, there are few data on the dry-season ecology or the mating behaviour of this species (Jawara *et al.* 2008, Lehmann *et al.* 2010, Takken and Boëte 2003). Amassing ecological data on a particular mosquito species is, clearly, a vital step towards building a general understanding of the ecology of said species. Data in itself, however, is only useful as far as it is understood: data interpretation is equally vital. In view of the large number of ecological processes and environmental factors that may impact on mosquito populations, it is often difficult to disentangle their interacting effects from observational data. If a researcher is focussed on elucidating the roles of particular processes, experimental studies may be designed so as to greatly reduce the number of confounding factors, yet even experimental data may be hard to interpret if the processes under study are complex. Mathematical models, however, are able to show how complex processes behave and interact for any given set of underlying assumptions (Kokko 2007, Turchin 2003). As such, models are increasingly being used to help interpret mosquito data.

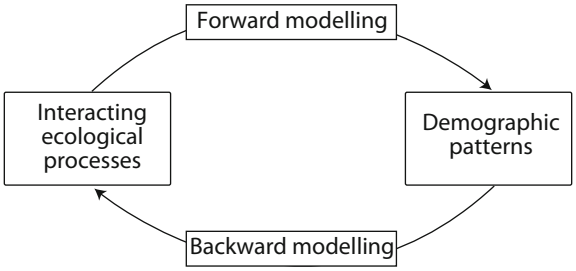


Figure 1. Two types of modelling approaches have been useful to the study of mosquito control. Forward modelling, whereby the interaction between a complex set of factors is predicted, has been particularly useful in the evaluation of mosquito control strategies. Backward modelling, on the other hand, is a method to interpret complex data and has been useful to the study of mosquito ecology.

In the remainder of this section, we exemplify how models have been used to aid the study of mosquito ecology by briefly reviewing research into a specific yet important question: what is the role of larval competition to mosquito population-level dynamics? (Dye and Hasibeder 1986, Legros *et al.* 2009, Russell *et al.* 2011b, Yang *et al.* 2008a,b). All the studies discussed employ a backward modelling approach (Figure 1), whereby data is used to parameterise one or more models. If there is more than one model, statistical tests are used to compare the performance of each model (Russell *et al.* 2011b, Yang *et al.* 2008a,b). In this way, the models act as alternative hypotheses, and the model comparison enables the hypotheses to be contested against one another, an increasingly popular approach in ecological research (Johnson and Omland 2004).

Larval competition

While it is widely acknowledged that exogenous factors, such as rainfall, play a major role in the regulation of mosquito populations (Edillo *et al.* 2004, Koenraadt *et al.* 2004), there is less certainty over the role of the density-dependent feedback that stems from larval competition (Legros *et al.* 2009). From the limited number of field studies that assess the process of population regulation in mosquito species, there is evidence that density-dependent feedback has an important influence on the population dynamics of *Aedes aegypti* L. (Dye 1984, Legros *et al.* 2009, Southwood *et al.* 1972), *Aedes vigilax* Skuse (Yang *et al.* 2008a,b) and *An. gambiae* (Russell *et al.* 2011b). Adult abundance may depend indirectly on juvenile density; for example higher larval density has been observed to prolong juvenile development time and reduce adult body size in *An. gambiae* (Gimnig *et al.* 2002, Russell *et al.* 2011b), which may reduce the population fitness (Russell *et al.* 2011b). The relative influence of larval competition and parasitism and predation of larvae on larval density is not well-quantified (Koenraadt *et al.* 2004, Service 1977).

There is strong motivation to redress this uncertainty: density dependent feedbacks may significantly impact on the success of population control measures, as discussed in the Section 'Models of strategies for controlling mosquito-borne diseases'. The studies reviewed below used very different data to asses the role of larval competition to population dynamics, broadly classed as 'Survivorship data' (Dye 1984, Legros *et al.* 2009) and 'Abundance time-series' (Dye 1984, Legros *et al.* 2009, Russell *et al.* 2011b, Yang *et al.* 2008a,b). We end this section with a brief perspective comparing the merits of the contrasting study designs.

Survivorship data

Dye (1984) fitted a model of *Ae. aegypti* population dynamics using data that measured the survivorship of cohorts during larval development, where the cohorts differed in initial density. Dye (1984) supposed that r_d, per capita density dependent mortality during the larval stage, may be described by the function:

$$r_d = \alpha N^{\beta} \tag{1}$$

where N is the clutch size (density of eggs), and α and β are free parameters to describe the form of density dependence (Figure 2). In order to fit this model to the data, Dye (1984) was forced to ignore the possibility of concurrent density independent mortality occurring in the system: the data was not sufficient to fit a model allowing both causes of mortality. In doing so, Dye (1984) was able to estimate α and β using a non-linear regression analysis.

In turn, the parameter estimates obtained by Dye (1984) have been incorporated into more complex population models of *Ae. aegypti* (Phuc *et al.* 2007, Yakob *et al.* 2008a). This story, however, should perhaps act a cautionary tale on the importance of keeping the assumptions of a model in mind when assessing its conclusions. On relaxing the assumption that all larval mortality is due to density dependent factors, Legros *et al.* (2009) show that density dependence may have been significantly overestimated by Dye (1984), which casts doubt not only on Dye's conclusions (in defence, Dye is clear about the underlying assumptions), but also on the conclusions of the subsequent modelling studies. Legros *et al.* (2009) reason that the data set used by Dye is insufficient to reliably parameterise the function of Equation 1, and therefore to characterise the role of density dependence during larval growth. The moral: while overly complex models cannot be parameterised with limited data-sets (the hazards of overfitting), the assumptions of simpler models, that are parameterised with data, must be clear and remembered when those parameters are used subsequently.

Abundance time-series

If density dependent processes are sufficiently strong to impact on population dynamics, one may expect to detect the effects of density dependence in time-series data (Hanski 1990). In view of the number of (especially environmental) factors influencing population dynamics besides density dependence, this task will inevitably be a challenging one yet, if environmental data is collected concurrently, not necessarily a hopeless one. There has been debate over the most appropriate statistical test for density dependence in time-series (Hanski 1990), although the classical approach of employing a null model (density dependence is absent) has been prevalent in the past (Yang *et al.* 2008b). More recently, the approach of model selection (or 'multi-model inference', MMI) has become increasingly popular in many fields of ecology (Johnson and Omland 2004), and the evaluation of density dependence from time-series data is no exception (Brook

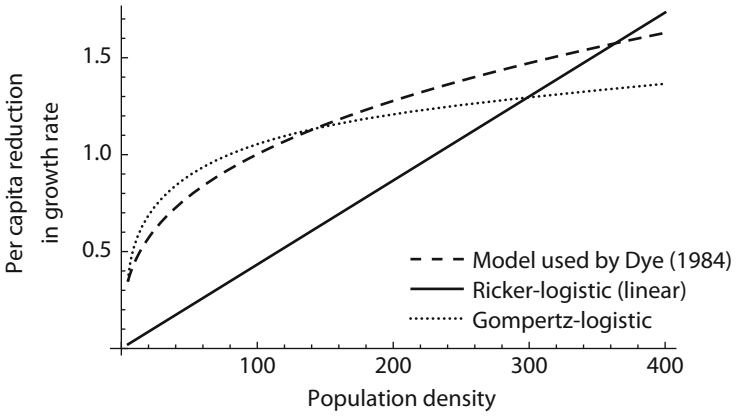


Figure 2. Different models of density dependence have been proposed for the effect of larval competition on population growth (see Equations 1-3). Empirical data have been used to compare these alternatives. The parameters are (α, β) = (0.23, 0.3) (Dye), and (r_m, K) = (1, 200) in both the Ricker-logistic and the Gompertz-logistic models: these parameters were chosen to illustrate the functional forms rather than derived from particular mosquito populations.

and Bradshaw 2006, Zeng *et al.* 1998). Unlike null model testing, model selection allows multiple hypotheses (models) to be compared simultaneously: each model is fitted from the available data, and the goodness-of-fit is compared across the models, often using selection criteria that penalise against model complexity (Johnson and Omland 2004).

Model selection has been employed to assess the relative roles of density dependent, density independent, and environmental processes in *An. gambiae s.l.* (Russell *et al.* 2011b), *Ae. vigilax* and across six tropical species (Yang *et al.* 2008a). To the best of our knowledge, these are the only published studies that have used time-series data to assess density dependence in mosquitoes. Each of the articles used maximum likelihood estimation to fit a suite of models to the respective data-sets, where the models differed in their representation of density dependent and environmental factors. The model performances were compared using Akaike's Information Criterion (AIC) (Russell *et al.* 2011b, Yang *et al.* 2008a,b) and, additionally, Bayesian Information criterion (BIC) and cross-validation (C-V) (Yang *et al.* 2008a,b).All three articles found significant evidence of density dependent feedbacks. Yang *et al.* (2008b) finds endogenous feedbacks to explain ~42% of the variation in growth rate of *Ae. vigilax*, with the remainder explained by exogenous environmental conditions, and the authors thus suggest a rule of thumb: 'negative density dependence is nearly as important as environmental conditions when predicting the abundance of mosquito populations over time'. Perhaps unsurprisingly, however, the details of how density dependence acts on the populations are much less consistent.

While Russell *et al.* (2011b) concur that density dependence is important to *An. gambiae s.l.*, the density dependent feedback component of the best model takes the Ricker-logistic form, whereby r_d, the per capita mortality rate due to density dependence during one time step (~ one generation) is linear:

$$r_d = \frac{r_m N_t}{K} \tag{2}$$

Where N_t is the population size at the start of the time step, r_m the maximal intrinsic growth rate, and K the carrying capacity. By contrast, Yang *et al.* (2008b) found the Gompertz-logistic model:

$$r_d = r_m \frac{\log N_t}{\log K} \tag{3}$$

to give an 'overwhelmingly better fit' for all six species in their study (both models were compared in both studies). This suggests density dependence acts at lower densities in the species studied by Yang *et al.* (2008b), yet the relative increase in density dependence as the population grows is less (Figure 2).

To investigate the interaction between environmental forces and density dependence, Yang *et al.* (2008a) compared (Gompertz-logistic) models for which the environmental factors impacted on, respectively, growth rate and carrying capacity. The data strongly supported the former model over the latter, suggesting that carrying capacity is relatively stable in their system while environmental variation alters the intrinsic growth rate. By contrast, the best model of *An. gambiae* linked the carrying capacity in Equation 2 to the most important environmental variable for this species (Russell *et al.* 2011b).

It is intriguing to seek the cause of these inter-specific differences, yet given that they are based on only two studies (Russell *et al.* 2011b, Yang *et al.* 2008a,b), which markedly differ in study design (for example, the time-series drastically differ in duration), it would be unwise to conclude, at this

point, that the discrepancy is due to specific divergence. Further research on this issue would clearly be useful.

Perspective

Despite the shortcomings of Dye's (1984) analysis, the approach of quantifying density dependence through larval survivorship data, and more generally through experimental manipulation, may yet give valuable insights. The experimental set-up will need to be designed carefully, however, so that the data will be sufficient to fit the intended models (Legros *et al.* 2009). One key advantage of an experimental approach over a time-series approach is that the potentially confounding factors, such as environmental variation, can be largely controlled.

Larval survivorship data will not, unfortunately, reveal effects of larval competition other than alteration to the larval mortality rate. Survivorship data may, therefore, lead to an underestimation of density dependence in species for which larval competition has other fitness effects such as a reduction in emerging adult size. Time-series data, by contrast, will subsume all density dependent processes that impact on population dynamics. In order to determine the role of specific density dependent fitness effects from time-series, however, one has to know what to look for: time-series are more useful for testing than devising hypotheses. Observational studies, that measure the phenotypic effects of density dependence, have a valuable role to play in revealing potentially important fitness effects of density dependence (Gimnig *et al.* 2002). By keeping track of female wing-length through the study period, Russell *et al.* (2011b) were able to support the hypothesis that the effects of density dependence in *Anopheles gambiae* species is mediated by this larval plasticity in growth.

In summary, it is clear that our understanding of density dependence in mosquitoes has much room for improvement, yet it is encouraging to see recent publications on the issue: it is an active field. Density dependence is qualified using mathematical models that relate the effects of density dependence to population dynamics. These models have been quantified and evaluated from both survivorship data and from time-series. Both approaches have distinct strengths, and it is thus hoped that both are pursued in future studies.

Models of strategies for controlling mosquito-borne diseases

Many models that have been developed to analyse methods of controlling mosquito vectors of human diseases adopt a forward modelling approach, whereby population dynamic models, parameterised with data on mosquito ecology, are used to predict the outcome of an intervention. A difficulty is that models can become very complicated when they attempt to provide a detailed and realistic representation of mosquito ecology. Often models are developed to selectively include only the factors that have the most obvious relevance to a specific intervention, and the questions being asked of it. In this section, we discuss how such models are used to determine how the effects of intervention on a mosquito population, and its transmission of disease, are mediated by specific demographic processes, by ecological setting, and by details of how the intervention is applied. We exemplify this discussion with a case study in which a model is developed to predict how temperature affects the success of using fungal biopesticides to control *Anopheles* mosquitoes and, in turn, the malaria they vector (Box 1).

Box 1. Case study: modelling the effect of fungal biopesticides on malaria transmission at two different temperatures.

1. Modelling adult stage structure

Blood feeding behaviour in female adult *Anopheles* mosquitoes follows a gonotrophic cycle (Klowden 2007, Lardeux *et al.* 2008). The cycle consists of a host-seeking phase, during which mosquitoes actively search for a blood meal, and a non-host-seeking stage, during which blood from a recent blood meal is digested, oocytes are developed and eggs are oviposited, after which host-seeking activity begins again. The duration of the gonotrophic cycle varies depending on the temperature conditions the mosquito experiences, with faster metabolic rates occurring at higher temperatures (Lardeux *et al.* 2008). In warmer climates *Anopheles gambiae* typically take a blood meal every 2-3 days (Quinones *et al.* 1997) where as under cooler conditions there may be over 10 days between feeds (Paaijmans *et al.* 2010).

Hancock (2009) extended classical continuous time models of mosquito population dynamics (Hancock *et al.* 2009, MacDonald 1957, Ross 1911, Smith and McKenzie 2004) to incorporate gonotrophic structure. The model divides the adult mosquito population into two classes; those that are actively searching for a (human) blood meal and those that are not host-seeking, having not yet oviposited following their recent blood meal. Host-seeking mosquitoes are assumed to find blood meals at a continuous daily rate f, and mosquitoes spend a fixed period of time T_M in the non-host-seeking stage (Figure 3). Hancock (2009) showed that the equilibrium number of adult mosquitoes in the i^{th} host-seeking stage, S^*_{Hi}, is given by:

$$S^*_{Hi} = \frac{\varepsilon f^{-(i-1)\mu T_M}}{(\mu + f)^i} \tag{4}$$

where ε is the daily rate at which adult mosquitoes are recruited and μ is the daily rate of adult mortality.

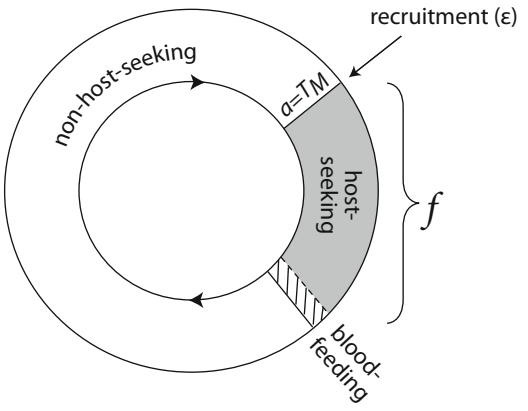


Figure 3. Diagram of the gonotrophic feeding processes represented in the model. Non-host-seeking mosquitoes resume host-seeking activity when the time since their last blood meal, a, reaches T_M days.

The model can be extended to incorporate a process of malaria transmission by the mosquito population by making assumptions about the proportion of humans that are infectious with malaria, the probability that malaria is transmitted during a bite by a mosquito on an infectious human, and the converse probability of a mosquito contracting malaria from biting an infected human. The malaria parasite is assumed to require a fixed period of incubation inside the mosquito of T_E days before it can be transmitted. With these assumptions the equilibrium number of host-seeking mosquitoes that have been infectious with malaria for *i* host-seeking periods, I^*_{Hi} can be calculated (Hancock 2009). This gives an expression for the equilibrium entomological inoculation rate (EIR), which is the number of infectious bites received per person per day (Hancock 2009):

$$EIR^* = f \sum_i I^*_{Hi} \tag{5}$$

The duration of the malaria parasite incubation period, T_E, is also strongly dependent on temperature. In warmer climates incubation can be completed in less than 10 days, whereas between 20-30 days can be required under cooler conditions (Paaijmans *et al.* 2009). As both this incubation period T_E and the time interval between blood feeds, T_M, increase as temperature decreases, these two processes can act synergistically to reduce the rate of malaria transmission in cooler climates.

2. The impact of fungal biopesticides on malaria transmission

The stage-structure implemented in this model is relevant to mosquito control interventions which act differently on host-seeking and non-host-seeking stages of the mosquito lifecycle. For a fungal biopesticide intervention that involves spraying surfaces inside houses with spores of a fungal entomopathogen, mosquitoes that are host-seeking are more likely to contract the fungus than those that are not host-seeking and away from areas of human habitation. The model assumes that host-seeking mosquitoes contract the fungal pathogen at a daily rate *F*, and so the daily probability of infection is $P_f = 1\text{-}e^{-F}$. The conservative assumption that non-host-seeking mosquitoes have zero risk of fungal infection is adopted. Experimental studies show that fungal infection causes accelerated adult mortality, with the effect becoming more pronounced with increased age of infection (Blanford *et al.* 2005). Depending on the fungal strain that is used and the dose that is applied, a wide range of age-dependent mortality patterns have been observed (Blanford *et al.* 2005, Scholte *et al.* 2003, 2006). Here, we estimate the effect of fungal infection on adult mortality using data from recent field trials of the application of *Beauvaria bassiana* (Balsamo) Vuillemin in experimental huts in Tanzania (Mnyone, unpublished data). Weibull functions describing the rate of adult mortality as a function of the age of fungal infection were fitted to the experimental data (Hancock 2009; Figure 4). In the model, these functions describe the age-dependent effect of fungal infection on adult mortality (Hancock 2009).

We consider the effect of fungal biopesticide application on the rate of malaria transmission (the daily EIR, eqn 5) for two different temperature conditions. In the first case, the temperature is warm (a constant 30 $^{\circ}$C), in which case we estimate that the duration of the non-host-seeking stage is T_M=2 days (Quinones *et al.* 1997) and the duration of malaria parasite incubation is T_E=8 days (Paaijmans *et al.* 2010). Secondly we consider a cool environment in which the temperature is a constant 20 $^{\circ}$C, for which we estimate that T_M=6 days and T_E=20 days (Paaijmans *et al.* 2010). All other model parameters are the same as in Hancock (2009) unless otherwise specified.

Figure 5 shows the effect of the fungal biopesticide on the equilibrium daily EIR for different values of the daily probability of fungal infection experienced by host-seeking mosquitoes

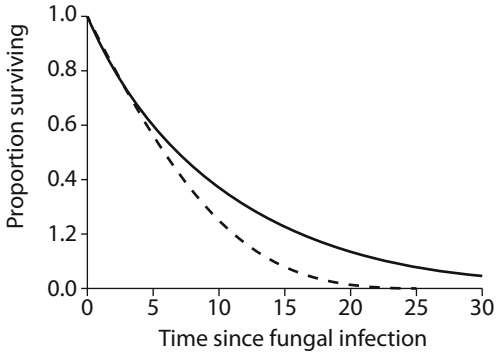


Figure 4. Model of the age-dependent effect of fungal infection on adult mortality. Mosquitoes uninfected with the fungal pathogen (solid line) and infected (dashed line) both experience natural mortality at a constant daily rate μ=0.1. Mosquitoes that are fungus-infected experience additional mortality at a rate that depends on the time since fungal infection. The additional mortality rate $M_F(u)$ *is modelled by a Weibull function of the fungal infection age* u; $M_F(u) = \beta\mu_F(\mu_F u)^{\beta-1}$, *where* $\mu_F=0.068$ *and* $\beta=2.5$ *are the Weibull rate and shape parameters respectively.*

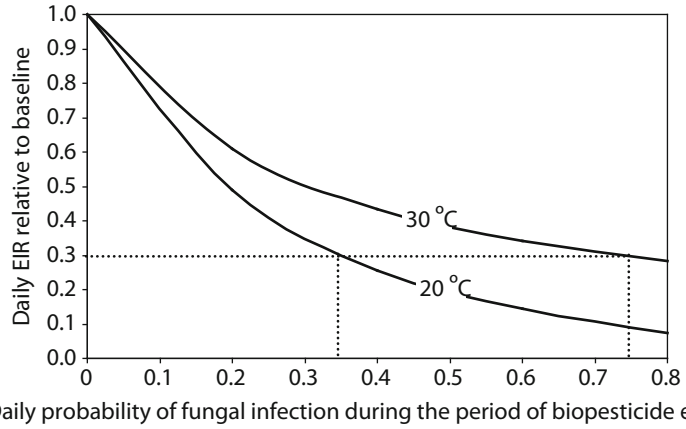


Figure 5. The equilibrium daily EIR as a proportion of the baseline EIR for different levels of the fungal biopesticide coverage. Solid lines show different values of constant temperature. Dotted lines indicate the coverage levels required to achieve a 70% reduction in the EIR for both temperatures.

(termed the 'coverage' of the biopestide). This shows that the fungal biopesticide is more efficient, having a greater proportional effect on the EIR, when the temperature is cooler. For example, if very high coverage can be achieved, the EIR is reduced by about 70% at the warmer temperature and by about 90% at the cooler temperature. It is perhaps more significant that a considerable reduction in the EIR, of about 70%, can be achieved with moderate to low biopesticide coverage (about 0.3-0.4) at 20 °C, but a similar proportional impact on the EIR would require a much higher coverage of about 0.7-0.8 at 30 °C.

The reason for the greater efficacy of the biopesticide at cooler temperatures is that there is more time for fungal infection to act when both the delay between blood feeds and the duration of malaria parasite incubation are longer. The experimental data shows that fungal infection is relatively slow to kill mosquitoes (Figure 4), and so is less effective in reducing malaria transmission when mosquitoes start taking malaria-infectious blood meals at a younger age. However, the intervention still produces a substantial decrease in the EIR at the warmer temperature, and Figure 5 indicates that the absolute reduction in the EIR will be greater at 30 °C because the baseline EIR is much higher when the temperature is warmer. An important caveat to these results is that the effect of fungal infection on mosquito mortality is also significantly affected by temperature. A study by Kikankie *et al.* (2010) measured the survival of fungus-infected mosquitoes at two different temperatures, and found that the fungus was significantly more virulent at warmer temperatures. Therefore, further investigation of how this intervention affects key aspects of mosquito demography across a range of different environmental conditions is needed to understand how malaria transmission can be impacted in different areas.

Demographic processes

The process of density-dependent larval competition, discussed in the previous section, is of central importance to certain novel strategies for controlling mosquito-borne diseases by releasing genetically modified mosquitoes. One such strategy developed to help control *Ae. aegypti* mosquitoes, which vector a number of important human diseases including dengue fever and yellow fever, involves the release of genetically modified male mosquitoes that carry a dominant genetic system that is lethal to their offspring. This strategy, known as RIDL (Phuc *et al.* 2007, Thomas *et al.* 2000), can be designed so that the offspring resulting from matings between wild females and the genetically modified males die either before starting or after completing larval development (Phuc *et al.* 2007). It is expected that the latter strategy (known as late-lethal) would be more effective that the first (known as early-lethal) in suppressing the wild mosquito population, because the doomed offspring would survive through the larval stage to compete for resources and so their death would not reduce the density-dependent competition experienced by the larval population. Models of the RIDL strategy address the question of how the suppression in adult abundance is affected by the higher density-dependent larval competition associated with the late-lethal strategy (Atkinson *et al.* 2007, Phuc *et al.* 2007). Atkinson *et al.* (2007) derive threshold conditions for the eradication of the dengue virus for the early-lethal and late-lethal strategies in terms of demographic parameters relevant to mosquito vectorial capacity. However, quantification of these thresholds requires detailed data on the relationship between the survival of larvae and their density, which is either very scarce or non-existant, as discussed previously.

Conversely, many vector control methods, both traditional and novel, target mosquitoes in the adult stage of their lifecycle, as it is the older-aged adult mosquitoes that transmit human diseases. Such strategies include IRS and ITNs. A number of novel strategies for adult mosquito control are currently being developed, motivated by the rising levels of resistance in mosquito populations to the commonly used insecticides (Ranson *et al.* 2009). In Box 1 we describe a model of a novel method of biological control of mosquito populations. Fungal biopesticides can be used to infect adult mosquitoes with a pathogenic fungus which interferes with their mobility and blood-feeding activity and reduces their lifespan (Blanford *et al.* 2005, Scholte *et al.* 2006, Scholte *et al.* 2005). The model focuses on the demography of adult *Anopheles* mosquitoes and

aims to capture aspects of the adult mosquito's biology that are important to the effect of fungal biopesticides on the capacity of these mosquito populations to transmit malaria.

Ecological setting

An important purpose of models of mosquito control strategies is to investigate how the performance of strategies may vary across different ecological settings. Mosquito demographic rates can be strongly dependent on environmental conditions; for example temperature affects developmental processes in the mosquito, including the rate of development of the juvenile stages (Pascual *et al.* 2006), the rate of adult mortality, and the frequency of blood feeding (Paaijmans *et al.* 2010). The development rate of the parasites and viruses transmitted by mosquitoes is also sensitive to temperature (Paaijmans *et al.* 2009, Watts *et al.* 1987). Spatial analyses of malaria transmission intensity have used temperature and rainfall data to characterise the epidemiology of malaria throughout Africa in terms of whether the disease is likely to be absent, epidemic or endemic in different regions (Craig *et al.* 1999). The efficacy of vector-control interventions varies depending on the environmental conditions in the area where they are applied; for example IRS has been least effective in reducing malaria transmission in endemic tropical and lowland areas (Mabaso *et al.* 2004). In our case study we investigate how the ability of fungal biopesticide interventions to reduce the rate of malaria transmission may vary in areas with different temperature conditions (Box 1).

Seasonal fluctuations in mosquito abundance in response to rainfall patterns is also an important consideration for any mosquito control strategy. Accurate and effective early warning systems are valuable in allowing interventions to be implemented in time to contain seasonal outbreaks of disease (Thomson *et al.* 2006). Interventions such as the sterile insect technique (SIT), that involve releasing laboratory-reared mosquitoes to interfere with the reproduction of the wild population, may only be successful if they are well-timed. For example, the released mosquitoes may be overwhelmed if the natural population is rapidly expanding, but if the releases occur when conditions are too dry then the introduced mosquitoes may experience high mortality, particularly as they will need to locate relatively scarce suitable habitat to find mating partners. Given that mosquito abundance can increase over several orders of magnitude during the first 2-3 weeks of the rainy season (Laneri *et al.* 2010, Lehmann *et al.* 2010), seasonality represents a major practical challenge for these interventions in some areas.

Similar issues arise with newer technologies aiming to release genetically modified mosquitoes (Deredec *et al.* 2008, Gould *et al.* 2008, Marshall *et al.* 2011). These strategies can be used to spread genes through the population that have a detrimental effect on the mosquito or on the pathogen that it transmits, lowering the vectorial capacity of the population (a process known as 'population replacement'). Often it is necessary that the frequency of the gene exceeds a certain threshold level in the population in order for it to spread, and so the strategy requires the abundance of natural population to be sufficiently low that the insect releases can attain this frequency (Deredec *et al.* 2008, Marshall *et al.* 2011). This condition also applies to novel biological control methods involving the release of mosquitoes infected with *Wolbachia* bacteria, because *Wolbachia* also only spread once their infection frequency exceeds a threshold (Hancock *et al.* 2011a,b, Hoffmann *et al.* 2011, McMeniman *et al.* 2009, Moreira *et al.* 2009, Turelli 1994, Walker *et al.* 2011). Mosquito population dynamic models that explicitly represent seasonally varying demographic rates, and the mating frequency between released and wild mosquitoes, can be used to explore the effects of the timing of releases on the number of introduced insects required for spread to occur in a seasonal environment (Hancock *et al.* 2011a,b). The results emphasise that an ability to understand

and predict seasonal variation in mosquito population dynamics can be vital to the success of control strategies that involve deliberate mosquito releases.

Future directions

With growing attention being given to the control of mosquito vectors, it is clear that models will be increasingly called upon to build a theory of mosquito dynamics, and to investigate the impacts of specific control measures. Both the modelling approaches discussed in this chapter – backward modelling to interpret complex mosquito data, and forward modelling to predict the consequences of specific interventions – are currently being applied, yet this is a young field of research. We end this chapter with a brief comment on three important, yet under-studied, aspects of mosquito dynamics where modelling attention is required: evolution, spatial structure, and community effects.

Evolution

Both mosquito vectors, and the pathogens they transmit, have unfortunately proven themselves remarkably adaptable in the face of certain control measures. *An. gambiae s.l.*, for example, have evolved to become less susceptible to certain insecticides, both through physiological changes (John *et al.* 2008) and behavioural changes (Pates and Curtis 2005), in only a few decades at most. Genomic study is proving useful to resolving the molecular mechanisms of resistance evolution (Hemingway *et al.* 2004, Weill *et al.* 2003), yet genomic insight alone cannot reveal the spatio-temporal dynamics by which resistance spreads among populations. Population genetic models are increasingly being used to study how intervention strategies are affected by evolutionary feedbacks in pest control (Onstad and Guse 2008), yet fewer models have been specifically tailored to mosquitoes (but see Koella *et al.* 2009, Read *et al.* 2009). To predict the conditions necessary for novel intervention strategies to be successful, it is clearly necessary to account for the potentially disruptive process of resistance evolution.

Spatial structure

In recent decades, questions of population spatial structure have become increasingly central to ecological and evolutionary research (Borcard *et al.* 2004, Hanski 1999, Thomas and Kunin 1999). The spatio-temporal dynamics of mosquito populations will be critical to the success of high-tech control strategies (Knols and Scott 2003). For instance, transgenic technologies rely on gene-flow, and so in order to make robust predictions of the conditions necessary for transgenic technologies to succeed, it is imperative to use models that account for processes, such as dispersal, that mediate gene-flow (Yakob *et al.* 2008a,b). Thanks in part to improvements in mapping technology, field biologists are increasingly recording spatial as well as temporal details of mosquito populations (e.g. Eisen and Lozano-Fuentes 2009, Fillinger and Lindsay 2006, Majambere *et al.* 2010). Spatial realism is notorious for the extent to which it complicates population models, however, and so it is perhaps unsurprising that few attempts have been made to compare spatio-temporal data to spatially realistic population models (though see Xu *et al.* 2010). Somewhat more effort has been applied to developing spatially realistic forward models in order to ask how spatial complications might affect the operation of novel control measures (Yakob and Bonsall 2009, Yakob *et al.* 2008a,b), yet our understanding of the spatial dynamics of mosquitoes clearly still has a long way to go.

Wider ecological impacts

Predicting how mosquito control will impact upon interacting species is a difficult task, yet community effects are to be expected for those interventions which strongly impact on mosquito populations. To dismiss these effects invites the possibility of unexpected outcomes of intervention, including failure (e.g. in the control of pest mammals from New Zealand forests, Tompkins and Veltman 2006). It has been suggested that even the eradication of mosquito species would have few wider ecological impacts (Fang 2010), yet this view has been staunchly criticised (Smith 2010), and it is clear that more research is needed. Although empirical study (especially manipulative experimental study) will inevitably underpin this research, models are also required. Models will be essential to interpreting multi-species data, and predicting the consequences of inter-specific interactions. The framework of community modules may be particularly useful to the study of how particular interventions might influence species interactions (Gilman *et al.* 2010). The interaction between congeneric mosquito species, which share similar ecological niches yet may respond to control measures differently, deserves particularly close attention. For example, the congeneric *An. gambiae s.l.* and *An. funestus* Giles mosquitoes differ in the extent to which they have evolved resistance to insecticide-treated nets and indoor residual spraying (Russell *et al.* 2011a). Since the niches of these species overlap, it is to be expected that the responses of each species to intervention will influence one another.

References

Atkinson MP, Su Z, Alphey N, Alphey LS, Coleman PG and Wein LM (2007) Analyzing the control of mosquito-borne diseases by a dominant lethal genetic system. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 104: 9540-9545.

Blanford S, Chan BHK, Jenkins N, Sim D, Turner RJ, Read AF and Thomas MB (2005) Fungal pathogen reduces potential for malaria transmission. Science 308: 1638-1641.

Borcard D, Legendre P, Avois-Jacquet C and Tuomisto H (2004) Dissecting the spatial structure of ecological data at multiple scales. Ecology 85: 1826-1832.

Brook BW and Bradshaw CJA (2006) Strength of evidence for density dependence in abundance time series of 1198 species. Ecology 87: 1445-1451.

Burt A (2003) Site-specific selfish genes as tools for the control and genetic engineering of natural populations. Proc R Soc Lond Ser B-Biol Sci 270: 921-928.

Craig MH, Snow RW and le Sueur D (1999) A climate-based distribution model of malaria transmission in sub-Saharan Africa. Parasitol Today 15: 105-111.

Curtis CF and Mnzava AEP (2000) Comparison of house spraying and insecticide-treated nets for malaria control. Bull WHO 78: 1389-1400.

Deredec A, Burt A and Godfray HCJ (2008) The population genetics of using homing endonuclease genes in vector and pest management. Genetics 179: 2013-2026.

Dye C (1984) Models for the population dynamics of the yellow fever mosquito, *Aedes aegypti*. J Anim Ecol 53: 247-268.

Dye C and Hasibeder G (1986) Population dynamics of mosquito-borne disease: effects of flies which bite some people more frequently than others. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 80: 69-77.

Edillo FE, Toure YT, Lanzaro GC, Dolo G and Taylor CE (2004) Survivorship and distribution of immature *Anopheles gambiae s.l.* (Diptera: Culicidae) in Banambani village, Mali. J Med Entomol 41: 333-339.

Eisen L and Lozano-Fuentes S (2009) Use of mapping and spatial and space-time modeling approaches in operational control of *Aedes aegypti* and dengue. PLoS Negl Trop Dis 3: e411.

Fang J (2010) Ecology: a world without mosquitoes. Nature 466: 432.

Ferguson HM, Dornhaus A, Beeche A, Borgemeister C, Gottlieb M, Mulla MS, Gimnig JE, Fish D and Killeen GF (2010) Ecology: a prerequisite for malaria elimination and eradication. PLoS Med 7: e1000303.

Fillinger U and Lindsay SW (2006) Suppression of exposure to malaria vectors by an order of magnitude using microbial larvicides in rural Kenya. Trop Med Int Health 11: 1629-1642.

Gilman SE, Urban MC, Tewksbury J, Gilchrist GW and Holt RD (2010) A framework for community interactions under climate change. Trends Ecol Evol 25: 325-331.

Gimnig JE, Ombok M, Otieno S, Kaufman MG, Vulule JM and Walker ED (2002) Density-dependent development of *Anopheles gambiae* (Diptera: Culicidae) larvae in artificial habitats. J Med Entomol 39: 162-172.

Gould F, Huang YX, Legros M and Lloyd AL (2008) A Killer-Rescue system for self-limiting gene drive of anti-pathogen constructs. Proc R Soc Lond B Biol Sci 275: 2823-2829.

Gubler DJ (1998) Resurgent vector-borne diseases as a global health problem. Emerging Infect Dis 4: 442.

Hancock P, Thomas M and Godfray H (2009) An age-structured model to evaluate the potential of novel malaria-control interventions: a case study of fungal biopesticide sprays. Proc R Soc Lond Ser B-Biol Sci 276: 71.

Hancock PA (2009) Combining fungal biopesticides and insecticide-treated bednets to enhance malaria control. PLoS Comput Biol 5: e1000525.

Hancock PA, Sinkins SP and Godfray HCJ (2011a) Population dynamic models of the spread of *Wolbachia*. Am Nat 177.

Hancock PA, Sinkins SP and Godfray HCJ (2011b) Strategies for introducing *Wolbachia* to reduce transmission of mosquito-borne diseases. PLoS Negl Trop Dis, in press.

Hanski I (1990) Density dependence, regulation and variability in animal populations. Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci 330: 141.

Hanski I (1999) Metapopulation ecology. Oxford University Press, New York, NY, USA.

Haworth J (1988) The global distribution of malaria and the present control efforts. In: Wernsdorfer WH and McGregor I (eds.) Malaria, Churchill Livingstone, Edinburgh, UK, pp. 1379-1420.

Hemingway J, Hawkes NJ, McCarroll L and Ranson H (2004) The molecular basis of insecticide resistance in mosquitoes. Insect Biochem Mol Biol 34: 653-665.

Hoffmann AA, Montgomery BL, Popovici J, Iturbe-Ormaetxe I, Johnson PH, Muzzi F, Greenfield M, Durkan M, Leong YS, Dong Y, Cook H, Axford J, Callahan AG, Kenny N, Omodei C, McGraw EA, Ryan PA, Ritchie SA, Turelli M and O'Neill SL (2011) Successful establishment of *Wolbachia* in *Aedes* populations to suppress dengue transmission. Nature 476: 454-457.

Jawara M, Pinder M, Drakeley CJ, Nwakanma DC, Jallow E, Bogh C, Lindsay SW and Conway DJ (2008) Dry season ecology of *Anopheles gambiae* complex mosquitoes in The Gambia. Malar J 7: 9.

John R, Ephraim T and Andrew A (2008) Reduced susceptibility to pyrethroid insecticide treated nets by the malaria vector *Anopheles gambiae s. l.* in western Uganda. Malar J 7: 92.

Johnson JB and Omland KS (2004) Model selection in ecology and evolution. Trends Ecol Evol 19: 101-108.

Kikankie CK, Brooke BD, Knols BGJ, Koekemoer LL, Farenhorst M, Hunt RH, Thomas MB and Coetzee M (2010) The infectivity of the entomopathogenic fungus *Beauveria bassiana* to insecticide-resistant and susceptible *Anopheles arabiensis* mosquitoes at two different temperatures. Malar J 9: (8 March 2010).

Killeen GF, Smith TA, Ferguson HM, Mshinda H, Abdulla S, Lengeler C and Kachur SP (2007) Preventing childhood malaria in Africa by protecting adults from mosquitoes with insecticide-treated nets. PLoS Med 4: 1246-1258.

Klowden MJ (2007) Making generalizations about vectors: is there a physiology of 'the mosquito'? Entomol Res 37: 1-13.

Knols BGJ and Scott TW (2003) Discussion-Ecological challenges concerning the use of genetically modified mosquitoes for disease control: synthesis and future perspectives. In: Takken W and Scott TW (eds.) Proceedings of the Frontis workshop on ecological challenges concerning the use of genetically modified mosquitoes for disease control Wageningen, the Netherlands 26-29 June 2002. Frontis, Wageningen, the Netherlands, pp. 235-242.

Koella JC, Lynch PA, Thomas MB and Read AF (2009) Towards evolution-proof malaria control with insecticides. Evol Appl 2: 469-480.

Koenraadt CJM, Githeko AK and Takken W (2004) The effects of rainfall and evapotranspiration on the temporal dynamics of *Anopheles gambiae* s.s. and *Anopheles arabiensis* in a Kenyan village. Acta Trop 90: 141-153.

Kokko H (2007) Modelling for field biologists and other interesting people. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Laneri K, Bhadra A, Ionides EL, Bouma M, Dhiman RC, Yadav RS and Pascual M (2010) Forcing versus feedback: epidemic malaria and monsoon rains in northwest India. PLoS Comput Biol 6: 13.

Lardeux F, Tejerina R, Quispe V and Chavez T (2008) A physiological time analysis of the duration of the gonotrophic cycle of *Anopheles pseudopunctipennis* and its implications for malaria transmission in Bolivia. Malar J 7.

Legros M, Lloyd AL, Huang YX and Gould F (2009) Density-dependent intraspecific competition in the larval stage of *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae): revisiting the current paradigm. J Med Entomol 46: 409-419.

Lehmann T, Dao A, Yaro AS, Adamou A, Kassogue Y, Diallo M, Sékou T and Coscaron-Arias C (2010) Aestivation of the African malaria mosquito, *Anopheles gambiae* in the Sahel. Am J Trop Med Hyg 83: 601-606.

Mabaso MLH, Sharp B and Lengeler C (2004) Historical review of malarial control in southern African with emphasis on the use of indoor residual house-spraying. Trop Med Int Health 9: 846-856.

MacDonald G (1957) The epidemiology and control of malaria. Oxford University Press, London, UK.

Majambere S, Pinder M, Fillinger U, Ameh D, Conway DJ, Green C, Jeffries D, Jawara M, Milligan PJ, Hutchinson R and others (2010) Is mosquito larval source management appropriate for reducing malaria in areas of extensive flooding in The Gambia? A Cross-over intervention trial. Am J Trop Med Hyg 82: 176.

Marshall JM, Pittman GW, Buchman AB and Hay BA (2011) Semele: a killer-male, rescue-female system for suppression and replacement of insect disease vector populations. Genetics 187: 535-U252.

McMeniman CJ, Lane RV, Cass BN, Fong AWC, Manpreet S, Wang Y and O'Neill SL (2009) Stable introduction of a life-shortening *Wolbachia* infection into the mosquito *Aedes aegypti*. Science 323: 141-144.

Moreira LA, Iturbe-Ormaetxe I, Jeffery JA, Lu GJ, Pyke AT, Hedges LM, Rocha BC, Hall-Mendelin S, Day A, Riegler M, Hugo LE, Johnson KN, Kay BH, McGraw EA, Van den Hurk AF, Ryan PA and O'Neill SL (2009) A *Wolbachia* symbiont in *Aedes aegypti* limits infection with Dengue, Chikungunya, and *Plasmodium*. Cell 139: 1268-1278.

Onstad DW and Guse CA (2008) Concepts and complexities of population genetics. In: Onstad DW (ed.) Insect resistance management. Biology, economics and predictions. Academic Press, New York, NY, USA, pp. 69-88.

Paaijmans KP, Blanford S, Bell AS, Blanford JI, Read AF and Thomas MB (2010) Influence of climate on malaria transmission depends on daily temperature variation. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 107: 15135-15139.

Paaijmans KP, Read AF and Thomas MB (2009) Understanding the link between malaria risk and climate. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 106: 13844-13849.

Pascual M, Ahumada JA, Chaves LF, Rodo X and Bouma M (2006) Malaria resurgence in the East African highlands: temperature trends revisited. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 103: 5829-5834.

Pates H and Curtis C (2005) Mosquito behavior and vector control. Annu Rev Entomol 50: 53-70.

Phuc H, Andreasen MH, Burton RS, Vass C, Epton MJ, Pape G, Fu G, Condon KC, Scaife S, Donnelly CA, Coleman PG, White-Cooper H and Alphey L (2007) Late-acting dominant lethal genetic systems and mosquito control. BMC Biol 5: 11

Quinones ML, Lines JD, Thomson MC, Jawara M, Morris J and Greenwood BM (1997) *Anopheles gambiae* gonotrophic cycle duration, biting and exiting behaviour unaffected by permethrin-impregnated bednets in The Gambia. Med Vet Entomol 11: 71-78.

Ranson H, Abdallah H, Badolo A, Guelbeogo W, Kerah-Hinzoumbe C, Yangalbe-Kalnone E, Sagnon NF, Simard F and Coetzee M (2009) Insecticide resistance in *Anopheles gambiae*: data from the first year of a multi-country study highlight the extent of the problem. Malar J 8: 299.

Read AF, Lynch PA and Thomas MB (2009) How to make evolution-proof insecticides for malaria control. PLoS Biol 7: e1000058.

Ross R (1911) The prevention of malaria. Murray, London, UK.

Russell T, Govella N, Azizi S, Drakeley C, Kachur SP and Killeen G (2011a) Increased proportions of outdoor feeding among residual malaria vector populations following increased use of insecticide-treated nets in rural Tanzania. Malar J 10: 80.

Russell TL, Lwetoijera DW, Knols BG, Takken W, Killeen GF and Ferguson HM (2011b) Linking individual phenotype to density-dependent population growth: the influence of body size on the population dynamics of malaria vectors. Proc Biol Sci 278: 3142-3151.

Scholte E-J, Knols BGJ and Takken W (2006) Infection of the malaria mosquito *Anopheles gambiae* with the entomopathogenic fungus *Metarhizium anisopliae* reduces blood feeding and fecundity. J Invertebr Pathol 91: 43-49.

Scholte E-J, Ng'habi K, Kihonda J, Takken W, Paaijmans K, Abdulla S, Killeen GF and Knols BGJ (2005) An entomopathogenic fungus for control of adult African malaria mosquitoes. Science 308: 1641-1642.

Scholte E-J, Njiru BN, Smallegange RC, Takken W and Knols BGJ (2003) Infection of malaria (*Anopheles gambiae* s.s.) and filariasis (*Culex quinquefasciatus*) vectors with the entomopathogenic fungus *Metarhizium anisopliae*. Malar J 2.

Service MW (1977) Mortalities of immature stages of species-B of *Anopheles gambiae* complex in Kenya – comparison between rice fields and temporary pools, identification of predators, and effects of insecticidal spraying. J Med Entomol 13: 535-545.

Smith DL and McKenzie E (2004) Statics and dynamics of malaria infection in Anopheles mosquitoes. Malar J 3: 13.

Smith SM (2010) Mosquitoes: schemes to render them extinct are impracticable. Nature 466: 1041-1041.

Southwood TRE, Murdie G, Yasuno M, Tonn RJ and Reader PM (1972) Studies on the life budget of *Aedes aegypti* in Wat Samphaya Bankok Thailand. Bull WHO 46: 211-226.

Takken W and Boëte C (2003) An introduction to ecological challenges concerning the use of genetically-modified mosquitoes for disease control. In In: Takken W and Scott TW (eds.) Proceedings of the Frontis workshop on ecological challenges concerning the use of genetically modified mosquitoes for disease control Wageningen, the Netherlands 26-29 June 2002. Frontis, Wageningen, the Netherlands, pp. 9-14.

Takken W and Knols BGJ (2009) Malaria vector control: current and future strategies. Trends Parasitol 25: 101-104.

Thomas CD and Kunin WE (1999) The spatial structure of populations. J Anim Ecol 68: 647-657.

Thomas DD, Donnelly CA, Wood RJ and Alphey LS (2000) Insect population control using a dominant, repressible, lethal genetic system. Science 287: 2474-2476.

Thomson MC, Doblas-Reyes FJ, Mason SJ, Hagedorn R, Connor SJ, Phindela T, Morse AP and Palmer TN (2006) Malaria early warnings based on seasonal climate forecasts from multi-model ensembles. Nature 439: 576-579.

Tompkins DM and Veltman CJ (2006) Unexpected consequences of vertebrate pest control: predictions from a four-species community model. Ecol Appl 16: 1050-1061.

Turchin P (2003) Complex population dynamics. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ, USA.

Turelli M (1994) Evolution of incompatibility inducing microbes and their hosts. Evolution 48: 1500-1513.

Walker T, Johnson PH, Moreira LA, Iturbe-Ormaetxe I, Frentiu FD, McMeniman CJ, Leong YS, Dong Y, Axford J, Kriesner P, Lloyd AL, Ritchie SA, O/'Neill SL and Hoffmann AA (2011) The wMel *Wolbachia* strain blocks dengue and invades caged *Aedes aegypti* populations. Nature 476: 450-453.

Ward CM, Su JT, Huang Y, Lloyd AL, Gould F and Hay BA (2011) Medea selfish genetic elements as tools for altering traits of wild populations: a theoretical analysis. Evolution 65: 1149-1162.

Watts DM, Burke DS, Harrison BA, Whitmire RE and Nisalak A (1987) Effect of temperature on the vector efficiency of *Aedes aegypti* for dengue-2 virus. Am J Trop Med Hyg 36: 143-152.

Weill M, Lutfalla G, Mogensen K, Chandre F, Berthomieu A, Berticat C, Pasteur N, Philips A, Fort P and Raymond M (2003) Comparative genomics: insecticide resistance in mosquito vectors. Nature 423: 136-137.

Xu C, Legros M, Gould F and Lloyd AL (2010) understanding uncertainties in model-based predictions of *Aedes aegypti* population dynamics. PLoS Negl Trop Dis 4: e830.

Yakob L and Bonsall MB (2009) Importance of space and competition in optimizing genetic control strategies. J Econ Entomol 102: 50-57.

Yakob L, Alphey L and Bonsall MB (2008a) *Aedes aegypti* control: the concomitant role of competition, space and transgenic technologies. J Appl Ecol 45: 1258-1265.

Yakob L, Kiss IZ and Bonsall MB (2008b) A network approach to modeling population aggregation and genetic control of pest insects. Theor Popul Biol 74: 324-331.

Yang GJ, Bradshaw CJA, Whelan PI and Brook BW (2008a) Importance of endogenous feedback controlling the long-term abundance of tropical mosquito species. Popul Ecol 50: 293-305.

Yang GJ, Brook BW, Whelan PI, Cleland S and Bradshaw CJA (2008b) Endogenous and exogenous factors controlling temporal abundance patterns of tropical mosquitoes. Ecol Appl 18: 2028-2040.

Zeng Z, Nowierski RM, Taper ML, Dennis B and Kemp WP (1998) Complex population dynamics in the real world: modeling the influence of time-varying parameters and time lags. Ecology 79: 2193-2209.

11. Heterogeneity in malaria transmission: underlying factors and implications for disease control

Teun Bousema and Amrish Baidjoe

Abstract

In this chapter, we describe the current evidence for the existence of hotspots of malaria transmission. Heterogeneity is a common element of many infectious diseases, whereby infection and disease are concentrated in a small proportion of individuals and not distributed evenly across the population. In malaria this heterogeneity is manifested as small groups of households, or hotspots, within malaria endemic communities that are at a substantially increased risk of malaria transmission compared to surrounding households. These hotspots exist in all transmission settings, but are most easily detected at low transmission. The ecological, human and entomological factors that influence the occurrence of hotspots are currently not fully understood. Human genetic components are strongly related to the risk of (severe) clinical disease but their role in determining the location and intensity of hotspots remains uncertain. The roles of factors related to mosquito exposure are more apparent in defining geographical patterns in transmission intensity. The importance for malaria control and elimination lies in the fact that hotspots maintain transmission in low transmission seasons, representing the source of infection to the general community when vector densities increase. Hotspots of malaria transmission thereby form small geographical areas where malaria transmission is more intense and from where malaria may spread to the remainder of the community. Interventions targeted to hotspots of malaria transmission hold promise to reduce transmission intensity in the community as a whole. Before hotspots can be targeted, operationally attractive approaches to identify them need to be defined. Some of these approaches are described in this chapter together with a tool-box for hotspot-targeted interventions.

Keywords: *Plasmodium* falciparum, heterogeneity, hotspots, elimination, transmission, Anopheles

Spatial variation in malaria incidence

The occurrence of clinical malaria attacks is not equally distributed in space in time. In many endemic regions, malaria incidence shows striking spatio-temporal variation. The temporal variation in malaria exposure is well described for areas of seasonal malaria transmission. The extent of seasonality differs between regions and can be quantified as the proportion of all malaria episodes occurring in the peak transmission season. Marked seasonality can be defined as a transmission pattern in which more than 75% of malaria episodes occur in 6 or fewer months (Roca-Feltrer *et al.* 2009); in some areas ~90% of all malaria episodes may occur in a period as short as 3 months (Giha *et al.* 2000). Malaria transmission is practically absent in months when drought and/or temperatures are less suitable for mosquito propagation or the development of malaria parasites inside their mosquito vectors (Giha *et al.* 2000, John *et al.* 2009, Shililu *et al.* 2003).

In addition to this variation in time, geographical variation can be very pronounced. Spatial variation in malaria exposure exists between neighbouring villages (Bejon *et al.* 2010, Bousema *et al.* 2007, Kreuels *et al.* 2008) or sub-villages (Bousema *et al.* 2010a, Drakeley *et al.* 2003) and even between households in the same village (Bejon *et al.* 2010, Bousema *et al.* 2010a, Gaudart *et al.* 2006, Ghebreyesus *et al.* 1999). In longitudinal studies where the incidence of clinical malaria

W. Takken and C.J.M. Koenraadt (eds.), *Ecology of parasite-vector interactions*, Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases 3, DOI 10.3920/978-90-8686-744-8_11, © Wageningen Academic Publishers 2013

attacks is quantified at an individual level, it is commonly observed that some individuals can remain malaria-free for more than one year while others experience multiple malaria attacks during the same period (Bousema *et al.* 2010a, Clark *et al.* 2008, Mwangi *et al.* 2008). In an area of 16 km^2 exposed to low and unstable malaria transmission in the highlands of Kenya, small geographical areas were identified where malaria risk was up to 40-fold higher than elsewhere (Ernst *et al.* 2006). In studies conducted in areas of low to moderate endemicity in Uganda and Tanzania, 47-69% of children remained malaria free during a period of >20 months while others experienced up to 9-14 malaria attacks (Bousema *et al.* 2010a, Clark *et al.* 2008).

It has long been assumed that this heterogeneity is absent or at least far less evident in areas of higher endemicity (Carter *et al.* 2000). It is, however, likely that even in highly endemic regions considerable variation in the exposure to malaria infected mosquitoes exists (Carter *et al.* 2000, Kreuels *et al.* 2008, Trape *et al.* 2002). This heterogeneity in exposure may not lead to easily detectable variation in malaria incidence in these regions, because many infections in high endemic regions do not cause clinical symptoms (Males *et al.* 2008, Proietti *et al.* 2011) and even the individuals with the lowest relative exposure may experience at least one malaria episode in a year (Trape *et al.* 2002). As a consequence, variation in malaria exposure within these regions may remain undetected. Despite this, micro-epidemiological variations in disease risk can be detected in areas with an entomological inoculation rate (EIR) of >100 infected bites per person per year (ibpy) if studies prospectively quantify malaria incidence, or the incidence of malaria infections regardless of symptoms (Bousema *et al.* 2011, Gaudart *et al.* 2006), and link incidence to individual geo-located households. In a region of intense malaria transmission in Ghana (EIR ~400 ibpy), some children experienced malaria attacks at a rate that was five-fold higher than the village average while one-third of children remained malaria-free over a period of 21 months (Kreuels *et al.* 2008). Our current understanding is that spatial variation in malaria exposure is present across all levels of transmission intensity but is more easily recognised at lower endemicity.

Defining hotspots of malaria transmission

Global trends of reducing malaria transmission intensity (Barnes *et al.* 2009, Bhattarai *et al.* 2007, Ceesay *et al.* 2008, Kleinschmidt *et al.* 2009, O'Meara *et al.* 2008), have changed the epidemiology of malaria. These changes have uncovered heterogeneity in disease transmission in areas that were previously exposed to intense and apparently homogeneous malaria transmission. In these areas, small localities of intense transmission intensity can exist (or persist) in regions with a lower average level of malaria exposure (Bejon *et al.* 2010, Bousema *et al.* 2010a). These findings have fuelled the academic and public health interest in defining hotspots of malaria transmission intensity (Dolgin 2010). For this, it is essential to define what is meant by *hotspots of malaria transmission*. The current literature is inconsistent; entire countries or islands are sometimes classified as malaria hotspots (Singh *et al.* 2009, Toty *et al.* 2010), while some studies reserve the term hotspots of malaria transmission for small geographical areas that form part of a larger endemic region (Bejon *et al.* 2010, 2011a, Bousema *et al.* 2010a). Two related but distinct geographical elements in malaria transmission should be separated:

1. The World Health Organization definition of a *focus of malaria transmission* is a defined and circumscribed locality situated in a currently or former malarious area and containing the continuous or intermittent epidemiological factors necessary for malaria transmission. Foci of malaria transmission can be classified as residual active, residual non-active, cleared up, new potential, new active, endemic or pseudo foci (World Health 2007). In more academic terms, an active focus of malaria transmission is a geographical area that supports malaria transmission, where the local *Anopheles* population sustains R_0, the average number of secondary cases

arising in a susceptible population as a result of a single human case over the course of their malaria infection, to a level >1 (Bousema *et al.* 2010a, Carter *et al.* 2000). A mosquito breeding site forms the centre of a focus of malaria transmission. The size of the focus of malaria transmission depends on the maximum effective dispersal range of vector mosquitoes; the border is the location furthest away from the breeding site where malaria is still supported by this breeding site.

2. A *hotspot of malaria transmission* is defined as a geographical part of a focus of malaria transmission where malaria transmission exceeds the average level. Micro-epidemiological conditions for malaria transmission are favourable in a hotspot of malaria transmission, resulting in R_0 estimates that exceed the average for the focus of malaria transmission. The size of a hotspot of malaria transmission is smaller than the maximum dispersal range of vector mosquitoes; its borders are defined by the distance from the centre of the hotspot where transmission intensity is no longer (statistically significantly) higher than the average for the focus of malaria transmission (Bejon *et al.* 2010, Bousema *et al.* 2010a).

Human factors and heterogeneity in malaria transmission

The occurrence of clinical malaria and, to a lesser extent, asymptomatic infection is influenced by innate and acquired protective responses. Several human genetic polymorphisms have been identified that have been associated with protection against (severe) clinical malaria An additional aspect of human genetic polymorphisms that is receiving increasing attention is their potential impact on gametocyte carriage and the transmission of malaria to mosquitoes (Gouagna *et al.* 2010, Robert *et al.* 1996). This results in a double interest in human genetic polymorphisms in the context of heterogeneity in malaria transmission: they may explain part of the variation in malaria incidence and may also result in differences in malaria transmission potential in the human population. Their impact on malaria incidence may influence the accuracy of detecting hotspots of malaria transmission (see paragraph on operational approaches to detecting hotspots of malaria transmission), their impact on transmission potential may contribute to the formation of hotspots of malaria transmission.

Genetic factors related to human susceptibility to malaria infection and clinical malaria

The malaria parasite depends on human red blood cells (RBC) for shelter and the provision of nutrients for the duration of its infection in humans. It is therefore logical that it is sensitive to variations in RBCs. Over one hundred RBC-related genetic polymorphisms have been described, several of which have well described effects on the erythrocyte phenotype (Min-Oo and Gros 2005). For haemoglobin alterations affecting the β-chains (e.g. HbS, HbC and HbE) or conditions in which the balance between α and β chains is altered (e.g. α- and β-thalassaemia), there is sufficient evidence for a role in protection against (severe) malaria. The same is true for alterations in levels of a key enzyme in red blood cells, glucose-6-phosphate deficiency, and structural alterations leading to physical structural changes on the RBC membrane like the Duffy blood group (Kwiatkowski 2005). With the exception of the Duffy blood group, none of these polymorphisms seem to protect against initial infection with malaria but rather convey ways to keep the infection controlled and prevent progression to high density infections or severe disease. Although these genetic polymorphisms have direct beneficial effects for the human host, their epidemiological consequences for malaria transmission may not necessarily be equally beneficial.

Haemoglobinopathies: haemoglobin variants S, C and E

Haemoglobin (Hb) is a tetrameric molecule which comprises one of the main structural and functional elements of erythrocytes. It consists of two α-chains and two β-chains. In an altered form of haemoglobin, which is described as haemoglobin S (HbS) a mutation occurs which leads to the modification of one or both β-chains. Heterozygote carriers (HbAS) have one normal and one altered β-chain. Their red blood cells function relatively normal. This contrasts with RBCs of homozygous individuals (HbSS) in whom both β-chains are abnormal; HbSS cells assume a typical sickle shape under low oxygen conditions which leads to increased cell lysis and obstruction in the micro-vascular system. In countries where advanced medical care lacks HbSS homozygote individuals often die during early childhood. HbAS does not have this detrimental effect but protects against severe clinical consequences of malaria infection, but not against infection itself (Williams 2006). HbAS individuals may have a 90% lower risk of severe and lethal malaria compared to normal (HbAA) individuals (Aidoo *et al.* 2002, Williams *et al.* 2005b). Infected HbAS cells, sickle at a higher frequency compared to uninfected cells; sickle cells are known to be cleared in the spleen at higher frequencies. This results in a direct reduction of parasite densities and may also confer enhanced antigen presentation in the spleen, resulting in an improved acquisition of immune responses (Williams *et al.* 2005a). This immune component is supported by findings that the extent of the protective effect conferred by HbAS increases with age (Williams *et al.* 2005a). Sickle haemoglobin is also described to have a negative effect on the cytoadherence of RBCs infected with *Plasmodium falciparum*. This seems to correlate with an altered display of *P. falciparum* erythrocyte membrane protein-1 (Pf-EMP-1), a protein of great significance in terms of virulence and the adherence of infected RBC's to micro vascular veins (Cholera *et al.* 2008).

Haemoglobin C and E are both alternations in the β-globin chain but affect the erythrocytes in different ways. HbC is mainly found in West Africa and in higher frequencies in specific parts of West Africa like Ghana and Burkina Faso. The protective effect of HbC can especially be observed in HbCC homozygotes (Williams 2006) and may be related to a reduced ability of *P. falciparum* parasites to grow and multiply in these variant RBCs (Fairhurst *et al.* 2003, Olson and Nagel 1986, Williams 2006); in HbAC cells parasite growth may be at the same level as normal cells (Hutagalung *et al.* 1999). An alternative mechanism for the protective effect of HbC may be a reduced expression of *P*f-EMP-1, resulting in reduced cytoadherence of infected cells and a lower risk of severe (but not of uncomplicated) malaria (Fairhurst *et al.* 2003, Olson and Nagel 1986, Williams 2006).

Haemoglobin E is also associated with a reduced risk of severe malaria (Williams 2006). There is some evidence of reduced parasite growth in cells in both HbAE and HbEE individuals; both cell types also seem to be phagocytosed at higher frequencies when infected (Chotivanich *et al.* 2002). Similar to HbCC, HbEE is relatively benign and it is possible that selection favours both homo- and heterozygotes (Williams 2006).

Haemoglobinopathies: thalassaemias

Thalassaemias are polymorphisms resulting in an imbalance in the synthesis of α and β-globin chains of the haemoglobin molecules. α-thalassaemia is commonly found in regions of sub-Saharan Africa and Asia where malaria is or has been endemic. α-thalassaemia results from a deletion of one or more α-globulin genes. The clinical consequences depend on how many genes are still operational and how severe the imbalance between α and β globulin is. Absence of all 4 genes results in stillborns and is therefore not observed in malaria-endemic populations. Deletion of one or two of the genes may result in lower haemoglobin levels (Veenemans *et al.* 2008).

α-thalassaemia is associated with protection against severe anaemia during asymptomatic malaria infections (Veenemans *et al.* 2008), protection against severe disease but not against asymptomatic infection (Williams 2006) and probably not against uncomplicated disease (Wambua *et al.* 2006). There seems to be a strong correlation with age dependant factors determining to what degree α-thalassaemia offers protection against malaria (Mockenhaupt *et al.* 2004, Veenemans *et al.* 2011).

β-thalassaemia is associated with a lower parasite density but not prevalence (Willcox *et al.* 1983) and is more prevalent in the Mediterranean and Middle East than in sub-Saharan Africa. When infected with malaria parasites, β-thalassaemic cells show a reduced parasite growth *in vitro* when exposed to oxidant stress. Individuals with a single a-thalassaemic gene deletion seem to support parasite growth at normal rates; there is some evidence that infected thalassaemic cells to show enhanced antigen presentation (Williams *et al.* 2005c), suggesting an immune component in thalassaemia-associated protection.

RBC enzymes: glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency

Since erythrocytes lack nuclei and active translation machinery they are greatly dependent on some key long lived enzymes to create and maintain an appropriate environment for the cell to exhibit its function. Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) is one of these enzymes; it metabolizes glucose through the pentose phosphate pathway and plays a key role in synthesizing NADPH. The gene coding for this enzyme is located on the X-chromosome and therefore autosomal; explaining why the more severe forms G6PD are mostly found in males in whom a mutation in a single gene results in a less efficient or completely deficient enzyme. Different mutations are responsible for varying degrees of G6PD deficiency across the globe (Ruwende *et al.* 1995), the most common African variant resulting in less severe G6PD deficiency than the Mediterranean variant (Tripathy and Reddy 2007).

The protection against malaria conferred by G6PD deficiency involves the early phagocytosis of infected RBCs. G6PD-deficient infected RBCs are phagocytized more efficiently than infected normal cells through a mechanism that may involve human immune components and the fact that they are more prone to oxidative stress. (Cappadoro *et al.* 1998) This results in a similar risk of infection while the time to reach densities that cause symptomatic or severe malaria would be longer for G6PD deficient individuals (Missinou *et al.* 2003).

Membrane proteins: ovalocytosis

Ovalocytosis is a disorder which affects the cytoskeleton of the erythrocyte. The typical round shape of RBCs is changed to a more oval shape. This condition is predominantly found in South East Asia; and although the condition is rare in most regions, it can be found in up to 15% of the population of some Asian countries. Ovalocytosis is associated with a more rigid RBC and an increased RBC adherence to endothelium receptors that are not present in the vascular endothelium of the brain (Cortes *et al.* 2005). Ovalocytosis has also been associated with resistance against invasion by some, but not all, parasite lines *in vitro* (Cortes *et al.* 2004). Ovalocytosis is associated with a reduced risk to the development of severe (cerebral) malaria (Allen *et al.* 1999, Cortes *et al.* 2005) but not against asymptomatic infection (Genton *et al.* 1995, Williams 2006).

Membrane proteins: Duffy blood group negativity

Lack of the Duffy antigen or Duffy blood group negativity, is associated with protection against *Plasmodium vivax*. This parasite is largely absent in much of sub-Saharan African countries while prevalent in Asia and South America. This geographical pattern has largely been attributed to a single nucleotide polymorphism leading to the absence of the Duffy binding protein from RBCs in most African populations. This Duffy binding protein was long thought to be absolutely essential for the binding and entering of *P. vivax* merozoites of RBCs. In more recent years, transmission of *P. vivax* has been reported in Duffy negative individuals (Menard *et al.* 2010, Ryan *et al.* 2006). This would indicate that the parasite has found an alternative pathway to invade red blood cells within individuals negative for the Duffy antigen (Mendes *et al.* 2011). Nevertheless, the Duffy antigen is a striking illustration of how human genetic polymorphisms can shape the geographical map of malaria transmission.

Other genetic related factors

The correlation between genetically defined RBC polymorphisms and malaria has fuelled ideas around the burden of disease and selective pressure. Host gene polymorphisms in relation with malaria may not be restricted to those affecting RBCs. Cohort studies in Kenya indicated that the genetic contribution to variability of malaria incidence is well beyond that explained by the anticipated effects of the haemoglobinopathies alone; genetic and unidentified household factors may each account for around one quarter of the total variability in malaria incidence (Mackinnon *et al.* 2005). Associations with severe malaria and high parasitaemia have also been found with human leukocyte antigens (HLA), a highly polymorphic family of molecules that play a crucial role in immune responses (Hill *et al.* 1992). Also other specific chromosomal regions contributing to the hosts immune response have been identified (Abel *et al.* 1992, Garcia *et al.* 1998). Differences have been found in populations of same ancestral origin but living at higher altitudes where malaria was not endemic (Terrenato *et al.* 1988). Genome wide linkage and association studies have shown several associations with genetic immune-related traits and host responses to malaria infections (Griffiths *et al.* 2005). All these combined findings prove that malaria parasites have imposed a strong selective pressure on the human genome in former and current malaria endemic regions. The list of genetic factors associated with (severe) clinical malaria is becoming longer and as more results from genome wide linkage and association studies become available, the complex pathophysiology of malaria is likely to be progressively revealed (Terrenato *et al.* 1988).

Human genetic factors related to human infectiousness to mosquitoes

There are several ways in which human genetic polymorphisms may influence transmission potential. Reductions in the risk of infection with malaria parasites or the density of malaria parasites will plausibly result in a reduction in transmission potential (Bousema and Drakeley 2011) while a longer duration of infections will in turn increase transmission potential. These conflicting possible outcomes warn against strong conclusions based on cross-sectional data that largely miss effects that become apparent with time.

There is little evidence for a reduced risk of malaria infection associated with any of the above described polymorphisms (with the exception of Duffy antigen); instead they may lower parasite density or slow parasite growth which may translate in a longer duration of asymptomatic infections. This will increase the development and duration of gametocyte carriage, which seems

to be supported by the suggestion that there is a significant human genetic contribution to gametocyte carriage in asymptomatic but not in symptomatic infections (Lawaly *et al.* 2010).

There are several indications that human genetic factors may influence gametocyte carriage and malaria transmission. Differences in gametocyte carriage were observed between tribes in West Africa that could not be explained by innate differences in immunity against asexual parasites (Paganotti *et al.* 2006). Most detailed studies on human genetic polymorphisms in relation to malaria transmission potential have focused on HbC and HbS. HbAS was associated with increased gametocyte carriage and increased density of gametocytes (Lawaly *et al.* 2010) and with an increased transmission of malaria to mosquitoes (Robert *et al.* 1996). In line with this, Gouagna and colleagues observed an association between the protective HbC and HbS genotypes and increased transmission to mosquitoes, an effect estimated as up to twofold in *in vivo* and fourfold in *ex vivo* studies (Gouagna *et al.* 2010). It was hypothesized that HbS and HbC might promote sexual differentiation, reduce human transmission blocking immune responses or increase gametocyte carriage as a result of the longer duration of parasite carriage in these individuals (Gouagna *et al.* 2010).

One longitudinal study that tried to determine a direct link between α-thalassaemia and gametocyte carriage or density failed to show a significant impact (Lawaly *et al.* 2010). Gametocyte rates were reported to be lower in children carrying the β-thalassaemia trait although the cause for this association remains to be established (Willcox *et al.* 1983). In summary, data are very limited but for HbC and S there is some evidence that the individual protection conferred by these haemoglobinopathies comes at the epidemiological cost of a higher transmission potential to the wider community.

Human genetic factors and hotspots of malaria transmission

Genetic factors that render individuals more or less susceptible to malaria infection or clinical malaria attacks can strongly influence intra-individual differences in malaria incidence. If human genetic factors cluster geographically, i.e. in compounds or villages, this clustering may be epidemiologically relevant for malaria transmission. Using the terminology of foci and hotspots of malaria transmission: neighbouring villages may differ in genetic background (Dolo *et al.* 2005) and hence their risk of malaria (i.e. contribute to the intensity of transmission in a focus of malaria transmission). In some exceptional areas, individuals who are genetically more prone to produce gametocytes during their infection may cluster geographically in such a way that they infect mosquitoes which subsequently spread the infection to populations with a different genetic make-up. Human genetic components could therefore contribute to the formation of a hotspot of malaria transmission. This has been suggested for areas in Burkina Faso where the susceptibility for malaria, and potentially a different infectiousness of different tribes to mosquitoes, has been described (Dolo *et al.* 2005, Paganotti *et al.* 2006). This scenario may prove to be less exceptional once genetic elements determining the human transmission potential are identified at household or family level and if local 'super spreaders', people who are disproportionally infectious to mosquitoes (Bousema and Drakeley 2011, Lawaly *et al.* 2010), can be identified. In this respect, the authors believe there will be an important role for human genetic factors that determine their attractiveness to mosquitoes; these factors may explain heterogeneity in malaria exposure in villages where all known risk factors for malaria are apparently homogeneously distributed. Until these factors are revealed, most studies on heterogeneity in malaria transmission justifiably focus on factors related to spatial variation in mosquito exposure.

Heterogeneity in mosquito exposure

Factors determining spatial heterogeneity in mosquito exposure

Given the nature of malaria transmission, it is unsurprising that heterogeneity in malaria incidence has long been associated with the vicinity of mosquito breeding sites. Observations from ancient Egypt and Greece already noted the association between fevers and wet ground and anti-malaria regulations in Italy in the early nineteenth century required that irrigated land had to be at least 500 meters away from general housing and at least 8 kilometres from the capital of a kingdom (Carter *et al.* 2000, Watson 1949). More recent studies described an association between malaria incidence and the distance to the forest (Kreuels *et al.* 2008), river (Lindsay *et al.* 1993b, Oesterholt *et al.* 2006), water body (Bousema *et al.* 2010a, Ghebreyesus *et al.* 1999) or confirmed *Anopheles* breeding site (Bousema *et al.* 2010a, Thomas and Lindsay 2000). The strength of these associations will depend on the productivity of breeding sites and the effective mosquito dispersal range. The productivity of mosquito breeding sites is variable and is influenced by factors including the type (Bogh *et al.* 2003, Edillo *et al.* 2004, Fillinger *et al.* 2009b, Majambere *et al.* 2008, Mutuku *et al.* 2006), size (Majambere *et al.* 2008) and stability of habitats (Mutuku *et al.* 2006), temperature (Edillo *et al.* 2004, Kirby and Lindsay 2009), rainfall (Paaijmans *et al.* 2007), vegetation (Bogh *et al.* 2003, Fillinger *et al.* 2009b, Majambere *et al.* 2008), salinity (Bogh *et al.* 2003), presence of larvae of other mosquito species (Majambere *et al.* 2008) and other micro-environmental characteristics. The presence of water in a potential focus of malaria transmission therefore does not automatically translate in an epidemiologically important source of malaria vectors. Similarly, the apparent absence of evident water bodies does not exclude the presence of a source of mosquito emergence. This was recently illustrated by the association of hotspots of malaria transmission with soil moisture content (Bejon *et al.* 2010) despite an apparent homogeneous ecology (Bejon *et al.* 2010, Dolgin 2010). Obviously, findings of higher mosquito abundance in endemic areas do not equal increased malaria transmission intensity; in northern Tanzania a highly significant cluster of higher mosquito exposure was not associated with a higher malaria incidence (Bousema *et al.* 2010a).

The effective mosquito dispersal range from breeding sites will depend on their localisation in relation to potential blood meal sources. If humans are the primary source of blood meals for mosquitoes, the dispersal of mosquitoes from their breeding sites will strongly depend on the human population density in the area surrounding this breeding site. The *Anopheles* dispersal range may generally be less than 1 km in densely populated areas (Carter *et al.* 2000, Manga *et al.* 1993, Midega *et al.* 2007, Trape *et al.* 1992) but low population densities motivate mosquitoes to extend their flying range in search of a blood meal, potentially leading to ranges of ≥2 kilometres (Carter *et al.* 2000, Ejerctto and Urbino 1951, Lindsay *et al.* 1995). In densely populated areas, there can be a strong gradient in relative mosquito exposure and distance to a (potential) breeding site. In an urban area in Senegal, mosquito exposure approximately halved with every 200 m increase in distance from a known mosquito breeding site (Trape *et al.* 1992). In a Malian village with one permanent breeding site and dense human inhabitation at 50-1000 m from this breeding site, there were evident hotspots of mosquito exposure in the dry season close to the main breeding site but mosquitoes were more dispersed during the wet season (Figure 1).

The pattern described in Figure 1 is typical for areas of seasonal malaria transmission, where mosquito exposure is commonly most clustered in the dry season when few permanent breeding sites exist (Lindsay *et al.* 1995, Trape *et al.* 1992). After seasonal rains the permanent breeding sites become more productive but alternative breeding sites also arise that are more widely distributed across the transmission focus, leading to a wider dispersal of mosquitoes. Seasonal mosquito

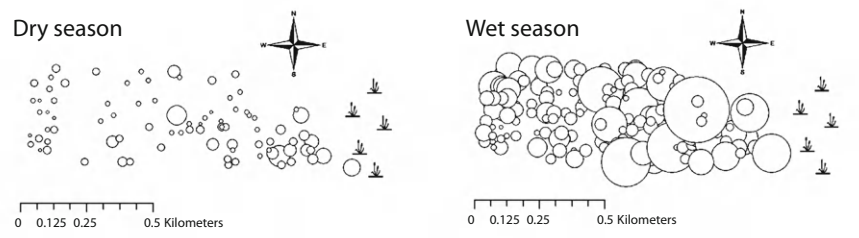


Figure 1. Mosquito catches in an area of moderate and seasonal malaria transmission in Mali. Mosquitoes were sampled in every household on a monthly basis. The size of the circles represents the average number of mosquitoes caught per households. Mosquito exposure was low and clustered near the main permanent breeding site in the dry season (left) but was higher and more widely dispersed during the wet season (right) (Bousema, unpublished observations).

dispersal patterns may also change under the influence of seasonal variations in wind patterns (Lindsay *et al.* 1995).

In areas where the human population is on average located further away from the breeding site, more sparsely distributed or where mosquitoes feed on human and non-human hosts, geographical patterns may be less distinct. In a rural area in Tanzania where households were located 800-2,000 m from a permanent river, where large numbers of cattle were present and *Anopheles arabiensis* Patton was the main vector, there was no clear association between mosquito exposure and distance to the river (Oesterholt *et al.* 2006).

Factors determining the contact rate between man and mosquito

In addition to the distance to mosquito breeding sites, elements that influence the contact rate between humans and mosquitoes have an obvious effect on the exposure to (infected) mosquitoes. The incidence of malaria and/or the exposure to mosquitoes has been associated with poorer housing conditions, especially incomplete housing (Gamage-Mendis *et al.* 1991), mud walls (Bousema *et al.* 2010a, Gamage-Mendis *et al.* 1991, Kirby *et al.* 2008), uneven wall structure (Bousema *et al.* 2010a), thatched roofs and ceiling (Bousema *et al.* 2010a, Gamage-Mendis *et al.* 1991, Lindsay *et al.* 1995, Ye *et al.* 2006), window screening (Oesterholt *et al.* 2006), window size (Oesterholt *et al.* 2006), presence of eaves (Kirby *et al.* 2008, Lindsay and Snow 1988, Lindsay *et al.* 1995), presence of animals (Kirby *et al.* 2008, Yamamoto *et al.* 2009) and the use of smoke or local incense to repel mosquitoes (Kirby *et al.* 2008, Lindsay *et al.* 1995, Yamamoto *et al.* 2009). Improvements in the house conditions, notably mosquito screening and closure of eaves, therefore lead to substantial reductions in mosquito exposure and can contribute to a reduction in anaemia in human inhabitants (Kirby *et al.* 2009). Other household protective measures such as indoor residual spraying (IRS) and insecticide treated nets (ITNs) have also been associated with reductions in malaria incidence (Bousema *et al.* 2010a, Bradley *et al.* 1986, Hawley *et al.* 2003, Pluess *et al.* 2010). In addition to a direct protective effect, reducing the risk of malaria in people sleeping under an ITN, there is evidence for a community effect of ITNs. In an area of intense malaria transmission in Western Kenya, it was described that ITNs exert a protective effect in compounds lacking ITNs that are located within 300 m of compounds with ITNs (Hawley *et al.*

2003). This indirect beneficial effect of ITNs is evident for child mortality, moderate anaemia and high-density parasitaemia (Hawley *et al.* 2003).

Regardless of the usage of protective measures, the attractiveness of humans also differs. Intra-individual mosquito attractiveness is related to variability in carbon dioxide (CO_2) release, ammonia, lactic acid, and other aliphatic carboxylic acids (Smallegange and Takken 2010). Pregnancy may increase attractiveness to mosquitoes by a factor 1.7-4.5 (Ansell *et al.* 2002), possibly as a result of differences in body surface, related to CO_2 release, temperature and odour. Non-pregnant individuals also differ in their attractiveness to mosquitoes and in their response to being bitten, resulting in differences in the number of bites experienced by individuals (Lindsay *et al.* 1993a). The intrinsic variation in attractiveness is probably largely mediated by sweat-associated human volatiles (Smallegange *et al.* 2011, Verhulst *et al.* 2009). This human odour profile has a genetic background (Roberts *et al.* 2005), explaining the genetic component that was previously associated with differential attractiveness (Kirk *et al.* 2000). Human leukocyte antigen (HLA) genes in particular may be involved in determining the intrinsic differential attractiveness of humans to mosquitoes (Verhulst *et al.* 2010) through their influence on the human body odour profile. The role of olfaction in vector-borne diseases is described in detail in a previous book in this series (Takken and Knols 2010).

Stability of hotspots of malaria transmission over time

To be of public health relevance, the geographical location of hotspots should be identifiable and show a certain consistency over time. If hotspots of malaria transmission change between seasons or years, it will become costly and logistically challenging to identify and target hotspots to have a beneficial impact on the burden of disease. The temporal stability and logistical identifiability are therefore crucial for utilizing hotspots of malaria transmission for effective malaria control. Some studies have reported that clusters of higher malaria incidence may change with time (Bejon *et al.* 2010, Coleman *et al.* 2009) while others indicated that they are remarkably stable over months or even years (Bautista *et al.* 2006, Bejon *et al.* 2010, Bousema *et al.* 2010a, Coleman *et al.* 2009, Ernst *et al.* 2006, Gaudart *et al.* 2006, Nourein *et al.* 2011). Unstable clusters of malaria incidence may reflect a problem in using malaria incidence for detecting hotspots, something that is explained in more detail in the Section 'Operational approaches to detecting hotspots of malaria transmission'. In areas of unstable malaria transmission, an unpredictable influx of malaria-infected individuals into an area with a suitable climate for malaria may also lead to different hotspots of malaria transmission over time (Coleman *et al.* 2009). Contrary to these important but relatively uncommon observations, most published reports indicate that hotspots of malaria transmission or mosquito exposure are stable over time. The most convincing evidence for this temporal stability of geographically defined hotspots comes from areas where transmission intensity decreased over time as a consequence of climatic changes or untargeted interventions but where hotspots of intense malaria transmission persisted (Bautista *et al.* 2006, Ernst *et al.* 2006, Gaudart *et al.* 2006, Nourein *et al.* 2011).

The most readily available data to describe the temporal consistency of hotspots of malaria transmission comes from entomological studies. Although we argued that the presence of mosquitoes does not automatically equal elevated malaria transmission intensity, field studies that sampled mosquitoes in the same households over several months provide valuable information on the consistency in exposure to malaria vectors. In Table 1, the findings from some of these studies from West and East Africa are summarised. Although the average number of mosquitoes differs tremendously between the wet and dry season, the same households are exposed to

Table 1.Consistency in mosquito exposure in three African settings.

	Ifakara, Tanzania (Akim *et al.* 2000, Drakeley *et al.* 2003)	Korogwe, Tanzania (Bousema *et al.* 2010a)	Sotuba, Mali
Location	Latitude 8° 8′ S Longitude 36° 41′ E	Latitude 5° 9′ S Longitude 38° 29′ E	Latitude 12° 40′ N Longitude 7° 55′ W
Parasite prevalence 2-9 year old children	55.1 (53.3-56.9)	28.6 (23.3-33.7)	6.1% (3.4-10.4)
Households sampled	32	185	254
Area sampled	4×5 km	5×6 km	0.8×0.7 km
Average *Anopheles* mosquito count wet season (range)	137.8 (4-1,266)	5.8 (0-129)	16.0 (0-184)
Average anopheles mosquito count early dry season/cool season (range)	1.4 (0-10.7)	1.3 (0-24)	7.9 (0-142)
Average *Anopheles* mosquito count end dry season/hot season (range)	0.4 (0-5.2)	0.50 (0-30)	1.2 (0-13)
Correlation household catches wet – early dry (*P*-value)	0.54 (0.0015)	0.30 (<0.001)	0.41 (<0.001)
Correlation household catches wet – end dry (*P*-value)	0.45 (0.01)	0.15 (0.05)	0.38 (<0.001)
Correlation household catches early – end dry (i-value)	0.72 (<0.001)	0.32 (<0.001)	0.42 (<0.001)

the highest relative number of mosquitoes. One could argue that this (statistically significant) consistency is unsurprising in relatively large geographical areas where environmental differences make certain sub-villages consistently more exposed to malaria than others (e.g. Korogwe and Ifakara in Table 1). However, the findings from households in a single village in Mali indicate that also at micro-epidemiological level, relative exposure to anophelines may be highly consistent over time despite temporal fluctuations in mosquito abundance.

Using hotspots for targeted malaria control

Do hotspots fuel wider malaria transmission?

There are several reasons to assume that hotspots form important reservoirs for further malaria transmission. In areas of very low and unstable malaria transmission, hotspots can be present throughout the seasons and form the only likely source of parasites for seasonal or epidemic increases in malaria transmission in the wider community (Ernst *et al.* 2006, Nourein *et al.* 2011). Mathematical models also consistently show that the overall level of transmission intensity is increased by heterogeneity in malaria transmission, suggesting a fuelling effect of hotspots of malaria transmission. In a seminal study by Woolhouse and colleagues, R_0 was 2-4 fold increased when heterogeneity in mosquito exposure was included in malaria transmission models (Woolhouse *et al.* 1997). It was later demonstrated that the impact of heterogeneity in mosquito exposure on transmission efficiency may differ between different settings (Smith *et al.* 2007): heterogeneity in mosquito exposure may augment malaria transmission in low endemic settings by allowing

mosquitoes to source their infections efficiently from hotspots; in areas of very high transmission intensity heterogeneity in mosquito exposure may result in segregation of populations where the clustering of mosquito exposure hinders instead of stimulates the spread of malaria. In more general terms, mosquitoes have to preferentially source their parasites from hotspots and subsequently spread their infection geographically to form a source of malaria transmission to a wider community. For this, the entire population of a focus of malaria transmission should be exposed to the same mosquito population while individuals living in hotspots should have more encounters with an otherwise randomly mixing mosquito population.

A study in Tanzania where mosquitoes were captured, marked with fluorescent powder, released and recaptured observed that 68% of mosquitoes returned to the same household as where they were initially captured (McCall *et al.* 2001) but these findings were not confirmed in follow-up experiments. In Papua New Guinea mosquitoes appeared to have a 'memorized' home range and limited dispersal range in the focus of malaria transmission they are accustomed to (Charlwood *et al.* 1988). These indications that mosquito populations may not mix randomly in villages need confirmation but would have important epidemiological consequences (Dye and Hasibeder 1986). In an extreme and highly unlikely scenario, no dispersal of mosquito populations from hotspots could result in intense transmission intensity inside hotspots of malaria transmission without consequences for the rest of the focus of malaria transmission that are exposed to a different mosquito population. A more likely scenario would be that there is a certain level of site fidelity and mosquitoes acquiring infections in hotspots transmit this infection to humans living outside hotspots but at a lower rate than is currently assumed by mathematical simulation models.

Will targeted interventions reduce malaria transmission?

Untargeted control efforts are relatively inefficient if heterogeneous transmission is assumed and high-risk households are missed (Carter *et al.* 2000, Dye and Hasibeder 1986). A disproportionate exclusion of hotspots of malaria transmission from malaria control measures is not a hypothetical scenario since several of the factors that have been associated with increased mosquito exposure are related to a lower socio-economic status which is in turn an important predictor of low participation in control methods. Population averaged coverage levels may therefore not accurately reflect the 'effective coverage' with malaria control measures.

There are several reasons why interventions targeted to hotspots of malaria transmission will be more efficient in reducing the burden of malaria than untargeted approaches. The most obvious is to protect individuals living in areas where the risk of (severe) malaria is highest. The largest, and most cost-efficient, impact on (severe) disease can be expected if those individuals who are most at risk preferentially receive protective measures. However, this does not reflect the full potential of hotspot targeted interventions. The additional and perhaps most attractive benefit of targeting hotspots of malaria transmission is that it can result in community-wide beneficial effects. By reducing or interrupting transmission in those households that contribute most to malaria transmission, community-wide malaria control may be improved in a cost-efficient manner. For this, a paradigm shift in thinking about malaria control is needed that focuses on epidemiologically relevant malaria cases instead of clinically vulnerable individuals (MalERA Consultative Group on Diagnoses and Diagnostics 2011). If the main objective of targeted interventions would be to protect individuals at risk of severe disease, an approach may be chosen where the known risk groups of (severe) disease are preferentially included in interventions. Although this will reduce morbidity and mortality in clinically relevant risk groups, the public health impact may be limited because other parts of the population can be equally important for disease transmission

(Bousema and Drakeley 2011, Drakeley *et al.* 2000). Asymptomatic individuals of all age groups play an important role in maintaining malaria transmission (Okell *et al.* 2008, Ouedraogo *et al.* 2009) and are particularly common in hotspots of malaria transmission (Bejon *et al.* 2010, Ernst *et al.* 2006, Stresman *et al.* 2010). To maximize the impact of targeted interventions, these interventions should therefore aim to eliminate malaria transmission in and from the hotspot. For this, a comprehensive approach is needed where conventional vector control methods such as ITNs and IRS can be combined with more laborious but efficacious vector control tools such as larviciding (Fillinger *et al.* 2009a) and interventions that aim to reduce the human infectious reservoir of malaria. Interventions that aim to clear the human infectious reservoir of malaria may include tools that are currently deemed less suitable for community-wide coverage such as mass drug administration with antimalarial drugs (Okell *et al.* 2011), focal screening of asymptomatic individuals followed by antimalarial treatment (Okell *et al.* 2011, Stresman *et al.* 2010) and employment of (transmission-blocking) malaria vaccines in all age groups (MalERA Consultative Group on Vaccines 2011, Sauerwein 2007).

Mathematical simulations suggest that perfectly targeted malaria control efforts can have an impact that is up to 4-fold higher than that of untargeted control efforts (Carter *et al.* 2000, Smith *et al.* 2007). As discussed in the previous paragraph, these estimates are influenced by epidemiological characteristics of the transmission setting (notably spatial patterns in population density and mixing patterns in mosquito populations (Dye and Hasibeder 1986, Smith *et al.* 2007)) and may need to be adjusted in the context of mosquito site fidelity. Nevertheless, all current evidence suggests a beneficial effect of targeted control efforts if (1) hotspots of malaria transmission can be operationally identified; (2) this information allows logistically feasible targeting; (3) the benefit of a higher efficiency of interventions financially outweighs the costs of detecting hotspots of malaria transmission (Carter *et al.* 2000). The first hurdle to take is to define an operational approach for detecting hotspots of malaria transmission.

Operational approaches to detecting hotspots of malaria transmission

Hotspots of malaria transmission have been detected based on variations in the human and in the vector components of malaria transmission. Micro-epidemiological elevations in malaria incidence are often used as evidence for malaria hotspots (Bejon *et al.* 2010, 2011a, Bousema *et al.* 2010a, Brooker *et al.* 2004, Clark *et al.* 2008). In addition, elevations in (asymptomatic) parasite prevalence (Bejon *et al.* 2010, Cook *et al.* 2011, Pullan *et al.* 2011), serological responses to malaria-specific antigens (Bousema *et al.* 2010a,c, Cook *et al.* 2011), mosquito abundance (Bousema *et al.* 2010a) and exposure to infected mosquitoes (Bousema *et al.* 2010a) have been utilized in attempts to quantify micro-epidemiological variations in malaria risk.

Entomological indicators

The most direct evidence of a hotspot of malaria transmission would be an increased exposure to infected mosquito bites. This gold standard measure for defining transmission intensity is difficult to assess at micro-epidemiological level: it depends on intensive sampling of mosquitoes over time and space and the detection of parasite stages in the mosquito salivary glands by microscopical examination or enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) (Wirtz *et al.* 1987). This makes entomological evaluations very laborious, especially in areas with low vector densities where currently available mosquito sampling tools lose sensitivity (Hamad *et al.* 2002, Oesterholt *et al.* 2006). An additional problem is the current uncertainty about the best mosquito sampling tool. Repeated sampling over time and at multiple locations require simple and affordable tools

such as miniature light traps, odour baited traps or pyrethrum spray catches. Water storage clay pot traps were piloted as low-cost affordable approach that can be used for large-scale sampling (Odiere *et al.* 2007) but have serious limitations in reliably sampling mosquitoes in field settings (Van den Bijllaardt *et al.* 2009). Importantly, sampling strategies for outdoor biting and resting mosquitoes are poorly standardized. This creates a risk of ignoring important vector populations that have a preference for outdoor biting and resting (Riehle *et al.* 2011). These limitations make it operationally unattractive to depend on entomological assessments of malaria exposure to define hotspots of malaria transmission in most endemic settings.

Human indicators

More indirect but more easily accessible evidence for hotspots of malaria transmission may come from detecting (the consequences of) malaria infections in humans. The overarching advantage of relying on infections in humans is that this circumvents any problems in low densities or indoor/outdoor biting mosquitoes. Heterogeneity in malaria incidence is a frequently used indicator of increased exposure but its validity is affected by the differential acquisition of immunity inside and outside hotspots and treatment seeking behaviour. In areas that are consistently exposed to higher levels of malaria transmission, immunity may be acquired at a faster rate and as a consequence fewer infections result in clinical malaria. Clinical malaria and high density parasitaemia may therefore be lowest in areas exposed to higher levels of transmission intensity where people have acquired protective immunity more rapidly (Clarke *et al.* 2002, Thomas and Lindsay 2000). Clinical incidence may therefore give inaccurate estimates if measured in age-groups where residence in a hotspot of malaria transmission has resulted in an effective immune response.

This confounding effect of immunity may be less prominent for asymptomatic parasite carriage. Asymptomatic parasite carriage may last several months (Falk *et al.* 2006) making estimates more robust in settings where the clinical infrastructure allows rapid treatment of symptomatic infections. Most importantly, immune responses that prevent infection are acquired later in life compared to clinical immunity (Smith *et al.* 2005); low density infections in hyper immune adults suggest that immunity effectively preventing malaria infection may actually be very rare (Okell *et al.* 2009, Proietti *et al.* 2011). This suggests that clustering of asexual parasite carriage may form a more stable indicator of transmission intensity than clinical malaria episodes (Bejon *et al.* 2010).

A third option to utilize malaria infections in humans as indirect indicator of higher malaria exposure is formed by serological markers of malaria exposure. Antibody responses to malaria specific antigens are acquired in response to (cumulative) exposure and can be used to define small-scale variations in malaria exposure (Bousema *et al.* 2010a,b, Drakeley *et al.* 2005). Because antibody responses are relatively long-lived, serological markers of malaria exposure are likely to be most suitable for detecting stable hotspots of malaria transmission (Bousema *et al.* 2010a) and most sensitive in areas of low endemicity (Corran *et al.* 2007). The strong age-dependency of antibody responses necessitates an analysis of an age-dependent conversion rate from sero-negative to sero-positive (Bousema *et al.* 2010a, Drakeley *et al.* 2005) or an age-adjusted antibody density (Bousema *et al.* 2010c, Wilson *et al.* 2007). Human genetic polymorphisms that modulate the risk of clinical and asymptomatic parasite carriage (see above) may also influence malaria specific antibody responses (Sarr *et al.* 2006). The importance of this immune modulating effect remains to be established but could alter the sensitivity of serological markers of exposure in identifying hotspots of malaria transmission in areas where human genetic polymorphisms show spatial heterogeneity.

Spatial analysis on entomological or human indicators

The level of statistical significance is a relevant factor in determining whether a certain geographical area forms a plausible hotspot of malaria transmission. A powerful statistical tool that is frequently used to analyse spatial and spatio-temporal patterns is SaTScan (SatScan). The SaTScan software is freely available online and uses a Kulldorf spatial scan statistic (Coleman *et al.* 2009) to detect clusters in space and (if requested) time. A scanning window is used that moves across space and counts the observed and expected number of cases or attributes of cases for each location and size of the window. For the sake of simplicity, the remainder of the text will assume a case-control approach (Bernouilli model) although SaTScan also allows scans on continuous or categorical variables and allows the detection of hotspots (higher count than expected) as well as coldspots (lower count than expected). In the case-control approach, the window with the greatest ratio of observed to expected cases is noted. The statistical significance of this hotspot or coldspot is then evaluated taking into account the multiple tests for the many potential cluster locations and sizes evaluated. The output of the SaTScan analysis gives the location, size and level of statistical significance of the most likely clusters.

One important characteristic of the SaTScan approach is that it calculates the number of expected cases by considering an even distribution of cases across the population and is very susceptible to the restrictions given by the user (e.g. maximum window size, allowance of overlapping clusters). This means that a spatial scan on a large geographical area will only pick up the most extreme hotspots. An additional complication with spatial scans on patterns in the occurrence of malaria is formed by the strong seasonal fluctuations in malaria incidence. Spatial scans on variables that are less susceptible to these seasonal fluctuations such as cumulative malaria incidence over several seasons (Bejon *et al.* 2010, Bousema *et al.* 2010a), cumulative parasite prevalence (Bejon *et al.* 2010) or long-lived antibodies to malaria antigens (Bejon *et al.* 2010, 2011b, Bejon *et al.* 2010, Bousema *et al.* 2010a,b) are likely to produce most robust results. The scans can be performed separately for individual villages to increase the likelihood of detecting hotspots that are of local relevance but that would not have been detected in an area-wide scan.

Environmental models

Environmental factors have long been associated with individual malaria risk. The simplest environmental models for detecting spatial variation in malaria risk incorporate distance to plausible mosquito breeding sites. These models have some value in predicting malaria risk (Carter *et al.* 2000, Clark *et al.* 2008, Kreuels *et al.* 2008, Oesterholt *et al.* 2006) but failed to explain hotspots of malaria transmission in two recent studies (Bejon *et al.* 2010, Bousema *et al.* 2010a). In reality, the prediction of hotspots of malaria transmission is relatively straightforward in foci of malaria transmission with a single or very limited number of plausible sources of mosquito emergence are present. In other settings the correlation between malaria risk and distance to water may be weak (Bousema *et al.* 2010a) and additional factors have to be incorporated in models to reach a sensitivity that justifies rationally targeting malaria control. In these circumstances site-specific models may have to be prepared to encapsulate all locally relevant predictors of malaria risk. This makes environmental models less attractive from a public health perspective.

A more sophisticated form of environmental modelling that may partly overcome the necessity for on-site data-collection to define local malaria risk factors is an approach that utilizes remote sensing data to determine factors such as elevation, daytime and night-time temperature, humidity, vegetation, soil moisture content, etc. The Malaria Atlas Project incorporates

epidemiological data on parasite prevalence, environmental covariates and human settlement data and has resulted in malaria risk maps for different endemic regions (Hay *et al.* 2009, 2010, Malaria Atlas Project undated). A current limitation for utilizing environmental data for detection hotspots of malaria transmission is that is routinely available remote sensing data has limited spatial resolution, typically 8 km^2 or 1 km^2 per pixel (Bejon *et al.* 2010, Hay *et al.* 2006). Some data is available at a higher resolution but have been validated less widely and currently do not benefit from processing by a temporal algorithm (Fourier), an approach that normalizes readings while preserving the seasonal variation in measures (Hay *et al.* 2006). As a consequence, environmental models are currently not validated for detecting hotspots of malaria transmission with malaria transmission foci.

Operational approaches to target hotspots of malaria transmission

Once hotspots of malaria transmission are detected, they can be targeted with conventional and less conventional malaria control tools. Hotspot-targeted interventions are likely to be beneficial for people living inside and people living outside the targeted hotspots (see Section 'Will targeted interventions reduce malaria transmission?'). The most straightforward approach of targeting hotspots is formed by the local up-scaling of efficacious conventional vector control tools such as ITNs and IRS. However, this approach will only target indoor biting and/or resting vectors while there is accumulating evidence that outdoor biting vectors are becoming increasingly important for malaria transmission (Reddy *et al.* 2011, Russell *et al.* 2011). The very essence of hotspot targeted interventions, focal interventions to protect the community at large, allows more laborious interventions that become operationally attractive because these require implementation in a fraction of the malaria endemic area only. Vector control tools that form attractive components of intensive hotspot-targeted interventions include larviciding of mosquito breeding sites (Fillinger *et al.* 2008) and the use of entomopathogenic fungi (Knols *et al.* 2010) for the control of adult mosquitoes. Both tools require frequent re-application that makes them less attractive for community-wide interventions but this shortcoming does not necessarily hinder targeted implementations. Similarly, the use of odour-baited mosquito traps (Jawara *et al.* 2011, Okumu *et al.* 2010) as part of community-wide interventions is currently unattractive but a targeted push-pull approach where mosquitoes are deterred from households in hotspots with a repellent and lured into traps with synthetic human odours may hold promise.

Intensive vector control in hotspots can be supported by interventions that aim to reduce the transmission potential of the human host. The human infectious reservoir can be reduced by improving malaria case management in hotspots, thereby reducing the duration of parasite and gametocyte carriage in clinical malaria cases (Bousema *et al.* 2010b). Because a large proportion of parasite carriers in hotspots may harbour their parasites without experiencing symptoms (Stresman *et al.* 2010), and therefore without actively seeking treatment, a more aggressive approach to clear the human infectious reservoir will be beneficial to reduce malaria transmission. The most inclusive approach is formed by mass treatment campaigns where all individuals, regardless of symptoms, receive a full therapeutic dose of antimalarials (Von Seidlein and Greenwood 2003). Apart from ethical issues with mass drug administration, an operational drawback is that it may require several rounds to be efficacious (Okell *et al.* 2011). This makes deployment of mass treatment campaigns most attractive in the form of targeted interventions. Mass drug administrations are laborious and ethically challenging in asymptomatic individuals who do not experience a personal benefit from treatment. In targeted interventions, the additional efforts to clear the human infectious reservoir are justified by the increased importance of the targeted parasite carriers for overall malaria transmission.

A last operational element that is important in identifying and targeting hotspots of malaria transmission concerns human movement patterns. Parasitaemic individuals may contribute to hotspots of malaria transmission in low endemic settings, as was suggested for the Kenyan highlands (Ernst *et al.* 2006). In addition, the effect of interventions targeted to the human population (e.g. treatment campaigns) may be diminished by the migration of parasitaemic and untargeted individuals. A comprehensive approach where parasites are targeted in humans and mosquitoes is likely to be less affected by human movement patterns.

Conclusions

- Spatial variation in malaria incidence and exposure to malaria-infected mosquitoes is present at all levels of transmission intensity.
- Hotspots of malaria transmission are geographical parts of foci of malaria transmission that are characterised by an increased level of transmission intensity compared to the average value of the focus.
- Human genetic factors contribute considerably to individual variation in malaria risk but with exception of areas where genetic traits cluster at micro-epidemiological level, do not explain hotspots of malaria transmission.
- There is some evidence that human genetic factors contribute specifically to transmission stages of malaria parasites and their infectivity to mosquitoes. These findings require confirmation in future studies but could be of epidemiological relevance in explaining malaria transmission patterns and planning malaria control efforts.
- Spatial variation in mosquito exposure is remarkably consistent despite large seasonal fluctuations in mosquito densities. Within regions and individual villages, the same households can be exposed to consistently higher mosquito numbers.
- The spread of malaria infections from hotspots to the wider community is biologically plausible but needs prospective confirmation and quantification to support the planning of hotspot-targeted interventions.
- Hotspot-targeted interventions should aim at reducing or preventing malaria transmission in and from the hotspot, not at protecting vulnerable individuals living in a hotspot of malaria transmission.
- Hotspots of malaria transmission can be identified by entomological and human parameters. Malaria incidence is an unreliable indicator of hotspots of malaria transmission unless restricted to age-groups that have limited clinical immunity; malaria parasite carriage or the presence or density of serological markers of malaria exposure may be more robust indicators of heterogeneity in malaria exposure.

References

Abel L, Cot M, Mulder L, Carnevale P and Feingold J (1992) Segregation analysis detects a major gene controlling blood infection levels in human malaria. Am J Hum Genet 50: 1308-1317.

Aidoo M, Terlouw DJ, Kolczak MS, McElroy PD, ter Kuile FO, Kariuki S, Nahlen BL, Lal AA and Udhayakumar V (2002) Protective effects of the sickle cell gene against malaria morbidity and mortality. Lancet 359: 1311-1312.

Akim NI, Drakeley C, Kingo T, Simon B, Senkoro K and Sauerwein RW (2000) Dynamics of P. falciparum gametocytemia in symptomatic patients in an area of intense perennial transmission in Tanzania. Am J Trop Med Hyg 63: 199-203.

Allen SJ, O'Donnell A, Alexander ND, Mgone CS, Peto TE, Clegg JB, Alpers MP and Weatherall DJ (1999) Prevention of cerebral malaria in children in Papua New Guinea by southeast Asian ovalocytosis band 3. Am J Trop Med Hyg 60: 1056-1060.

Takken W and Knols BGJ (2010) Olfaction in vector-host interactions. Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases. Wageningen Academic Publishers, Wageningen, the Netherlands.

Ansell J, Hamilton KA, Pinder M, Walraven GE and Lindsay SW (2002) Short-range attractiveness of pregnant women to Anopheles gambiae mosquitoes. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 96: 113-116.

Barnes KI, Chanda P and Ab Barnabas G (2009) Impact of the large-scale deployment of artemether/lumefantrine on the malaria disease burden in Africa: case studies of South Africa, Zambia and Ethiopia. Malar J 8 Suppl 1: S8.

Bautista CT, Chan AS, Ryan JR, Calampa C, Roper MH, Hightower AW and Magill AJ (2006) Epidemiology and spatial analysis of malaria in the Northern Peruvian Amazon. Am J Trop Med Hyg 75: 1216-1222.

Bejon P, Cook J, Bergmann-Leitner E, Olutu A, Lusingu J, Mwacharo J, Vekemans J, Njuguna P, Leach A, Lievens M, Dutta S, Von Seidlein L, Savarese B, Villafana T, Lemnge MM, Cohen J, Marsh K, Corran PH, Angov E, Riley EM and Drakeley CJ (2011a) Effect of the pre-erythrocytic candidate malaria vaccine RTS,S/AS01$_E$ on blood stage immunity in young children. J Inf Dis 204: 9-18.

Bejon P, Turner L, Lavstsen T, Cham G, Olotu A, Drakeley CJ, Lievens M, Vekemans J, Savarese B, Lusingu J, Von Seidlein L, Bull PC, Marsh K and Theander TG (2011b) Serological evidence of discrete spatial clusters of *Plasmodium falciparum* parasites. PLoS One 6: e21711.

Bejon P, Williams TN, Liljander A, Noor AM, Wambua J, Ogada E, Olotu A, Osier FH, Hay SI, Farnert A and Marsh K (2010) Stable and unstable malaria hotspots in longitudinal cohort studies in Kenya. PLoS Med 7: e1000304.

Bhattarai A, Ali AS, Kachur SP, Martensson A, Abbas AK, Khatib R, Al Mafazy AW, Ramsan M, Rotllant G, Gerstenmaier JF, Molteni F, Abdulla S, Montgomery SM, Kaneko A and Bjorkman A (2007) Impact of artemisinin-based combination therapy and insecticide-treated nets on malaria burden in Zanzibar. PLoS Med 4: e309.

Bogh C, Clarke SE, Jawara M, Thomas CJ and Lindsay SW (2003) Localized breeding of the *Anopheles gambiae* complex (Diptera: Culicidae) along the River Gambia, West Africa. Bull Entomol Res 93: 279-287.

Bousema JT, Drakeley CJ, Kihonda J, Hendriks JC, Akim NI, Roeffen W and Sauerwein RW (2007) A longitudinal study of immune responses to *Plasmodium falciparum* sexual stage antigens in Tanzanian adults. Parasite Immunol 29: 309-317.

Bousema T and Drakeley C (2011) Epidemiology and Infectivity of *Plasmodium falciparum* and *Plasmodium* vivax Gametocytes in Relation to Malaria Control and Elimination. Clin Microbiol Rev 24: 377-410.

Bousema T, Drakeley C, Gesase S, Hashim R, Magesa S, Mosha F, Otieno S, Carneiro I, Cox J, Msuya E, Kleinschmidt I, Maxwell C, Greenwood B, Riley E, Sauerwein R, Chandramohan D and Gosling R (2010a) Identification of hot spots of malaria transmission for targeted malaria control. J Infect Dis 201: 1764-1774.

Bousema T, Kreuels B and Gosling R (2011) Adjusting for heterogeneity of malaria transmission in longitudinal studies. J Infect Dis 204: 1-3.

Bousema T, Okell L, Shekalaghe S, Griffin JT, Omar S, Sawa P, Sutherland C, Sauerwein R, Ghani AC and Drakeley C (2010b) Revisiting the circulation time of *Plasmodium falciparum* gametocytes: molecular detection methods to estimate the duration of gametocyte carriage and the effect of gametocytocidal drugs. Malar J 9: 136.

Bousema T, Youssef RM, Cook J, Cox J, Alegana VA, Amran J, Noor AM, Snow RW and Drakeley C (2010c) Serologic markers for detecting malaria in areas of low endemicity, Somalia, 2008. Emerg Infect Dis 16: 392-399.

Bradley AK, Greenwood BM, Greenwood AM, Marsh K, Byass P, Tulloch S and Hayes R (1986) Bed-nets (mosquito-nets) and morbidity from malaria. Lancet 2: 204-207.

Brooker S, Clarke S, Njagi JK, Polack S, Mugo B, Estambale B, Muchiri E, Magnussen P and Cox J (2004) Spatial clustering of malaria and associated risk factors during an epidemic in a highland area of western Kenya. Trop Med Int Health 9: 757-766.

Cappadoro M, Giribaldi G, O'Brien E, Turrini F, Mannu F, Ulliers D, Simula G, Luzzatto L and Arese P (1998) Early phagocytosis of glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD)-deficient erythrocytes parasitized by *Plasmodium falciparum* may explain malaria protection in G6PD deficiency. Blood 92: 2527-2534.

Carter R, Mendis KN and Roberts D (2000) Spatial targeting of interventions against malaria. Bull WHO 78: 1401-1411.

Ceesay SJ, Casals-Pascual C, Erskine J, Anya SE, Duah NO, Fulford AJ, Sesay SS, Abubakar I, Dunyo S, Sey O, Palmer A, Fofana M, Corrah T, Bojang KA, Whittle HC, Greenwood BM and Conway DJ (2008) Changes in malaria indices between 1999 and 2007 in The Gambia: a retrospective analysis. Lancet 372: 1545-1554.

Charlwood JD, Graves PM and Marshall TF (1988) Evidence for a 'memorized' home range in *Anopheles farauti* females from Papua New Guinea. Med Vet Entomol 2: 101-108.

Cholera R, Brittain NJ, Gillrie MR, Lopera-Mesa TM, Diakite SA, Arie T, Krause MA, Guindo A, Tubman A, Fujioka H, Diallo DA, Doumbo OK, Ho M, Wellems TE and Fairhurst RM (2008) Impaired cytoadherence of *Plasmodium falciparum*-infected erythrocytes containing sickle hemoglobin. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 105: 991-996.

Chotivanich K, Udomsangpetch R, Pattanapanyasat K, Chierakul W, Simpson J, Looareesuwan S and White N (2002) Hemoglobin E: a balanced polymorphism protective against high parasitemias and thus severe *P falciparum* malaria. Blood 100: 1172-1176.

Clark TD, Greenhouse B, Njama-Meya D, Nzarubara B, Maiteki-Sebuguzi C, Staedke SG, Seto E, Kamya MR, Rosenthal PJ and Dorsey G (2008) Factors determining the heterogeneity of malaria incidence in children in Kampala, Uganda. J Infect Dis 198: 393-400.

Clarke SE, Bogh C, Brown RC, Walraven GE, Thomas CJ and Lindsay SW (2002) Risk of malaria attacks in Gambian children is greater away from malaria vector breeding sites. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 96: 499-506.

Coleman M, Coleman M, Mabuza AM, Kok G, Coetzee M and Durrheim DN (2009) Using the SaTScan method to detect local malaria clusters for guiding malaria control programmes. Malar J 8: 68.

Cook J, Kleinschmidt I, Schwabe C, Nseng G, Corran PH, Bousema T, Riley EM and Drakeley CJ (2011) Serological markers identify heterogeneity of effectiveness of malaria control interventions on Bioko island, Equatorial Guinea. PLoS One.

Corran P, Coleman P, Riley E and Drakeley C (2007) Serology: a robust indicator of malaria transmission intensity? Trends Parasitol 23: 575-582.

Cortes A, Benet A, Cooke BM, Barnwell JW and Reeder JC (2004) Ability of *Plasmodium falciparum* to invade Southeast Asian ovalocytes varies between parasite lines. Blood 104: 2961-2966.

Cortes A, Mellombo M, Mgone CS, Beck HP, Reeder JC and Cooke BM (2005) Adhesion of *Plasmodium falciparum*-infected red blood cells to CD36 under flow is enhanced by the cerebral malaria-protective trait South-East Asian ovalocytosis. Mol Biochem Parasitol 142: 252-257.

Dolgin E (2010) Targeting hotspots of transmission promises to reduce malaria. Nat Med 16: 1055.

Dolo A, Modiano D, Maiga B, Daou M, Dolo G, Guindo H, Ba M, Maiga H, Coulibaly D, Perlman H, Blomberg MT, Toure YT, Coluzzi M and Doumbo O (2005) Difference in susceptibility to malaria between two sympatric ethnic groups in Mali. AmJTropMedHyg 72: 243-248.

Drakeley C, Schellenberg D, Kihonda J, Sousa CA, Arez AP, Lopes D, Lines J, Mshinda H, Lengeler C, Armstrong SJ, Tanner M and Alonso P (2003) An estimation of the entomological inoculation rate for Ifakara: a semi-urban area in a region of intense malaria transmission in Tanzania. Trop Med Int Health 8: 767-774.

Drakeley CJ, Akim NI, Sauerwein RW, Greenwood BM and Targett GA (2000) Estimates of the infectious reservoir of *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria in The Gambia and in Tanzania. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 94: 472-476.

Drakeley CJ, Corran PH, Coleman PG, Tongren JE, McDonald SL, Carneiro I, Malima R, Lusingu J, Manjurano A, Nkya WM, Lemnge MM, Cox J, Reyburn H and Riley EM (2005) Estimating medium- and long-term trends in malaria transmission by using serological markers of malaria exposure. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 102: 5108-5113.

Dye C and Hasibeder G (1986) Population dynamics of mosquito-borne disease: effects of flies which bite some people more frequently than others. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 80: 69-77.

Edillo FE, Toure YT, Lanzaro GC, Dolo G and Taylor CE (2004) Survivorship and distribution of immature *Anopheles gambiae s.l.* (Diptera: Culicidae) in Banambani village, Mali. JMedEntomol 41: 333-339.

Ejerctto A and Urbino CM (1951) Flight range of gravid and newly emerged *Anopheles*. Bull WHO 3: 663-671.

Ernst KC, Adoka SO, Kowuor DO, Wilson ML and John CC (2006) Malaria hotspot areas in a highland Kenya site are consistent in epidemic and non-epidemic years and are associated with ecological factors. Malar J 5: 78.

Fairhurst RM, Fujioka H, Hayton K, Collins KF and Wellems TE (2003) Aberrant development of *Plasmodium falciparum* in hemoglobin CC red cells: implications for the malaria protective effect of the homozygous state. Blood 101: 3309-3315.

Falk N, Maire N, Sama W, Owusu-Agyei S, Smith T, Beck HP and Felger I (2006) Comparison of PCR-RFLP and Genescan-based genotyping for analyzing infection dynamics of *Plasmodium falciparum*. Am J Trop Med Hyg 74: 944-950.

Fillinger U, Kannady K, William G, Vanek MJ, Dongus S, Nyika D, Geissbuhler Y, Chaki PP, Govella NJ, Mathenge EM, Singer BH, Mshinda H, Lindsay SW, Tanner M, Mtasiwa D, De Castro MC and Killeen GF (2008) A tool box for operational mosquito larval control: preliminary results and early lessons from the Urban Malaria Control Programme in Dar es Salaam, Tanzania. Malar J 7: 20.

Fillinger U, Ndenga B, Githeko A and Lindsay SW (2009a) Integrated malaria vector control with microbial larvicides and insecticide-treated nets in western Kenya: a controlled trial. Bull WHO 87: 655-665.

Fillinger U, Sombroek H, Majambere S, Van Loon E, Takken W and Lindsay SW (2009b) Identifying the most productive breeding sites for malaria mosquitoes in The Gambia. Malar J 8: 62.

Gamage-Mendis AC, Carter R, Mendis C, De Zoysa AP, Herath PR and Mendis KN (1991) Clustering of malaria infections within an endemic population: risk of malaria associated with the type of housing construction. Am J Trop Med Hyg 45: 77-85.

Garcia A, Cot M, Chippaux JP, Ranque S, Feingold J, Demenais F and Abel L (1998) Genetic control of blood infection levels in human malaria: evidence for a complex genetic model. Am J Trop Med Hyg 58: 480-488.

Gaudart J, Poudiougou B, Dicko A, Ranque S, Toure O, Sagara I, Diallo M, Diawara S, Ouattara A, Diakite M and Doumbo OK (2006) Space-time clustering of childhood malaria at the household level: a dynamic cohort in a Mali village. BMC Public Health 6: 286.

Genton B, al-Yaman F, Mgone CS, Alexander N, Paniu MM, Alpers MP and Mokela D (1995) Ovalocytosis and cerebral malaria. Nature 378: 564-565.

Ghebreyesus TA, Haile M, Witten KH, Getachew A, Yohannes AM, Yohannes M, Teklehaimanot HD, Lindsay SW and Byass P (1999) Incidence of malaria among children living near dams in northern Ethiopia: community based incidence survey. BMJ 319: 663-666.

Giha HA, Rosthoj S, Dodoo D, Hviid L, Satti GM, Scheike T, Arnot DE and Theander TG (2000) The epidemiology of febrile malaria episodes in an area of unstable and seasonal transmission. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 94: 645-651.

Gouagna LC, Bancone G, Yao F, Yameogo B, Dabire KR, Costantini C, Simpore J, Ouedraogo JB and Modiano D (2010) Genetic variation in human HBB is associated with *Plasmodium falciparum* transmission. Nat Genet 42: 328-331.

Griffiths MJ, Shafi MJ, Popper SJ, Hemingway CA, Kortok MM, Wathen A, Rockett KA, Mott R, Levin M, Newton CR, Marsh K, Relman DA and Kwiatkowski DP (2005) Genomewide analysis of the host response to malaria in Kenyan children. J Infect Dis 191: 1599-1611.

Hamad AA, Nugud AH, Arnot DE, Giha HA, Abdel-Muhsin AM, Satti GM, Theander TG, Creasey AM, Babiker HA and Elnaiem DE (2002) A marked seasonality of malaria transmission in two rural sites in eastern Sudan. Acta Trop 83: 71-82.

Hawley WA, Phillips-Howard PA, Ter Kuile FO, Terlouw DJ, Vulule JM, Ombok M, Nahlen BL, Gimnig JE, Kariuki SK, Kolczak MS and Hightower AW (2003) Community-wide effects of permethrin-treated bed nets on child mortality and malaria morbidity in western Kenya. Am J Trop Med Hyg 68: 121-127.

Hay SI, Guerra CA, Gething PW, Patil AP, Tatem AJ, Noor AM, Kabaria CW, Manh BH, Elyazar IR, Brooker S, Smith DL, Moyeed RA and Snow RW (2009) A world malaria map: *Plasmodium falciparum* endemicity in 2007. PLoS Med 6: e1000048.

Hay SI, Okiro EA, Gething PW, Patil AP, Tatem AJ, Guerra CA and Snow RW (2010) Estimating the global clinical burden of *Plasmodium falciparum* Malaria in 2007. PLoS Med 7: e1000290.

Hay SI, Tatem AJ, Graham AJ, Goetz SJ and Rogers DJ (2006) Global environmental data for mapping infectious disease distribution. Adv Parasitol 62: 37-77.

Hill AVS, Elvin J, Willis AC, Aidoo M, Allsopp CEM, Gotch FM, Ming Gao X, Takiguchis M, Greenwood BM, Townsend ARM, McMichael AJ and Whittle HC (1992) Molecular analysis of the association of HLA-B53 and resistance to severe malaria. Nature 360: 434-439.

Hutagalung R, Wilairatana P, Looareesuwan S, Brittenham GM, Aikawa M and Gordeuk VR (1999) Influence of hemoglobin E trait on the severity of *Falciparum* malaria. J Infect Dis 179: 283-286.

Jawara M, Awolola TS, Pinder M, Jeffries D, Smallegange RC, Takken W and Conway DJ (2011) Field testing of different chemical combinations as odour baits for trapping wild mosquitoes in The Gambia. PLoS One 6: e19676.

John CC, Riedesel MA, Magak NG, Lindblade KA, Menge DM, Hodges JS, Vulule JM and Akhwale W (2009) Possible interruption of malaria transmission, highland Kenya, 2007-2008. Emerg Infect Dis 15: 1917-1924.

Kirby MJ, Ameh D, Bottomley C, Green C, Jawara M, Milligan PJ, Snell PC, Conway DJ and Lindsay SW (2009) Effect of two different house screening interventions on exposure to malaria vectors and on anaemia in children in The Gambia: a randomised controlled trial. Lancet 374: 998-1009.

Kirby MJ, Green C, Milligan PM, Sismanidis C, Jasseh M, Conway DJ and Lindsay SW (2008) Risk factors for house-entry by malaria vectors in a rural town and satellite villages in The Gambia. MalarJ 7: 2.

Kirby MJ and Lindsay SW (2009) Effect of temperature and inter-specific competition on the development and survival of *Anopheles gambiae* sensu stricto and *An. arabiensis* larvae. Acta Trop 109: 118-123.

Kirk KM, Eaves LJ, Meyer JM, Saul A and Martin NG (2000) Twin study of adolescent genetic susceptibility to mosquito bites using ordinal and comparative rating data. Genet Epidemiol 19: 178-190.

Kleinschmidt I, Schwabe C, Benavente L, Torrez M, Ridl FC, Segura JL, Ehmer P and Nchama GN (2009) Marked increase in child survival after four years of intensive malaria control. Am J Trop Med Hyg 80: 882-888.

Knols BG, Bukhari T and Farenhorst M (2010) Entomopathogenic fungi as the next-generation control agents against malaria mosquitoes. Future Microbiol 5: 339-341.

Kreuels B, Kobbe R, Adjei S, Kreuzberg C, Von Reden C, Bater K, Klug S, Busch W, Adjei O and May J (2008) Spatial variation of malaria incidence in young children from a geographically homogeneous area with high endemicity. JInfectDis 197: 85-93.

Kwiatkowski DP (2005) How malaria has affected the human genome and what human genetics can teach us about malaria. AmJHumGenet 77: 171-192.

Lawaly YR, Sakuntabhai A, Marrama L, Konate L, Phimpraphi W, Sokhna C, Tall A, Sarr FD, Peerapittayamongkol C, Louicharoen C, Schneider BS, Levescot A, Talman A, Casademont I, Menard D, Trape JF, Rogier C, Kaewkunwal J, Sura T, Nuchprayoon I, Ariey F, Baril L, Singhasivanon P, Mercereau-Puijalon O and Paul R (2010) Heritability of the human infectious reservoir of malaria parasites. PLoS One 5: e11358.

Lindsay SW, Adiamah JH, Miller JE, Pleass RJ and Armstrong JR (1993a) Variation in attractiveness of human subjects to malaria mosquitoes (Diptera: Culicidae) in The Gambia. J Med Entomol 30: 368-373.

Lindsay SW, Alonso PL, Armstrong Schellenberg JR, Hemingway J, Thomas PJ, Shenton FC and Greenwood BM (1993b) A malaria control trial using insecticide-treated bed nets and targeted chemoprophylaxis in a rural area of The Gambia, west Africa. 3. Entomological characteristics of the study area. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 87 Suppl 2: 19-23.

Lindsay SW, Armstrong Schellenberg JR, Zeiler HA, Daly RJ, Salum FM and Wilkins HA (1995) Exposure of Gambian children to *Anopheles gambiae* malaria vectors in an irrigated rice production area. Med Vet Entomol 9: 50-58.

Lindsay SW and Snow RW (1988) The trouble with eaves; house entry by vectors of malaria. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 82: 645-646.

Mackinnon MJ, Mwangi TW, Snow RW, Marsh K and Williams TN (2005) Heritability of malaria in Africa. PLoS Med 2: e340.

Majambere S, Fillinger U, Sayer DR, Green C and Lindsay SW (2008) Spatial distribution of mosquito larvae and the potential for targeted larval control in The Gambia. Am J Trop Med Hyg 79: 19-27.

Malaria Atlas (undated) Project M. Available at: http://www.map.ox.ac.uk/.

MalERA Consultative Group on Diagnoses and Diagnostics (2011) A research agenda for malaria eradication: diagnoses and diagnostics. PLoS Med 8: e1000396.

MalERA Consultative Group on Vaccines (2011) A research agenda for malaria eradication: vaccines. PLoS Med 8: e1000398.

Males S, Gaye O and Garcia A (2008) Long-term asymptomatic carriage of *Plasmodium falciparum* protects from malaria attacks: a prospective study among Senegalese children. Clin Infect Dis 46: 516-522.

Manga L, Fondjo E, Carnevale P and Robert V (1993) Importance of low dispersion of *Anopheles gambiae* (Diptera: Culicidae) on malaria transmission in hilly towns in south Cameroon. J Med Entomol 30: 936-938.

McCall PJ, Mosha FW, Njunwa KJ and Sherlock K (2001) Evidence for memorized site-fidelity in *Anopheles arabiensis*. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 95: 587-590.

Menard D, Barnadas C, Bouchier C, Henry-Halldin C, Gray LR, Ratsimbasoa A, Thonier V, Carod JF, Domarle O, Colin Y, Bertrand O, Picot J, King CL, Grimberg BT, Mercereau-Puijalon O and Zimmerman PA (2010) *Plasmodium vivax* clinical malaria is commonly observed in Duffy-negative Malagasy people. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 107: 5967-5971.

Mendes C, Dias F, Figueiredo J, Mora VG, Cano J, De Sousa B, do Rosario VE, Benito A, Berzosa P and Arez AP (2011) Duffy negative antigen is no longer a barrier to *Plasmodium vivax* – molecular evidences from the African West Coast (Angola and Equatorial Guinea). PLoS Negl Trop Dis 5: e1192.

Midega JT, Mbogo CM, Mwnambi H, Wilson MD, Ojwang G, Mwangangi JM, Nzovu JG, Githure JI, Yan G and Beier JC (2007) Estimating dispersal and survival of *Anopheles gambiae* and *Anopheles funestus* along the Kenyan coast by using mark-release-recapture methods. J Med Entomol 44: 923-929.

Min-Oo G and Gros P (2005) Erythrocyte variants and the nature of their malaria protective effect. Cell Microbiol 7: 753-763.

Missinou MA, Lell B and Kremsner PG (2003) Uncommon asymptomatic *Plasmodium falciparum* infections in Gabonese children. Clin Infect Dis 36: 1198-1202.

Mockenhaupt FP, Ehrhardt S, Gellert S, Otchwemah RN, Dietz E, Anemana SD and Bienzle U (2004) Alpha(+)-thalassemia protects African children from severe malaria. Blood 104: 2003-2006.

Mutuku FM, Bayoh MN, Gimnig JE, Vulule JM, Kamau L, Walker ED, Kabiru E and Hawley WA (2006) Pupal habitat productivity of *Anopheles gambiae* complex mosquitoes in a rural village in western Kenya. Am J Trop Med Hyg 74: 54-61.

Mwangi TW, Fegan G, Williams TN, Kinyanjui SM, Snow RW and Marsh K (2008) Evidence for over-dispersion in the distribution of clinical malaria episodes in children. PLoS One 3: e2196.

Nourein AB, Abass MA, Nugud AH, El Hassan I, Snow RW and Noor AM (2011) Identifying residual foci of *Plasmodium falciparum* infections for malaria elimination: the urban context of Khartoum, Sudan. PLoS One 6: e16948.

O'Meara WP, Bejon P, Mwangi TW, Okiro EA, Peshu N, Snow RW, Newton CR and Marsh K (2008) Effect of a fall in malaria transmission on morbidity and mortality in Kilifi, Kenya. Lancet 372: 1555-1562.

Odiere M, Bayoh MN, Gimnig J, Vulule J, Irungu L and Walker E (2007) Sampling outdoor, resting *Anopheles gambiae* and other mosquitoes (Diptera: Culicidae) in western Kenya with clay pots. JMedEntomol 44: 14-22.

Oesterholt MJ, Bousema JT, Mwerinde OK, Harris C, Lushino P, Masokoto A, Mwerinde H, Mosha FW and Drakeley CJ (2006) Spatial and temporal variation in malaria transmission in a low endemicity area in northern Tanzania. MalarJ 5: 98.

Okell LC, Drakeley CJ, Bousema T, Whitty CJ and Ghani AC (2008) Modelling the impact of artemisinin combination therapy and long-acting treatments on malaria transmission intensity. PLoS Med 5: e226; discussion e226.

Okell LC, Ghani AC, Lyons E and Drakeley CJ (2009) Submicroscopic infection in *Plasmodium falciparum*-endemic populations: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Infect Dis 200: 1509-1517.

Okell LC, Griffin J, Kleinschmidt I, Hollingsworth TD, Churcher T, White M, Bousema T, Drakeley CJ and Ghani A (2011) The potential contribution of mass treatment to the control of *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria. PLoS One 6: e20179.

Okumu FO, Madumla EP, John AN, Lwetoijera DW and Sumaye RD (2010) Attracting, trapping and killing disease-transmitting mosquitoes using odor-baited stations – The Ifakara Odor-Baited Stations. Parasit Vectors 3: 12.

Olson JA and Nagel RL (1986) Synchronized cultures of P falciparum in abnormal red cells: the mechanism of the inhibition of growth in HbCC cells. Blood 67: 997-1001.

Ouedraogo AL, Bousema T, Schneider P, De Vlas SJ, Ilboudo-Sanogo E, Cuzin-Ouattara N, Nebie I, Roeffen W, Verhave JP, Luty AJ and Sauerwein R (2009) Substantial contribution of submicroscopical *Plasmodium falciparum* gametocyte carriage to the infectious reservoir in an area of seasonal transmission. PLoS One 4: e8410.

Paaijmans KP, Wandago MO, Githeko AK and Takken W (2007) Unexpected high losses of *Anopheles gambiae* larvae due to rainfall. PLoS One 2: e1146.

Paganotti GM, Palladino C, Modiano D, Sirima BS, Raberg L, Diarra A, Konate A, Coluzzi M, Walliker D and Babiker HA (2006) Genetic complexity and gametocyte production of *Plasmodium falciparum* in Fulani and Mossi communities in Burkina Faso. Parasitology 132: 607-614.

Pluess B, Tanser FC, Lengeler C and Sharp BL (2010) Indoor residual spraying for preventing malaria. Cochrane Database Syst Rev: CD006657.

Proietti C, Pettinato DD, Kanoi BN, Ntege E, Crisanti A, Riley EM, Egwang TG, Drakeley C and Bousema T (2011) Continuing intense malaria transmission in northern Uganda. Am J Trop Med Hyg 84: 830-837.

Pullan RL, Kabatereine NB, Bukirwa H, Staedke SG and Brooker S (2011) Heterogeneities and consequences of *Plasmodium* species and hookworm coinfection: a population based study in Uganda. J Infect Dis 203: 406-417.

Reddy MR, Overgaard HJ, Abaga S, Reddy VP, Caccone A, Kiszewski AE and Slotman MA (2011) Outdoor host seeking behaviour of *Anopheles gambiae* mosquitoes following initiation of malaria vector control on Bioko Island, Equatorial Guinea. Malar J 10: 184.

Riehle MM, Guelbeogo WM, Gneme A, Eiglmeier K, Holm I, Bischoff E, Garnier T, Snyder GM, Li X, Markianos K, Sagnon N and Vernick KD (2011) A cryptic subgroup of *Anopheles gambiae* is highly susceptible to human malaria parasites. Science 331: 596-598.

Robert V, Tchuinkam T, Mulder B, Bodo JM, Verhave JP, Carnevale P and Nagel RL (1996) Effect of the sickle cell trait status of gametocyte carriers of *Plasmodium falciparum* on infectivity to anophelines. Am J Trop Med Hyg 54: 111-113.

Roberts SC, Gosling LM, Spector TD, Miller P, Penn DJ and Petrie M (2005) Body odor similarity in noncohabiting twins. Chem Senses 30: 651-656.

Roca-Feltrer A, Schellenberg JR, Smith L and Carneiro I (2009) A simple method for defining malaria seasonality. Malar J 8: 276.

Russell TL, Govella NJ, Azizi S, Drakeley CJ, Kachur SP and Killeen GF (2011) Increased proportions of outdoor feeding among residual malaria vector populations following increased use of insecticide-treated nets in rural Tanzania. Malar J 10: 80.

Ruwende C, Khoo SC, Snow RW, Yates SNR, Kwiatkowski D, Gupta S, Warn P, Allsopp CEM, Gilbert SC, Peschu N, Newbold CI, Greenwood BM, Marsh K and Hill AVS (1995) Natural selection of hemi- and heterozygotes for G6PD deficiency in Africa by resistance to severe malaria. Nature 376: 246-249.

Ryan JR, Stoute JA, Amon J, Dunton RF, Mtalib R, Koros J, Owour B, Luckhart S, Wirtz RA, Barnwell JW and Rosenberg R (2006) Evidence for transmission of *Plasmodium vivax* among a duffy antigen negative population in Western Kenya. Am J Trop Med Hyg 75: 575-581.

Sarr JB, Pelleau S, Toly C, Guitard J, Konate L, Deloron P, Garcia A and Migot-Nabias F (2006) Impact of red blood cell polymorphisms on the antibody response to *Plasmodium falciparum* in Senegal. Microbes Infect 8: 1260-1268.

SatScan T (undated) Available at: http://www.satscan.org/.

Sauerwein RW (2007) Malaria transmission-blocking vaccines: the bonus of effective malaria control. Microbes Infect 9: 792-795.

Shililu J, Ghebremeskel T, Mengistu S, Fekadu H, Zerom M, Mbogo C, Githure J, Novak R, Brantly E and Beier JC (2003) High seasonal variation in entomologic inoculation rates in Eritrea, a semi-arid region of unstable malaria in Africa. Am J Trop Med Hyg 69: 607-613.

Singh V, Mishra N, Awasthi G, Dash AP and Das A (2009) Why is it important to study malaria epidemiology in India? Trends Parasitol 25: 452-457.

Smallegange RC and Takken W (2010) Host-seeking behaviour of mosquitoes – responses to olfactory stimuli in the laboratory. In: Takken W and Knols BGJ (eds.) Olfaction in vector-host interactions, Wageningen Academic Publishers, Wageningen, the Netherlands, pp. 143-180.

Smallegange RC, Verhulst NO and Takken W (2011) Sweaty skin: an invitation to bite? Trends Parasitol 27: 143-148.

Smith DL, Dushoff J, Snow RW and Hay SI (2005) The entomological inoculation rate and *Plasmodium falciparum* infection in African children. Nature 438: 492-495.

Smith DL, McKenzie FE, Snow RW and Hay SI (2007) Revisiting the basic reproductive number for malaria and its implications for malaria control. PLoS Biol 5: e42.

Stresman GH, Kamanga A, Moono P, Hamapumbu H, Mharakurwa S, Kobayashi T, Moss WJ and Shiff C (2010) A method of active case detection to target reservoirs of asymptomatic malaria and gametocyte carriers in a rural area in Southern Province, Zambia. Malar J 9: 265.

Terrenato L, Shrestha S, Dixit KA, Luzzatto L, Modiano G, Morpurgo G and Arese P (1988) Decreased malaria morbidity in the Tharu people compared to sympatric populations in Nepal. Ann Trop Med Parasitol 82: 1-11.

Thomas CJ and Lindsay SW (2000) Local-scale variation in malaria infection amongst rural Gambian children estimated by satellite remote sensing. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 94: 159-163.

Toty C, Barre H, Le Goff G, Larget-Thiery I, Rahola N, Couret D and Fontenille D (2010) Malaria risk in Corsica, former hot spot of malaria in France. Malar J 9: 231.

Trape JF, Lefebvre-Zante E, Legros F, Ndiaye G, Bouganali H, Druilhe P and Salem G (1992) Vector density gradients and the epidemiology of urban malaria in Dakar, Senegal. Am J Trop Med Hyg 47: 181-189.

Trape JF, Pison G, Spiegel A, Enel C and Rogier C (2002) Combating malaria in Africa. Trends Parasitol 18: 224-230.

Tripathy V and Reddy BM (2007) Present status of understanding on the G6PD deficiency and natural selection. J Postgrad Med 53: 193-202.

Van den Bijllaardt W, Ter Braak R, Shekalaghe S, Otieno S, Mahande A, Sauerwein R, Takken W and Bousema T (2009) The suitability of clay pots for indoor sampling of mosquitoes in an arid area in northern Tanzania. Acta Trop 111: 197-199.

Veenemans J, Andang'o PEA, Mbugi E, Kraaijenhagen RJ, Mwaniki DL, Mockenhaupt FP, Roewer S, Olomi RM, Shao JF, Van der Meer JWM, Savelkoul HFJ and Verhoef H (2008) a+-Thalassemia protects against anemia associated with asymptomatic malaria: evidence from community-based surveys in Tanzania and Kenya. J Infect Dis 198: 401-408.

Veenemans J, Jansen EJ, Baidjoe AY, Mbugi EV, Demir AY, Kraaijenhagen RJ, Savelkoul HF and Verhoef H (2011) Effect of alpha+-thalassaemia on episodes of fever due to malaria and other causes: a community-based cohort study in Tanzania. Malar J 10: 280.

Verhulst NO, Beijleveld H, Knols BG, Takken W, Schraa G, Bouwmeester HJ and Smallegange RC (2009) Cultured skin microbiota attracts malaria mosquitoes. Malar J 8: 302.

Verhulst NO, Takken W, Dicke M, Schraa G and Smallegange RC (2010) Chemical ecology of interactions between human skin microbiota and mosquitoes. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 74: 1-9.

Von Seidlein L and Greenwood BM (2003) Mass administrations of antimalarial drugs. Trends Parasitol 19: 452-460.

Wambua S, Mwangi TW, Kortok M, Uyoga SM, Macharia AW, Mwacharo JK, Weatherall DJ, Snow RW, Marsh K and Williams TN (2006) The effect of alpha+ -thalassaemia on the incidence of malaria and other diseases in children living on the coast of Kenya. PLoSMed 3: 158.

Watson RB (1949) Location and mosquito proofing of dwellings. In: Boyd MF (ed.) Malariology, Saunders, Philadelphia, PA, USA, pp. 1184-1202.

Willcox M, Bjorkman A and Brohult J (1983) *Falciparum* malaria and beta-thalassaemia trait in northern Liberia. Ann Trop Med Parasitol 77: 335-347.

Williams TN (2006) Human red blood cell polymorphisms and malaria. Curr Opin Microbiol 9: 388-394.

Williams TN, Mwangi TW, Roberts DJ, Alexander ND, Weatherall DJ, Wambua S, Kortok M, Snow RW and Marsh K (2005a) An immune basis for malaria protection by the sickle cell trait. PLoS Med 2: e128.

Williams TN, Mwangi TW, Wambua S, Alexander ND, Kortok M, Snow RW and Marsh K (2005b) Sickle cell trait and the risk of *Plasmodium falciparum* malaria and other childhood diseases. J Infect Dis 192: 178-186.

Williams TN, Mwangi TW, Wambua S, Peto TE, Weatherall DJ, Gupta S, Recker M, Penman BS, Uyoga S, Macharia A, Mwacharo JK, Snow RW and Marsh K (2005c) Negative epistasis between the malaria-protective effects of alpha+-thalassemia and the sickle cell trait. Nat Genet 37: 1253-1257.

Wilson S, Booth M, Jones FM, Mwatha JK, Kimani G, Kariuki HC, Vennervald BJ, Ouma JH, Muchiri E and Dunne DW (2007) Age-adjusted *Plasmodium falciparum* antibody levels in school-aged children are a stable marker of microgeographical variations in exposure to *Plasmodium* infection. BMC Infect Dis 7: 67.

Wirtz RA, Burkot TR, Graves PM and Andre RG (1987) Field evaluation of enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays for *Plasmodium falciparum* and *Plasmodium vivax* sporozoites in mosquitoes (Diptera: Culicidae) from Papua New Guinea. J Med Entomol 24: 433-437.

Woolhouse ME, Dye C, Etard JF, Smith T, Charlwood JD, Garnett GP, Hagan P, Hii JL, Ndhlovu PD, Quinnell RJ, Watts CH, Chandiwana SK and Anderson RM (1997) Heterogeneities in the transmission of infectious agents: implications for the design of control programs. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 94: 338-342.

World Health Organization (2007) Malaria elimination: a field manual for low and moderate endemic countries, WC 765. WHO, Geneva, Switzerland. Available at: http://whqlibdoc.who.int/publications/2007/9789241596084_eng.pdf.

Yamamoto SS, Louis VR, Sie A and Sauerborn R (2009) The effects of zooprophylaxis and other mosquito control measures against malaria in Nouna, Burkina Faso. Malar J 8: 283.

Ye Y, Hoshen M, Louis V, Seraphin S, Traore I and Sauerborn R (2006) Housing conditions and *Plasmodium falciparum* infection: protective effect of iron-sheet roofed houses. Malar J 5: 8.

12. Considerations for male fitness in successful genetic vector control programs

Michelle E.H. Helinski and Laura C. Harrington

Abstract

A number of genetic control strategies, including sterile, transgenic, and *Wolbachia*-based approaches, are under development to reduce mosquito vector populations and the impact of important diseases such as malaria and dengue. Fitness of released males is critically important for the success of these strategies. In order to understand how to optimise the success of released males, we need to determine how males behave in their natural environment and which factors contribute to their success. Male mosquito biology has received little attention, although recent contributions have advanced our knowledge in this area. These advances include the discovery of precopulatory acoustic interactions and the identification of seminal fluid proteins that may have profound effects on female physiology and behaviour. Gaps in our knowledge include detailed information on male survival, dispersal, and mating strategies in the field across a range of geographical and ecological settings in which genetic control strategies may be deployed. There is evidence from laboratory studies that age, body size, and conditions during larval development contribute to male mating success; however, verification of these findings in natural settings is lacking. Although fitness assessments of transgenic or sterile males in genetic control programs are often performed in the laboratory using laboratory-adapted colonies, we advocate that fitness studies are conducted in semi-field cages under ambient conditions where insects are challenged with wild-type mosquitoes to determine their true potential. Because of the considerable amount of time and costs involved with the execution of cage trials we recommend that researchers plan field cage studies as early as possible in the assessment process to prevent time delays.

Keywords: genetic control, mosquitoes, male fitness, reproductive success, field applications

Introduction

The potential to control mosquitoes and vector-borne diseases with genetic methods (genetic vector control) has captivated the interest of scientists since the 1960s (Craig 1970, Knipling 1955), despite setbacks with early efforts. Existing approaches for controlling vector-borne diseases all face major challenges such as parasite and vector resistance, lack of funding, high cost of insecticide applications, and lack of local infrastructure to carry out control programs. Thus, new control strategies are critically needed. Genetic vector control has a number of advantages that make it a suitable strategy to be explored for mosquitoes. It is an environmentally friendly method that, unlike the use of many insecticides, is species-specific. Furthermore, it has the potential to impact populations of mosquito species which may not be reached by conventional control methods such as indoor residual spraying and bednets (ITN). These include species that tend to rest and feed outdoors including some *Anopheles gambiae* Giles and *Anopheles arabiensis* Patton (Fornadel *et al.* 2010, Riehle *et al.* 2011), species that have recently shifted to exophagy in response to ITN selection pressure (Russell *et al.* 2011), and *An. arabiensis* populations with shifts to earlier peak biting times to contact hosts before they retire under their bed nets (Yohannes and Boelee 2012). Another benefit of genetic vector control is the potential for minimal costs to residents in treatment areas and lower long term costs for vector control by organised government or private control programs.

W. Takken and C.J.M. Koenraadt (eds.), *Ecology of parasite-vector interactions*, Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases 3, DOI 10.3920/978-90-8686-744-8_12, © Wageningen Academic Publishers 2013

Despite the benefits of genetic vector control, numerous downsides exist as illustrated by some historical failures. Prior attempts were unsuccessful due to altered mosquito biology and behaviour through laboratory adaptation, lack of trust and cooperation by local community residents and governments where control was deployed, and numerous unknown factors leading to reduced fitness of the modified mosquito strains. The latter issue has been a major impetus for greater research on basic aspects of mosquito biology and behaviour. Additionally, in areas where a multitude of vectors exist, the feasibility of applying a separate genetic control strategy against each vector species is doubtful.

There are a number of obstacles and gaps in our understanding of mosquito biology that need to be addressed if genetic vector control will be successful. One of these key areas is male biology. Most genetic control strategies under consideration today utilise releases of males for ethical and safety reasons. In this chapter, we focus our review on male biology and fitness. We begin with a brief overview of the various genetic control strategies that have been developed against mosquitoes. In the second half of the chapter, we address what is known about male mosquito mating biology and the knowledge gleaned to date on male reproductive success. In addition, we will present some recent advances demonstrating that the mating system of mosquitoes is more complex than previously assumed. Next, we summarise the studies of transgenic and sterile insect fitness conducted to date and provide a discussion of the biological challenges released males face to be reproductively successful. Finally, we highlight key aspects of mosquito biology that should be explored and discuss performance indicators that can be used to assess strain fitness.

Overview existing genetic control strategies

Classic genetic control

Perhaps the most well-known genetic control strategy is the sterile insect technique (SIT). This approach involves releasing large numbers of sterilised males into the wild population (Knipling 1955), with sterility being achieved by chemosterilization or ionising radiation. With this strategy, sterile males are intended to mate with wild-type females, resulting in no offspring and ultimately leading to population reduction. If repeated, inundative releases (i.e. the release of overwhelming numbers of sterile males) are deployed with SIT, population elimination may be achieved. SIT has been used successfully in the eradication of other Dipterans such as the New World Screwworm fly *Cochliomyia hominivorax* from the USA and Central America (Snow 1988), as well as on-going population reduction of the Mediterranean fruit fly *Ceratitis capitata* from South and Central America (Dyck *et al.* 2005).

A number of field releases have been performed to test the potential of genetic control strategies for mosquitoes (see Benedict and Robinson (2003) and Asman *et al.* (1981) for a detailed overview). The release of chemosterilised *Anopheles albimanus* Wiedemman males in El Salvador was successful in reducing the native population (Lofgren *et al.* 1974). In addition, the release of chemosterilised male *Culex pipiens quinquefasciatus* Say successfully reduced a wild-type island population in Florida (Patterson *et al.* 1970), and chemosterilised *Aedes aegypti* L. males were competitive against low generation wild-type males when field-tested in Florida (Seawright *et al.* 1977). Other field releases were less successful. For example, the release of millions of irradiated male *Ae. aegypti* in Florida did not result in a noticeable population reduction (Morlan *et al.* 1962), nor did the release of irradiated *Anopheles quadrimaculatus* Say males in Florida (Weidhaas *et al.* 1962). Failures were attributed to behavioural differences between the release and wild-type strain, a lack of fitness of released males, and immigration of mated females from neighbouring

non-release sites, among other reasons (Benedict and Robinson 2003). One of the most notorious field trials for genetic mosquito control was conducted in India where accusations of biological warfare by the media and politicians led to complete discontinuation of SIT control efforts for decades (Curtis 2006). The experience in India highlighted the critical importance of carefully informing, ensuring consent and working in partnership with community residents and other stakeholders prior to a release.

Germ-line transformations strategies

Germ-line transformation strategies have received considerable interest for mosquito control in the last two decades (Alphey 2002, Alphey *et al.* 2002, Benedict and Robinson 2003, Catteruccia *et al.* 2005, Coates *et al.* 1998, Scott *et al.* 2002, Thomas *et al.* 2000). Germ-line transformation relies on the insertion of an alien segment of DNA into the genome (transgenesis) using embryonic microinjection to create a genetically modified mosquito (GMM). A number of mosquito species have been successfully transformed. GMM strategies for vector/disease control can be divided into two approaches: (1) population replacement strategies where engineered strains that carry pathogen resistant genes are released to spread the transgene into the susceptible populations, and (2) population reduction strategies where engineered strains are released to reduce or eliminate the local wild-type population in a manner similar to SIT releases.

Pathogen-refractory strains

Genetic transformation can be used to engineer strains of mosquitoes that are refractory to pathogens, and a number of such strains have been produced to date. Transgenic *Anopheles stephensi* Liston were developed that expressed a bee venom (Moreira *et al.* 2002) or an anti-parasitic gene (Ito *et al.* 2002) which resulted in a reduction of *Plasmodium berghei* Vincke and Zips parasites. A few other strains were created with a similar approach. For example, *Aedes fluviatilis* Lutz was created that expressed mutated bee venom protein against *Plasmodium gallinaceum* Brumpt (Rodrigues *et al.* 2008), and *An. gambiae* expressed antimicrobial peptide cecropin A against *P. berghei* (Kim *et al.* 2004). In both lines reduced oocyst loads after infectious blood meals were observed. In addition, a strain of *An. gambiae* was engineered that expressed the synthetic anti-malaria gene Vida3 which reduced *Plasmodium yoelii nigeriensis* density by 85% (Meredith *et al.* 2011). Although the development of such strains is encouraging, they all act against non-human malarias (rodent or bird). Recently, however, a strain of *An. stephensi* was engineered with increased expression of an important protein (Akt) in immune defence (Corby-Harris *et al.* 2010). This strain had high levels of resistance to the main human malaria parasite *P. falciparum*. Carter and Hurd (2010) identified a number of antimicrobial peptides that act against *Plasmodium*. Discovery of these promising candidates for integration into the mosquito genome should advance the field. Besides efforts to target malaria parasites, a strain of *Ae. aegypti* (Carb77) was engineered with a virus-derived, inverted repeat that triggered RNA interference in the midgut to control dengue virus 2 (DEN 2) (Franz *et al.* 2006). However, Franz *et al.* (2009) recently reported that this line lost the ability to silence the DEN 2 genome due to a loss of effector gene expression.

Lethal and sexing systems

Transgenesis can also be used to generate a sterilising system based on dominant lethal genes expressed either in both sexes or in females alone. This approach is called RIDL for 'release of insects carrying a dominant lethal' (Alphey 2002). Recently, a strain was constructed in *Ae. aegypti* that exhibits a late-acting, female-specific lethality (Fu *et al.* 2010), which can be used for

population reduction strategies. Other potentially suitable candidates that could cause offspring lethality, such as cytotoxic proteins or proapoptotic gene products, are discussed in Catteruccia *et al.* (2009) and Nolan *et al.* (2011).

Transgenic insects are usually engineered to express a reporter gene for a fluorescent protein. This marking can be used to facilitate sex separation of adults, which is an essential prerequisite for any genetic control program relying on release of one sex only (Robinson and Franz 2000). A transgenic sexing strain was developed in *An. stephensi* in which only male mosquitoes expressed a fluorescent protein in their gonads, and males could be identified by automated screening (Catteruccia *et al.* 2005). The RIDL strain discussed above can also permit removal of females due to the tetracycline repressible sex-specific flightless phenotype (Fu *et al.* 2010). As a consequence females die before eclosion or are unable to fly and function as adults and can be easily removed from the population.

Paratransgenesis

In addition to mosquito transformation, mosquito endosymbionts can be targeted for transgenesis. In paratransgenesis, genetically modified bacteria or viruses are used to deliver an effector molecule that inhibits the disease-causing pathogen in the insect gut (Beard *et al.* 2002). This technology has shown promise in controlling transmission of Chagas disease by Reduviid bugs (Beard *et al.* 2001), and is under consideration for tsetse flies (Aksoy *et al.* 2008). Densoviruses are a class of viruses that may be used to express molecules targeting pathogen development in mosquitoes, and can infect *Ae. aegypti* (Ward *et al.* 2001) and *An. gambiae* (Ren *et al.* 2008). In addition, bacteria of the genus *Asaia* are stably associated with *An. stephensi* (Favia *et al.* 2007), and appear to be good candidates for paratransgenesis (Aksoy 2008).

Wolbachia and other control strategies

Wolbachia bacteria provide another promising strategy to control mosquitoes. These bacteria can act as a gene-drive system for population replacement strategies, or can be used to spread cytoplasmic incompatibility (CI) (Dobson *et al.* 2002, Sinkins and O'Neill 2000). The use of *Wolbachia* to induce cytoplasmic incompatibility (CI) and suppress wild populations has been successfully demonstrated in *Cx. pipiens* in the 1960s (Laven 1967). A technique to transfer *Wolbachia* strains to develop new CI crossing types was developed in *Aedes albopictus* Skuse (Xi *et al.* 2005a), and this strain was successfully transfected with the *w*Ri strain of *Drosophila simulans* Sturtevant resulting in CI with naturally infected mosquitoes (Xi *et al.* 2006). In addition, the *Wolbachia* strain of *Aedes riversi* Bohart and Ingram has been introgressed into *Aedes polynesiensis* Marks resulting in CI (Brelsfoard *et al.* 2008). Other strains of *Wolbachia* have been explored; the introduction of the life-shortening *Wolbachia* strain *w*MelPop in *Ae. aegypti* resulted in a 50% reduction of adult life span under laboratory conditions (McMeniman *et al.* 2009). Since only older females have surpassed the pathogen/parasite intrinsic incubation period in order to infect blood hosts, the introduction of a life shortening strain could reduce disease transmission. The same *Wolbachia* infection also limited susceptibility of *Ae. aegypti* to dengue, Chikungunya and *Plasmodium* pathogens (Moreira *et al.* 2009). Introduction of *w*MelPop in *An. gambiae* resulted in a reduction of *Plasmodium* infection intensity due to the up-regulation of immune genes (Kambris *et al.* 2010). Recently, the *Wolbachia* strain *w*Mel was introduced into *Ae. aegypti* and this strain, as well as *w*MelPop, strongly inhibited dengue-2 virus replication, thereby blocking transmission (Walker *et al.* 2011). The *w*Mel strain was successful in invading a semi-field population of *Ae. aegypti* within a few generations after introduction (Walker *et al.* 2011).

Genetic transformation of entomopathogenic fungi presents another avenue to control mosquitoes using transgenesis. Recently, the entomopathogenic fungus *Metarhizium anisopliae* was transformed to express anti-sporozoite molecules, targeting that life stage in mosquitoes (Fang *et al.* 2011). This fungus infects a wide range of important malaria mosquito vectors, and, as a consequence, could be a new tool to reduce disease. However, the viability of the transgenic spores needs to be assessed to determine the cost-effectiveness of this method (Koenraadt and Takken 2011).

Potential application and limitations

Of all the approaches discussed above, the RIDL strategy is arguably furthest along at the time of writing with a months-long open field release trial performed in Grand Cayman in 2010 (Enserink 2010, Harris *et al.* 2011), a one-time open field release in Malaysia in 2011 (Enserink 2011), and field releases in Brazil in 2011 (Oxitec 2011). Another promising approach is with the *w*Mel strain of *Wolbachia* infected *Ae. aegypti*. Hoffmann *et al.* (2011) released these mosquitoes for a number of weeks in two open field sites in Australia, and *Wolbachia* successfully invaded the local populations. The next step will be to test the ability of this strain to reduce dengue transmission in an endemic setting. In addition to the RIDL and *w*Mel strains, a *Wolbachia* induced CI strategy is being evaluated to control *Ae. polynesiensis* in French Polynesia (Chambers *et al.* 2011).

There are a number of limitations to germ-line transformation approaches for mosquito control. For example, a suitable driving mechanism to deliver transgenes or recombinant bacteria through wild populations is essential for population replacement strategies. Transposable elements, *Wolbachia*, and meiotic drive have been proposed among other strategies but all face major limitations (James 2005, Sinkins and Gould 2006, Xi *et al.* 2005b). A drive system relying on a selfish genetic element known as Medea has been successfully demonstrated in *Drosophila* (Chen *et al.* 2007) but this technology has not been transferred to mosquitoes (Hay *et al.* 2010). Homing endonuclease-based gene drive systems are a novel method to drive transgenes through a population, and recent work in *An. gambiae* demonstrated the feasibility of this approach (Windbichler *et al.* 2011). In addition to technical issues, the release of transgenic insects requires pre-establishment of a significant social, political and ethical framework. These topics fall outside the scope of this chapter but nevertheless are of vital importance for the success of any genetic control program. For more information regarding these issues see Knols *et al.* (2007), Touré and Manga (2000), and Lavery *et al.* (2008).

Mosquito biology

Genetic control strategies depend on the ability of released males to successfully mate with females in the local population. Few aspects of mosquito mating biology are known because male mating biology has received little attention (Ferguson *et al.* 2005, 2010), although more studies have been recently undertaken in this area (see for example (Helinski and Harrington 2011, Huho *et al.* 2007, Ng'habi *et al.* 2005, Ponlawat and Harrington 2009). There are a variety of reasons for minimal progress in understanding male mating biology including lack of support by major funding agencies, lack of recognition of its importance by the vector biology community, and a lack of training for vector biologists in the area of mating biology and insect behaviour. Below, we provide a general introduction to mosquito mating with emphasis on the *Anopheles* and *Aedes* genera; for more extensive reviews of the mating system of mosquitoes see Yuval (2006) or Clements (1999). Then, we discuss the components contributing to male reproductive success.

Mating strategies

Most mosquitoes in the *Anopheles* genus tend to mate in crepuscular swarms (Charlwood *et al.* 2002b, Charlwood *et al.* 2003, Marchand 1984, Yuval 2006). Swarms are often formed over landmarks described as 'swarm markers' (Takken and Knols 1999). These aggregations can reach considerable size and are primarily composed of males (see Howell and Knols (2009) for a review). Females entering swarms are recognised by their wing beat frequency, and are actively pursued by males. Copulation usually occurs in flight, and lasts approximately between 8-40 seconds. Recent advances in stereoscopic video imaging techniques allow for a more in depth analysis of mating swarms, such as the location of individual males in a swarm (Manoukis *et al.* 2009), and swarm size and mating success between swarms (Diabate *et al.* 2011). With the help of these technologies, it might be possible to investigate certain male features (e.g. location in swarm, timing of swarm entry, flight patterns) that may increase the chance of obtaining a mate, and how females behave once entering a swarm. Studies on the swarming behaviour of the M and S molecular forms of *An. gambiae* in West-Africa provided evidence that spatial segregation of swarms contributed to reproductive isolation between forms (Diabate *et al.* 2009). However, the underlying mechanism for swarm site selection by males and how swarms are sustained remains unknown. Aggregation pheromones may play a role (Clements 1999), but few studies support this to date (Cabrera and Jaffe 2007). Contact pheromones were postulated to play a role in mosquito interactions (Nijhout and Craig 1971); one study observed a change in cuticular hydrocarbons after mating in *Ae. aegypti* and *An. gambiae* (Polerstock *et al.* 2002), and a role for species or molecular form recognition was suggested for field-collected *An. gambiae* and *An. arabiensis* (Caputo *et al.* 2007). However, no direct evidence has been found to date to support the presence of contact pheromones or the existence of form recognition in swarms (Diabate *et al.* 2009).

Swarming is costly for males as energetic reserves are depleted (Yuval *et al.* 1994, Yuval *et al.* 1993) and swarms can be susceptible to heavy predation (Yuval and Bouskila 1993). In many endemic settings, mating swarms have been observed in some areas but are hard to find in others (Takken and Knols 1999). This observation suggests that alternative mating strategies may be employed with the anophelines and some indirect evidence has demonstrated indoor mating in *An. gambiae* (Dao *et al.* 2008). Besides anophelines, members of other mosquito genera also swarm outdoors (e.g. *Cx. quinquefasciatus* (Gibson 1985)).

While many mosquitoes swarm outdoors and do not respond to host cues, *Ae. aegypti* and *Ae. albopictus* are frequently observed swarming in close proximity to the host (Cator *et al.* 2011, Gubler and Bhattacharya 1972, Hartberg 1971, Yuval 2006). Observations of the mating behaviour of *Ae. albopictus* around human hosts were performed outdoors in India (Gubler and Bhattacharya 1972), and outdoors for *Ae. aegypti* in Tanzania (Hartberg 1971). Observations were made in the early morning (i.e. between 5.30-9.00 AM for *Ae. aegypti*, and within 2 h after sunrise for *Ae. albopictus*). *Ae. albopictus* swarms formed around the observer's feet and ankles, while *Ae. aegypti* swarmed around the legs and head. *Ae. albopictus* swarms varied considerably in size from a few individuals up to 30-40 males (Gubler and Bhattacharya 1972). Swarming activity was high for the first 15 min, and then declined. Females were observed after a couple of minutes after swarm formation (Gubler and Bhattacharya 1972). In contrast, *Ae. aegypti* females arrived at the same time as the males (Hartberg 1971). Copulation occurred in flight in both species, and lasted 5-10 sec on average for *Ae. albopictus.* Swarms of *Ae. albopictus* were also observed over non-host markers such as trees (Gubler and Bhattacharya 1972). The presence of *Ae. albopictus* swarms over non-host markers was also reported in a study in Italy, however no details on the location and composition of the swarms were provided (Bellini *et al.* 2010). These accounts do suggest

the possibility that *Ae. albopictus* do not swarm exclusively around the host and this should be examined in more detail. In general, more extensive research should be performed to observe mating behaviour for both species in field settings across their geographical distribution range.

Acoustic interactions and mate choice

Recent advances in acoustic interactions in *Aedes* and *Anopheles* have reversed the textbook wisdom that female mosquitoes could not hear or attend to male flight tones. These studies indicate that males and females hear each other within 2-3 body lengths and modify their harmonic flight tone frequencies prior to mating such that they converge (Cator *et al.* 2009, Pennetier *et al.* 2010, Warren *et al.* 2009). In many mating systems, pre-mating acoustic interactions provide animals with information about the quality of a potential mate (Searcy and Nowicki 2005). This discovery in both *Ae. aegypti* and *An. gambiae* suggests the potential for flight tone as a mate assessment tool (Cator *et al.* 2010). A study with *Ae. aegypti* demonstrated that acoustic convergence behaviour is related to higher mating success and is heritable (Cator and Harrington 2011). While courtship behaviour and visually-based mate choice does exist in the non-medically important mosquito *Sabethes cyaneus* Fabricius (Hancock *et al.* 1990), vector biologists have long assumed that mating interactions do not occur in medically important mosquitoes such as *Aedes* and *Anopheles*. This notion was probably based on the rapidity with which the mating event occurs. The recent work elucidating male-female mosquito mating interactions suggests that mate choice may exist in these species.

Seminal fluid proteins and their effect on females

Males in many species of arthropods transfer a large number of seminal fluid proteins and peptides (generally referred to as Acps) to females in addition to sperm that can induce a wide range of behaviours (Gillott 2003, Wolfner 2007). Previous experiments in *Ae. aegypti* and *An. gambiae* established the role of male accessory gland extracts in female sexual refractoriness (Fuchs *et al.* 1968, 1969, Fuchs and Hiss 1970, Shutt *et al.* 2010), and the role of accessory gland secretions on fertility in *Ae. aegypti* (Adlakha and Pillai 1975). In addition, blood digestion, ovarian development, oviposition, and feeding behaviour are all influenced by female mating status in *Ae. aegypti* (Downe 1975, Edman 1970, Klowden and Chambers 1991, Klowden and Lea 1979, Lavoipierre 1958, Leahy and Craig 1965). In *Drosophila* a small molecule known as 'sex peptide' temporarily reduces female sexual receptivity after mating (Chapman *et al.* 2003, Chen *et al.* 1988, Wolfner 2007). It is still not clear which specific seminal fluid peptide(s) or protein(s) are associated with monandry in mosquitoes. Recently, a large number of putative Acps have been identified in *Ae. aegypti* (Sirot *et al.* 2008) and *An. gambiae* (Dottorini *et al.* 2007, Rogers *et al.* 2009). Transfer of many *Ae. aegypti* Acps to females during mating has now been demonstrated (Sirot *et al.* 2011). In *An. gambiae,* one specific seminal fluid protein (i.e. a transglutaminase) is responsible for the formation of the mating plug which plays a key role in subsequent sperm storage (Rogers *et al.* 2009). Thus, seminal fluids can have profound effects on females and represent key targets for influencing vector control and potentially vector-borne disease transmission. One study in *Ae. aegypti* demonstrated that females mated to seminal fluid depleted males had a reduced longevity compared to females mated to virgin males, suggesting that certain proteins in the male ejaculate may contribute to female life span (Helinski and Harrington 2011).

Female polyandry

Even though Acps induce monandry in females, low levels of polyandry (<4%) were observed in natural populations of some anopheline mosquitoes (Tripet *et al.* 2003, Yuval and Fritz 1994), but not in others (Yuval 2006). A semi-field cage study with *Ae. aegypti* reported moderate levels (i.e. 14%) of polyandry (Helinski *et al.* 2012). However, whether polyandry occurs in natural free-flying populations of *Ae. aegypti* remains to be determined. Although polyandry is not a prerequisite for effective genetic control strategies (Curtis 1985), knowledge of the rate of polyandry in natural populations is important in order to understand and model gene flow patterns (Magori *et al.* 2009) and interpret data collected during genetic control interventions.

Male reproductive success

Sexual maturation, dispersal and survival

After eclosion, a male mosquito must live long enough to mature and find a mate. Male sexual maturation takes approximately 24-48 h in the majority of species (Clements 1999), and is temperature-dependent. Within this time, male terminalia rotate 180°, and antennal fibrillae needed to hear and locate female wing beat frequencies mature (Howell and Knols 2009, Roth 1948).

Mosquito dispersal is likely influenced by numerous factors such as terrain, availability of resting places, vegetation, host and oviposition sites, and wind direction (Service 1997). The knowledge that exists on mosquito dispersal and life span in the field comes from mark-release-recapture (MRR) studies, although the large majority of these studies were performed with females only (see Service 1993 for a review of the literature). Reports of the maximum flight distance recorded for *Ae. aegypti* males varies, but in general was between 100-800 m (Harrington *et al.* 2005, Muir and Kay 1998, Service 1993). *Anopheles* males dispersed further than *Ae. aegypti,* and maximum flight distances between 0.8-4.5 km were recorded (Service 1993), with a mean flight range of 800 m in a study with *An. gambiae* (Gillies 1961). MRR studies require the ability to recapture released males. While *Ae. aegypti* males can readily be collected indoors and around houses using backpack aspirators, the resting places of some exophilic male anophelines are not well-known. Sampling methods for outdoor resting populations include vegetation collections, and the employment of various resting shelters including resting boxes and pit shelters dug into the ground (reviewed by Service (1993)). Clay pots distributed outside houses were successful in attracting resting populations of male and female *An. gambiae, An. arabiensis, Anopheles funestus* Giles, and *Culex* spp. in Western Kenya (Odiere *et al.* 2007).

Besides dispersal, survival of males is of obvious critical importance to their reproductive success. Little data exists on field survival of males. Most studies rely on naïve log linear estimates that are not entirely appropriate as they assume age-independent survival trends (Buonaccorsi *et al.* 2003). Daily probability of survival obtained from MRR studies for male *Ae. aegypti* were estimated between 0.54-0.70 in Australia (Muir and Kay 1998), and 0.72 in Thailand (Sheppard *et al.* 1969), while for male *Ae. albopictus* released in La Reunion a survival rate of 0.95 was observed (Lacroix *et al.* 2009). A non-linear regression approach supported by bootstrapping estimated rates of 0.37-0.54 for male *Ae. aegypti* from Thailand (Buonaccorsi *et al.* 2003). Log-linear estimates of survival rates for male *Anopheles* were approximately 0.68 for *Anopheles culicifacies* Giles (Reisen *et al.* 1980), and between 0.74-0.93 for *An. stephensi* in Pakistan (Reisen and Aslamkhan 1979). Accurate

estimates of male survival and dispersal are rare and more research is required for candidate mosquito species and geographic strains targeted for genetic vector control.

The effect of body size, age, and nutrition on male mating success

Body size is an important fitness parameter in mosquitoes, and larger female body size is associated with greater fecundity in *Anopheles* and *Aedes* (Briegel 1990, Lyimo and Takken 1993). Male body size played a significant role in *Anopheles freeborni* Aitken mating fitness (Yuval *et al.* 1993) and large males swarmed more often, and more during peak swarming times, than small males. In addition, larger males enjoyed greater mating success than smaller ones (Yuval *et al.* 1993). A small number of studies were conducted with other anophelines, where no such relationship between body size and mating success was observed (Charlwood *et al.* 2002a, Charlwood *et al.* 2003). Body size affects male sperm capacity. Data collected for *Ae. aegypti* has demonstrated a positive correlation between body size and total sperm number (Ponlawat and Harrington 2007), and the number of sperm transferred to females during mating (Ponlawat and Harrington 2009). In addition, small *Ae. aegypti* males experienced more rapid semen depletion than large males when mating with females within an 8 h interval (Helinski and Harrington 2011).

In addition to body size, age is an important factor that influences male mating success. 7-day old *An. gambiae* and *An. arabiensis* males had increased mating success compared to younger males (Verhoek and Takken 1994). Similar effects of age were observed in *An. culicifacies* (Mahmood and Reisen 1994) and *Ae. aegypti* (Ponlawat and Harrington 2009). In contrast to long standing reports (Clements 1999), males continue to mature sperm after eclosion, and sperm numbers increased with age in *An. arabiensis* (Helinski and Knols 2009), *An. gambiae* (Huho *et al.* 2006), and *Ae. aegypti* (Ponlawat and Harrington 2007).

Sugar (i.e. nectar and honeydew) serves as the only nutrition available for adult males. *Anopheles* males sustain their energy reserves by obligatory sugar feeding (Foster 1995), and sugar deprived *An. gambiae* males were not able to inseminate females in large indoor enclosures (Gary *et al.* 2009). Swarming consumed half the energy reserves of male *An. freeborni*, and males sugar fed during the night after swarming (Yuval *et al.* 1994). While *Anopheles* males depend on sugar for their survival and mating ability, only 11% of field collected *Ae. aegypti* males in Thailand (Spencer *et al.* 2005) and 29% in Puerto Rico (Costero *et al.* 1998) had fructose levels high enough to indicate recent sugar feeding activity suggesting that sugar feeding does not occur daily for this species in some dengue endemic regions. Larval conditions can also influence male mating success. A study performed in *An. gambiae* showed that males reared under low crowding conditions as larvae were more likely to succeed in acquiring the first female during mating compared to males reared at high crowding conditions, even though males were similar in body size and teneral reserves (Ng'habi *et al.* 2005).

Male fitness and challenges for future releases

In this section we will provide an overview of fitness studies performed with transgenic mosquitoes and discuss the various challenges released males may face in nature.

Fitness of genetically modified or sterile mosquitoes

SIT studies often determine mating competitiveness, which is assessed by the introduction of sterilised and wild-type males at different ratios in a cage to compete for mates. The proportion

of females inseminated by either male type allows for estimates of mating competitiveness. SIT programs using high radiation doses to sterilise males often report large reductions in mating competitiveness (see Helinski *et al.* (2009) for overview of *Anopheles* radiation studies). The use of lower, semi-sterilising doses in recent years is advocated to increase male fitness (Helinski and Knols 2008, Helinski *et al.* 2009, Parker and Mehta 2007). Other approaches, such as those with *Wolbachia* infected *Ae. polynesiensis* males, found no competitive reduction compared to field collected males when tested in semi-field enclosures (Chambers *et al.* 2011).

Fitness of transgenic lines is often assessed by following the frequency of the transgene over multiple generations which incorporates both the fitness of the transgene itself and the transgenic line (Catteruccia *et al.* 2003, Moreira *et al.* 2004), but other assessments such as survivorship, body size, longevity, and fecundity have been utilised (Irvin *et al.* 2004, Santos *et al.* 2010). For a detailed review of these studies see Marrelli *et al.* (2006) and Scolari *et al.* (2011). The majority of these experiments were conducted in the laboratory, and often with strains not under consideration for release with some exceptions (e.g. RIDL strain). Thus, these findings may not be useful in predicting fitness of potential new release strains. Not too surprising, results varied greatly among the different lines, species, and traits assessed (Marrelli *et al.* 2006). No significant reduction in a number of fitness parameters for transgenic lines relative to non-transgenic control lines was observed in *An. stephensi* (Amenya *et al.* 2010, Marrelli *et al.* 2007, Moreira *et al.* 2004). In one report, transgenic *An. stephensi* mosquitoes resistant to *P. berghei* infection had a fitness advantage over non-transgenic mosquitoes when maintained on infected blood (Marrelli *et al.* 2007). Sustained releases of a RIDL *Ae. aegypti* strain were successful in eliminating wild-type populations when tested in large laboratory enclosures (Wise de Valdez *et al.* 2011). However, other studies did not observe a favourable or neutral effect, and transgenic mosquitoes had reduced fitness compared to non-transgenic mosquitoes in study with *Ae. aegypti* (Irvin *et al.* 2004), and in several transformed lines of *An. stephensi* (Catteruccia *et al.* 2003, Li *et al.* 2008). Few studies have looked at larval fitness of transgenic lines (Bargielowski *et al.* 2010, Irvin *et al.* 2004, Koenraadt *et al.* 2010). In one study, recent field-collected mosquitoes had greater larval performance and teneral energy reserves when competing against inbred or transgenic strains of *Ae. aegypti*, and this effect was exacerbated under low food conditions (Koenraadt *et al.* 2010). Another study reported no consistent trends in larval development times for transgenic versus wild-type laboratory strains of *Ae. aegypti* (Irvin *et al.* 2004), while transgenic larvae of the RIDL OX513A line showed a moderately reduced larval survival and one-day faster development to pupation compared to a wild-type strain (Bargielowski *et al.* 2010).

Reduced fitness of transgenic lines can be explained by a number of reasons including a burden from the transgene product, disruption of gene function, and inbreeding effects (Marrelli *et al.* 2006, Scolari *et al.* 2011). The use of strains containing docking sites such as phi C31 allow for the stable integration of transgenes into a specific place in the genome. Such docking sites have been created in *Ae. aegypti* (Franz *et al.* 2011, Nimmo *et al.* 2006), *Ae. albopictus* (Labbe *et al.* 2010), and *An. gambiae* (Meredith *et al.* 2011). Development of these strains allows for the comparison of transgenes in the same genomic environment, and because the inserted transgene is immobilised, they allow for safe testing under field conditions (Schetelig *et al.* 2009).

Mass production and release

Transgenic or sterile genetic control approaches require the production of large numbers of insects for release. Apart from direct effects of genetic manipulation; colonization, inbreeding, and mass production will likely affect insect fitness and behaviour (Benedict *et al.* 2009, Boller

1972). Colonization and insect rearing conditions are different compared to ambient conditions observed in the field, where insects are exposed to a range of fluctuations in temperature and humidity, availability of food sources, natural lighting conditions, predators, etc. Behavioural changes due to the rearing process were observed in a study performed in *An. quadrimaculatus*, where sterile colony males were far less mobile when released in the field compared to recently colonised sterile males (Dame *et al.* 1964). An interesting example of the importance of larval diet comes from a study in *Culex tarsalis* Coquiilet, where the flight ability of laboratory reared individuals was diminished due to a lack of fatty acids in the larval diet (Reisen *et al.* 1982). The addition of fish oil to the diet improved adult fitness and flight performance (Dadd *et al.* 1989).

The preferred developmental stage for release depends on numerous factors including the number of insects to be released, frequency of releases, number of release points, accessibility to release area, and costs. Mosquito stages suggested for release are pupal (because mortality of this stage is low and it allows avoidance of larval competition effects) or adult stages. Container breeding mosquitoes such as *Ae. aegypti* can be distributed in the pupal stage to households, or placed in focal release points in the village. Adults can be released from cages by ground, or potentially distributed by air. For each release methodology, the effect on adult fitness should be quantified such that adjustments to release ratios can be made. Besides life stage, age of release should be considered if adults are released. In a genetic control program conducted in El Salvador release of older adults (2-3 days) caused less population reduction than the release of pupae or younger males (Dame *et al.* 1981) presumably due to higher mortality rates in older mosquitoes. The optimal age for release needs to be determined for each species and weighed against the costs of insect maintenance. It will be of critical importance to understand the dispersal patterns of released mosquitoes such that informed decisions can be made on the number of release points in a given area and the coverage required.

The number of males to be released will depend on the population density among other considerations (e.g. strength of the drive mechanisms for replacement studies, fitness of release strain, etc.). Adult population density can be estimated from MRR studies using the Lincoln Index (Service 1993) or from pupal surveys, however these methods have limitations. Use of multiple capture-recapture approaches and analysis such as the Jolly-Seber model can provide more refined information (reviewed in Service 1993).

Survival, mate location, and successful insemination

Once released, males need to survive long enough to find and inseminate a female. As discussed above, many of the mechanisms for survival or mate location are unknown and thus it is difficult to predict which male characteristics are important for released males to have. Recent advances in understanding male acoustic interactions suggest that harmonic convergence could be important for mate assessment and successful copulation (Cator *et al.* 2009, 2010, Pennetier *et al.* 2010, Warren *et al.* 2009), and this trait could be used as an assessment tool to predict male mating success, although it does not allow for high-throughput male assessment and may be impractical for many programs. Harmonic convergence behaviour can be measured by placing free-flying or tethered males in a mating arena with a tethered female close to a particle velocity microphone. Flight tones of males and females prior to mating are recorded and can be analyzed with appropriate software to determine convergence behaviours (Cator and Harrington 2011, Cator *et al.* 2009, 2010). If modified males are unable to converge, then their probability of mating success in the field might be greatly reduced. Detection of a convergence deficiency would signal the need to enhance diets or consider reconstruction of the modified line.

Males have the resources to mate with multiple females within one day before depletion of sperm or seminal proteins occurs. In *Ae. aegypti*, males could inseminate 4-6 mates before reduced numbers of sperm were transferred (Foster and Lea 1975, Gwadz and Craig 1970, Jones 1973). A recent study reported a reduction in fecundity by more than 50% in females mated to semen depleted males when males became depleted after 3-5 matings for small and large males, respectively (Helinski and Harrington 2011). It is not known, however, how many potential mates a male released in the field will encounter each day or within his lifetime, and it is likely that some males will never mate.

It is important that females do not select against released males. Under some circumstances, behavioural resistance was observed in SIT programs of the melon fly *Batrocera cucurbitae* Coquillett and the Mediterranean fruit fly where females actively discriminated against released males. Female *Ae. aegypti* mosquitoes can actively reject males under laboratory conditions (Jones 1974), and thus there is the potential for rejection behaviour to occur.

After insemination occurs, released males need to induce the same post-mating responses in females as do wild-type males. As discussed above, Acps can affect many aspects of female postcopulatory behaviour, such as her receptivity to a subsequent mating. The novel information gathered on semen protein composition in *Ae. aegypti* and *An. gambiae* (Rogers *et al.* 2009, Sirot *et al.* 2011) will allow for the evaluation of such proteins in modified males. Semen proteins are important for sperm viability and function in other insects (Avila *et al.* 2010). In addition, the ability of females to exercise control over sperm storage and utilization has been demonstrated for other insects (Eberhard 1996), and may be important in mosquitoes.

Recommendations for developing effective genetic control programs

In this section we discuss information required for effective genetic control programs. As discussed previously, two key approaches to genetic mosquito vector control are population replacement and population reduction. While many relevant aspects of fitness are the same regardless of the approach used, in some cases they can be different for population replacement vs. reduction. We have indicated this difference whenever possible below.

Even though initial laboratory assessments are important, we strongly recommend taking experiments to field cages due to unknown environmental influences that can only become apparent in nature. Until more studies are conducted and reported to the greater scientific community, it will be difficult to know what assessments are most important. Ultimately, researchers should decide the optimal balance of laboratory and field cage assessments at the outset of their program given their budget and timeline. Re-evaluation of the balance can then occur throughout the study as unanticipated issues arise. Because considerable time is required to plan, obtain approvals, conduct community engagement, and execute field cage trials, we advocate that researchers start planning this component as early as possible after project initiation.

Information needed for effective genetic control programs: field biology

While more recent information regarding the swarming behaviour of *Anopheles* mosquitoes (Diabate *et al.* 2009, 2011, Manoukis *et al.* 2009) has added to the existing body of literature (Charlwood *et al.* 2002a,b, 2003, Yuval *et al.* 1993), mating biology studies for *Aedes* mosquitoes have scarcely been pursued since the 1970s (Gubler and Bhattacharya 1972, Hartberg 1971), with few recent field observations (Bellini *et al.* 2010, Cator *et al.* 2011). More research is essential and

studies of *Aedes* swarms should be conducted in field settings where observers note the onset, location, and duration of swarm formation. Dispersal and survival are also understudied areas of male biology that require more detailed investigation. It is important that research is conducted in different ecological settings where proposed genetic control programs will be deployed, as variation may occur across a range of geographical and ecological settings. Better methods to estimate population size, age and structure also need to be developed such that decisions can be made on the number of males needed for a release.

From laboratory bench to field application

Assessment of baseline performance levels

After obtaining a transgenic line, basic assessments of strain and male fitness would be performed in the laboratory. These experiments should include determination of strain survival (at egg, larval, and adult stage), and the mating ability of males. Female fecundity after mating will reveal initial problems with male semen. For population replacement strategies, cage experiments should be undertaken to follow the fate of the transgene over a couple generations similar to the ones performed by Catteruccia *et al.* (2003).

Release methodologies such as those employed with certain RIDL strains (Fu *et al.* 2010) resulted in population reduction via late-acting lethality in RIDL male offspring. This approach has an advantage over SIT strategies because offspring compete at larval stages when density-dependent competition may occur (Dye 1984). However, analyses by Legros *et al.* (2009), question the importance of density dependence in early immature stages. Thus, for these strategies, the assessment of larval competitiveness of transgenic larvae in the presence of wild-type larvae needs to be determined. Conditions should be chosen that maximise competition and the use of appropriate controls is important to interpret findings.

Seminal fluid proteins transferred from males to females during copulation have been identified in *An. gambiae* and *Ae. aegypti* (Rogers *et al.* 2009, Sirot *et al.* 2011) and their expression levels can be quantitated using RT-PCR (Thailayil *et al.* 2011) or protein assays such as ELISA or Western blotting. As discussed in the Section 'Mosquito biology', male flight tones can be measured prior to mating to determine if harmonic convergence behaviour, an indicator of male performance, occurs.

For all of the above assessments, it is important that strain characteristics are compared to a wild-type strain consisting of recently collected individuals from the potential release site. A study in *An. gambiae* determined that body size and lipid reserves of wild males were substantially greater than males reared under standard laboratory conditions (Huho *et al.* 2007). This implies that conditions used in the laboratory to rear mosquitoes may not be sufficient to achieve strong fitness potential once released in the wild and that distinct differences exist between laboratory and wild mosquitoes. For example, it is not clear what combination of resources mosquito larvae naturally ingest. Larvae are known to consume a variety of microorganisms and particulate organic detritus (Clements 1999, Merritt *et al.* 1992), but replicating this diet in the laboratory without more information is impossible.

If after the initial assessments the strain does not perform well, testing of candidate strain should end and new lines created. If results are promising, the transgenic line can move to the next step of semi-field cage evaluation.

Semi-field assessments

The next phase of evaluations of transgenic/sterile strains should be conducted in semi-field cages rather than the laboratory as field cages provide more natural conditions such as lighting, temperature and humidity while maintaining containment. Cages should be established that include natural habitat (vegetation if necessary, breeding sites and food sources) of free ranging mosquitoes. Cages should be of ample size. We recommend a minimum size 20 m^3 after cage studies performed in Mexico with *Ae. aegypti* (Facchinelli *et al.* 2011, Figure 1). Larger and more contained semi-field cages such as the ones described by Ritchie *et al.* (2011) are ideal but their high costs will not make them realistically achievable for all research groups. Before releasing transgenic/sterile males, wild-type mosquitoes should be released and monitored in cages to confirm that conditions used are appropriate and that containment is absolute (Benedict *et al.* 2008). It is essential that control cages (wild-type mosquitoes only) are established and evaluated side-by-side with experimental cages in these studies. Low generation virgin wild-type males and females collected from the surrounding area should be used as controls.

For population reduction strategies such as the SIT and some RIDL approaches, male competitiveness can be determined by releasing transgenic/sterile males with wild-type males and wild-type females at a 1:1:1 ratio. Densities used in such studies should reflect the natural density of the species in the release area. Studies with Mediterranean fruit fly programs routinely use a mating competitiveness (MC) value above 0.2 (i.e. released males obtain 20% of the mates when competing with wild-type males for wild-type females at 1:1:1 ratio) (FAO-IAEA-USDA 2003) as acceptable; however, the threshold for mosquitoes is unknown and could be different. Low MC can be overcome by increasing the release ratio of males (10:1:1 or higher), and these experiments can be performed if initial competitiveness is low. However, excessively high release ratios may not be operationally feasible for open field releases. Other experiments that can be performed to

Figure 1. Example of a cost-effective field cage (20 m^3) used in studies performed in Mexico with Aedes aegypti *(Facchinelli* et al. *2011).*

test the fitness of strains include sustained releases of insects to eliminate wild-type populations similar to a study conducted with a RIDL line of *Ae. aegypti* (Wise de Valdez *et al.* 2011).

For population replacement strategies, it will be important to assess the ability of the transgenic strain to drive the transgene into a wild-type population. Such studies follow the frequency of the transgene over multiple generations after an initial introduction into a wild-type population (Catteruccia *et al.* 2003, Moreira *et al.* 2004). Success will depend on the strength of the drive mechanism, the fitness of the males, and the initial release ratio.

If evaluations are favourable, cage assessments can move forward with mass reared males. Mass rearing insects can result in decreased fitness, behavioural changes, or instability of the transgene, thus it will be important to monitor the strains during large scale rearing. Strategies to improve on strain fitness can include addition of different dietary components and holding conditions. Knowledge and guidance on this topic can come from existing fruit fly mass-rearing programs (Cáceres *et al.* 2007, Liedo *et al.* 2007). In addition, continuous introgression of field material can be performed to maintain genetic diversity if required. A potential recent advance to avoid inbreeding effects is the use of genetically diverse laboratory strains (Wise de Valdez *et al.* 2011, Wise de Valdez *et al.* 2010); however the need for maintenance of these strains might not make them practically applicable to large scale release efforts and especially not useful for *Anopheles* vectors as eggs cannot be stored.

Small open field release

If the performance of mass-reared males is good, studies can move forward to a small scale open field release. Any program planning semi-field cage and open field releases must adhere to the legal, social and ethical standards for the particular region where the study is being conducted (Lavery *et al.* 2008). Ideally these studies should be conducted in an isolated setting (small island or community surrounded by barriers to dispersal).

In conclusion, while many challenges remain in the development of genetic vector control strategies, recent advances have highlighted the significant potential of this approach for reducing mosquito populations and, ultimately, human mortality and morbidity from vector borne infections. A greater understanding of mosquito biology, ecology and behavior, especially for males as highlighted here, will be critical for ensuring future success.

Acknowledgements

The authors wish to thank the members of the Harrington lab and reviewers for constructive comments during manuscript preparation. This study was supported by the NIH/NIAID grant 1R01AI095491.

References

Adlakha V and Pillai MK (1975) Involvement of male accessory gland substance in the fertility of mosquitoes. J Insect Physiol 21: 1453-1455.

Aksoy S (ed.) (2008) Transgenesis and the management of vector-borne disease. Springer, Dordrecht, the Netherlands.

Aksoy S, Weiss B and Attardo G (2008) Paratransgenesis applied for control of tsetse transmitted sleeping sickness. Adv Exp Med Biol 627: 35-48.

Alphey L (2002) Re-engineering the sterile insect technique. Insect Biochem Mol Biol 32: 1243-1247.

Alphey L, Beard CB, Billingsley P, Coetzee M, Crisanti A, Curtis C, Eggleston P, Godfray C, Hemingway J, Jacobs-Lorena M, James AA, Kafatos FC, Mukwaya LG, Paton M, Powell JR, Schneider W, Scott TW, Sina B, Sinden R, Sinkins S, Spielman A, Toure Y and Collins FH (2002) Malaria control with genetically manipulated insect vectors. Science 298: 119-121.

Amenya DA, Bonizzoni M, Isaacs AT, Jasinskiene N, Chen H, Marinotti O, Yan G and James AA (2010) Comparative fitness assessment of *Anopheles stephensi* transgenic lines receptive to site-specific integration. Insect Mol Biol 19: 263-269.

Asman SM, McDonald PT and Prout T (1981) Field studies of genetic control systems for mosquitoes. Annu Rev Entomol 26: 289-318.

Avila FW, Sirot LK, LaFlamme BA, Rubinstein CD and Wolfner MF (2010) Insect seminal fluid proteins: identification and function. Annu Rev Entomol 56: 21-40.

Bargielowski I, Nimmo D, Alphey L and Koella JC (2010) Comparison of life history characteristics of the genetically modified OX513A line and a wild type strain of *Aedes aegypti*. PLoS One 6: e20699.

Beard CB, Cordon-Rosales C and Durvasula RV (2002) Bacterial symbionts of the triatominae and their potential use in control of Chagas disease transmission. Annu Rev Entomol 47: 123-141.

Beard CB, Dotson EM, Pennington PM, Eichler S, Cordon-Rosales C and Durvasula RV (2001) Bacterial symbiosis and paratransgenic control of vector-borne Chagas disease. Int J Parasitol 31: 621-627.

Bellini R, Albieri A, Balestrino F, Carrieri M, Porretta D, Urbanelli S, Calvitti M, Moretti R and Maini S (2010) Dispersal and survival of *Aedes albopictus* (Diptera: Culicidae) males in Italian urban areas and significance for sterile insect technique application. J Med Entomol 47: 1082-1091.

Benedict M, D'Abbs P, Dobson S, Gottlieb M, Harrington L, Higgs S, James A, James S, Knols B, Lavery J, O'Neill S, Scott T, Takken W and Toure Y (2008) Guidance for contained field trials of vector mosquitoes engineered to contain a gene drive system: recommendations of a scientific working group. Vector Borne Zoonotic Dis 8: 127-166.

Benedict MQ, Knols BG, Bossin HC, Howell PI, Mialhe E, Caceres C and Robinson AS (2009) Colonisation and mass rearing: learning from others. Malar J 8 Suppl 2: S4.

Benedict MQ and Robinson AS (2003) The first releases of transgenic mosquitoes: an argument for the sterile insect technique. Trends Parasitol 19: 349-355.

Boller E (1972) Behavioral aspects of mass rearing of insects. Entomophaga 17: 9-25.

Brelsfoard CL, Sechan Y and Dobson SL (2008) Interspecific hybridization yields strategy for South Pacific filariasis vector elimination. PLoS Negl Trop Dis 2: e129.

Briegel H (1990) Metabolic relationship between female body size, reserves, and fecundity of *Aedes aegypti*. J Insect Physiol 36: 165-172.

Buonaccorsi JP, Harrington LC and Edman JD (2003) Estimation and comparison of mosquito survival rates with release-recapture-removal data. J Med Entomol 40: 6-17.

Cabrera M and Jaffe K (2007) An aggregation pheromone modulates lekking behavior in the vector mosquito *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Am Mosq Control Assoc 23: 1-10.

Cáceres C, McInnis D, Shelly T, Jang E, Robinson A and Hendrichs J (2007) Quality management systems for fruit fly (Diptera: Tephritidae) sterile insect technique. Fla Entomol 90: 1-9.

Caputo B, Dani FR, Horne GL, N'Fale S, Diabate A, Turillazzi S, Coluzzi M, Costantini C, Priestman AA, Petrarca V and della Torre A (2007) Comparative analysis of epicuticular lipid profiles of sympatric and allopatric field populations of *Anopheles gambiae s.s.* molecular forms and *An. arabiensis* from Burkina Faso (West Africa). Insect Biochem Mol Biol 37: 389-398.

Carter V and Hurd H (2010) Choosing anti-*Plasmodium* molecules for genetically modifying mosquitoes: focus on peptides. Trends Parasitol 26: 582-590.

Cator LJ, Arthur BJ, Harrington LC and Hoy RR (2009) Harmonic convergence in the love songs of the dengue vector mosquito. Science 323: 1077-1079.

Cator LJ, Arthur BJ, Ponlawat A and Harrington LC (2011) Behavioral observations and sound recordings of free-flight mating swarms of *Ae. aegypti* in Thailand. J Med Entomol In Press.

Cator LJ and Harrington LC (2011) The harmonic convergence of fathers predicts the mating success of sons in the yellow fever mosquito. Anim Behav In Press.

Cator LJ, Ng'habi KR, Hoy RR and Harrington LC (2010) Sizing up a mate: variation in production of and response to acoustic signals in *Anopheles gambiae*. Behav Ecol 21: 1033-1039.

Catteruccia F, Benton JP and Crisanti A (2005) An *Anopheles* transgenic sexing strain for vector control. Nat Biotechnol 23: 1414-1417.

Catteruccia F, Crisanti A and Wimmer EA (2009) Transgenic technologies to induce sterility. Malar J 8 Suppl 2: S7.

Catteruccia F, Godfray HC and Crisanti A (2003) Impact of genetic manipulation on the fitness of *Anopheles stephensi* mosquitoes. Science 299: 1225-1227.

Chambers EW, Hapairai L, Peel BA, Bossin H and Dobson SL (2011) Male mating competitiveness of a *Wolbachia*-introgressed *Aedes polynesiensis* strain under semi-field conditions. PLoS Negl Trop Dis 5: e1271.

Chapman T, Bangham J, Vinti G, Seifried B, Lung O, Wolfner MF, Smith HK and Partridge L (2003) The sex peptide of *Drosophila melanogaster*: female post-mating responses analyzed by using RNA interference. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 100: 9923-9928.

Charlwood JD, Pinto J, Sousa CA, Ferreira C and do Rosario VE (2002a) Male size does not affect mating success (of *Anopheles gambiae* in Sao Tome). Med Vet Entomol 16: 109-111.

Charlwood JD, Pinto J, Sousa CA, Madsen H, Ferreira C and do Rosario VE (2002b) The swarming and mating behaviour of *Anopheles gambiae s.s.* (Diptera: Culicidae) from Sao Tome Island. J Vector Ecol 27: 178-183.

Charlwood JD, Thompson R and Madsen H (2003) Observations on the swarming and mating behaviour of *Anopheles funestus* from southern Mozambique. Malaria J 2: 2.

Chen CH, Huang H, Ward CM, Su JT, Schaeffer LV, Guo M and Hay BA (2007) A synthetic maternal-effect selfish genetic element drives population replacement in *Drosophila*. Science 316: 597-600.

Chen PS, Stumm-Zollinger E, Aigaki T, Balmer J, Bienz M and Bohlen P (1988) A male accessory gland peptide that regulates reproductive behavior of female *D. melanogaster*. Cell 54: 291-298.

Clements AN (1999) The biology of mosquitoes. CABI Publishing, Wallingford, UK.

Coates CJ, Jasinskiene N, Miyashiro L and James AA (1998) Mariner transposition and transformation of the yellow fever mosquito, *Aedes aegypti*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 95: 3748-3751.

Corby-Harris V, Drexler A, Watkins de Jong L, Antonova Y, Pakpour N, Ziegler R, Ramberg F, Lewis EE, Brown JM, Luckhart S and Riehle MA (2010) Activation of Akt signaling reduces the prevalence and intensity of malaria parasite infection and lifespan in *Anopheles stephensi* mosquitoes. PLoS Pathog 6: e1001003.

Costero A, Attardo GM, Scott TW and Edman JD (1998) An experimental study on the detection of fructose in *Aedes aegypti*. J Am Mosq Control Assoc 14: 234-242.

Craig G (1970) Genetic control of insect vectors of disease. Act IV Congr Latin Z 1: 15-28.

Curtis CF (1985) Genetic control of insect pests: growth industry or lead balloon. Biol J Linn Soc 26: 359-374.

Curtis CF (2006) Review of previous applications of genetics to vector control. In: Knols BGJ and Louis C (eds.) Bridging laboratory and field research for genetic control of disease vectors. Springer, Dordrecht, the Netherlands, pp. 33-43.

Dadd R, Asman S and Kleinjan J (1989) Essential fatty acid status of laboratory-reared mosquitos improved by supplementing crude larval foods with fish oils. Entomol Exp Appl 52: 149-158.

Dame DA, Lowe RE and Williamson DL (1981) Assessment of released sterile *Anopheles albimanus* and *Glossina morsitans morsitans*. In: Kitzmiller JB and Kanda T (eds.) Cytogenetics and genetics of vectors. Elsevier Biomedical, Amsterdam, the Netherlands.

Dame DA, Woodard DB, Ford HR and Weidhaas DE (1964) Field behavior of sexually sterile *Anopheles quadrimaculatus* males. Mosq News 24: 6-14.

Dao A, Adamou A, Yaro AS, Maiga HM, Kassogue Y, Traore SF and Lehmann T (2008) Assessment of alternative mating strategies in *Anopheles gambiae*: does mating occur indoors? J Med Entomol 45: 643-652.

Diabate A, Dao A, Yaro AS, Adamou A, Gonzalez R, Manoukis NC, Traore SF, Gwadz RW and Lehmann T (2009) Spatial swarm segregation and reproductive isolation between the molecular forms of *Anopheles gambiae*. Proc Biol Sci 276: 4215-4222.

Diabate A, Yaro AS, Dao A, Diallo M, Huestis DL and Lehmann T (2011) Spatial distribution and male mating success of *Anopheles gambiae* swarms. BMC Evol Biol 11: 184.

Dobson SL, Fox CW and Jiggins FM (2002) The effect of *Wolbachia*-induced cytoplasmic incompatibility on host population size in natural and manipulated systems. Proc Biol Sci 269: 437-445.

Dottorini T, Nicolaides L, Ranson H, Rogers DW, Crisanti A and Catteruccia F (2007) A genome-wide analysis in *Anopheles gambiae* mosquitoes reveals 46 male accessory gland genes, possible modulators of female behavior. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 104: 16215-16220.

Downe AE (1975) Internal regulation of rate of digestion of blood meals in the mosquito, *Aedes aegypti*. J Insect Physiol 21: 1835-1839.

Dyck A, Hendrichs J and Robinson AS (2005) The sterile insect technique: principles and practice in area-wide integrated pest management. Springer, Dordrecht, the Netherlands.

Dye C (1984) Models for the population dynamics of the yellow fever mosquito, *Aedes aegypti*. J Anim Ecol 53: 247-268.

Eberhard WG (1996) Female control: sexual selection by cryptic female choice. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ, USA.

Edman JD (1970) Rate of digestion of vertebrate blood in *Aedes aegypti* (L.). Effect of age, mating, and parity. Am J Trop Med Hyg 19: 1031-1033.

Enserink M (2010) GM mosquito trial alarms opponents, strains ties in gates-funded project. Science 330: 1030-1031.

Enserink M (2011) GM mosquito release in Malaysia surprises opponents and scientists – again. Science 27 January 2011. Available at: http://news.sciencemag.org/scienceinsider/2011/01/gm-mosquito-release-in-malaysia.html.

Facchinelli L, Valerio L, Bond JG, Wise de Valdez M, Harrington LC, Ramsey JM, Casas-Martinez M and Scott TW (2011) Development of a semi-field system for contained field trials with *Aedes aegypti* in Southern México. Am J Trop Med Hyg 58: 248-256.

Fang W, Vega-Rodriguez J, Ghosh AK, Jacobs-Lorena M, Kang A and St Leger RJ (2011) Development of transgenic fungi that kill human malaria parasites in mosquitoes. Science 331: 1074-1077.

Favia G, Ricci I, Damiani C, Raddadi N, Crotti E, Marzorati M, Rizzi A, Urso R, Brusetti L, Borin S, Mora D, Scuppa P, Pasqualini L, Clementi E, Genchi M, Corona S, Negri I, Grandi G, Alma A, Kramer L, Esposito F, Bandi C, Sacchi L and Daffonchio D (2007) Bacteria of the genus *Asaia* stably associate with *Anopheles stephensi*, an Asian malarial mosquito vector. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 104: 9047-9051.

Ferguson HM, Dornhaus A, Beeche A, Borgemeister C, Gottlieb M, Mulla MS, Gimnig JE, Fish D and Killeen GF (2010) Ecology: a prerequisite for malaria elimination and eradication. PLoS Med 7: e1000303.

Ferguson HM, John B, Ng'habi K and Knols BG (2005) Redressing the sex imbalance in knowledge of vector biology. Trends Ecol Evol 20: 202-209.

Fornadel CM, Norris LC, Glass GE and Norris DE (2010) Analysis of *Anopheles arabiensis* blood feeding behavior in southern Zambia during the two years after introduction of insecticide-treated bed nets. Am J Trop Med Hyg 83: 848-853.

Foster WA (1995) Mosquito sugar feeding and reproductive energetics. Annu Rev Entomol 40: 443-474.

Foster WA and Lea AO (1975) Renewable fecundity of male *Aedes aegypti* following replenishment of seminal vesicles and accessory glands. J Insect Physiol 21: 1083-1090.

Franz AW, Jasinskiene N, Sanchez-Vargas I, Isaacs AT, Smith MR, Khoo CC, Heersink MS, James AA and Olson KE (2011) Comparison of transgene expression in *Aedes aegypti* generated by mariner Mos1 transposition and PhiC31 site-directed recombination. Insect Mol Biol 20: 587-598.

Franz AW, Sanchez-Vargas I, Adelman ZN, Blair CD, Beaty BJ, James AA and Olson KE (2006) Engineering RNA interference-based resistance to dengue virus type 2 in genetically modified Aedes aegypti. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 103: 4198-4203.

Franz AW, Sanchez-Vargas I, Piper J, Smith MR, Khoo CC, James AA and Olson KE (2009) Stability and loss of a virus resistance phenotype over time in transgenic mosquitoes harbouring an antiviral effector gene. Insect Mol Biol 18: 661-672.

Fu G, Lees RS, Nimmo D, Aw D, Jin L, Gray P, Berendonk TU, White-Cooper H, Scaife S, Kim Phuc H, Marinotti O, Jasinskiene N, James AA and Alphey L (2010) Female-specific flightless phenotype for mosquito control. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 107: 4550-4554.

Fuchs MS, Craig GB and Despommier DD (1969) The protein nature of the substance inducing female monogramy in *Aedes aegypti*. J Insect Physiol 15: 701-709.

Fuchs MS, Craig GB, Jr. and Hiss EA (1968) The biochemical basis of female monogamy in mosquitoes. I. Extraction of the active principle from *Aedes aegypti*. Life Sci 7: 835-839.

Fuchs MS and Hiss EA (1970) The partial purification and separation of the protein components of matrone from *Aedes aegypti*. J Insect Physiol 16: 931-939.

Gary RE, Jr, Cannon JW, 3rd and Foster WA (2009) Effect of sugar on male *Anopheles gambiae* mating performance, as modified by temperature, space, and body size. Parasit Vectors 2: 19.

Gibson G (1985) Swarming behaviour of the mosquito *Culex pipiens quinquefasciatus*: a quantitative analysis. Physiol Entom 10: 283-296.

Gillies MT (1961) Studies on the dispersion and survival of *Anopheles gambiae* Giles in East Africa, by means of marking and release experiments. Bull Entomol Res 52: 99-127.

Gillott C (2003) Male accessory gland secretions: modulators of female reproductive physiology and behavior. Annu Rev Entomol 48: 163-184.

Gubler DJ and Bhattacharya NC (1972) Swarming and mating of *Aedes (S.) albopictus* in nature. Mosq News 32: 219-223.

Gwadz RW and Craig GB, Jr. (1970) Female polygamy due to inadequate semen transfer in *Aedes aegypti*. Mosq News 30: 355-360.

Hancock RG, Foster WA and Yee WL (1990) Courtship behavior of the mosquito *Sabethes cyaneus* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Insect Behav 3: 401-416.

Harrington LC, Scott TW, Lerdthusnee K, Coleman RC, Costero A, Clark GG, Jones JJ, Kitthawee S, Kittayapong P, Sithiprasasna R and Edman JD (2005) Dispersal of the dengue vector *Aedes aegypti* within and between rural communities. Am J Trop Med Hyg 72: 209-220.

Harris AF, Nimmo D, McKemey AR, Kelly N, Scaife S, Donnelly CA, Beech C, Petrie WD and Alphey L (2011) Field performance of engineered male mosquitoes. Nat Biotechnol 29: 1034-1037.

Hartberg WK (1971) Observations on the mating behaviour of *Aedes aegypti* in nature. Bull WHO 45: 847-850.

Hay BA, Chen CH, Ward CM, Huang H, Su JT and Guo M (2010) Engineering the genomes of wild insect populations: challenges, and opportunities provided by synthetic Medea selfish genetic elements. J Insect Physiol 56: 1402-1413.

Helinski ME and Knols BG (2008) Mating competitiveness of male *Anopheles arabiensis* mosquitoes irradiated with a partially or fully sterilizing dose in small and large laboratory cages. J Med Entomol 45: 698-705.

Helinski ME and Knols BG (2009) Sperm quantity and size variation in un-irradiated and irradiated males of the malaria mosquito *Anopheles arabiensis* Patton. Acta Trop 109: 64-69.

Helinski ME, Parker AG and Knols BG (2009) Radiation biology of mosquitoes. Malar J 8 Suppl 2: S6.

Helinski MEH and Harrington LC (2011) Male mating history and body size influence female fecundity and longevity of the dengue vector *Aedes aegypti*. J Med Entomol 48: 202-211.

Helinski MEH, Valerio L, Facchinelli L, Scott TW, Ramsey J and Harrington LC (2012) Evidence of polyandry in a natural population of *Aedes aegypti* under semi-field conditions. Am J Trop Med Hyg 86: 635-641.

Hoffmann AA, Montgomery BL, Popovici J, Iturbe-Ormaetxe I, Johnson PH, Muzzi F, Greenfield M, Durkan M, Leong YS, Dong Y, Cook H, Axford J, Callahan AG, Kenny N, Omodei C, McGraw EA, Ryan PA, Ritchie SA, Turelli M and O'Neill SL (2011) Successful establishment of *Wolbachia* in *Aedes* populations to suppress dengue transmission. Nature 476: 454-457.

Howell PI and Knols BG (2009) Male mating biology. Malar J 8 Suppl 2: S8.

Huho BJ, Ng'habi KR, Killeen GF, Nkwengulila G, Knols BG and Ferguson HM (2006) A reliable morphological method to assess the age of male *Anopheles gambiae*. Malar J 5: 62.

Huho BJ, Ng'habi KR, Killeen GF, Nkwengulila G, Knols BG and Ferguson HM (2007) Nature beats nurture: a case study of the physiological fitness of free-living and laboratory-reared male *Anopheles gambiae s.l.* J Exp Biol 210: 2939-2947.

Irvin N, Hoddle MS, O'Brochta DA, Carey B and Atkinson PW (2004) Assessing fitness costs for transgenic *Aedes aegypti* expressing the GFP marker and transposase genes. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 101: 891-896.

Ito J, Ghosh A, Moreira LA, Wimmer EA and Jacobs-Lorena M (2002) Transgenic anopheline mosquitoes impaired in transmission of a malaria parasite. Nature 417: 452-455.

James AA (2005) Gene drive systems in mosquitoes: rules of the road. Trends Parasitol 21: 64-67.

Jones JC (1973) A study on the fecundity of male *Aedes aegypti*. J Insect Physiol 19: 435-439.

Jones TM (1974) Sexual activities during single and multiple co-habitations in *Aedes aegypti* mosquitoes. J Ent 48: 185-194.

Kambris Z, Blagborough AM, Pinto SB, Blagrove MS, Godfray HC, Sinden RE and Sinkins SP (2010) *Wolbachia* stimulates immune gene expression and inhibits plasmodium development in *Anopheles gambiae*. PLoS Pathog 6: e1001143.

Kim W, Koo H, Richman AM, Seeley D, Vizioli J, Klocko AD and O'Brochta DA (2004) Ectopic expression of a cecropin transgene in the human malaria vector mosquito *Anopheles gambiae* (Diptera: Culicidae): effects on susceptibility to *Plasmodium* J Med Entomol 41: 447-455.

Klowden M and Chambers G (1991) Male accessory gland substances activate egg development in nutritionally stressed *Ae. aegypti* mosquitoes. J Insect Physiol 37: 721-726.

Klowden MJ and Lea AO (1979) Humoral inhibition of host-seeking in *Aedes aegypti* during oocyte maturation. J Insect Physiol 25: 231-235.

Knipling EF (1955) Possibilities of insect population control through the use of sexually sterile males. J Econ Entomol 48: 459-462.

Knols BGJ, Bossin HC, Mukabana WR and Robinson AS (2007) Transgenic mosquitoes and the fight against malaria: managing technology push in a turbulent GMO world. Am J Trop Med Hyg 77: 232-242.

Koenraadt CJ, Kormaksson M and Harrington LC (2010) Effects of inbreeding and genetic modification on *Aedes aegypti* larval competition and adult energy reserves. Parasit Vectors 3: 92.

Koenraadt CJ and Takken W (2011) Viability of GM fungi crucial to malaria control. Science 332: 175.

Labbe GM, Nimmo DD and Alphey L (2010) Piggybac- and PhiC31-mediated genetic transformation of the Asian tiger mosquito, *Aedes albopictus* (Skuse). PLoS Negl Trop Dis 4: e788.

Lacroix R, Delatte H, Hue T and Reiter P (2009) Dispersal and survival of male and female *Aedes albopictus* (Diptera: Culicidae) on Reunion Island. J Med Entomol 46: 1117-1124.

Laven H (1967) Eradication of *Culex pipiens fatigans* through cytoplasmic incompatibility. Nature 216: 383-384.

Lavery JV, Harrington LC and Scott TW (2008) Ethical, social, and cultural considerations for site selection for research with genetically modified mosquitoes. Am J Trop Med Hyg 79: 312-318.

Lavoipierre MM (1958) Biting behavior of mated and unmated females of an African strain of *Aedes aegypti*. Nature 181: 1781-1782.

Leahy M and Craig G (1965) Accessory gland substance as a stimulant for oviposition in *Aedes aegypti* and *Ae. albopictus*. Mosq News 25: 448-452.

Legros M, Lloyd AL, Huang Y and Gould F (2009) Density-dependent intraspecific competition in the larval stage of *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae): revisiting the current paradigm. J Med Entomol 46: 409-419.

Li C, Marrelli MT, Yan G and Jacobs-Lorena M (2008) Fitness of transgenic *Anopheles stephensi* mosquitoes expressing the SM1 peptide under the control of a vitellogenin promoter. J Hered 99: 275-282.

Liedo P, Salgado S, Oropeza A and Toledo J (2007) Improving mating performance of mass-reared sterile mediterrenean fruit flies (Diptera: Tephritidae) through changes in adult holding conditions: demography and mating competitiveness. Fla Entomol 90: 33-40.

Lofgren CS, Dame DA, Breeland SG, Weidhaas DE, Jeffery G, Kaiser R, Ford HR, Boston MD and Baldwin KF (1974) Release of chemosterilized males for the control of *Anopheles albimanus* in El Salvador. 3. Field methods and population control. Am J Trop Med Hyg 23: 288-297.

Lyimo EO and Takken W (1993) Effects of adult body size on fecundity and the pre-gravid rate of *Anopheles gambiae* females in Tanzania. Med Vet Entomol 7: 328-332.

Magori K, Legros M, Puente ME, Focks DA, Scott TW, Lloyd AL and Gould F (2009) Skeeter Buster: a stochastic, spatially explicit modeling tool for studying *Aedes aegypti* population replacement and population suppression strategies. PLoS NTD 3: e508.

Mahmood F and Reisen WK (1994) *Anopheles culicifacies*: effects of age on the male reproductive system and mating ability of virgin adult mosquitoes. Med Vet Entomol 8: 31-37.

Manoukis NC, Diabate A, Abdoulaye A, Diallo M, Dao A, Yaro AS, Ribeiro JM and Lehmann T (2009) Structure and dynamics of male swarms of *Anopheles gambiae*. J Med Entomol 46: 227-235.

Marchand RP (1984) Field observations on swarming and mating in *Anopheles gambiae* mosquitoes in Tanzania. Neth J Zool 24: 367-387.

Marrelli MT, Li C, Rasgon JL and Jacobs-Lorena M (2007) Transgenic malaria-resistant mosquitoes have a fitness advantage when feeding on *Plasmodium*-infected blood. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 104: 5580-5583.

Marrelli MT, Moreira CK, Kelly D, Alphey L and Jacobs-Lorena M (2006) Mosquito transgenesis: what is the fitness cost? Trends Parasitol 22: 197-202.

McMeniman CJ, Lane RV, Cass BN, Fong AW, Sidhu M, Wang YF and O'Neill SL (2009) Stable introduction of a life-shortening *Wolbachia* infection into the mosquito *Aedes aegypti*. Science 323: 141-144.

Meredith JM, Basu S, Nimmo DD, Larget-Thiery I, Warr EL, Underhill A, McArthur CC, Carter V, Hurd H, Bourgouin C and Eggleston P (2011) Site-specific integration and expression of an anti-malarial gene in transgenic *Anopheles gambiae* significantly reduces *Plasmodium* infections. PLoS One 6: e14587.

Merritt RW, Dadd RH and Walker ED (1992) Feeding behavior, natural food, and nutritional relationships of larval mosquitoes. Annu Rev Entomol 37: 349-376.

Moreira LA, Ito J, Ghosh A, Devenport M, Zieler H, Abraham EG, Crisanti A, Nolan T, Catteruccia F and Jacobs-Lorena M (2002) Bee venom phospholipase inhibits malaria parasite development in transgenic mosquitoes. J Biol Chem 277: 40839-40843.

Moreira LA, Iturbe-Ormaetxe I, Jeffery JA, Lu G, Pyke AT, Hedges LM, Rocha BC, Hall-Mendelin S, Day A, Riegler M, Hugo LE, Johnson KN, Kay BH, McGraw EA, Van den Hurk AF, Ryan PA and O'Neill SL (2009) A *Wolbachia* symbiont in *Aedes aegypti* limits infection with dengue, Chikungunya, and *Plasmodium*. Cell 139: 1268-1278.

Moreira LA, Wang J, Collins FH and Jacobs-Lorena M (2004) Fitness of anopheline mosquitoes expressing transgenes that inhibit *Plasmodium* development. Genetics 166: 1337-1341.

Morlan HB, Elmo M, McCray JR and Kilpatrick JW (1962) Field tests with sexually sterile males for control of *Aedes aegypti*. Mosq News 22: 295-300.

Muir LE and Kay BH (1998) *Aedes aegypti* survival and dispersal estimated by mark-release-recapture in northern Australia. Am J Trop Med Hyg 58: 277-282.

Ng'habi KR, John B, Nkwengulila G, Knols BG, Killeen GF and Ferguson HM (2005) Effect of larval crowding on mating competitiveness of *Anopheles gambiae* mosquitoes. Malar J 4: 49.

Nijhout HF and Craig GB (1971) Reproductive isolation in Stegomyia mosquitoes. III Evidence for a sexual pheromone. Entomol Exp Appl 14: 399-412.

Nimmo D, Alphey L, Meredith J and Eggleston P (2006) High efficiency site-specific genetic engineering of the mosquito genome. Insect Mol Biol 15: 129-136.

Nolan T, Papathanos P, Windbichler N, Magnusson K, Benton J, Catteruccia F and Crisanti A (2011) Developing transgenic *Anopheles* mosquitoes for the sterile insect technique. Genetica 139: 33-39.

Odiere M, Bayoh MN, Gimnig J, Vulule J, Irungu L and Walker E (2007) Sampling outdoor, resting *Anopheles gambiae* and other mosquitoes (Diptera: Culicidae) in western Kenya with clay pots. J Med Entomol 44: 14-22.

Oxitec (2011) Field trials in Brazil: a progress report. Oxitec Newsletter September 2011. Available at: http://www.oxitec.com/september-2011-newsletter/.

Parker AG and Mehta K (2007) Sterile insect technique: a model for dose optimization for improved sterile insect quality. Fla Entomol 90: 88-95.

Patterson RS, Weidhaas DE, Ford HR and Lofgren CS (1970) Suppression and elimination of an island population of *Culex pipiens quinquefasciatus* with sterile males. Science 168: 1368-1370.

Pennetier C, Warren B, Dabire KR, Russell IJ and Gibson G (2010) 'Singing on the wing' as a mechanism for species recognition in the malarial mosquito *Anopheles gambiae*. Curr Biol 20: 131-136.

Polerstock AR, Eigenbrode SD and Klowden MJ (2002) Mating alters the cuticular hydrocarbons of female *Anopheles gambiae sensu stricto* and *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Med Entomol 39: 545-552.

Ponlawat A and Harrington LC (2007) Age and body size influence male sperm capacity of the dengue vector *Aedes aegypti* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Med Entomol 44: 422-426.

Ponlawat A and Harrington LC (2009) Factors associated with male mating success of the dengue vector mosquito, *Aedes aegypti*. Am J Trop Med Hyg 80: 395-400.

Reisen W, Milby M, Asman S, Bock M, Meyer R, McDonald P and Reeves W (1982) Attempted suppression of a semi-isolated *Culex tarsalis* population by the release of irradiated males: a second experiment using males from a recently colonized strain. Mosq News 42: 565-575.

Reisen WK and Aslamkhan M (1979) A release-recapture experiment with the malaria vector, *Anopheles stephensi* Liston, with observations on dispersal, survivorship, population size, gonotrophic rhythm and mating behaviour. Ann Trop Med Parasitol 73: 251-269.

Reisen WK, Mahmood F and Parveen T (1980) *Anopheles culicifacies* Giles: a release-recapture experiment with cohorts of known age with implications for malaria epidemiology and genetical control in Pakistan. Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg 74: 307-317.

Ren X, Hoiczyk E and Rasgon JL (2008) Viral paratransgenesis in the malaria vector *Anopheles gambiae*. PLoS Pathog 4: e1000135.

Riehle MM, Guelbeogo WM, Gneme A, Eiglmeier K, Holm I, Bischoff E, Garnier T, Snyder GM, Li X, Markianos K, Sagnon N and Vernick KD (2011) A cryptic subgroup of *Anopheles gambiae* is highly susceptible to human malaria parasites. Science 331: 596-598.

Ritchie SA, Johnson PH, Freeman AJ, Odell RG, Graham N, Dejong PA, Standfield GW, Sale RW and O'Neill SL (2011) A secure semi-field system for the study of *Aedes aegypti*. PLoS Negl Trop Dis 5: e988.

Robinson AS and Franz G (2000) The application of transgenic insect technology in the sterile insect technique. In: Handler M and James AA (eds.) Insect transgenesis:methods and applications. CRC Press, Baton Rouge, FL, USA, pp. 307-319.

Rodrigues FG, Santos MN, De Carvalho TX, Rocha BC, Riehle MA, Pimenta PF, Abraham E, Jacobs-Lorena M, Alves de Brito CF and Moreira LA (2008) Expression of a mutated phospholipase A2 in transgenic *Aedes fluviatilis* mosquitoes impacts *Plasmodium gallinaceum* development. Insect Mol Biol 17: 175-183.

Rogers DW, Baldini F, Battaglia F, Panico M, Dell A, Morris HR and Catteruccia F (2009) Transglutaminase-mediated semen coagulation controls sperm storage in the malaria mosquito. PLoS Biol 7: e1000272.

Roth LM (1948) A study of mosquito behavior. An experimental laboratory study of the sexual behavior of *Aedes aegypti* (Linnaeus). Am Midl Nat 40: 265-352.

Russell TL, Govella NJ, Azizi S, Drakeley CJ, Kachur SP and Killeen GF (2011) Increased proportions of outdoor feeding among residual malaria vector populations following increased use of insecticide-treated nets in rural Tanzania. Malar J 10: 80.

Santos MN, Nogueira PM, Dias FB, Valle D and Moreira LA (2010) Fitness aspects of transgenic *Aedes fluviatilis* mosquitoes expressing a *Plasmodium*-blocking molecule. Transgenic Res 19: 1129-1135.

Schetelig MF, Scolari F, Handler AM, Kittelmann S, Gasperi G and Wimmer EA (2009) Site-specific recombination for the modification of transgenic strains of the Mediterranean fruit fly *Ceratitis capitata*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 106: 18171-18176.

Scolari F, Siciliano P, Gabrieli P, Gomulski LM, Bonomi A, Gasperi G and Malacrida AR (2011) Safe and fit genetically modified insects for pest control: from lab to field applications. Genetica 139: 41-52.

Scott TW, Takken W, Knols BG and Boëte C (2002) The ecology of genetically modified mosquitoes. Science 298: 117-119.

Searcy WA and Nowicki S (2005) The evolution of animal communication: reliability and deception in signaling systems. Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ, USA.

Seawright JA, Kaiser PE and Dame DA (1977) Mating competitiveness of chemosterilized hybrid males of *Aedes aegypti* (L.) in field tests. Mosq News 37: 615-619.

Service MW (1993) Mosquito ecology: field sampling methods. Chapman and Hall, London, UK.

Service MW (1997) Mosquito (Diptera: Culicidae) dispersal – the long and short of it. J Med Entomol 34: 579-588.

Sheppard PM, MacDonald WW, Tonn RJ and Grab B (1969) The dynamics of an adult population of *Aedes aegypti* in relation to dengue haemorrhagic fever in Bangkok. J Anim Ecol 38: 661-702.

Shutt B, Stables L, Aboagye-Antwi F, Moran J and Tripet F (2010) Male accessory gland proteins induce female monogamy in anopheline mosquitoes. Med Vet Entomol 24: 91-94.

Sinkins SP and Gould F (2006) Gene drive systems for insect disease vectors. Nat Rev Genet 7: 427-435.

Sinkins SP and O'Neill SL (2000) *Wolbachia* as a vehicle to modify insect populations. In: Handler M and James AA (eds.) Insect transgenesis: methods and applications. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, USA, pp. 271-287.

Sirot LK, Hardstone MC, Helinski MEH, Kimura M, Deewathanawong P, Wolfner MF and Harrington LC (2011) Towards a semen proteome of the dengue vector mosquito: protein identification and potential functions. Plos NTD 5: e989.

Sirot LK, Poulson RL, McKenna MC, Girnary H, Wolfner MF and Harrington LC (2008) Identity and transfer of male reproductive gland proteins of the dengue vector mosquito, *Aedes aegypti*: potential tools for control of female feeding and reproduction. Insect Biochem Mol Biol 38: 176-189.

Snow JW (1988) Radiation, insects and eradication in North America. An overview from screwworm to bollworm. In: Modern Insect control: nuclear techniques and biotechnology. Proceedings of a symposium jointly organized by IAEA/FAO, Vienna, November 1987, IAEA-SM-301/29, pp. 8-10.

Spencer CY, Pendergast IV TH and Harrington LC (2005) Fructose variation in the dengue vector, *Aedes aegypti*, during high and low transmission seasons in the Mae Sot region of Thailand. J Am Mosq C Assoc 21: 177-181.

Takken W and Knols BG (1999) Odor-mediated behavior of Afrotropical malaria mosquitoes. Annu Rev Entomol 44: 131-157.

Thailayil J, Magnusson K, Godfray HC, Crisanti A and Catteruccia F (2011) Spermless males elicit large-scale female responses to mating in the malaria mosquito *Anopheles gambiae*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 108: 13677-13681.

Thomas DD, Donnelly CA, Wood RJ and Alphey LS (2000) Insect population control using a dominant, repressible, lethal genetic system. Science 287: 2474-2476.

Touré YT and Manga L (2000) Ethical, legal and social issues in the use of genetically modified vectors for disease control. In: Knols BGJ and Louis C (eds.), Bridging laboratory and field research for genetic control of disease vectors. Springer, Dordrecht, the Netherlands, pp. 221-225.

Tripet F, Toure YT, Dolo G and Lanzaro GC (2003) Frequency of multiple inseminations in field-collected *Anopheles gambiae* females revealed by DNA analysis of transferred sperm. Am J Trop Med Hyg 68: 1-5.

Verhoek BA and Takken W (1994) Age effects on the insemination rate of *Anopheles gambiae* s.l. in the laboratory. Entomol Exp Appl 72: 167-172.

Walker T, Johnson PH, Moreira LA, Iturbe-Ormaetxe I, Frentiu FD, McMeniman CJ, Leong YS, Dong Y, Axford J, Kriesner P, Lloyd AL, Ritchie SA, O'Neill SL and Hoffmann AA (2011) The wMel *Wolbachia* strain blocks dengue and invades caged *Aedes aegypti* populations. Nature 476: 450-453.

Ward TW, Jenkins MS, Afanasiev BN, Edwards M, Duda BA, Suchman E, Jacobs-Lorena M, Beaty BJ and Carlson JO (2001) *Aedes aegypti* transducing densovirus pathogenesis and expression in *Aedes aegypti* and *Anopheles gambiae* larvae. Insect Mol Biol 10: 397-405.

Warren B, Gibson G and Russell IJ (2009) Sex recognition through midflight mating duets in *Culex* mosquitoes is mediated by acoustic distortion. Curr Biol 19: 485-491.

Weidhaas DE, Schmidt CH and Seabrook EL (1962) Field studies on the release of sterile males for the control of *Anopheles quadrimaculatus*. Mosq News 22: 283-291.

Windbichler N, Menichelli M, Papathanos PA, Thyme SB, Li H, Ulge UY, Hovde BT, Baker D, Monnat RJ, Jr, Burt A and Crisanti A (2011) A synthetic homing endonuclease-based gene drive system in the human malaria mosquito. Nature 473: 212-215.

Wise de Valdez MR, Nimmo D, Betz J, Gong HF, James AA, Alphey L and Black WCt (2011) Genetic elimination of dengue vector mosquitoes. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 108: 4772-4775.

Wise de Valdez MR, Suchman EL, Carlson JO and Black WC (2010) A large scale laboratory cage trial of *Aedes* densonucleosis virus (AeDNV). J Med Entomol 47: 392-399.

Wolfner MF (2007) 'S.P.E.R.M.' (seminal proteins (are) essential reproductive modulators): the view from *Drosophila*. Soc Reprod Fertil Suppl 65: 183-199.

Xi Z, Dean JL, Khoo C and Dobson SL (2005a) Generation of a novel *Wolbachia* infection in *Aedes albopictus* (Asian tiger mosquito) via embryonic microinjection. Insect Biochem Mol Biol 35: 903-910.

Xi Z, Khoo CC and Dobson SL (2005b) *Wolbachia* establishment and invasion in an *Aedes aegypti* laboratory population. Science 310: 326-328.

Xi Z, Khoo CC and Dobson SL (2006) Interspecific transfer of *Wolbachia* into the mosquito disease vector *Aedes albopictus*. Proc Biol Sci 273: 1317-1322.

Yohannes M and Boelee E (2012) Early biting rhythm in the afro-tropical vector of malaria, *Anopheles arabiensis*, and challenges for its control in Ethiopia. Med Vet Entomol 26: 103-105.

Yuval B (2006) Mating systems of blood-feeding flies. Ann Rev Entomol 51: 413-440.

Yuval B and Bouskila A (1993) Temporal dynamics of mating and predation in mosquito swarms. Oecologia 95: 65-69.

Yuval B and Fritz GN (1994) Multiple mating in female mosquitoes? Evidence from a field population of *Anopheles freeborni* (Diptera: Culicidae). BullEntomol Res 84: 137-139.

Yuval B, Holliday-Hanson L and Washino RK (1994) Energy budget of swarming male mosquitoes. Ecol Entomol 19: 74-78.

Yuval B, Wekesa JW and Washino RK (1993) Effects of body size on swarming behavior and mating success of male *Anopheles freeborni* (Diptera: Culicidae). J Insect Behav 6: 333-342.

Epilogue

13. Ecology of parasite-vector interactions: expect the unexpected

Constantianus J.M. Koenraadt and Willem Takken

Abstract

As revealed by the previous chapters, a wealth of information has become available on the biology and ecology of parasite-vector interactions. This has led to a greater understanding of the more fundamental aspects on how parasites manipulate their arthropod hosts, as well as on how the arthropod's immune system responds to this. Most interestingly, it has also led to novel applications for sustainable control of vector-borne diseases, such as exemplified by the ongoing field trials with *Wolbachia* as a disease-controlling endosymbiont in *Aedes aegypti* L. as well as by the release of transgenic male *Ae. aegypti* for the control of dengue in Grand Cayman island, Brazil and Malaysia. In this chapter we synthesize the reviewed knowledge and conclude that in many instances environmental and evolutionary forces can pull trade-offs between parasites and vectors in unexpected directions.

Keywords: vector-borne disease, parasites, pathogens, interaction, genetics, immunity, transmission

Introduction

Why are some arthropods such efficient vectors of parasites and others not? Even organisms that look so much alike and are very closely related genetically can differently contribute to the transmission of a parasite. This question has puzzled scientists for decades already. At the turn of the 19th century, the discovery of mosquitoes being the vector of viruses, protozoans and nematodes by eminent scientists such as Major Walter Reed (Yellow Fever), Sir Ronald Ross (malaria) and Sir Patrick Mason (bancroftian filariasis) has been a major turning point. Still, it took another 50 years or so to really understand the epidemiological importance of the ecology of arthropods as vectors of disease. The Ross-MacDonald model (for a historical review, see Smith *et al.* 2012) on the basic reproductive number, i.e. the number of new infections arising as a result of the introduction of an infective case in an immunologically naive population, is still used by academia and has been the starting point for many chapters in this volume.

This book aims to provide the latest insights into the ecology of parasite-vector interactions. And indeed, the various chapters are evidence that the intricate relationship between a parasite and its vector is interwoven in a web of interactions with its internal micro-biome and the external environment. It is clear that various environmental and evolutionary forces can pull in opposing directions, sometimes leading to unexpected outcomes.

Underestimating disease risk

Vectors are poikilothermic ('cold-blooded') and therefore highly vulnerable to variable environmental conditions. Only recently these effects have been explored in more detail. Temperatures vary considerably throughout the day, are different for indoor as compared to outdoor mosquito populations and different for the aquatic environment in which the larval stages of mosquitoes develop. Paaijmans and Thomas (Chapter 5) have explored these effects on mosquito and *Plasmodium* development and conclude that a comparison of linear versus non-linear models demonstrates that the standard use of the mean outdoor temperature in malaria

W. Takken and C.J.M. Koenraadt (eds.), *Ecology of parasite-vector interactions*, Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases 3, DOI 10.3920/978-90-8686-744-8_13, © Wageningen Academic Publishers 2013

risk models is not able to capture important features of the actual microclimate experienced by mosquitoes. In fact, ignoring diurnal temperature fluctuation in modelling may underestimate malaria risk in cooler areas such as African highlands (Paaijmans *et al.* 2009).

Size matters

That the aquatic environment of mosquitoes is of importance for the actual transmission of associated parasites or arbo-viruses is also concluded by Alto and Lounibos (Chapter 4). In these water bodies, the larvae compete for food either with their conspecifics or with larvae from different, and perhaps invading species, such as the tiger mosquito *Aedes albopictus* Skuse (Chapter 14, Juliano and Lounibos 2005, Takken and Knols 2007). These interactions have an impact on the size of the emerging adult. Various studies have demonstrated that smaller adults are more susceptible to arbo-viruses due to their thinner midgut basement membrane, thereby weakening the midgut escape barrier for viral particles. However, other studies revealed that, for example large *Aedes triseriatus* Say are more susceptible to La Crosse Encephalitis virus (LACV) than smaller ones (reviewed in Chapter 4). Probably larger adults ingest more virus particles in blood meals, thereby increasing their chances of becoming competent vectors later in life. It remains unclear what the precise physiological mechanisms are that determine the outcome of these interactions, although important advances have been made in our understanding of the expression of immunity related genes (Chapter 2). As soon as a mosquito is challenged with a pathogen, hundreds of genes are up- or down regulated with the aim to mount a neutralizing immune response. It is generally thought that there is a trade-off between this immune response and fitness of the vector: on the one hand invading pathogens can negatively affect vector survival, while on the other an immune response can be energetically expensive and thus also lead to a reduced input into reproduction. This has important implications for the development of transgenic vectors, especially those designed to express a pathogen-killing effect upon feeding on an infectious blood meal (Chapters 2 and 12). However, a moderate fitness cost resulting from increased immune activation may be acceptable since it may offset the fitness cost of the actual infection. The general consensus is that transient expression of a transgene in a tissue and stage specific manner can limit the negative effects of an over-expression of immune genes and, if the refractoriness gene is linked to a strong gene driver, this method can be a viable alternative for disease control (Chapter 2). If that goal can indeed be achieved in the long run needs to be addressed from an evolutionary perspective. Lambrechts and Koella (Chapter 6) argue that quantitative estimates for malaria parasite-induced changes of the parameters making up the basic reproductive rate should be obtained under more realistic field conditions. A decreased efficacy of a transgenic malaria control programme could be the result of a greater investment of the malaria parasite into evading or suppressing the refractoriness mechanism inside the mosquito. This requires an integrated research programme on experimental evolutionary ecology and mathematical modelling (Chapters 6 and 10).

Sugar feeding

Sugar feeding by mosquitoes is generally considered to be required for body maintenance and providing energy for flight (Takken and Knols 1999). Hence, without sugar the mosquito's survival and thus lifetime reproductive capacity is significantly reduced. This has of course also a major impact on the likelihood of transmission of the malaria parasite. However, when mosquitoes choose wisely from the available nectar sources (flowers, honeydew and extra-floral nectaries), they are even capable of clearing a malaria infection, as a result of the inhibitory factors in plant nectar (Chapter 3). In other words, the spatial and temporal distribution of plants in a specific

environment may have an important impact on malaria transmission. According to Stone and Foster (Chapter 3), this knowledge could be exploited by developing plant-volatile baited traps, as these target a much wider segment of the mosquito population than is typically sampled with CO_2- baited traps and ovitraps.

The role of parasite and vector secretions

Though much research on parasite-vector interactions focuses on the role of mosquitoes and their associated pathogens, there are many parallels with other vector-parasite systems, such as tick-*Borrelia* (Chapter 7) and sandfly-*Leishmania* (Chapter 9) interactions. Both *Borrelia* bacteria and *Leishmania* protozoa are capable of manipulating their host in order to enhance their own transmission. Both chapters highlight the unexpected, but important role of secretions in the actual transmission, such as tick saliva in the case of *Borrelia* and a gel secreted by the promastigote form of *Leishmania*. A protein in tick saliva (Salp15) binds to *Borrelia* bacteria and suppresses a T-cell mediated immune response in the host , thereby providing a protective coat for the bacteria. In *Leishmania* it has been established that the promastigote secretory gel, which mostly contains filamentous proteophosphoglycans, causes exacerbation of disease symptoms in mice.

Microbiome interactions

Besides these secretions originating from either the vector or the pathogen itself, the microbiome that is present in the vector plays an important role in determining the outcome of pathogen-vector interactions. Several tens of bacteria species have been identified in the mosquito midgut that are thought to have an effect on digestion, nutrition and reproduction (Ramirez *et al.* 2012). The most well-known example is the *Wolbachia* bacterium, that was first identified from the reproductive tissue of *Culex pipiens* Say. Its effects on arthropod reproduction through feminization, male killing, parthenogenesis and cytoplasmic incompatibility have puzzled scientists for a long time. This has triggered scientists to think about the possible role of *Wolbachia* for vector control, either as a driving mechanism for transgenic elements that block reproduction of a pathogen (see also Chapter 12) or as direct control agent itself. The latter option came rather unexpectedly: introduction of specific *Wolbachia* strains into the dengue vector *Aedes aegypti* L. resulted in a shortened life-span of the mosquito as well as to the interruption of transmission, because the presence of *Wolbachia* reduces the replication of dengue virus (Chapter 8). One appreciates these findings even more considering that it took the researchers more than three years of continuous serial passage in mosquito cell cultures to adapt the *Wolbachia* strain to these cell lines before they were able to inject it successfully into *Aedes* mosquitoes. The most exciting news is that currently trials are underway to evaluate the impact of *Wolbachia* on mosquito population dynamics and dengue transmission in the field (Hoffmann *et al.* 2011).

Informed decisions for disease control

As demonstrated in the first chapters, the outcomes of parasite-vector interactions can be unexpected at times. With the recent advances in molecular biology and tools to analyse high-throughput data, we now have a more solid understanding of these interactions in a relatively complex environment. Still, decision makers and other stake-holders are eventually most interested in what this means in terms of investing in novel vector control tools or how they can distribute their limited resources more efficiently (Woolhouse *et al.* 1997). In case of malaria for example, a targeted malaria control approach is estimated to have a four-fold higher impact than an untargeted approach (Chapter 11). This is due to the fact that some areas (households,

villages or regions) experience a higher transmission intensity compared to the average value of the larger area. Such heterogeneities, or hotspots of transmission, may fuel malaria transmission in wider regions. Identification of such hotspots is therefore of crucial importance, and efforts are underway to identify the most reliable indicators based on serological markers of malaria exposure (Chapter 11). Transmission models are very useful in this regard, as they are able to incorporate the multiple interactions and address the outcome on the longer term. This can be done by using a backward or forward modelling approach, whereby the first aims to interpret complex mosquito data and the latter is able to predict the consequences of specific interventions (Chapter 10). For example, according to Ace and Hancock (Chapter 10) introducing fungal biopesticides as a novel tool to disrupt *Anopheles-Plasmodium* interactions has a variable impact depending on the locally prevailing climate. Counter intuitively, the largest impact of fungal biopesticides on entomological inoculation rate, a measure of malaria transmission intensity, is achieved at cooler rather than at warmer temperatures. This is probably due to the longer time that is available for the infection process of the fungus.

Conclusions

One thing has clearly surfaced throughout the various chapters of this book: we need to stay one step ahead of parasites if we are to control them in the end. To expect the unexpected requires innovative thinking and focussing on research areas that are currently under-studied. For example, because female mosquitoes are the agents that transmit the malaria parasite, little attention has been paid to the biology of male mosquitoes (Ferguson *et al.* 2005). However, for the development of genetic control strategies, the fitness of transgenic males that are to be released *en masse* is crucial for the success and sustainability of a genetic control programme (Chapter 12). In addition, the continuous evolutionary arms race between parasites, vectors and our control efforts may lead to the development of more virulent strains or to parasites being no longer susceptible to the commonly used drugs (Smith and Schapira 2012). This does not happen everywhere at the same pace, but is very heterogeneous in space and time. Understanding parasite-vector interactions in such an ecological context remains challenging, but highly rewarding when they lead to new interventions that make our lives healthier and happier.

References

Ferguson HM, John B, Ng'habi K and Knols BGJ (2005) Redressing the sex imbalance in knowledge of vector biology. Trends Ecol Evol 20: 202-209.

Hoffmann AA, Montgomery BL, Popovici J, Iturbe-Ormaetxe I, Johnson PH, Muzzi F, Greenfield M, Durkan M, Leong YS, Dong Y, Cook H, Axford J, Callahan AG, Kenny N, Omodei C, McGraw EA, Ryan PA, Ritchie SA, Turelli M and O'Neill SL (2011) Successful establishment of *Wolbachia* in *Aedes* populations to suppress dengue transmission. Nature 476: 454-457.

Juliano SA and Lounibos LP (2005) Ecology of invasive mosquitoes: Effects on resident species and on human health. Ecol Lett 8: 558-574.

Paaijmans KP, Read AF and Thomas MB (2009) Understanding the link between malaria risk and climate. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 106: 13844-13849.

Ramirez JL, Souza-Neto J, Cosme RT, Rovira J, Ortiz A, Pascale JM and Dimopoulos G (2012) Reciprocal tripartite interactions between the *Aedes aegypti* midgut microbiota, innate immune system and dengue virus influences vector competence. Plos Negl Trop Dis 6: e1561.

Smith DL, Battle KE, Hay SI, Barker CM, Scott TW and McKenzie FE (2012) Ross, MacDonald, and a theory for the dynamics and control of mosquito-transmitted pathogens. Plos Pathog 8: e1002588.

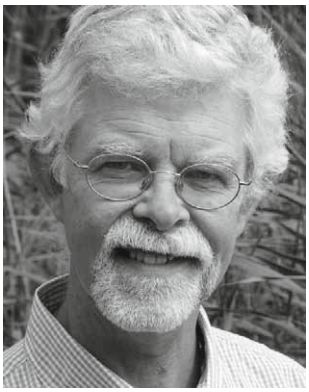
Smith T and Schapira A (2012) Reproduction numbers in malaria and their implications. Trends Parasitol 28: 3-8.

Takken W and Knols BGJ (1999) Odor-mediated behavior of afrotropical malaria mosquitoes. Annu Rev Entomol 44: 131-157.

Takken W and Knols BGJ (eds.) (2007) Emerging pests and vector-borne diseases in Europe. Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases, Volume 1. Wageningen Academic Publishers, Wageningen, the Netherlands.

Woolhouse MEJ, Dye C, Etard JF, Smith T, Charlwood JD, Garnett GP, Hagan P, Hii JLK, Ndhlovu PD, Quinnell RJ, Watts CH, Chandiwana SK and Anderson RM (1997) Heterogeneities in the transmission of infectious agents: implications for the design of control programs. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 94: 338-342.

About the editors



Willem Takken (1951) is Professor in Medical and Veterinary Entomology at Wageningen University, the Netherlands. He studied in Wageningen and obtained his PhD degree in 1980 based on research on the biology and feeding behaviour of tsetse flies. He worked in several African countries on the control of animal trypanosomiasis. Upon his return to Europe, he was appointed as lecturer at the Laboratory of Entomology in Wageningen, where he introduced Medical and Veterinary Entomology to the Wageningen academic society. His work involved mosquito-host interactions, in particular the host-seeking behaviour of malaria mosquitoes. He later expanded this work to include field research in Tanzania, Kenya and other tropical countries. Today, his work involves the ecology of mosquitoes, biological control of mosquitoes and the impact of environmental change on malaria vectors. In Europe, Willem studies the ecology of Lyme disease vectors and vectors of other, emerging infectious diseases. He emphasises collaboration with other institutions, and has an extensive network of national and international collaborators. Willem is a member of the Council of the International Congress of Entomology and serves on several editorial boards and advisory committees. He has (co)authored more than 190 scientific publications and book chapters.

Constantianus J.M. (Sander) Koenraadt (1975) is Assistant Professor at the Laboratory of Entomology of Wageningen University, the Netherlands in the area of Biology and Control of Disease Vectors. He studied biology at Wageningen University and earned his PhD from the same institute in the field of medical entomology. For this, he carried out field work on the impact of environmental change on malaria risk in Kenya. After this, he joined the University of California, Davis, USA, for which he led a project on dengue risk in rural Thailand. After living and working in Thailand for 2.5 years, he moved to Cornell University (Ithaca, NY, USA) to work on the ecology of genetically modified *Aedes aegypti* for dengue control and the ecology of West Nile virus vectors. At present, he is involved in two research programs on the risks of WNV in Europe and the possibilities for malaria elimination in Rwanda. He enjoys sharing and communicating his science to the general public. For this, he organized an insect festival, is involved in a high school student competition and writes for a popular Dutch blog on the developments in nature in relation to blood-feeding insects.

W. Takken and C.J.M. Koenraadt (eds.), *Ecology of parasite-vector interactions*, Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases 3, DOI 10.3920/978-90-8686-744-8, © Wageningen Academic Publishers 2013

Contributors

Barry W. Alto (USA)
Florida Medical Entomology Laboratory, University of Florida, 200 9th St. S.E., Vero Beach, FL 32962, USA.
Email: bwalto@ufl.edu

Amrish Baidjoe (the Netherlands)
Radboud University Nijmegen Medical Centre, Postbus 9101, 6500 HB Nijmegen, the Netherlands.
Email: a.baidjoe@mmb.umcn.nl

Teun Bousema (the Netherlands)
Radboud University Nijmegen Medical Centre, Postbus 9101, 6500 HB Nijmegen, the Netherlands.
Email: t.bousema@mmb.umcn.nl

Chris M. Cirimotich (USA)
W. Harry Feinstone Department of Molecular Microbiology and Immunology, Bloomberg School of Public Health, Johns Hopkins University, 615 N. Wolfe Street, Baltimore, MD 21205-2179, USA.
Email: ccirimot@jhsph.edu

George Dimopoulos (USA)
W. Harry Feinstone Department of Molecular Microbiology and Immunology, Bloomberg School of Public Health, Johns Hopkins University, 615 N. Wolfe Street, Baltimore, MD 21205-2179, USA.
Email: gdimopou@jhsph.edu

Woodbridge A. Foster (USA)
Department of Evolution, Ecology and Organismal Biology, the Ohio State University, , 318 West 12th Avenue, Aronoff Laboratory, Columbus, OH 43210, USA.
Email: foster.13@osu.edu

Fedor Gassner (the Netherlands)
National Institute for Public Health and the Environment, P.O. Box 1, 3720 BA Bilthoven, the Netherlands.
Email: fedorgassner@gmail.com

Penelope A. Hancock (United Kingdom)
Life Sciences, University of Warwick, Gibbet Hill Campus, Coventry CV4 7AL, UK.
Email: p.a.hancock@warwick.ac.uk

Laura C. Harrington (USA)
Department of Entomology, Cornell University, 3131 Comstock Hall, Ithaca, NY, USA.
Email: lch27@cornell.edu

Nienke Hartemink (Belgium)
Georges Lemaître Centre for Earth and Climate Research, Université Catholique de Louvain, Bâtiment Marc de Hemptinne, 2 Chemin du Cyclotron, 1348 Louvain-la-Neuve, Belgium. Email:
n.a.hartemink@uu.nl

W. Takken and C.J.M. Koenraadt (eds.), *Ecology of parasite-vector interactions*, Ecology and control of vector-borne diseases 3, DOI 10.3920/978-90-8686-744-8, © Wageningen Academic Publishers 2013

Michelle E.H. Helinski (Uganda)
Vector Control Specialist, Malaria Consortium Regional Office, Plot 25 Upper Naguru East Road, P.O.Box 8045, Kampala, Uganda
Email: m.helinski@malariaconsortium.org

Jacob C. Koella (United Kingdom)
Division of Biology, Imperial College London, Silwood Park Campus, Ascot, Berkshire SL5 7PY, UK.
Email: jkoella@gmail.com

Constantianus J.M. Koenraadt (the Netherlands)
Laboratory of Entomology, Wageningen University, P.O. Box 8031, 6700 EH Wageningen, the Netherlands.
Email: sander.koenraadt@wur.nl

Louis Lambrechts (France)
Insects and Infectious Diseases, Institut Pasteur, CNRS URA 3012, 25 rue du Docteur Roux, 75724 Paris Cedex 15, France.
Email: louis.lambrechts@pasteur.fr

L. Philip Lounibos (USA)
Florida Medical Entomology Laboratory, University of Florida, 200 9th St. S.E., Vero Beach, FL 32962, USA.
Email: lounibos@ufl.edu

Luciano A. Moreira (Brazil)
Centro de Pesquisas René Rachou – FIOCRUZ, Av. Augusto de Lima, 1715, Barro Preto Belo Horizonte MG 301190-002, Brazil.
Email: luciano@cpqrr.fiocruz.br

Ace North (United Kingdom)
Department of Zoology, University of Oxford, The Tinbergen Building, South Parks Road, Oxford OX1 3PS, UK.
Email: ace.north@zoo.ox.ac.uk

Krijn P. Paaijmans (USA)
Center for Infectious Disease Dynamics & Department of Entomology, Merkle Lab, Penn State University, University Park, PA 16802, USA.
Email: krijn@paaijmans.nl

Andrew D. Pike (USA)
W. Harry Feinstone Department of Molecular Microbiology and Immunology, Bloomberg School of Public Health, Johns Hopkins University, 615 N. Wolfe Street, Baltimore, MD 21205-2179, USA.
Email: apike@jhsph.edu

Paul D. Ready (United Kingdom)
Disease Control Department, Faculty of Infectious and Tropical Diseases, London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine, London WC1 7HT, UK.
Email: paul.ready@lshtm.ac.uk

Matthew E. Rogers (United Kingdom)
Immunology and Infection Department, Faculty of Infectious and Tropical Diseases, London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine, Keppel Street, London WC1E 7HT, UK.
Email: matthew.rogers@lshtm.ac.uk

Chris M. Stone (Switzerland)
Department of Epidemiology and Public Health, Swiss Tropical and Public Health Institute, Socinstrasse 57, 4002 Basel, Switzerland.
Email: c.stone@unibas.ch

Willem Takken (the Netherlands)
Laboratory of Entomology, Wageningen University, P.O. Box 8031, 6700 EH Wageningen, the Netherlands.
Email: willem.takken@wur.nl

Matthew B. Thomas (USA)
Center for Infectious Disease Dynamics & Department of Entomology, Merkle Lab, Penn State University, University Park, PA 16802, USA.
Email: mbt13@psu.edu

Reviewers

Jared Aldstadt (USA)
Department of Geography, University of Buffalo, 105 Wilkeson Quad, Buffalo, NY 14261, USA.
Email: geojared@buffalo.edu

Mark Q. Benedict (Italy)
Department of Experimental Medicine, University of Perugia, Via del Giochetto, 06122 Perugia, Italy.
Email: mqbenedict@yahoo.com

Luis F. Chaves (Japan)
Graduate School of Environmental Earth Science, Hokkaido University, Suite A701, Kita-10, Nishi-5, Kita-Ku, Sapporo, 060-0810 Hokkaido, Japan.
Email: lchaves@ees.hokudai.ac.jp

Andrew K. Githeko (Kenya)
Centre for Global Health Research, Kenya Medical Research Institute, Kisumu, Kenya.
Email: githeko@yahoo.com

Constantianus J.M. Koenraadt (the Netherlands)
Laboratory of Entomology, Wageningen University, P.O. Box 8031, 6700 EH Wageningen, the Netherlands.
Email: sander.koenraadt@wur.nl

Leo van Overbeek (the Netherlands)
Plant Research International, Wageningen University, P.O. Box 69, 6700 AB Wageningen, the Netherlands.
Email: leo.vanoverbeek@wur.nl

Erik Poelman (the Netherlands)
Laboratory of Entomology, Wageningen University, P.O. Box 8031, 6700 EH Wageningen, the Netherlands.
Email: erik.poelman@wur.nl

Willem Takken (the Netherlands)
Laboratory of Entomology, Wageningen University, P.O. Box 8031, 6700 EH Wageningen, the Netherlands.
Email: willem.takken@wur.nl

Frederic Tripet (United Kingdom)
School of Life Sciences, Keele University, Huxley Building, Keele ST5 5BG, UK.
Email: f.tripet@keele.ac.uk

Keyword index

A

abiotic factors 132
abundance time-series 183
Acari 36
accessory gland protein (ACP) 227, 228, 232
Acetobacteraceae 68
Achillea millefolium 64
acoustic interaction 227, 231
ACP – *See:* accessory gland protein
activator 23
Acyrthosiphon pisum 25
adipokinetic hormone 39
adult mortality 188
Aedes
- *aegypti* 14, 21, 22, 23, 27, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 60, 64, 65, 68, 82, 83, 86, 87, 88, 91, 92, 95, 131, 155, 158, 159, 160, 183, 184, 190, 222, 223, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 247, 249
- *aegyptiaegypti* 224
- *aegypti* OX513A line 230
- *albopictus* 42, 58, 66, 86, 87, 88, 89, 91, 92, 157, 159, 224, 226, 228, 230, 248
- *bahamensis* 54
- *cantans* 54
- *caspius* 66, 67
- *communis* 52, 57
- *cooki* 157
- *fluviatilis* 223
- *polynesiensis* 157, 160, 224, 225, 230
- *provocans* 53
- *punctor* 54
- *riversi* 157, 224
- *scutellaris* 157
- *taeniorhynchus* 66, 89
- *triseriatus* 56, 83, 86, 87, 95, 248
- *trivitattus* 48
- *vexans* 55
- *vigilax* 86, 183, 185

Africa 203
African trypanosomiasis 13
age-grading 60
aggregation 40
- behaviour 176

AIC – *See:* Akaike's Information Criterion
Akaike's Information Criterion (AIC) 185
aliphatic carboxylic acid 206
allopatric 126
Amaranthus hybridus 52
amastigote 170
ammonia 206
AMP – *See:* antimicrobial peptide (AMP)
amylase 37, 47, 65
anaemia 205, 206
Anaplasma 142
anautogenous 38, 39
Anopheles
- *albimanus* 21, 22, 125, 222
- *arabiensis* 64, 113, 205, 221, 226, 228, 229
- *atroparvus* 42, 49, 52
- *claviger* 67
- *culicifacies* 228, 229
- *darlingi* 125
- *freeborni* 53, 61, 229
- *funestus* 43, 55, 128, 193, 228
- *gambiae* 21, 22, 27, 35, 39, 40, 41, 42, 45, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 56, 57, 58, 61, 62, 65, 67, 82, 106, 113, 114, 125, 126, 129, 131, 158, 182, 183, 185, 187, 193, 221, 223, 224, 225, 227, 228, 229, 230, 232, 233
- *gambiae* - body size 183
- *gambiae* - M molecular form 226
- *gambiae* - S molecular form 226
- *gambiae* s.s. 43, 55, 66, 68, 111, 125
- *nuneztovari* 55, 56
- *pharoensis* 125
- *pseudopunctipennis* 125, 126
- *pulcherrimus* 125
- *quadrimaculatus* 54, 222, 231
- *sergentii* 40, 41, 53, 66, 67, 125
- *stephensi* 21, 22, 23, 48, 50, 223, 224, 228, 230

anthropophily 41, 127
antibody 20
- response 210

anti-fungal immunity 22
antigen presentation 201
antimalarial treatment 209
antimicrobial peptide (AMP) 23, 92, 159, 223
- gene 23

aphid alarm pheromone 64

Apodemus sylvaticus 142, 148
apoptosis 48
aposymbiotic 158
apyrase 128
Arachnida 141
arachnids 156
arbovirus 175
arginine 48
Aristida raddiana 66, 67
Armadillidium vulgare 158
Armigeres subalbatus 49, 159
arthropods 148
Asaia 68, 224
Asclepias syriaca 64
Asia 157
Asian tiger mosquito 157, 248
association studies 202
asymptomatic infection 199, 201
asymptomatic malaria 201
ATSB – *See:* attractive toxic sugar baits
attP docking site 27
attractive toxic sugar baits (ATSB) 66, 67
Australia 155, 225, 228
autogeny 38, 56
autoimmune diseases 24
autosomal 201
Avena macrostachya 43

B

Babesia 142
Bacillus sphaericus 68
backward modelling 181, 182, 183, 192, 250
bacteria 14, 156
bait stations 67
bancroftian filariasis 247
Bangladesh 169
basal lamina 83, 95
basic reproductive rate 103, 106, 127, 128, 143, 149, 247, 248
Batrocera cucurbitae 232
Bayesian Information criterion (BIC) 185
Beauvaria bassiana 188
bednets 221
behavioural manipulation 174
behavioural resistance 232
bet-hedging tactic 56
bidirectional incompatibility 157
biological control 155, 156, 181, 191
biological warfare 223
biopesticide 189
biotic interaction 82
biting 53, 56, 62
– behaviour 96
– frequency 46, 62
– persistence 173, 174
– rate 35, 54, 55, 63, 127, 128, 130
Blattaria 67
blood-feeding behaviour 141
blood-host choice 42
blood-host stimuli 53
body size 229, 230
boric acid 66
Borrelia 142, 143, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 249
– *afzelii* 145, 146, 148
– *bavariensis* 145
– *burgdorferi* 14, 142, 144, 146, 147
– *burgdorferi sensu lato* 141, 145
– *garinii* 145
– -induced behavioural changes 148
– *lusitaniae* 145, 146
– *valaisiana* 145
box traps 65
Brazil 160, 225, 247
brown fat 148
Brugia
– *malayi* 49
– *pahangi* 48
– *patei* 49
Burkina Faso 200, 203
Burma 160

C

Canada 64
Capparis spinosa 47
carbon dioxide 206
carboxypeptidase 23
– promoter 27
carrying capacity 35, 185
cecropin 23, 92, 159, 223
cellular adaptation 157
cellular factors 20
cellulose 47
Central America 222
Ceratitis capitata 222
Ceratopogonidae 36

Chagas disease 224
chemoreception 64
chemosterilization 222
chikungunya 89, 91, 155, 157, 158, 224
chitinase 170, 172, 174
choice test 43
cholesterol 159
chromatin 157
Chromobacterium 14
Chrysops 38
CI – *See:* cytoplasmic incompatibility
Cimicidae 36
climate 142
– change 89, 103, 104, 111, 116, 117
clinical malaria 197, 210
clustering 203
clusters 211
co-adaptation 174
Cochliomyia hominivorax 222
co-cladogenesis 174
co-evolution 130, 133, 172
co-evolutionary model 132
co-feeding 146
cold-anthrone test 37
coldspots 211
Coleoptera 67
colonization 230, 231
community effect 192, 193, 205, 208
community engagement 160
competence 89
competent hosts 151
competition 82, 89, 159
– density-dependent 190
competitive interactions 87
competitiveness 60
competitive stress 88
conspecifics 25
contact rate 205
control
– sterile 221
– transgenic 221
– *Wolbachia* 221
copulation 226, 231
co-speciation 174
courtship behaviour 227
Cricket paralysis virus 158
cross-validation 185
crowding 58
crustaceans 156
Culex 38, 157, 228
– *annulirostris* 86, 89
– *nigripalpus* 43, 66
– *pipiens* 55, 62, 65, 66, 68, 156, 157, 224, 249
– *pipiens pipiens* 49
– *pipiens quinquefasciatus* 222
– *quinquefasciatus* 52, 62, 159, 160, 226
– *tarsalis* 61, 89, 231
– *tritaeniorhynchus* 86
Culicidae 13, 36, 124
culling 175
cutaneous leishmaniasis 169
cuticular hydrocarbons 226
CYP6Z6 92
cytoadherence 200
cytoplasmic factors 156
cytoplasmic incompatibility (CI) 155, 156, 157, 160, 224, 249
cytoskeleton 201

D

daily temperature range (DTR) 106, 109, 111, 113
defecation 170, 171
defensin 92, 159, 172
defensin A 23
demographic processes 186
dengue 14, 19, 88, 155, 157, 158, 159, 181, 190, 221, 223, 247, 249
– haemorrhagic fever 19
– vector competence 87
– virus 86
density dependence 184, 185, 186
density dependent
– competition 86, 233
– feedback 183, 185
– mortality 183
densoviruses 224
DENV-2 88, 89, 91, 159
desiccation 142, 148
– resistance 151
development rate 191
diapause 38, 45, 146
diel activity cycle 39
diet 57, 58
digestion 227

Diptera 36
Dirofilaria immitis 48
disease burdens 110
disease control 160, 249
dispersal 228, 229
– range 199
dispersion 142
dissemination 146
diurnal rhythm 105
diversity 123
DNA 22, 37, 38, 68
docking site 230
dog 169
dorsal 21
drive mechanism 235
Drosophila 20, 24, 25, 26, 27, 29, 131, 156, 157, 158, 225, 227
– C virus 158
– genome 21
– *melanogaster* 83, 155, 159
– *simulans* 159, 224
– -*Wolbachia* strain 155
drug resistance 14, 19
DTR – *See:* daily temperature range
Duffy blood group 199
– negativity 202
dynamic state variable modelling 45

E

early warning systems 191
East Africa 206
eco-epidemiology 167
ecological immunology 129
ecological niche 193
ecological research 192
ecoregion 125, 126
ecotypes 125
ectoparasites 146
ectothermic performance 104
effector gene 21, 24
effector mechanism 129
effector molecule 20, 21, 22
Egypt 40, 204
EIP – *See:* extrinsic incubation period
EIR – *See:* entomological inoculation rate
elevation 211
ELISA – *See:* enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay
El Salvador 222, 231
encapsulation 20, 158
endemic 191
endemicity 198
endonuclease genes 23
endophily 41, 111, 125
endosymbiont 14, 224, 247
endosymbiotic bacteria 131, 155
endothelium receptor 201
energy reserves 57
energy state 56
energy storage 148
entomological inoculation rate (EIR) 63, 67, 188, 189, 190, 198
entomopathogenic fungi 212, 225
environmental change 14
environmental stress 83
environmental variation 129
enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) 209
epidemic 191
epidemiological model 51
epidemiological risk 89
epidemiology 123, 127, 128, 130, 131, 132
– of malaria 191
epithelium 170
eradication 193
erythrocyte 199, 201
– membrane protein-1 200
escape barriers 82, 88, 93
Escherichia coli 25
evolution 123, 127, 192
evolutionary
– costs 26, 130, 131
– dynamics 129
– ecology 123, 127, 130, 132
– forces 128
– research 192
– response 132
exogenous peptide SM1 27
exophagy 221
exophily 111, 125
experimental evolutionary ecology 248
extra-floral nectaries 52, 64
extrinsic cycle 48
extrinsic host 47
extrinsic incubation period (EIP) 19, 51, 86, 89, 106, 107, 109, 111, 127, 155, 158

F
fat metabolism 148
fat storage 148
fatty acid 159
fecundity 24, 25, 27, 28, 35, 42, 45, 46, 48, 50, 52, 54, 56, 57, 58, 60, 66, 130, 229, 230, 233
– sandfly 175
feeding
– -associated mortality rate 128
– behaviour 43, 227
– frequency 106, 107
– index 41
feminisation 156, 249
filariasis 48
fitness 13, 14, 19, 20, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 45, 57, 58, 83, 86, 106, 130, 131, 149, 151, 158, 175, 183, 186, 222, 229, 230, 231, 232, 235, 248, 250
– costs 174
– male 221, 233
– studies 221
flight distance 228
Flock House virus 158
Florida 222
foci 203, 211
focus of malaria transmission 198
follicle 57
foraging behaviour 62
foregut 171
forward modelling 181, 182, 186, 192, 250
France 173
Francisella tularensis 146
fructose 36, 37, 42, 43, 52, 57, 61
functional genomics 20
fungal biopesticide 181, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 250
fungal entomopathogen 188
fungal infection 190
fungi 14

G
G6PD 201
galectin 170, 175
gametes 56
gametocyte 127, 129
– carriage 199, 202, 203, 212
gas chromatography 38
gene
– disruption 28
– driver 29, 248
– expression 21, 25, 28, 92, 145, 223
– flow 192, 228
– silencing 96
GeneSwitch-inducible GAL4 system 26
genetic
– compatibility 127
– control program 224, 232, 233
– control strategies 221, 228, 250
– differentiation 123
– drive systems 131
– mosquito control 223
– polymorphisms 202
– structure 125, 126
– variation 13, 132
– vector control 221, 222, 235
genetically diverse laboratory strains 235
genetically-modified insect 28
genetically modified mosquito (GMM) 23, 27, 29, 123, 131, 132, 181, 190, 191, 223
genome 22
– sequences 82
– wide linkage 202
genomic structure 96
genospecies 148
genotype 87, 126, 129
geographical patterns 205
geographical variation 197
geotaxis 26
germline 22
germ-line transformation 223
Ghana 198, 200
global warming 110
globin chains 200
Glossinidae 13, 36
glucose 36, 37, 49, 50, 51
glucose-6-phosphate deficiency 199
glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency 201
glucosidase 47
– α 65
glycogen 39, 50, 61
glycovaccine 175
GMM – *See:* genetically modified mosquito
Gompertz-logistic 185
Gompertz model 51

gonotrophic cycle 35, 41, 46, 50, 53, 54, 55, 56, 60, 63, 66, 104, 105, 106, 109, 111, 113, 128, 187
gonotrophic discordance 55
goodness-of-fit 185
Gram-negative 156
Grand Cayman 225, 247
Greece 204
green fluorescent protein 27
Guatemala 125

H
habitat alteration 142
haemocoel 47, 48
haemocyte 20, 22
haemoglobin 200
haemoglobinopathies 200, 202
haemoglobin S 200
haemolymph 20, 22, 23, 26, 56, 146, 158
Haller's organ 144
harmonic convergence 231, 233
harmonic flight tone frequencies 227
heat shock 91
– proteins 83, 91
heat tolerance 26
Hemiptera 36
hepatocystis 124
heterogeneity 197, 198, 199, 204, 210, 250
– in malaria transmission 203, 207
heterologous genes 22
heterozygote 200
hibernacula 38
hibernation 39
hindgut 172, 173
Hippoboscidae 36
HLA – *See:* human leukocyte antigen
homing endonuclease 29, 225
– genes 131
honey 43, 65, 66
– feeding 54
honeydew 36, 38, 41, 47, 52, 64, 67
host
– alteration 142
– availability 144
– choice 46
– contact rate 147
– finding 149
– immunity upregulation 159
– -parasite system 35
– preference 127, 145
– range 144
– responsiveness 53, 54
– -searching 141
– -seeking 54, 187, 188
– specificity 40
– stimuli 53
hotspot 14, 151, 197, 198, 199, 203, 204, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 250
– targeted interventions 212
human
– filariasis 160
– genetic factors 203, 213
– genetic polymorphism 199, 210
– infectious reservoir 212
– influence 142
– leukocyte antigen (HLA) 202, 206
– movement 155, 213
humoral factors 20
Hymenoptera 67

I
IMD – *See:* immune deficiency (IMD)
immune
– activation 27, 28
– defence mechanism 26
– deficiency 82
– effector 29
– function 47
– pathway 82, 83, 92, 95
– response 13, 20, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 29, 35, 48, 49, 50, 51, 95, 129, 130, 200, 248
– signalling 82
– signalling pathways 20
– system 47
immune deficiency (IMD) 20, 159
– pathway 21, 22, 26
immunity 20, 22, 82, 129, 130
immunocompetence 50, 51
immunoresponsive genes 91
inbreeding 230
incipient species 125
incubation period 24
– malaria parasite 188
India 167, 169, 223, 226
Indonesia 89, 160

indoor residual spraying (IRS) 113, 181, 190, 193, 205, 209, 212, 221
insecticide 35, 40, 46, 65, 66, 67, 81, 91, 92, 93, 95, 113, 155, 175
– resistance 14, 19, 155
– treated net (ITN) 113, 181, 190, 193, 205, 209, 212
insecticides
– chemical 181
insect transgenesis 19
insemination 38, 231, 232
– potential 61
– rate 61
integrase
– φC31 27
integrated vector management (IVM) 63
interaction
– *Anopheles-Plasmodium* 250
– density-dependent 86
– host-parasite 129
– host-pathogen 158
– *Leishmania*-sandfly 170, 174, 249
– microbial-vector 14
– mosquito-parasite 123
– parasite-host 14
– tick-*Borrelia* 249
– vector-parasite 13, 14, 68, 103, 117, 247, 249, 250
interference 82
interspecific competition 87
inter-specific interaction 87, 88, 193
intervention 186
intracellular environments 157
Intra-individual mosquito attractiveness 206
intraspecific competition 86, 88, 91
intrinsic growth rate 185
intrinsic rate of increase 57, 58, 106, 116
inundative releases 222
ionising radiation 222
IPCC 109
Ipomoea batatus 52
Iran 167
irritancy 65
IRS – *See:* indoor residual spraying
isoleucine 41, 42
Israel 65, 66
Italy 89, 204, 226
ITN – *See:* insecticide treated net
IVM – *See:* integrated vector management
Ixodes 141, 143, 148
– *pacificus* 142, 146, 147
– *persulcatus* 142, 146, 147
– *ricinus* 14, 141, 142, 144, 146, 147, 148
– *scapularis* 142, 146, 147
Ixodidae 14

J

JAK/STAT – *See:* Janus Kinase - Signal Transducer and Activator of Transcription (JAK/STAT)
Janus Kinase - Signal Transducer and Activator of Transcription (JAK/STAT) 20, 82, 159
– pathway 21, 22
Japanese encephalitis 86
– virus 159
Jensen's inequality 107
Jolly-Seber model 231

K

kairomones 35, 64
Kaufmann effect 107
Kenya 43, 55, 106, 127, 198, 202, 205, 228
kinases 21
Kulldorf spatial scan statistic 211

L

La Crosse Encephalitis virus (LACV) 83, 86, 87, 248
lactic acid 206
LACV – *See:* La Crosse Encephalitis virus
land use 142
Lantana camara 49
La Reunion 89, 228
larval
– competition 182, 183, 190, 231
– development 221
– survivorship 186
larviciding 212
lectin 48, 172
Leishmania 37, 47, 167, 170, 171, 172, 174
– *amazonensis* 169
– *braziliensis* 172
– *donovani* 169, 172
– *infantum* 169, 173, 174

– *infantum chagasi* 173
– *major* 47, 167, 171, 172, 174, 175
– *mexicana* 169, 172, 174
– *panamensis* 172
– *tropica* 169
leishmaniasis 13, 36, 47, 155, 167
– anthroponotic cutaneous 167, 168
– anthroponotic visceral 168, 169, 173
– New World zoonotic cutaneous 169, 172
– zoonotic cutaneous 167, 168, 170
– zoonotic visceral 168, 169
leishmanolysin 172
lekking sites 175
Leucanthemum vulgare 64
life expectancy 91
life history 57, 88, 104, 106, 109
lifespan 25, 26, 27, 28, 53
life-table 58
lifetime reproductive output 45
light trap 40
Lincoln Index 231
linear model 116
linear rate development model 109
lipid reserves 233
lipophosphoglycan 170
litter layer 142, 144
logistic model 51
longevity 45, 51, 52, 61, 81, 91, 106, 158, 230
longitudinal studies 197
l-tyrosine 49
Lutzomyia 170
– *longipalpis* 169, 170, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176
– *migonei* 172
– (*Nyssomyia*) *flaviscutellata* 169
Lyme borreliosis 141, 142, 145, 149, 150
Lyme disease 151
lymphatic filariasis 158

M

macro-evolutionary patterns 123
macrophages 170
malaria 19, 36, 48, 63, 66, 67, 68, 104, 111, 116, 123, 125, 127, 128, 129, 131, 132, 155, 181, 182, 187, 190, 191, 198, 221, 247, 248, 249
– case management 212
– control 207, 208, 211, 213, 249
– epidemiology 198
– exposure 197, 210, 250
– incidence 197, 198, 199, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206, 209, 210, 211, 213
– infection 203
– parasite incubation 190
– risk 103, 104, 114, 117, 209, 211, 213
– risk map 212
– -specific antigen 209
– transmission 191, 197, 198, 199, 202, 203, 204, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 249, 250
– transmission potential 203
– vaccine 209
Malaria Atlas Project 211, 212
malathion 65, 91, 92, 95
Malaysia 225, 247
male
– accessory gland 227
– biology 222
– competitiveness 234
– killing 156, 249
– mosquito biology 221
– reproductive success 228
– sperm capacity 229
– survival 229
Mali 40, 65, 204, 207
Manihot esculenta 52
mapping technology 192
mark-release-recapture (MRR) studies 60, 228, 231
mass drug administration 209, 212
mass production 230
mate choice 60, 227
mate location 231
mating 57, 61, 225, 231, 232
– behaviour 41, 60, 182, 227
– competition 25
– competitiveness 131, 230
– performance 61
– strategies 221
matrix model 149
maximum likelihood categorical analyses 93
maximum likelihood estimation 185
maximum likelihood ANOVA tests 93
Medea 23, 29, 225
Mediterranean 201

– fruit fly 222, 232, 234
meiotic drive 225
– genes 131
melanin 49
melanization 49, 50
– response 49, 50
melanotic encapsulation 27
Mendelian inheritance 131
mesocosm 40, 43, 60, 62, 67
metacyclics 174
metacyclogenesis 173
metalloproteinase 172
Metarhizium anisopliae 225
Mexico 125, 234
micro-biome 247, 249
microclimate 113, 117, 142, 148, 248
Micrococcus luteus 25
micro-epidemiological variation 198
microfilariae 48
microinjection 158, 223
microsatellite marker 125
microsporidia 129
microvilli 171
Middle East 201
midgut 36, 37, 47, 48, 57, 88, 93, 96, 126, 170, 171, 173, 175
– basement membrane 248
– escape barrier 95
– lumen 146
– peristalsis 170
mitotic division 157
model 103, 111, 113, 131, 149
– selection 184
moisture content 211
molecular biology 20
molecular genetics 131
monandry 227, 228
mortality 48, 86, 87, 91, 127, 130, 132, 206
– age-dependent 188
mosquito
– abundance 191, 207, 209
– age 158
– -borne diseases 160
– breeding site 199, 204, 205, 211, 212
– control 181, 188, 191
– dispersal range 204
– ecology 182, 183, 186
– exposure 203, 204, 205, 207, 208, 213
– genetically modified 229
– heterogeneity 208
– indoor biting 212
– indoor resting 212
– longevity 155
– outdoor biting 212
– population control 181
– population dynamics 187, 192
– sampling tool 209
– screening 205
– sterile 229
Mozambique 128
MRR – *See:* mark-release-recapture
multi-model inference 184
multiple feeding 54
Murray Valley encephalitis 86, 89
Muscidae 36
mutagenesis 27
mutualism 82
mutualistic 158
– interaction 151
myoinhibitory neuropeptide 170, 172

N

N-acetyl-D-glucosamine 48
NADPH 201
natural selection 58, 61, 128
nectar 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 43, 48, 49, 51, 52, 63, 65, 68
– feeding 53, 54
– -foraging behaviour 52
– sources 248
nectomonad 170, 171, 172
neglected tropical disease 167
nematode 143
Nepal 169
net reproductive rate 24, 57, 58
New World screwworm fly 222
next-generation matrix approach 141, 149
NF-κB transcription factor 23, 26
niche 41
nitric oxide synthase 48
non-linear development model 114
non-linear model 113, 116
non-linear regression analysis 183
nucleus 22
nutrient 37, 49, 50, 81, 83, 86, 91, 92, 95
nutrition 60, 81, 83, 87, 93

nutritional stress 87
Nycteribiidae 36

O
odour 206
– -baited mosquito trap 212
– baited trap 210
– -receptor neuron 65
olfaction 206
olfactometer 40, 54
olfactory sensilla 144
oligosaccharide 36, 65
Onchocerca lienalis 50
o'nyong-nyong 83
oocyst 22, 49, 50, 51, 68, 126, 128, 130
ookinete 48, 49
optimal-foraging theory 45
orthology 20
Osp – *See:* outer surface protein
OspA 147
OspB 147
OspC 146
outer surface protein (Osp) 145, 147
ovalocytosis 201
ovarian development 227
oviposition 227
ovitrap 161
oxidative stress 201

P
Pakistan 167, 228
PAMP – *See:* pathogen-associated molecular pattern
Papua New Guinea 208
paraphyletic 124
parasitaemia 206, 210
parasite 20, 21, 27, 35, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 103, 104, 106, 107, 111, 113, 123, 127, 128, 132
– avian malaria 155
– evolution 124
– filarial 155
– load 130
– prevalence 207, 209, 211, 212
– resistance 221
parasite-vector association 127
parasite-vector relationship 51
parasitic 158
– wasp 143
parasitism 82, 183
paratransgenesis 224
Parthenium hysterophorus 52
parthenogenesis 156, 249
pathogen 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 25, 26, 28, 29, 35, 45, 63, 65, 87, 89, 124, 131, 142
– blockage 159
– -mediated changes 141
– resurgence 155
– transmission 36, 68
pathogen-associated molecular pattern (PAMP) 20, 21
pathogen-vector associations 48
pathophysiology 202
pattern recognition receptor (PRR) 20, 21
pentose phosphate pathway 201
peptidoglycan recognition protein (PGRP-LE) 26
peristalsis 172
peritrophic matrix 47
peritrophic membrane 170, 172, 173
pest control 192
PGRP-LE – *See:* peptidoglycan recognition protein
phagocyte 170
phagocytosis 20, 22, 201
phagolysosome 170
pharynx 173
phenotype 81, 82, 87, 89, 147, 156
– tetracycline repressible sex-specific flightless 224
phenotypic variation 13, 91
pheromone 175
– aggregation 226
– contact 226
Phlebotominae 13
Phlebotomus 170
– (*Adlerius*) *arabicus* 169
– *argentipes* 175
– *ariasi* 173, 174
– *duboscqi* 167, 170, 171, 172
– (*Euphlebotomus*) *argentipes* 169
– (*Larroussius*) 169
– *orientalis* 41
– *papatasi* 47, 67, 167, 170, 171, 172, 174, 175
– (*Paraphlebotomus*) *sergenti* 169

– *salehi* 167
phloem 37, 68
phosphoglycans 170, 172
phototaxis 147
Phthiraptera 36
phylogeny 123, 124
phytochemical 35, 64
piggybac transposable element 27
plant-feeding 41
plant-sugar feeding 48
plant-volatile baited traps 249
Plasmodium 13, 14, 19, 22, 27, 47, 68, 123, 126, 129, 132, 159, 223, 224, 247
– *berghei* 21, 22, 28, 223, 230
– *chabaudi* 50
– *cynomolgi* 48
– *falciparum* 21, 27, 49, 124, 125, 126, 129, 130, 158, 200, 223
– *falciparum* oocysts 48
– *gallinaceum* 21, 22, 23, 27, 49, 158, 223
– *knowlesi* 127
– *mexicanum* 124
– *vivax* 125, 202
– *yoelii* 27
– *yoelii nigeriensis* 223
– *yoelii yoelii* 27, 51
plasticity 82, 186
pleiotropic effects 91
poikilothermic 106, 247
polyandry 228
Polyctenidae 36
polygynous species 60
pool feeders 170
population
– control 182, 183
– dynamic model 186
– dynamics 60, 184
– genetics 131
– growth rate 106, 116
– reduction 232, 233
– regulation 183
– replacement 131, 191, 232, 233, 235
– suppression 157
– suppression strategy 132
precopulatory acoustic interaction 221
predation 82, 142, 183
predator 24
– prey population fluctuation 142
promastigote 173, 174, 249
– leptomonad 171, 172
– metacyclic 170, 171, 172
– procyclic 170, 171
– secretory gel (PSG) 171, 172, 249
promoter 22, 23
pronucleus 156, 157
prophylaxis 176
protective immunity 210
protective response
– acquired 199
– innate 199
proteinase 47
protein catabolism 60
proteophosphoglycan 171, 172, 249
protozoa 143
Providencia rettgeri 25
PRR – *See:* pattern recognition receptor
Pseudomonas aeruginosa 26
PSG – *See:* promastigote secretory gel
Psychodidae 36
public health 126
– impact 208
Puerto Rico 42, 55, 60, 229
push-pull approach 212
pylorus 173

Q

quantitative trait loci 129
questing 144, 145, 146
quiescence 146

R

R_0 57, 58, 60, 103, 106, 127, 128, 148, 149, 150, 151, 198, 199, 207
radioactive tagging 40
rainfall 191
random walk 64
insemination 62
rate of increase 58
real-time quantitative nucleic acid sequence-based amplification (QT-NASBA) 13
reciprocal crosses 157
reciprocal effect 87
Reduviidae 36
Reduviid bug 224
refractoriness 20, 23, 24, 27, 29, 49, 50, 131, 160

refuge 143
regulator 23
regurgitation 172, 173
rehydration 142
release of insects carrying a dominant lethal 223
remote sensing 211, 212
repellent 53, 175
reporter gene 224
reproductive
– capacity 46, 248
– cycle 24
– fitness 35
– success 57
reservoir 142
– -competent host 145, 147
– host 169
– incompetent host 145
– mammalian 174
resistance 25, 66
– evolution 192
response 50
responsiveness 55
Rhagionidae 36
Ricinus communis 47, 52
Ricker-logistic 185
Rickettsia 142, 157
RIDL 190, 223, 224, 225, 230, 233, 234, 235
Rift Valley 89
risk
– Lyme borreliosis 151
RNA interference 22, 82, 223
RNA viruses 158
rodent reservoir host 167
rodents 48
Ross-MacDonald model 247
Ross River 86
RT-PCR 65

S

saliva-assisted transmission (SAT) 146
salivary glands 47, 146
Salp15 146, 147
sandfly 167
– behaviour 171, 172
– feeding behaviour 175
– -*Leishmania* associations 167
– saliva 175
SAT – *See:* saliva-assisted transmission
SaTScan 211
selective pressure 202
selfish genetic element 131, 225
semen protein 232
semi-field cage 221, 234
seminal fluid protein 221, 227
Senegal 204
Senna didymobotrya 44
septicaemia 158
serine protease cascades 20
serological marker 210, 250
Serratia marcescens 25, 48
severe anaemia 201
severe malaria 200, 201
sex peptide 227
sex ratio 61
sex separation 224
sexual receptivity 227
sexual refractoriness 227
sexual responsiveness 60
sickle cell 200
Silene otites 65
Simuliidae 36
Simulium ornatum 50
Sindbis virus (SINV) 83, 88, 89, 91, 92
Singapore 89
single nucleotide polymorphism 202
SINV – *See:* Sindbis virus
Siphonaptera 36
SIT – *See:* sterile insect technique
site fidelity 208, 209
SM1 28
socio-economic status 208
soil 211
– characteristics 142
– moisture content 204
Solanum luteum 47
Solidago canadensis 64
source of infection 197
South East Asia 201
South Pacific 157
spatial structure 192
spatial variation 197, 203
spatio-temporal data 192
speciation 123, 125
spinosad 66
spirochetes 148

sporozoite 23, 49, 63, 65, 127, 128, 130
Sri Lanka 89
STAT-A 21, 22
STAT-B 21
sterile insect technique (SIT) 160, 191, 222, 223, 229, 230, 232, 233, 234
stomodeal plug 172
stomodeal valve 170, 171, 172, 174
Stomoxys 38
Streblidae 36
stress 92, 95
sub-Saharan Africa 167, 201
sucrose 36, 47, 49, 52, 66
Sudan 41
sugar 37, 38, 39, 41, 42, 45, 48, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 60, 62, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68
– feeding 35, 36, 37, 39, 41, 43, 45, 46, 51, 53, 55, 57, 58, 60, 61, 63, 64, 66, 67, 68, 229, 248
– feeding behaviour 38
super spreader 203
survival 19, 24, 29, 35, 36, 37, 39, 42, 47, 51, 52, 53, 58, 60, 62, 63, 66, 68, 82, 88, 91, 92, 95, 103, 106, 130, 132, 151, 228, 231
– adult 150
– nymph 150
– probability 149
– rate 35, 46
survivorship 27, 28, 42, 51, 58, 106, 230
– data 183
swarm
– marker 226
swarm formation 233
swarming 41, 229, 232
– behaviour 61, 226
sweat-associated human volatiles 206
symbiotic interaction 13
sympatric 126
syndrome 37
systemic infection 144

T

Tabanidae 36
Tabanus 38
Tamarix jordanis 66
Tanzania 198, 207, 208, 226
T-cell mediated immune response 146
temperature 14, 39, 48, 50, 55, 61, 81, 82, 83, 89, 91, 92, 93, 95, 103, 104, 105, 107, 109, 110, 111, 114, 115, 116, 117, 188, 189, 191, 247
– -dependent model 104
– terrestrial 109
– variability 115
teneral energy reserves 230
TEP1 22
terminalia 61
Thailand 42, 55, 86, 160, 228, 229
thalassaemia 199, 200, 201, 203
thermal performance curve 104, 109
thin-layer chromatography 38
threonine 159
threshold temperature 113
thujone 65
tick
– activity 147
– -borne diseases 141
– -borne encephalitis virus 146
– physiology 147
– receptor molecule TROSPA 147
– -reservoir hosts 145
– saliva 249
– survival 149
time-series data 185
tissue tropism 159
Toll pathway 20, 21, 22, 25, 82, 159
Toxorhynchites 41
trade-off 25, 45, 49, 106, 130, 247, 248
transcription 23, 82
– factors 21
transduction 129
transferrin 92
transformation
– germ-line 225
transgene 23, 29, 223, 230
– expression 23, 24
– instability 235
transgenesis 22, 24, 27, 28, 223, 224, 225
transgenic 19, 21, 25, 27, 28, 123, 131
– element 249
– insects 26
– malaria control 248
– mosquito 22, 23, 27, 29
– vector 248
transglutaminase 227

transinfection 157
translocation 21
transmission
– co-feeding 145
– dengue 159
– disease 150
– dynamics 142
– endemic 181
– heterogeneous 208
– intensity 207
– leishmaniasis 175
– non-systemic 145, 146, 150
– potential 199
– saliva assisted 146
– seasonal malaria 197, 204, 205
– success 149
– systemic 145
– transovarial 145, 147, 149, 150
– trans-stadial 143
– unstable malaria 206, 207
– vertical 143, 156
transposable element 23, 225
transposons 131
treatment seeking behaviour 210
trichodea 65
trypsin 47, 170
tsetse fly 224

U
Uganda 198
unidirectional incompatibility 157
USA 87, 222

V
vaccine
– anti-tick 151
vascular endothelium 201
vector 141
– biting frequency 103
– -borne disease 155, 221
– -borne disease control 247
– competence 19, 20, 22, 23, 28, 29, 35, 46, 47, 48, 68, 81, 82, 83, 86, 88, 89, 91, 92, 93, 95, 96, 103
– control 155, 190, 191, 212, 221
– resistance 221
vectorial
– capacity 19, 22, 23, 24, 28, 29, 35, 36, 45, 46, 51, 53, 62, 68, 81, 89, 132, 158, 191
vegetation 211
– characteristics 142
Venezuelan equine encephalitis 89
verbenone 65
Vida3 223
Vietnam 160
viral competency 87
virulence 51
vitellin 50
vitellogenesis 41, 56, 62
vitellogenin 23, 159
VOC – *See:* volatile organic compound
volatile 64, 68
– organic compound (VOC) 63, 64
Vulpes vulpes 142

W
Weibull functions 188
West Africa 206
Western equine encephalitis 89
West Nile virus 49, 86, 159
whole-genome sequencing 20
wing beat frequency 226
Wolbachia 29, 155, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 191, 224, 225, 230, 247, 249
– *pipientis* 14, 155, 156
– wAlbA 157
– wAlbB 157
– wMel 224
– wMelCS 158
– wMelPop 158, 159, 224
– wMelPop-CLA 155, 158, 159
– wVulC 158
wood mice 148
World Health Organization 198

Y
Yellow Fever 160, 181, 190, 247

Z
zooprophylaxis 176